

**BOOK DEPARTMENT  
THE GENERAL SERVICE SCHOOLS  
FORT LEAVENWORTH, KANSAS**

**Announces**

The following new School publications have been received from the press:

Combat Orders, Paper Cover (reviewed in this Cavalry Journal) .....	\$ .50
Development of Tactics, World War, Balck, Cloth Binding..	2.00
Conventional Signs, Paper Cover.....	.15
Engineer Course in Topography, Cloth Binding.....	.75
General Tactical Functions of Larger Units, Cloth Binding...	1.50
Principles of Strategy, Naylor, Cloth Binding.....	2.00
Signal Communications for All Arms, Cloth Binding.....	1.00
Signal Communications for All Arms, Paper Cover.....	.50
Tables of Organization, Paper Cover.....	.50
Tactical Principles and Decisions, Cloth Binding, 4 volumes and Maps .....	8.00
Tactics and Technique of Artillery, 2 volumes, Cloth Binding.	3.00
Tactics and Technique Howitzer Company, Paper Cover....	.25
Tactics and Technique of Cavalry, Paper Cover.....	.50
Field Fortifications, Paper Cover (reviewed in this Cavalry Journal) .....	.50
Solution of Map Problems, Paper Cover.....	.50
Mailing List Matter, 1921-22, Cloth Binding.....	1.50

The following are recommended for officers preparing to attend future courses at the Command and General Staff School:

Military Organization of the United States.....	.15
Tables of Organization, Infantry and Cavalry Divisions, 1922.	.50
Tactics and Technique of the Separate Branches.....	1.00
Solution of Tactical Problems.....	.25
Selected Problems .....	.50
Combat Orders, 1922 edition.....	.50
Field Fortifications, 1922 edition.....	.50
Subscription to Mailing List Matter, 1922-1923.....	1.50

**ORDER FROM**

**Book Department, U.S. Cavalry Association**

**1624 H Street N. W.**

**WASHINGTON, D. C.**

**VOLUME XXXII**

**JANUARY, 1923**

**NUMBER 13**

# THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Devoted to the Interests of the Cavalry,  
to the Professional Improvement of Its  
Officers and Men, and to the Advance-  
ment of the Mounted Service Generally

EDITED BY  
**JEROME W. HOWE**  
MAJOR OF CAVALRY

COPYRIGHT, 1923, BY  
THE UNITED STATES CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

Published quarterly by the United States Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street, Washington, D. C. Editor, Major Jerome W. Howe, Cavalry. Managing Editor, Captain George A. Moore, Cavalry. Entered as second-class matter March 22, 1920, at the post-office at Washington, D. C., under the Act of March 3, 1879. Acceptance for mailing at special rate of postage provided for in section 1103, Act of October 3, 1917, authorized May 29, 1920.

\$2.50 per year; single copy, 65 cents. Canadian and foreign postage 25 cents, additional.

## SELECT "SUPERIOR QUALITY" UNIFORMS AND CAPS

And secure Guaranteed  
Goods that will give you  
Real Service.

Headquarters for All  
Military Equipment.

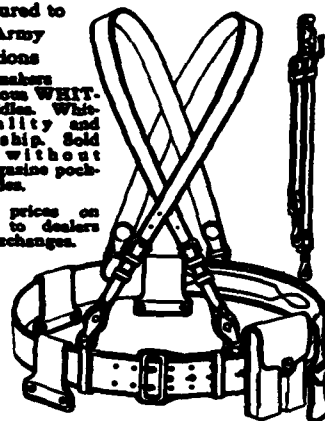
Free Catalogs on Request

**THE HENDERSON-AMES CO.**  
Kalamazoo, Mich.

## OFFICERS' BELTS MODEL OF 1921

Manufactured to  
U. S. Army  
specifications  
by the makers  
of the famous WHIT-  
MAN Saddle. Whit-  
man quality and  
workmanship. Sold  
with or without  
slings, magazine pouch  
and slides.

Special prices on  
quantities to dealers  
or post exchanges.



Information and prices upon request.

**THE PERKINS-CAMPBELL CO.**

605 Broadway

Cincinnati, Ohio

## CONTENTS FOR JANUARY, 1923

VOL. XXXII, No. 120

Page

THE HORSEMAN IN PEACE AND WAR.....	7
Office of Chief of Cavalry.	
CAVALRY FIGHT AT THE VILLAGE OF VOLCHKOVTSY AUGUST 21, 1914....	13
General N. N. Golovine.	
THE BROADMOOR REMOUNT ENDURANCE RIDE.....	27
Captain Herbert E. Watkins, 18th Cavalry.	
WAR CLAIMS.....	32
Major E. P. Pierson, Cavalry.	
THE CAVALRY IN THE BATTLE OF VITTORIO VENETO.....	36
REDUCING THE ARMY A CENTURY AGO.....	53
THE BRITISH CAVALRY IN PALESTINE AND SYRIA.....	56
Lieutenant-Colonel Edward Davis, Cavalry.	
THE ARMY AT THE NATIONAL HORSE SHOW.....	66
Major George S. Patton, Jr., Cavalry.	
THE FIFTEEN DAYS' TRAINING PERIOD OF THE 62D CAVALRY DIVISION, CAMP MEADE, 1922.....	69
Captain W. P. King, 308th Cavalry, R. C.	
THE MARINE CUP.....	73
NOTES ON THE 1922 ENDURANCE RIDE.....	76
Major J. M. Wainwright, 3d Cavalry.	
A SCHOOL FOR ARMY WAGONERS.....	83
Lieutenant Richard M. Gaw, Cavalry.	
PRIZE ESSAY CONTEST ANNOUNCEMENT.....	85
EDITORIAL COMMENT:	
RESERVE CAVALRY TO HORSE—CAVALRY JOURNAL BINDING AND INDEX—HOPES FOR AN ARMY HORSE-SHOW TEAM AT THE OLYMPIC GAMES—PROGRESS IN THE ORGANIZED RESERVES—CAVALRY AND THE ENDURANCE RIDES—JOURNAL SUB- SCRIPTIONS—EMBELLISHING THE OFFICE OF THE CHIEF OF CAVALRY—COMPEN- SATION TO AUTHORS.....	86
TOPICS OF THE DAY:	
ARMORED CARS FOR CAVALRY UNITS—NINTH CAVALRY MAKES BRILLIANT SHOW- ING—THE FRENCH CHARGES CLASS CHAMPIONSHIP—TRAINING REGULATIONS— BELGIAN CAVALRY CHARGED WITH INSTRUCTION IN HORSEMANSHIP OF OFFICERS OF OTHER ARMS AND OF RESERVE OFFICERS—PRESENT-DAY TENDENCIES OF GER- MAN CAVALRY—HARRY WORCESTER SMITH ON ARMY HORSEMANSHIP.....	92
NEW BOOKS REVIEWED.....	100
FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS.....	104
POLO .....	107
CAVALRY SCHOOL NOTES.....	110
REGIMENTAL NOTES.....	112
THE NATIONAL GUARD.....	123
THE RESERVE OFFICERS DEPARTMENT.....	125

## The (British) Cavalry Journal

A QUARTERLY

Published by authority of the Army Council

C. GILBERT WOOD, F.R.G.S., F.R.S.A., M.T.I.

Director of Publicity and Publisher

11 Red Lion Square, London (W. C. 1), England

Advertising space at same rates as in United  
States Cavalry Journal

Subscriptions, \$6.00 per year

Forward subscriptions and requests for adver-  
tising space to

## United States Cavalry Journal

1624 H Street N. W.

WASHINGTON, D. C.

## THE BRIGHTON APARTMENT — HOTEL

2123 California St. N. W.

WASHINGTON, D. C.

Is just west of Connecticut Avenue, in  
Washington Heights, a most exclusive  
residential section of the Capital. It  
is near the Mount Pleasant car line  
and only a fifteen-minute ride from the  
center of the city, and reaches Union  
Station without transfer. The eleva-  
tion is 180 feet above the river, one of  
the highest in the District.

In the summer this elevation secures  
a marked moderation of heat from  
which the lower sections of the city  
cannot escape.

Desirable furnished apartments by  
day, week or month.

J. A. WILLSON, Resident Manager  
North 2406



# The United States Cavalry Association

## DESIGN

1. The aim and purpose of the Association shall be to disseminate knowledge of the military art and science, to promote the professional improvement of its members, and to preserve and foster the spirit, the traditions, and the solidarity of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States.

—ARTICLE III of the Constitution.

Organized November 9, 1885

## OFFICERS

### President:

Major-General WILLARD A. HOLBROOK, Chief of Cavalry.

### Vice-President:

Colonel WILLIAM C. RIVERS, Cavalry.

### Secretary and Treasurer:

Major JEROME W. HOWE, Cavalry.

## EXECUTIVE COUNCIL

Brigadier-General STUART HEINTZELMAN, A. C. of S., G-4.

Brigadier-General JOHN P. WOOD, National Guard of Pennsylvania.

Colonel GEORGE C. BARNHARDT (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Colonel WILLIAM R. SMEDBERG, Jr. (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Colonel GEORGE VIDMER, Cavalry.

Colonel GEORGE E. MITCHELL, Cavalry.

Lieutenant-Colonel JOHN PHILIP HILL, Cavalry, Reserve Corps.

## MEMBERSHIP AND SUBSCRIPTION FOR THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Membership shall be of three classes, which, together with the conditions of eligibility therefor, are as follows:

- (1) Active, for which all general officers of the Army of the United States and all commissioned officers of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States shall be eligible.
- (2) Associate, for which all present and former commissioned, warrant, and non-commissioned officers of honorable record of the military or naval services of the United States not included in class 1 shall be eligible.
- (3) Honorary.

Any person desiring to become an active or associate member shall make application to the Secretary, which application shall set forth facts establishing his eligibility and be accompanied by payment for at least one year's subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL; and, the applicant's eligibility appearing, the Secretary shall award him membership from the date at which his subscription to the JOURNAL is commenced.

Active and associate members of the Association shall subscribe annually for the JOURNAL and make payment therefor in advance.

Application for membership should be addressed to the Secretary, U. S. Cavalry Association, 1634 H Street N. W., Washington, D. C., showing present or former military status and accompanied by remittance to the order of the Association for \$2.50, first year's subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL. Membership is continued after the first year by renewal of subscription to the JOURNAL.

Any person or organization not eligible for membership may subscribe for the JOURNAL at the regular subscription rates of \$2.50 per year. Canadian and foreign postage, 25 cents additional.

Members and subscribers are requested to give prompt notice in advance of change of address.

# THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Vol. XXXII

JANUARY, 1923

No. 130

## The Horseman in Peace and in War

Broadcasted by Radio, November 27, 1922, from the Office of the Chief of Cavalry

WHEN the searchlight of history is turned on the remote centuries of the past, *man* is first seen in the dim mists of antiquity—a wild, crude creature, friendless and alone, the savage enemy of all other animal life. Around the dismal caves in which he dwelt we find now in Europe and in Asia the bones of the animals which he hunted and on which he fed. Among such remains we find those of the horse.

Gradually, as time passed, the experience of man enlarged, his knowledge broadened, and we find him no longer the horse's bloody butcher, but his rider and master. His mastery was harsh and cruel in the beginning. Ridden in wild chase of other and fiercer animals, laden with oppressive, galling packs, or used to carry his master on severe journeys, the horse was yet an abject and neglected slave.

Then still later came the development of the *spirit* of man, in all its mystery, and we find him not merely the horse's rider and master, but his friend. Kindness replaced cruelty, companionship came in the place of neglect. The horse, silent sufferer through the centuries, returns in full measure every gesture of kindness and in his eyes man has become more than mere man; he has become the *horseman*.

Instinctively, great leaders among men, as seen in history, be they men of peace or of war, have sought to symbolize their chieftainship by appearing as "the man on horseback." In the early days of Greece the stately chariot, drawn by the noblest types of horses, bore the leading warriors into the very thick of battle. The general custom of riding on the horse's back later supplanted the chariot; so, as Rome grew to greatness, we see her heroes appearing as horsemen in the great triumphal processions. Roman cavalry, from the Mediterranean's eastern shore to the forests of Northern Europe, carried the banners of the Empire forward.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Then, as the fall of Rome threw civilization into temporary confusion, the knights of the Middle Ages appeared as the horseman of their time and the leaders of their people. Clad in heavy armor, proof against sword and spear, these noble horsemen rode and fought, not only in the ordinary strife of the times, but, as Crusaders, they carried the Cross of Christianity into the heart of the Holy Land. Here, in campaigns through many years, they were confronted by the horsemen of Asia and in time were overcome by the mounted warriors of Saladin, the Saracen. But the Crescent, thus triumphant over the Cross in the battles of the knights, was doomed to defeat seven centuries later by the horsemen of our own time—in the World War.

As great nations began to form from the fortified communities of the Middle Ages, commerce and the far-flung boundaries of government necessitated the quick dispatch of letters and of orders. Now came the post rider, carried by relays of hardy horses over many leagues between sunrise and sunset. Now came the coach, maintained by horsemen, swiftly transporting high officials, kings and emperors, on their journeys of peace and of war. Thus Europe, though we seldom think of it, was gradually knit together as a group of nations by the countless journeys of her horsemen of peace, carrying the messages of trade, of diplomacy, and of family ties.

Nations in their growth, so weak is humanity, suffer from that unavoidable sickness called war. So Europe, even in her unity, has through all the modern centuries been a battle-ground. Conspicuous among the troops that fought on those fields were the horsemen, called cavalry. Under Gustavus Adolphus, under Frederick the Great, under Napoleon, from the Atlantic coasts of Spain to the remote steppes of Russia the thunder of their horses' hoofs was frequently the death knell of an army, ridden down in confusion and pursued to destruction.

While Europe was settling into something like its present organization, Africa and western Asia were being consolidated; and here, too, the greatest agency was the horseman. The Turkish Empire in the sixteenth century, largely by the brilliant cavalry of Suleiman "The Magnificent," extended its borders from Belgrade to Bagdad, from Aden to Algiers.

To America was given, perhaps, the greatest achievements of the men on horseback. In colonial days the bridle paths of the Atlantic Colonies linked up the North and South. Following Revolutionary days the courageous settler rode his horse over the Blue Ridge and on to the Mississippi Valley. A succeeding generation of settlers in the unrest of freedom and of broad spaces, sent its horsemen of peace, by the thousands, on into the Great Plains and across the Rocky Mountains. The warrior horsemen, our own regular cavalry, rode always as the advance wave of this westward tide, protecting the settler against the hostile Indian and escorting the advancing ends of the railroads that were to span the continent.

## THE HORSEMAN IN PEACE AND IN WAR

In the meantime our great Civil War had seen the cavalry soldier, the horseman of war, increase his numbers from a few hundreds to tens of thousands. The troopers of Sheridan and of Stuart became indispensable to their armies, and historic combats turned in the scale of victory on the presence or absence of the cavalry. Dramatic was the conclusion of this great war when, on the field of Appomattox, the Union cavalry, by successive interventions from the flank, finally stood, in the strength of all its squadrons, squarely across the Confederate retreat.

Then, as the great commanders in simple terms fixed an end to strife, Grant, at Lee's suggestion, directed that the cavalry horses of the Southern Army be given back to their owners. "They will need them," he said, "to till their farms." In such generous and thoughtful spirit did two great chieftains, who had themselves been four years in the saddle, transform thousands of horsemen from war to peace, to practice in the latter the sterling qualities acquired in the former.

As we reflect upon the history of our country, and its stirring events pass in stately review before our grateful gaze, how strikingly frequent is seen the horseman. George Washington, leading all the others, is seen with his faithful charger, at Yorktown as well as at Mt. Vernon. Thomas Jefferson, avoiding the carriage of state, is seen riding horseback to the White House. Andrew Jackson, teeming with restless energy and fiercely vigilant in his patriotism, rides with the graceful seat of a fine horseman. Lincoln, in his trying years of struggle for the Union, is seen in the saddle reviewing the national troops. And then, as we wonder whether the horseman had passed with these former generations, there comes in our own time the striking figure of Roosevelt, embodying all the outstanding qualities of the horseman, both in peace and in war. Of such men as these are the horsemen of our own history.

Fresh, indeed, are the startling events of the Great War of our own time. Here, too, in conquering the greatest spaces of the world-wide battle-ground, the horseman of today proved himself no less gallant and no less useful than the trooper of long ago.

The German Army, advancing through Belgium and northern France, sent far out in advance its thousands of cavalymen, who battled at cross-roads and in villages with the French and British cavalry. Conspicuous were the latter in their dash and true horsemanship. As the rear guard of their retreating army, these British cavalymen held back at times tenfold their number of Germans. Their army commander, Lord French, said of them: "The greatest threat of disaster with which we were faced in 1914 was staved off by the devoted bravery and endurance displayed by the Cavalry Corps under a commander, General Allenby, who handled them throughout with consummate skill."

On the Russian front and in the Rumanian campaign the horsemen likewise led the advancing armies and contributed their share to the achievements of the contending forces.

In Palestine, under a commander of rare genius, the Australian and the New Zealand troopers (so strikingly like our own cavalymen), together with the English horsemen, dealt the stubborn Turk one brilliant blow after another. Across the desert waste of Sinai, through the rolling plains of Palestine, and on into the rocky hills of Judea, these modern Crusaders advanced, and the world was thrilled at Christmas time, 1917, by Allenby's historic capture of Jerusalem. Seven centuries before had the horsemen of Saladin overcome the Knights of Richard, but now the Holy City fell to the new horsemen out of the west.

It is a remarkable fact that in each period of civilization the best all-round horsemen have belonged to those nations which stood highest in the scale of culture, of broad experience, and of generosity. True, there were times when the ignorant and undeveloped tribes of Asia produced horsemen who actually defeated the more enlightened warriors of Europe. Likewise the American Indian, a brilliant rider, scored some victories over the white man. But in all these cases the better horseman always won in the long run. And in the World War the most brilliant feats of arms in cavalry combat were performed by the troopers of a most cultivated and enlightened people.

On the side of sports, too, the most brilliant and effective horsemen are found among the people where culture and character are superior. Thus, in horse-racing, polo, and on the hunting field, the nations have, in general, been successful in proportion to their enlightenment. In this peculiar, but significant, relation between character and true horsemanship, there is food for thought. Happily, we seem to be approaching a time when the horse will be less a luxury and more within the means of the greater number of our people. The coming of the automobile truck has already released large numbers of horses from dreary and killing work on the hard streets of our great cities. So, in time, it will be logical and in keeping with our increasing culture, our generous national spirit, and our love of nature, if we develop in our land in ever-increasing numbers that type of man who is called *the horseman*.



## Cavalry Fight at the Village Volchkovtsy\* August 21, 1914

BY

General N. N. GOLOVINE

(Translated by Colonel A. M. Nikolaieff)

ON THE European theater during the four years of World War there was only a single episode of charge in closed formation of two mounted cavalry masses. This was the fight between the 10th Russian Cavalry Division, under General Count Keller, and the 4th Austrian Cavalry Division, under General Zarembo.

Modern military science is busy with revaluation of all pre-war tactical doctrines. With especial persistency the prejudices which reigned in the domain of cavalry tactics are destroyed by this scientific study. But the revaluation cannot be considered as completed if it takes not into consideration a careful analysis of this episode, even though it stands alone. Such an analysis is our present concern.

In the first place, the reader should be advised that a method slightly different from the methods usually followed in historical studies will here be followed. In the phases of a cavalry fight based on the use of cold steel, the questions of psychology are of an exceptional, dominating importance. This unseen, psychologic aspect of the phases should be always kept in mind when a cavalry fight is being studied. This aspect, however, is often omitted, and the fact which becomes forgotten first of all is that every man who participated in the fight acted on the strength of the situation he *saw* and not of the one that existed in reality. Owing to the short duration of the phases of a cavalry fight, those taking part in it are not able to check up their impressions, not even in the degree the latter can be checked up in a rifle fight, which is comparatively of a very long duration. Moreover, the utmost strain of nerves in cavalry fights can cause even eye and ear hallucinations.

It is believed, therefore, that in order to understand correctly the nature of a cavalry fight, it is necessary to take the following course: To study separately the actions of each side as they *appeared* during the fight to those participating in it, and also to restore the pictures drawn by their imagination; then, after such study of each side is made, to draw conclusions with regard to the *realities* of the cavalry fight. The reader is invited to follow through this narrative, pursuing the same route.

In the present article is presented the picture of the fight as it appeared to the Russian side, while the following articles will have for their objects the

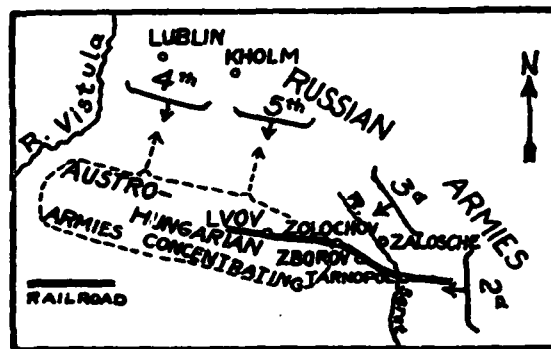
\* The village Volchkovtsy is situated in Eastern Galicia, about 50 miles to the east of Lvov (Lemberg).

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

description of the action as it appeared to the Austrian side, and the conclusions arrived at on the basis of the study of the cavalry fight at the village Volchkovtsy in its entirety.

Material for the present article was taken from letters of the Russians who participated in that fight and who were requested to give a description of their personal experiences. Of these descriptions two have chiefly been used: (1) the description by one of my best former pupils at the General Staff College, Colonel (then Captain) Slivinaki; in the fight at Volchkovtsy he was General Count Keller's acting chief of staff, and (2) the letter of one of the best Russian cavalry leaders, General Barbovich, who in that fight was captain of the Ingbermanland Hussars and in command of two squadrons of that regiment. In the fight at Volchkovtsy these squadrons played a decisive part.

I would like to remark that to no one of my correspondents at the time they wrote their descriptions were known the Austrian descriptions of the fight; therefore they describe what was taking place on the Austrian side as it then appeared to them.



SKETCH No. 1

Strategic Situation, August 20, 1914

At the beginning of the war the Russian cavalry was in advance of the armies. It was important for the Russian High Command to break through the curtain which covered the deployment of the Austro-Hungarian armies. This was of a special importance for the 3d and 8th Russian armies, which had for their task a quick advance in the direction of the city of Lvov (Lemberg) against the flank and rear of the main Austro-Hungarian forces, which, according to the presuppositions of the Russian General Staff, were to advance against the 4th and 5th Russian armies on the Lublin-Kholm line.

On the 20th of August the cavalry of the 3d Russian Army seized the

## CAVALRY FIGHT AT THE VILLAGE OF VOLCHKOVTSY

bridges on the river Seret. The 9th and 10th\* Cavalry Divisions were the cavalry of that army. The night of August 20-21 they were billeted, the first at the city of Zalosche, the second in the district to the south of that city.

On the 21st of August the task given to the two cavalry divisions was to continue energetically reconnoitering, the 9th in the direction of Zolochov, the 10th in the direction of Zborov; to the south the 12th Cavalry Division was reconnoitering.

The information at the disposal of the headquarters of the divisions gave only the outline of the curtain, drawn in front of the groups of the Austro-Hungarian forces. This curtain, formed by cavalry units, small *landsturm* detachments and frontier guard, was, under the pressure of our cavalry, falling back westward. The nearness of large enemy cavalry units could be presupposed, but their whereabouts had not been disclosed by our patrols.

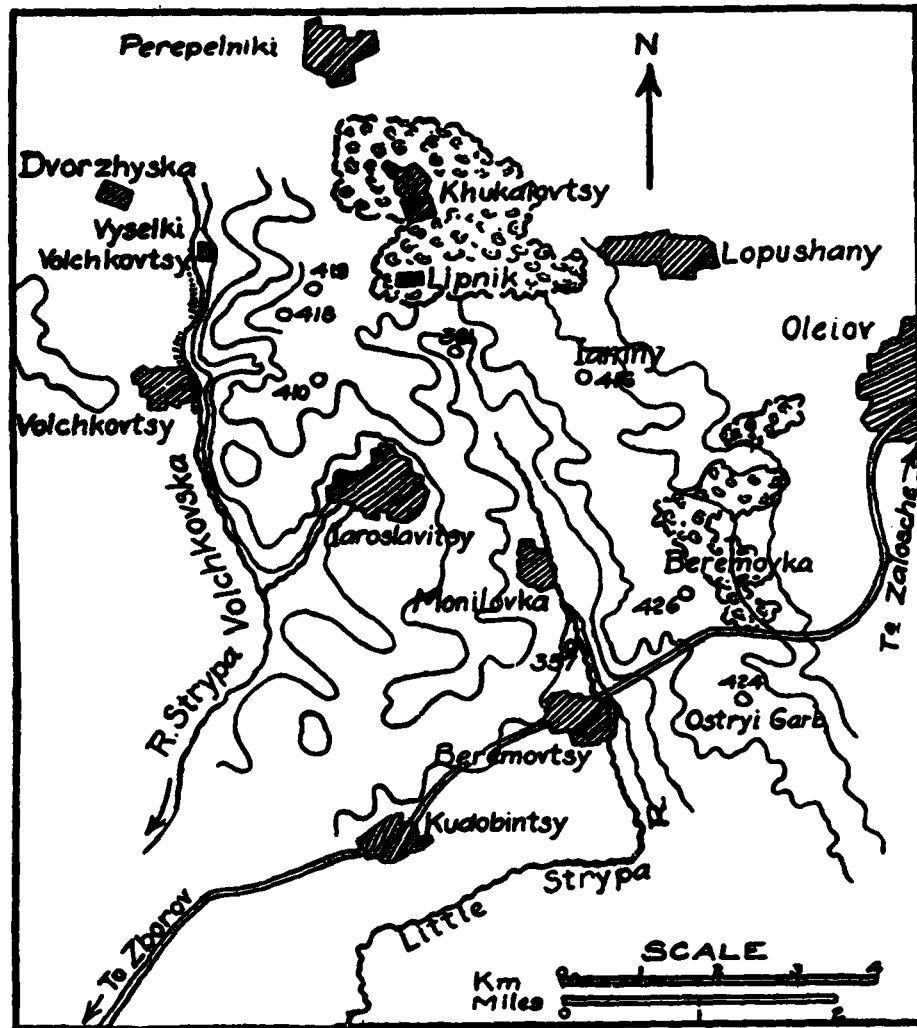
The 10th Cavalry Division broke up its camp about 6 a. m. and marched in the direction of Zborov. It marched in one column, having sent forward as its vanguard the Orenbourgski Cossack Regiment, one battery, and the machine-guns. The patrols and two reconnoitering squadrons, one Hussar and one Lancer, were still further ahead. The division commander, General Count Keller, was at the head of the vanguard.

Shortly after 8 a. m. the leading detachment of the Cossack vanguard came up to the hill Ostryi Garb (see Sketch No. 2). At that time an officer from the reconnoitering squadron arrived with a report to the effect that half an hour before, about one mile to the north of the village Iaroslavitsy, large forces of enemy cavalry were noticed moving from Zolochov.

Supposing that this enemy cavalry was moving against our 9th Cavalry Division, marching a few miles to the north of the 10th Division, General Count Keller decided to change the direction of march of his division and, moving in a northwesterly direction, to try to outflank from the south the enemy cavalry.

The Orenbourgski Cossack Regiment moved in the new direction. The second battery of the 3d Don Cossack Horse Artillery group was called out from the main body of the division and the whole artillery (two batteries) took up a position in the neighborhood of the village Beremovtsy, near hill 426, ready to support at once the Cossacks' advance. In order to protect the whole maneuver from the left, the reconnoitering Hussar squadron was to remain out in the Zborov direction and to be reinforced by another Hussar

\* The 10th Cavalry Division (four regiments of six squadrons each) was not complete, six of its squadrons having been sent away as divisional cavalry. The following squadrons were not with the division: two of the 10th Novgorodski Dragoons Regiment, one of the 10th Odeski Lancer Regiment, two of the 10th Ingbermanlandski Hussar Regiment, and one of the Orenbourgski Cossack Regiment. Thus the strength of the 10th Cavalry Division in the day of the fight was 18 squadrons, with 12 guns and a machine-gun detachment.



SKETCH No. 2

squadron, taken for that purpose from the main body.\*

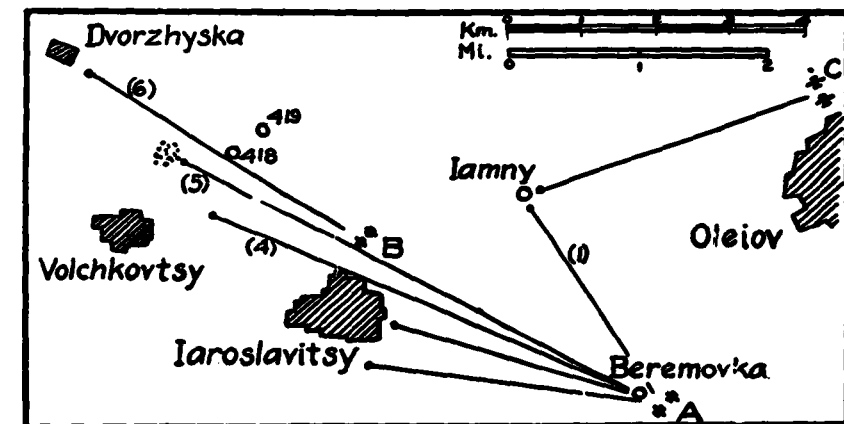
Having started their advance in the new direction, the Orenbourgski Cossacks almost immediately became engaged in a fight with the Austrian infantry. The latter advanced from the hill Iamny; a thin firing line was also moving from the valley of the Little Strypa River, where the village

\* Later on part of this detachment was ordered to protect the horse batteries.

# CAVALRY FIGHT AT THE VILLAGE OF VOLCHKOVTSY

Monilovka is situated. By rushes, taking cover and firing from behind the wheat-stacks, the Austrians were nearing the Cossacks, who had deployed the *lava*. The enemy rifle fire was getting stronger. Our machine-guns, on the right flank of the Cossacks, in the woods, also opened fire. A few shrapnel shells burst over their heads: they were fired by an enemy battery from a position located somewhere to the south of the village Iaroslavitsy. But at the same time shells could be seen bursting over the hill Iamny; they belonged to the horse batteries of the 9th Cavalry Division, firing at the Austrian infantry from the direction of the village Oleiov.

General Count Keller gave the following order: (a) the Orenbourgski Cossack Regiment to charge immediately against the advancing infantry, directing their main blow on the village Iaroslavitsy; (b) the 3d Don Cossack Horse Artillery batteries to support the attack of the Orenbourgski Cossacks; (c) the main body of the division to come up speedily to the front.



SKETCH No. 3

Horse Artillery Fire in Fight of August 21—Directions of Firing

- A. First position, horse artillery of 10th Cavalry Division.
- B. Second position of same.
- C. Horse artillery of the 9th Cavalry Division.
- (1) At enemy infantry, 8:30 a. m.
- (2) At enemy infantry retreating toward Iaroslavitsy (9 a. m.).
- (3) At dust to the south of Iaroslavitsy (9:15 a. m.).
- (4) At enemy batteries and cavalry groups (10 a. m.).
- (5) At enemy batteries going into position (11 a. m.).
- (6) At enemy cavalry groups, assembling at Dvorzhyska.

Our horse batteries (see Sketch No. 3), not waiting for the order, opened fire on the enemy infantry, advancing from the hill Iamny, but very soon the enemy's advance came to an end and the infantry started falling back

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

in two directions—one part retreating toward the village Khukalovtsy, the other, much smaller, toward the village Iaroslavitsy. Then the batteries of the 10th Cavalry Division concentrated their fire on the enemy firing line, falling back on the village Iaroslavitsy and on the district to the south of that village, where clouds of dust which looked suspicious were seen all the time.

The lava of the Orenbourgaki Cossacks moved forward—first at a trot, then faster—to charge the infantry, retreating on Iaroslavitsy. The Austrians made an attempt to stop that charge by rifle fire, but their firing soon became disorderly and, flocking into groups, they fled toward the village Iaroslavitsy. About twenty Cossacks fell, wounded or killed. Their horses, feeling free, were running in all directions; some of them continued galloping toward the village.

The division commander ordered his escort to round up the Austrians left in the rear of the lava which had swept forward. Some of these tried to fire at the Cossacks from behind. A few scores of prisoners were brought before the divisional staff. The latter, after a short examination of the prisoners, came to the conclusion that the prisoners belonged to the "Fusz-battalion" of the 4th Austrian Cavalry Division, which battalion was stationed in the village Iaroslavitsy and was to advance eastward; also that in the same district was located the whole cavalry division, which at the dawn of day had left, together with its Fusz-battalion, the city of Zolochov.\*

The Orenbourgaki Cossacks, having approached the village Iaroslavitsy, were met from its outskirts by a strong rifle fire; whereupon they dismounted and a fight began for the possession of the village. It was shortly before 10 a. m.

At that time information was received relative to the 9th Cavalry Division—that its advanced units had reached the wood to the east of the village Khukalovtsy. From behind the ridge, running in a southeasterly direction from that village and separating the village Iaroslavitsy from the village Volchkovtsy, the enemy artillery opened an energetic fire against our horse batteries.

In the same locality whence came the enemy firing now would appear and now disappear small, quickly moving columns, enveloped in clouds of dust; separate groups of horsemen would come up at short intervals on the horizon. There was no doubt that in that district was the Austrian cavalry division.

General Count Keller decided to attack the enemy cavalry immediately, not waiting for the 9th Cavalry Division. He at once sent a liaison officer to the chief of that division to inform the latter about his decision. It seemed that Count Keller was anxious lest the Austrian division might try to escape, avoiding an attack, in which event the Austrian curtain would fall back again and remain unbroken. For the attack General Count Keller had at

\* We shall see in the next article that this information was not quite correct.

## CAVALRY FIGHT AT THE VILLAGE OF VOLCHKOVTSY

his disposal only ten squadrons, viz: of the 10th Novgorodski Dragoon Regiment, four squadrons; of the 10th Odesski Lancer Regiment, four squadrons, and of the 10th Inguermanlandski Hussar Regiment, two squadrons.\* Thus, forces smaller than a cavalry brigade were to attack an enemy who were presumably twice as strong.

"Had General Count Keller the right," writes his chief of staff, Colonel Slivinski, "to take the risk of a fight under such conditions?"

"To this question a negative answer would be given in most scientific studies. Nearly all superiors, finding themselves in an identical position, would prefer to avoid the fight until the reinforcements should arrive.

"But General Count Keller made a different decision . . . and it seems that to do that he had his reason.†

"This reason lay in the realm of psychology, based on the deeply rooted confidence of the leader in his troops and on the like faith of the troops in their leader."

A cavalry leader should be able to dare. Otherwise he is going to lose all opportunities for cavalry action. In that respect General Count Keller belonged to the very few natures that are marked by the finger of fate. And he dared.

Having made the decision to attack immediately, he ordered (a) the artillery to concentrate its fire in the direction of the village Volchkovtsy; (b) the commander of one of the divisional brigades, General Markoff, to lead the main body (10 squadrons) taking cover in the valleys, for the attack in the direction from which were heard the shots of the enemy batteries. Having given the order, Count Keller, at the head of his staff, and his escort rode in front of the division from hill to hill, so that he would be able to see the charge and would not at the same time lose sight of what was taking place with the Cossacks, who had started forcing their entrance in the village Iaroslavitsy. Still farther ahead were galloping patrols and artillery observers.

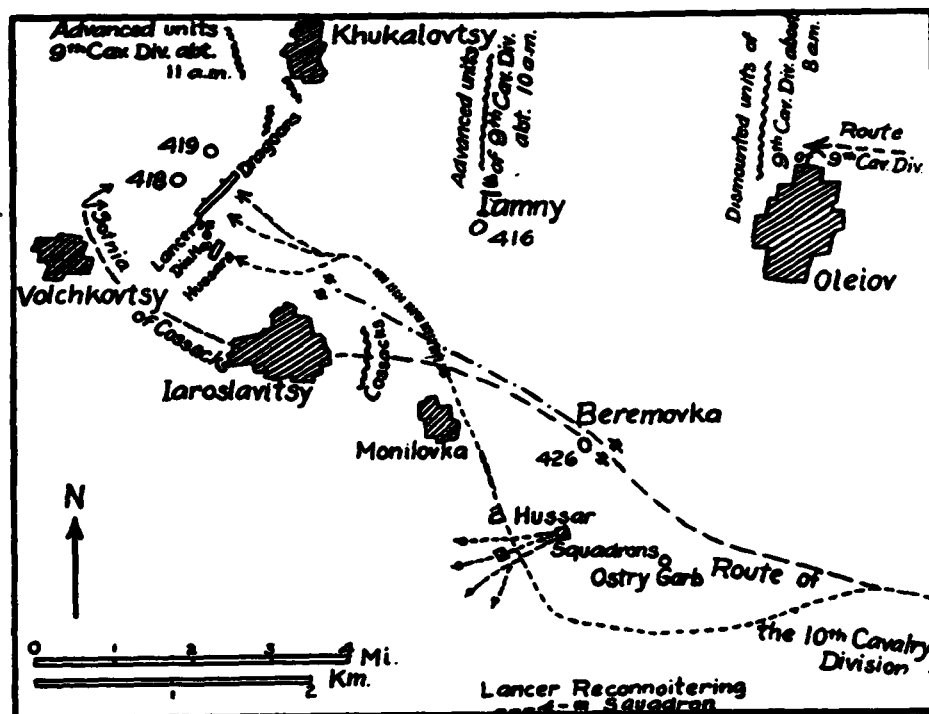
The terrain between the villages Iaroslavitsy, Volchkovtsy, and Khukalovtsy is hilly. The valleys with sloping sides make movements on horse-

\* One troop of the Orenbourgski Cossacks was with Count Keller as his personal escort.

† From General Denikin's *The Russian Turmoil* it is learned that Count Keller was one out of two commanders who upon the outbreak of the revolution wired the Emperor, offering his troops for the suppression of the mutiny. A few months later he refused to make his army corps take the oath of allegiance to the revolutionary government, the basis for whose authority he would not accept. He was killed in Kiev in 1918 by Petlura's men. Before the World War Count Keller was well known in the Russian Cavalry, as one of the ablest cavalry generals.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

back easy in all directions, but at the same time can conceal in their folds large cavalry masses. The highest part of the terrain is in the locality marked by the elevations 418 and 419.



SKETCH No. 4

Deployment of the 10th Cavalry Division in the Fight of August 21, 1914

At a point about a quarter of a mile before reaching hill 418 the following picture unexpectedly unfolded itself before Count Keller: To the northwest, at a distance of about 1,000 steps away, two Austrian batteries were speedily going into position on the edge of a small wood. A little to the right from the batteries could be seen "a black and light-blue stripe, as though bordering the yellow background of the opposite side of the valley; this was the line of full-dress uniforms and helmets of the Austrian cavalry, standing in a deployed formation. . . . The ridge of the hill hid the lower part of the horsemen and their horses." \* Judging by the length of the front, this cavalry force seemed to be six or seven squadrons strong.

\* Description by Colonel Slivinski.

## CAVALRY FIGHT AT THE VILLAGE OF VOLCHKOVTSY

Immediately dispatch riders were sent, carrying General Count Keller's orders to the Dragoons and Lancers to charge from the front and to the Hussars to move *en echelon* behind the left flank of the charging line. Simultaneously Count Keller ordered the buglers to sound the signal "*Pohod*" ("Get ready to charge").

At that moment the enemy artillery began firing, but in its turn was at once taken under fire by our horse artillery.

"The moment was awe-inspiring. The enemy were facing each other. . . . There was no way out. Something unusual, decisive, and frightful was to happen right away. . . . Impulse and dread filled one's heart at the same time. . . . Eyes, strained with attention, were fixed greedily, now upon the prettily lined up Austrian helmets, now on the grayish yellow lines of our regiments, coming up at a trot.

"It seemed that the dispatch riders, carrying orders of the division commander, rode slowly; . . . that the regimental buglers did not take up for a very long time the signal sounded by the buglers with the division commander. . . .

"But this only seemed. . . .

"An electric current ran down the long ribbon of the divisional column formed by troops; \* the whole mass broke up; the regiments began to deploy to the front and, coming up at a gallop, to form a single line. . . .

"The divisional staff were sweeping past in a deployed formation—to the right the Dragoons and the Lancers, to the left the Hussars. General Count Keller repeated by voice his order to the Hussars to keep behind the line *en echelon* and to charge the enemy's flank."

The above picturesque description of the beginning of the encounter is given by Colonel Slivinski, who observed it from the point where Count Keller was standing. From letters of other eyewitnesses who took part in the fight, it appears that our cavalry began to deploy upon hearing the signal "*Pohod*" and before the orders had reached the regiments.

"Our lines already had come up half the distance to the rising ground and were about 300 steps away from the summit (continues Colonel Slivinski) when the Austrian line, until that time immobile, started moving, and in a moment the black stripe of their deployed front, cut by the red line of the men's breeches and undulating with white plumes and light-blue pelisses, glittering with sabers and helmets, carefully drawn up and keeping close formation, appeared in perfect order and striking beauty on the ridge. . . .

"The Austrians were charging."

Our regiments saw right before them an avalanche coming down upon

\* Troops in deployed formation following each other, squadron after squadron and regiment after regiment, all in one long column.



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

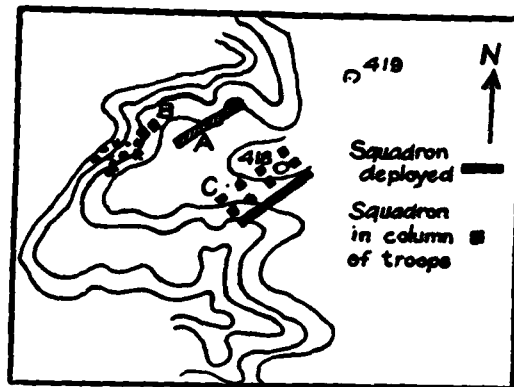
them. The cry, "Oura" ("Hurrah"), sounded along the whole front and all got mixed in a dull and lasting uproar.

The encounter broke up into three sections. Let us follow, together with Colonel Slivinski, what was taking place in the center:

"The first line of the Austrians was followed by the second, after which came the third; the two latter were in lines of 'columns by troops', each column one squadron strong.\* A shapeless mass, like a swarm of bees or a stirred-up anthill, was buzzing and turning round on the same spot.

"How long the first encounter lasted it is impossible to say. Very soon this whole mass of horsemen began to waver, took the shape of an arch, curved toward our side, and started moving in our direction in zigzags—first slowly, afterwards quicker and quicker.

"Still a moment later the grayish-yellow uniforms became less numerous in the center; the Dragoons and the Lancers gave way and a squadron from the second Austrian line, formed in a 'troop column', wedged itself into the interval thus opened. Past the divisional staff, to its right and left, single cavalymen and mixed groups, made up of Russians and Austrians, were galloping at full speed to the rear. All were shouting fiercely and on their faces was written the fright before death.



SKETCH No. 5

Battle Formation of the 4th Austro-Hungarian Cavalry Division in the Fight of August 21, According to Impressions of the Staff of the 10th Russian Cavalry Division

- A. The Austrian cavalry as it first appeared.
- B. Two Austrian squadrons which did not take part in the charge and moved back.
- C. The battle formation as it appeared.

\* As the question, "How did the enemy appear to the Russian side," should be of much interest for us, on Sketch No. 5 is shown the apparent battle formation adopted by the Austrians, "awaiting" our charge, and in which they moved forward to attack us. This formation is drawn on the basis of what has been told by officers of the staff and according to the narrative of the late Count Keller himself, told by him to the author during the World War.

## CAVALRY FIGHT AT THE VILLAGE OF VOLCHKOVTSY

"The divisional staff already was being engulfed by that mass. At the same time an Austrian squadron in good order was passing before our eyes, galloping in the direction of our rear. . . . I remember even now the measured swing and resounding strokes of the hundreds of hoofs, as if it took place yesterday and not eight years ago.

"In this critical moment General Count Keller showed the greatest presence of mind. Without the slightest hesitation he commanded, in a dry and firm voice, 'Staff and escort, charge!' The chief of the escort, Lieutenant Penzin, drew his revolver, took aim, and fired near my ear. The commander of the Austrian squadron, galloping in front of it, fell, hit by the bullet, from his horse.

"The squadron did not withstand our charge. It veered to the left and cleared off the battlefield. It was followed by disorderly groups and single horsemen."

But this heroic episode was not the cause that decided the fate of the fight. The general defeat of the Austrians came as the result of the complete victory won at the same time by the Ingurmanlandski Hussars on our left flank. The defeat suffered there by the Austrians reflected immediately on the center and subsequently on our right flank, and the catastrophe became a complete one for the whole 4th Austrian Division.

I am going to let General Barbovich himself tell about the charge of the two squadrons of the Ingurmanlandski Hussars, which played so decisive a part in the issue of the cavalry fight. (See Sketch No. 6.)

"From one of General Count Keller's dispatch riders I received the order to keep *en echelon* behind the left flank of our battle line. The division started going at a trot into battle formation and I occupied a position *en echelon* behind the left flank of the battle line, having deployed the front of my squadrons. As yet we did not see the enemy cavalry. To the left we heard rifle and machine-gun firing (the Cossacks attacking the Austrian infantry); but soon we heard artillery firing on our own as well as on the enemy's side. Evidently the enemy guns opened fire not against our division, but against our batteries; but the battle formation continued moving forward at a trot without stopping, keeping the same good order as though out for a drill.

"Presently we began moving up a hill, and when we came up approximately to the middle of its height we suddenly saw a wonderful picture, the memory of which will never disappear.

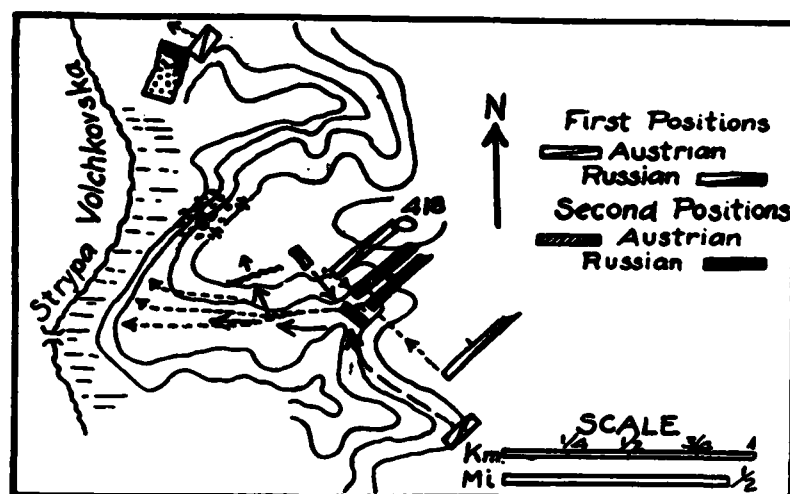
"About 700 steps away the Austrian cavalry, in full-dress uniform and headgear, in a deployed line, was moving in excellent order to meet us. Like a fairy tale, it fixed my attention. It was moving not faster than at a trot. Signals were heard. Whether there were any commands given by Count Keller, I could not tell, my attention having been drawn completely by what I saw before my eyes. I can only say with certainty that neither we nor the enemy moved at full speed, not ever at a gallop. Both sides were approaching each other



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

at a trot, having their lines drawn well up and keeping good order, as though on a drill.

"It seemed to me that the Austrian line was much longer than ours and could swallow up the small number of squadrons of our division. I remember that I was somewhat puzzled by the firing which began when the divisions were near each other. Afterwards I learned that the Austrian officers and non-commissioned officers fired their revolvers. Furthermore, my attention was occupied by the thought that I must carry out in time the task incumbent upon my squadrons, kept back *en echelon*. Then, after the first lines had come face to face, I saw two Austrian squadrons *echeloned* behind their right, opposite me, change their front skillfully to the left and charge the flank of our first line. Having waited until these squadrons exposed their rear, I veered to the right with the two Hussar squadrons and charged the rear of the Austrian squadrons.



SKETCH No. 6

Fight on the Left Russian Flank. According to Impressions of the Commander of the Two Hussar Squadrons

"The Hussars, having gained an advantage over the enemy, went at full speed to the charge. For one moment we were in the general row. The Austrian cavalry, in light blue, was intermingled with our Hussars, in olive drab, and it seemed that there were not fewer than five light-blue uniforms to each olive-drab Hussar.

"It all became a compact mass. There was much sabering and using the lance, and in a second I realized that the Austrians, using their sabers unskillfully, were beginning to avoid the Hussars, who, remembering the excellent drill they had received, delivered blows and thrusts with all their heart. I noticed that the Austrians did not

## CAVALRY FIGHT AT THE VILLAGE OF VOLCHKOVTSY

attack, although they were much more numerous, and only covered themselves, turning their backs.

"In the beginning the whole mass, we and the Austrians, moved on a very limited space. The Austrians started running away; the Hussars followed them, striking as best they could. What was going on to my right with the Lancer and Dragoon regiments I did not see, my attention being fully occupied by what was taking place before my eyes.

"I learned afterwards from Count Keller himself that when he saw that a whole cavalry division was going to charge, he ordered the buglers to sound the signals "To all" and "Speed up to the unit at the front," in order to call to the front the squadrons that were covering the batteries; but those squadrons did not hear the signals and did not take part in the attack.

"I also remember that, besides the artillery firing, an intense machine-gun firing struck me at the moment of the general encounter. We did not know where and whose machine-guns were firing so intensively. The bullets flew at a great height and it seemed that they did not inflict any losses; but, hearing the bullets buzzing, the Austrians became still more anxious to get out of the difficult position into which they had got. I saw how the men in light-blue uniforms were falling under the blows of sabers and lances, not only on the limited space where the hand-to-hand fighting had been going on, but that they scattered on a larger and larger area, and finally, as though taking a general direction, all began to gallop, running away from us. One of my squadrons, the second, although it had been intermingled with the Austrians, did not disperse and was still a compact mass; I could see every troop. At that time a dispatch rider arrived from the division commander carrying an order to attack the artillery. The order was received by me at the moment when the Hussars were pursuing the Austrian cavalry. Where the enemy batteries were I did not know, but, hearing the reports of their guns, I felt where they were. I succeeded in assembling the second squadron and in adding one troop of the first squadron. Leaving the remaining Hussars to pursue, I went with the assembled units in the direction of the artillery. On our way we took the deployed formation with intervals, which is prescribed by the field service regulations for attacks on artillery, and, having moved forward for about half a mile, reached a point from which I saw clearly the batteries. They kept on firing, but it was evident that this firing was their last agony. From that point we rode toward the batteries at a gallop.

"I saw that some guns were still firing. Artillerymen, having brought up horses and limbers, were busy at other guns. A few shots were fired at us at close range, and in the troop of the first squadron there were three Hussars literally torn to pieces. While we were coming up, the batteries stopped firing and the guns were abandoned; not a man was there.

"During this attack two non-commissioned officers in my squadron were killed by the enemy artillerymen, who fired their revolvers from the wood. I think that medals pinned on the breasts of those non-

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

commissioned officers were the cause of their death; evidently they were taken by the artillerymen, firing from close range, for officers."

Now let us see what was taking place on the Russian right flank. It has not been possible to obtain a full description of the encounter of the 10th Novgorodski Dragoon Regiment from anybody who took part in it. However, the following is established with certainty:

(1) The right flank of the Novgorodski Dragoons got under enemy machine-gun fire, directed from hill 419.

(2) On the other side, in the rear of the Austrian left flank, on the edge of the wood to the west of the village Khukalovtsy, appeared the advance units of the 9th Cavalry Division with machine-guns, which opened fire at long range against the Austrian rear.

(3) The complete defeat of the right flank of the Austrians, spreading later to the center, spread also to the Austrian left flank; the latter turned round and moved away to the northwest.

In such manner was ended the cavalry fight at the village Volchkovtsy. It is interesting to note here a detail: its end coincided with the full eclipse of the sun.

"The field on which the fight had taken place presented an original picture. The sun, hidden behind a yellow shroud, was casting a dim light; columns of dust that still filled the air, interwoven with yellow rays of the sun, moved about like gloomy shadows over the field. The yellow carpet of wheat, recently cut, was dotted with red and light-blue spots, which were the killed and wounded Austrians. Among them could be seen grayish-yellow spots, which were the killed and wounded Russians; the latter spots were much the fewer. Horses without horsemen, wild with fright, were galloping in all directions."

Part of the Russian squadrons on tired, foaming horses were gathered together around their commanders. Another part were still galloping in a shapeless mass, pursuing the fleeing Austrians. The pursuit was going on only as far as the river Strypa Volchkovska. The horses were so exhausted by the day's march, especially by movements made from Ostryi Garb without roads and at a gallop, that it could not be continued farther.

The Austrian cavalry, saving itself from the pursuit, galloped in complete disorder. The part of it which reached the river Strypa to the south of the village Vyselki Volchkovtsy got into the worst position, the valley of the river there being marshy.

"When the running mass began to come down to the valley, it was charged by a *sotnia* (squadron) of the Orenbourgski Cossack Regiment under the command of Captain Polzoff, who had seized the bridge across the river and was hurrying up to the battlefield.

## CAVALRY FIGHT AT THE VILLAGE OF VOLCHKOVTSY

"It turned out later on that after the Orenbourgski Cossack Regiment had taken possession of the village Iaroslavitsy, Captain Polzoff, who was in command of the right flank *sotnia* of the regiment, hearing the firing to the northeast of the village, decided on his own initiative to go where the division was still fighting, and moved forward in the direction of the river valley. The *sotnia* was coming up to the battlefield at the very moment when the Austrians had turned back and began their flight.\*

"Cut off from the bridge, the Austrians turned in all directions. Now they suffered severely. . . . Those who succeeded in escaping tried to ford the river, either on horseback or on foot. The caissons also rushed into the river, between the wood and the bridge; they stuck in the marsh and were left there, to become part of the victors' trophies. Many corpses lay at the bridge itself, occupied by the Cossacks. Every Austrian who reached the bridge was felled by saber, killed by lance, or shot by bullet."†

Further pursuit was carried out by the fire of the 3d Don Cossack horse-artillery group. It dispersed the enemy cavalry when the latter made an effort to assemble near the village Dvorzhyska and compelled the enemy to move away hastily to the north.

The total losses of the 10th Russian Cavalry Division, killed and wounded, in the fight of the 21st of August were about 150.

We were not able to find out how the losses were distributed among the regiments, nor how many were due to firearms and how many to cold steel. However, such figures would be of much importance, serving as data for evaluation of the various phases of the fight, especially the cavalry encounter.

Taking into consideration (1) that the Orenbourgski Cossacks suffered losses from fire during their attack on the infantry; (2) that the right flank of the Novgorodski Dragoons was under machine-gun fire; and (3) that there were losses, although very small, from the artillery fire, we can conclude that the number of killed and wounded by cold steel is, at any rate, not smaller than one hundred. But the latter losses in their turn should be divided into two unequal parts:

(a) One, the larger, made up of the losses suffered by the side which turns its back and no longer attacks, where every fighter thinks only of his own defense and quicker escape. On the basis of the battles of ancient times, it can be assumed that this part of the losses embraces not less than seven-eighths of the total losses from cold steel. Such losses were suffered by a part of our Lancer and Dragoon squadrons.

\* According to the statements of the Orenbourgski Cossacks, part of that *sotnia* participated in the Hussars' charge on the Austrian batteries, having come out in the rear of the latter.

† Description by Colonel Slivinski.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

(b) Another, the smaller part of the losses, from cold steel, which falls to the victor during the encounter itself and during the pursuit. How small these losses are can be seen best from the answer given by General Barbovich. He writes as follows:

"I cannot state the exact number of Hussars killed and wounded, but I remember that in the first and second squadrons (which participated in the charge) there were no losses except seven men who fell from the artillery and revolver fire. There were, I am sure of it, no men killed by cold steel; there were, however, men slightly wounded by it."

To this cardinal question of the old "theory of the cavalry shock" we will come back, after having presented in the next article the fight as it appeared to the Austrian side.

The trophies taken by the 10th Cavalry Division at the village of Volchkovtsy were the following: About 200 prisoners, about 350 horses, 8 guns with caissons; machine-guns, box with the files of the 4th Austrian Cavalry Division Headquarters, and many articles of military equipment.

### DO YOU QUALIFY?

You should have pride in your position, in your uniform, in your service, and in your country. That is not false pride. It is just and legitimate, but do not let that pride extend to yourself unless by your character and your accomplishments it is justified. If you do not remember another word I have said today, please remember this: It is up to you and your brother officers to make the Army of the United States. The President cannot do it; the Secretary of War cannot do it. They are transitory and are merely temporary administrative officers. But if you as an individual impress on the citizens of your country that you are mentally, physically, and morally qualified to serve your country in the military service, the citizen will be your friend and he will willingly lend his support to the maintenance of an army sufficient for the nation's requirements.—*From the Address of the Secretary of War delivered at the Graduation Exercises of the United States Military Academy, June 13, 1922.*



THE CHIEF OF CAVALRY WINNING THE CUP IN THE CHARGER COMPETITION OF THE HORSE SHOW IN WASHINGTON, OCTOBER 27, 1922



CAPTAIN HERBERT E. WATKINS ON "NORFOLK STAR"

Winner of the Broadmoor Remount Endurance Ride, 1922

## The Broadmoor Remount Endurance Ride, Colorado Springs, Colo., August, 1922

BY

Captain HERBERT E. WATKINS, 13th Cavalry

**T**HIS endurance test is conducted annually under the same conditions as govern the Eastern ride, except that the weight required to be carried is reduced to 200 pounds—155 pounds live weight and 45 pounds dead weight. The breeding of the horses entered is not required to be known. The starting and finishing point are the same each day—the flagpole at the Broadmoor Hotel. Each contestant is required to care for his own mount during the entire ride and is not allowed to accept help from any person except the judges.

The terrain at Colorado Springs is, I believe, much more suitable for such a ride than that of previous Eastern contests. The roads which we followed were all dirt or gravel and there were no paved roads to travel over and very few to cross.

The arrangements for conducting this ride were the best that could possibly be made and the officials were tireless in their efforts to be of every assistance to the riders. The route each day was carefully marked with arrows, each mile was numbered, and no contestant lost his way during the ride. My recollections of this ride will always be marked by the cheerfulness and good sportsmanship of all the riders, the tireless efficiency of the officials, and the squareness and knowledge of requirements and conditions displayed by the judges.

My mount in this ride was the thoroughbred, *Norfolk Star*, by *Tim Payne* out of *Cheridah*. He is a horse of a type I have never heard approved for such a ride, but I believe possesses all the essentials of a horse required to go a long distance in fast time. He is 7 years old, weighed at the start 990 pounds; height, 16 hands one inch; heart girth, 72 inches; loin girth, 73 inches; cannon bone below knee, 8 inches; below hock, 8½ inches. He is long and rangy, but with a short back and ribs well sprung, and is sound. I weighed in at 156 pounds the day of the test; so *Norfolk Star* carried only the dead weight required, 45 pounds.

### THE FIRST DAY, AUGUST 1

Start at 6:30 a. m. Route through town of Colorado Springs, on Denver Road, to Palmer Lake, into Perry Park, and return to Broadmoor, 60 miles. Finish at 3:29 p. m., one minute less than the minimum time. *Norfolk*

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

*Star* was in almost too good condition this morning and I was unable to keep him at the walk at all during the first hour. At the end of the first hour I picked up Captain Lattimore, on *Jerry*, and, our horses being gaited very much the same, we continued to ride together throughout the race. The roads were excellent, with many opportunities to water, and we were preceded by a light shower in the afternoon; so *Star* finished the first day in excellent condition, with good appetite and in normal condition.

### SECOND DAY, AUGUST 2

Start, 6:30 a. m. Route, Pueblo Road, on the plains, finishing at noon three miles east of Buttes, and return to Broadmoor. Finish at 3:33 p. m. Day was warmer than previous one and the road was gravel for about one-half its length. On the return *Norfolk Star* seemed to realize that the stables were ahead of him and I had difficulty throughout the 30 miles in keeping him at a pace slow enough so that we should not finish ahead of the minimum time. This afternoon I made the mistake of allowing *Star* to drink his fill of water about three miles from the finish. This caused him to have a second sweat about an hour after the finish, and I had to walk him around slowly for almost an hour to overcome the sweat and danger of a chill afterward; otherwise his condition at the end of day was normal.

### THIRD DAY, AUGUST 3

Start, 6:30 a. m. Route, 30 miles through Black Forests, northeast of Colorado Springs, and return. Change of altitude from 6,000 feet at Colorado Springs to over 9,000 feet at noon stop. This route was a great test of the endurance of the horses. We climbed hill after hill and had to pick our way over hills where the roads were badly torn up by road construction. The day was hot and Captain Lattimore and I decided that we must slow our pace considerably in order to finish in good condition. The judges evidently were of the same mind, for they stopped all riders for two rest periods, the first ten minutes and the second 20 minutes, this time not to count in the time charged against us. This was rather hard on Captain Lattimore and myself, as we were placing considerable reliance on the ability of our horses to travel faster than the other contestants and we were able to take frequent rests and keep within the time limit, while the others had to travel quite steadily to keep within the maximum time. These rests, however, enabled us to come into the noon stop in very good condition, and we returned to the Broadmoor at our normal rate of  $7\frac{1}{2}$  miles per hour and finished the day at 4:30 p. m., *Norfolk Star* in good condition.

### FOURTH DAY, AUGUST 4

Start, 6:30 a. m. Route, Pueblo Road, 30 miles and return. This morning I started out by myself and did not see another horse until very

## THE BROADMOOR REMOUNT ENDURANCE RIDE

close to the noon stop. *Norfolk Star* did not travel as well alone, and he stopped at noon more tired than usual and with very little interest in his grain. I took him back at a slower gate, keeping about even with the other contestants and riding very carefully, so that he was in better shape at night. Finish, 3:44 p. m.

### LAST DAY, AUGUST 5

Start, 6:45 a. m. Route, Farmers' Highway, 30 miles and return. *Norfolk Star* seemed much more rested this morning than the previous morning, and the forenoon passed quickly. In the afternoon we had our only thrilling experience during the ride. About 2 o'clock we were breezing along very easily, with our minds at rest, when the wind began to blow. Clouds of dust flew across the road, and just as we were at the top of a long, steep hill the hailstones arrived and our troubles commenced. The horses did not enjoy the bombardment and danced from one side of the road to the other. The road had suddenly become very slippery. I wanted to dismount and did not dare; so we slipped and slid the length of the hill, with hailstones beating a lively tattoo, expecting every minute to go down and then come up with a lame horse. We finally made the level again without accident and slogged along with dripping clothes and equipment, for we had been too busy to think of slickers. The following rain merely added to our weight. Myself and equipment weighed in at 209 pounds that evening. We finished at 5:05 p. m., very wet and miserable.

### FINAL JUDGING, SUNDAY, AUGUST 6

*Norfolk Star* this morning seemed surprised that we did not proceed to the flagpole at the usual time, and that I should devote so much time to massage and grooming, and by the time that the judges were ready for us he was feeling as well as he did on the first day, and the greatest difficulty I had during the judging was to make him perform quietly. In the final weighing he tipped the scales at 950 pounds, a loss of forty pounds. In every other respect he was very nearly normal. He finished the 300 miles in 47 hours and 37 minutes, three minutes slower than the fastest time of the Eastern contest last year and one hour and 27 minutes faster than the time made by *Crabbet*, the winner of that ride.

The judges awarded places as follows:

Place.	Name.	Time.	Points for time.	Points for condition.	Total.
1	<i>Norfolk Star</i> .....	47 hrs. 37 min.	29 8/15	58 2/3	88 3/15
2	<i>Rabbit</i> .....	50 hrs. 58 min.	16 2/15	56	72 2/15
3	<i>Poe</i> .....	51 hrs. 56 min.	12 4/15	44 1/3	56 9/15
4	<i>Jerry</i> .....	47 hrs. 23 min.	30 7/15	25	55 7/15
5	<i>Maltese Cat</i> .....	49 hrs. 45 min.	21	25	46
6	<i>Rumford</i> .....	52 hrs. 3 min.	11 12/15	25	36 12/15

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

The prizes offered for this contest were, for first: A cup, to remain permanently in the possession of the winner, \$600.00, the Arabian Horse Club medal and blue ribbon; second prize, \$400.00, red ribbon; third prize, \$300.00, yellow ribbon; fourth prize, \$200.00, white ribbon; fifth prize, \$150.00, gray ribbon; sixth prize, \$100.00, black and white ribbon.

Of the twelve horses that entered the race, there were eight that finished. The second day the two horses entered by Mr. Allyn S. Perkins were withdrawn, *Dublin John, Jr.*, at noon, on account of lameness, and *The Imp* at night, on account of excessive fatigue. On the third day *St. Michael* was withdrawn in the morning, on account of excessive fatigue, and *Mormon* was withdrawn at night, on account of lameness caused by interfering behind. Of the eight horses who finished, two were not placed; *Park* and *Bay Wolf* were lame when judged Sunday morning.

### CONCLUSIONS FROM THE RACE

It is impossible to select a perfect horse or a type of horse and say that that horse is the one most suited for endurance, but there are certain features which every horse which is expected to go a long distance in a short time should have, viz:

1. The horse must travel absolutely true, not only in normal condition, but also when he is fatigued.
2. He must have weight-carrying ability. By this I mean a short back and well-sprung ribs.
3. He must be not only apparently, but absolutely, sound. To require a horse with incipient splints or spavins or feet not in the best of condition to travel a long, hard route is not only cruel to the horse, but makes unnecessary work for the rider, because the horse will not finish.
4. The horse must have courage and the firmly expressed desire to go ahead. A horse which must be driven tires both himself and the rider unnecessarily.
5. He must trot close to the ground and rapidly. A daisy-cutting horse requires only a part of the effort that a horse with high action takes.

### COMMENTS BY MAJOR LEONARD, U. S. M. C.

Member Remount Board, One of the Judges of the Colorado Test and Three Times Judge of the Eastern Endurance Test

The foregoing article of Captain Watkins is not only exceedingly interesting and very instructive, but it is of special value as containing the experiences and observations of an active contestant in a difficult and useful sporting event. Although the horses participating in the Western Endurance Ride carried 25 pounds less than those which took part in the Eastern competition,

## THE BROADMOOR REMOUNT ENDURANCE RIDE

they had the serious handicap of competing at altitudes varying from 6,000 to 7,500 feet. The horses which finished these rides, East or West, have thereby demonstrated that they are of superior fiber; their riders evince the possession of those qualities inhering in the best type of American soldier and sportsman.

The conclusions deduced by Captain Watkins are in the main pre-eminently sound. It is axiomatic that a horse which is a likely prospect for honors in this test must be of suitable conformation to carry weight. One which does not go straight is seriously handicapped for any work. Excess of motion, whether lateral or vertical, excludes him from consideration as a prospect to compete over this route and should be regarded by prospective contestants as a wholly insuperable objection, whatever his other virtues.

One of Captain Watkins' deductions does not seem to be quite so well established. Whereas I would never select a horse to start in this test which was unsound, any more than I would breed an unsound sire or dam, yet experience forces me to admit that animals having bone spavins of long standing and non-articular splints, as well as those which are a bit windy, have gone the distance successfully.

Courage is a primal prerequisite and it is invariably an accompaniment of blood. Any horse which must be driven will wear out both himself and his rider, and the cold-blooded ones begin to quit midway of the long route.



## War Claims

BY

Major E. P. PIERSON, Cavalry, Chief Foreign Claims Section, Office of the Assistant Secretary of War

THE Cavalry Service has always been noted for the versatility of its personnel to apply themselves diligently to any task placed before them, be that directing artillery, digging a trench alongside of the infantry, or riding the horse in a charge. In fact, we pride ourselves that we can do anything anybody else can do, *and then some*. Therefore it is not amiss to call attention to the fact that war requires personnel to perform all manner of duties. The World War illustrated roundly what a cavalryman can do in addition to his other duties. It therefore behooves us to take a *look-see*, so that we will not be unprepared to acquit ourselves *comme propre*, if it should fall to our lot in or after the next war to settle claims.

Perhaps the least generally known feature of war-making is the settlement of claims for damages arising from necessary as well as unnecessary depredations by troops. The principle of "equal benefits, equal obligations" for citizens appears to be generally recognized by civilized nations. Consequently legal provisions are usually found for the purpose of distributing somewhat the localized burdens of destruction and damages incident to the operation of troops in the field. This principle had been almost lost sight of in the United States before the war, but our entry *over there* on equal terms with our Allies made it necessary that our forces should conduct themselves toward the local inhabitants on similar terms. Our Commander-in-Chief soon recognized this, and on his request our Congress passed the act, approved April 18, 1918, giving indemnity for certain damages caused by American forces abroad, and among other things provided "that claims under this statute shall not be approved unless they would be payable according to law or practice governing the military forces of the country in which they occur."

The United States Army had had no practical experience in billeting troops on the inhabitants of towns and villages in its previous operations. It was therefore necessary to draw up entirely new regulations to meet the new conditions. In fact, a new organization, known as the Renting, Requisition, and Claims Service, was instituted to take care of this intimate relation with the local inhabitants. As indicated by its name, this service was charged with all matters respecting renting, requisitions, billeting, and claims, including the interpretation of the local law on the subject.

There is another prolific source of claims arising out of and incident to the cessation of hostilities. I refer to claims for damages or losses to contractors and manufacturers as a result of cancellation of war contracts. They are per-

## WAR CLAIMS

haps not as pitiful as the first-mentioned war damages, but they are no less justifiable. In modern warfare every source of production is made subservient to the national needs. Generally speaking, the man best fitted for active combat is required to contribute his energy—his very life-blood, if need be—behind a gun, while a captain of industry, or, if you prefer, capitalist, is required to divert his money and factories to the production of war supplies at minimum, or at least Government-dictated, prices. The sudden cessation of such production places the manufacturer at a very great disadvantage; sometimes faced with the necessity to reconstruct and restore his factory to peace-time activities; sometimes with an oversupply of raw materials obtained at inflated war prices, making them too expensive for peace requirements without a considerable loss; sometimes, as in France, to pay out dismissal indemnities to his workmen who must be discharged. Evidently, it would be unjust to allow this loss, which was incurred for the benefit of the whole nation, to remain on the shoulders of one man or group of men. On the other hand, in the haste and tumult of war and in the phenomenal increase in the responsibilities of inexperienced men in the public service, many of the contracts were prepared without a provision for cancellation. To have required full execution of each contract would have placed the Government at a disadvantage in having to take delivery of war supplies no longer needed. It is reasonable to expect, therefore, that there should be discovered a middle ground in each case involving the minimum loss to each party to the contract.

Probably the great majority of contractors for supplying our troops were in the United States, but a very considerable number were in foreign countries, both allied and neutral, more than 3,000 miles away. Upon the signing of the Armistice of November 11, 1918, all energies of the United States were, so to speak, *clashed* into reverse gear at top speed to bring back our troops from across the ocean. Prompt adjustment of contracts, claims, and damages was conceived to be a matter of prime importance in order to prevent their swelling and mushrooming, due to the populace—then friendly—becoming piqued through excessive delays. For this purpose the Congress passed the law, known almost universally as "the Dent Act," of March 2, 1919, placing in the Secretary of War, through such agency as he may designate or establish, the power to make equitable and fair adjustments of agreements or arrangements entered into during the war period. Under this authority the Secretary of War designated the already existing War Department Claims Board to adjust matters presented by American contractors. He created the United States Liquidation Commission—War Department—to adjust matters presented by foreign governments and their nationals arising out of arrangements originally made on foreign soil. In addition, he created the Special Representative of the Secretary of War to adjust matters, principally in the United States, growing out of the furnishing of supplies and services to foreign governments by the



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

War Department and American contractors under United States Government control.

It is with the last two agencies that the Foreign Claims Section has been most intimately concerned. During active operations of these two civilian agencies, the Foreign Claims Section acted as liaison with the military services at Washington; first, compiling the data of claims already existing; second, to act as "home base" for finished records, and, lastly, to succeed to all the powers formerly held by both these agencies on any unfinished claims, or re-examination of settlements made. The Assistant Secretary of War is at present the direct authority under which the Foreign Claims Section operates. In addition to claims proper, this section supervises and records all transactions of the War Department which affect the accounts with foreign governments. Therefore all bills and claims of both foreign governments and their nationals received by any branch of the War Department have been transmitted to that section for necessary attention.

As an example of the volume of international business still being transacted four years after the war, this section transmitted up till January 1, 1922, bills against foreign governments amounting to nearly \$24,000,000. During the same period it recorded collections of almost \$15,000,000 for supplies sold for cash and interest on notes accepted by the War Department for surplus supplies sold on credit to foreign countries. During a period of six months ending January 1, 1922, there was handled 660 individual claims. Of these about 60 per cent were settled and 40 per cent are still open for one reason or another. Of those settled about 10 per cent were totally disallowed, while on the others a considerable saving, sometimes as high as 60 per cent, was made, due to the advantageous rate of exchange at time of payment. It should be noted that the claims are paid in the coin in which stated; therefore it is necessary to expend only the number of dollars in any one case which will purchase the coin in question. The 660 applications represented total claims as follows: dollars, 244,169.50; francs, 1,793,084.40; guilders, 2,292.92; marks, 206,396.80; piastres, 44,137.00; pounds sterling, 21,585.7.1, and liras, 104,587.10. Included in the above are 391 so-called *vis chère* claims, 259 of which were passed for settlement. These claims arise from an agreement with the French Government to pay to French employees of the A. E. F. such rates of pay and indemnities allowed for *vis chère* (high cost of living) and dismissal indemnities as might be allowed French Government employees for like services. Fifteen of the claims included above are damage and personal injury claims, so-called R. R. and C. claims. The balance are for procurements of supplies and services by the A. E. F. in Europe before and after the Armistice.

Besides the consideration and settlement of individual claims since the active work of the Liquidation Commission ceased, there have been made several important bulk settlements, more or less under the direct supervision of this section:

## WAR CLAIMS

a. General settlement with Great Britain on November 23, 1920, involving—  
British claims against the United States..... £4,221,220.4.2  
American claims against Great Britain..... 1,274,709.1.6

b. General settlement with Luxembourg on April 25, 1921, involving—  
Luxembourg claims against the United States..... Francs 3,330,910.13  
Settled for ..... 2,518,381.00

c. Settlement with the Commonwealth of Australia on February 15, 1921, involving a series of disputes under a contract for Australian jam. The records indicated that 36,441,138 pounds of jam had been delivered, and that all payments, including cost of jam, freight and insurance, and other agreed amounts, aggregated \$4,670,074.72. A further payment by the War Department of £2,791.2.11 definitely and finally concludes all payments due, or to become due, under the contract.

d. General settlement with France on June 29, 1921, involving certain accounts of the Navy also:

French claims against the United States..... Francs 1,368,104,376.02  
American claims against France..... \$223,014,570.94

These two accounts were set off at the rate of exchange of 6.1345963640558 francs to one dollar.

Under the Provisions of a contract dated December 1, 1919, sometimes called the R. R. and C. contract, France assumed the payment to its own citizens of all claims arising against the United States under the provisions of the act approved April 18, 1918. The consideration given to France for the assumption of these claims was an immediate credit of 12,000,000.00 francs, with a proviso that if on December 31, 1923, France could show that she had expended more than that amount, the United States will pay the excess, not, however, exceeding an additional 6,000,000.00 francs. Under the terms of this agreement our records are left in Paris, available to the French Government until the expiration of the contract. The records are in charge of United States officers, who correspond direct with the Foreign Claims Section in Washington on matters requiring further action by the War Department. After December 31, 1923, the records will be returned to the United States for permanent file.

A report covering the detailed activities on claims and billeting matters acted upon by the Renting, Requisition, and Claims Service (R. R. and C.) during the war and up to June 30, 1920, has been compiled by the Chief Requisition Officer at Paris, Colonel J. J. Mayes, J. A. G. D. This report contains such a volume of information of general interest to the Army that it is hoped it may soon be printed for distribution as a public document.



# The Cavalry in the Battle of Vittorio Veneto

October 24 to November 4, 1918

(Map at end of article)

## FOREWORD

GENERAL BARBARICH'S account of the operations of the Italian Cavalry Corps in the closing campaign of the war is a valuable contribution to our cavalry studies. Before reading it, however, it should be profitable to understand the situation of the two armies entire, the objectives of the attack, and the composition of the forces, particularly the Italian cavalry.

At the opening of the final offensive the Italian and Austrian armies were facing each other on a 200-mile front, from the Swiss frontier to the sea. The opposing lines lay mostly in the Alps, except the short section of about 30 miles along the Piave River, from its mouth to the Montello. The Italian strength was 41 divisions in the front line and 20 divisions in reserve, organized into nine armies and a Cavalry Corps. This included three British, two French, and one Czechoslovak infantry divisions and one American infantry regiment, the 332d. The Austrians held the line with 63½ divisions, of which 10½ divisions were in reserve. Their force was organized into two army groups, the Trentino, and the Piave, consisting of the 5th, 6th, 10th, and 11th Austrian Armies and the Belluno group. In the sector chosen for the main attack, extending from the crossing of the Piave by the Treviso-Oderzo Railway to Mt. Grappa and the Brenta River (about 40 miles), the Austrians had 33½ divisions (10½ of which were in reserve) in well-prepared positions of successive lines of intrenchments. The Italian mass of attack was 22 front-line divisions organized into five armies, with one army and the Cavalry Corps in reserve. The Cavalry Corps was made up of four divisions, with a regiment of *porté* artillery and certain auxiliaries as corps troops. The composition of the divisions was quite similar—two brigades of two regiments each, a regiment consisting of five line squadrons and a machine-gun squadron. Each division was supported by a group of horse batteries and had as auxiliary troops a pontoon, a mine, a signal, a munition, a medical, and a supply section. In addition, the First Division had attached three battalions of Bersaglieri on bicycles and a squadron of machine-gun armored motor cars; the second, a group of artillery *porté*; and the fourth, the same supporting troops as the first, with a group of artillery *porté* and a company of machine-guns on motorcycles added.

## THE CAVALRY IN THE BATTLE OF VITTORIO VENETO

The opposing armies had been facing each other in practically the same positions since July, when the last Austrian offensive had been stopped. The intervening time had been used by the Italians to reorganize the troops, build up an ample reserve of ammunition, and reconstitute the Cavalry Corps. The Italian offensive had been carefully planned and the troops were ready by the middle of September, but the definite date and sector of attack were not decided on until late in September. The attack was finally set for the 16th of October, but a rise of the Piave forced a further delay of eight days.

The aim of the Italian offensive was to split the two Austrian Army groups at their juncture, in the vicinity of Vittorio-Veneto,\* and to cut their lateral communications near Belluno. This being successfully accomplished, the Piave group would be forced to fight alone on the Venetian plain. The organized system of defense having been broken through by the 8th and 10th Armies by the 29th, the way was now open for the Cavalry Corps, which had been concentrated before the attack in the vicinity of Treviso, to attempt its mission, which was, first, to cover the advance of the following infantry, seizing the bridges over the successive rivers as far east as the Isonzo; and by operations on the left flank and to the front close the lines of retreat of the defeated forces. A glance at the map will show that the rail and wagon road systems of outlet from the plain converge to the north on Gemona at the mouth of the pass, where the Tagliamento emerges from the Alps, and to the east on Gorizia, with only one other wagon road into the valley of the Isonzo at Caporetto coming from Cividale. A further study of the map will show that the country over which the cavalry operated is crossed by the Livenza and the Tagliamento rivers, with widely separated bridges and fordable at few places. In addition, there is a perfect network of smaller streams descending from the Alps across the line of march and these supplemented by numberless irrigating canals. All these streams were in flood or near flood at the time of the operations and formed serious natural obstacles, furnishing ideal defensive positions for the Austrian rear-guard detachments. In spite of all difficulties, the Italian cavalry performed its mission most effectively, demonstrating in the best manner both the strategic and tactical use of mounted forces and the combined use of cavalry troops with machine-transported artillery, infantry, and machine-guns. The operations furnish fine tactical examples of the use of the artillery and machine-gun organizations as supporting troops of both mounted and dismounted cavalry engagements.

The Cavalry Corps operated as a corps directly under G. H. Q., with the exception of the First Division for a few days at the start. This is in accord with American cavalry traditions. There was, however, a small amount of additional cavalry with the armies attacking in the mountains. The 21st Light Cavalry, with the 4th Army, crossed Mt. Grappa at night, and, pro-

\* Vittorio, in the State of Venetia (Veneto).

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

ceeding toward Belluno in pursuit, charged and scattered a Bosnian regiment on the way. The 14th Light Cavalry preceded the advance of the First Army and were the first troops to reach the much-desired Trent.

The A. E. F. Cavalry Board visited the scene of these operations in March and April, 1919, and were shown over the ground by cavalry and general staff officers, participants in the campaign. Later, all the cavalry divisions were visited in garrison. Their showing was most impressive. Mounted generally on small, hardy horses, the best of which came from Sardinia, well equipped and armed, with horse artillery than which there is none better, they looked effective. The officers were some of the best in the Italian Army, and the men a sturdy, dependable lot, all of high *esprit*, with a firm conviction of the worth of their arm, as demonstrated repeatedly in the war. One was impressed with the mobility of all parts of the divisional organization. Machine-gun units, artillery, all transport and auxiliaries were organized, equipped, and trained to move with fast-going cavalry. The fire power of the squadrons of the line was below that of American cavalry, as the Italian carbine is not comparable to the rifle carried by our trooper, nor is the trooper so well trained for fighting on foot. This deficiency in fire power is in part compensated for by added machine-guns in the divisional organization and by attaching infantry mounted on bicycles and carried in trucks, armored motor cars, and artillery *porté*.

It is to be regretted that this campaign furnishes no example of the combined use of cavalry and air service. The increased development of air service since the war in range and fire power warrants the cavalry student in applying its possible use to this example. An aggressive air force would have been of inestimable value to the cavalry in deep penetration for information and in assisting in overcoming resistance by fire with bombs and machine-guns.

The Italian cavalry, by their brilliant part in routing the Austrian forces and bringing to a successful conclusion the war on the Italian front, fully demonstrated the wisdom of the high command in preserving the cavalry organization throughout the war. Advancing from 125 to 175 miles in six days in the face of strong opposition and over difficult terrain, capturing many prisoners and guns (the First Division alone captured 10,000 men), in addition to inflicting heavy casualties on the enemy, the Italian cavalry lived up to the best traditions of the cavalry service.

### REPORT COMPILED BY GENERAL BARBARICH, OF THE ITALIAN ARMY; FURNISHED BY THE MILITARY ATTACHE IN ROME

The Italian cavalry had taken part in the general advance during the first operations of the war. When this advance was checked by the main

## THE CAVALRY IN THE BATTLE OF VITTORIO VENETO

forces of the enemy, intrenched in formidable positions along the Isonzo River, it was necessary to commence a vigorous attack on the enemy's defenses. The cavalry divisions passed to the rear; they were then dismounted and served in the line as infantry, and many of their officers became aviators or officers in new organizations, such as machine-gun battalions, new artillery, and infantry.

In August, 1916, after the Austrian line had been broken at the bridgehead at Gorizia, Italian mounted squadrons took part in a short but brilliant scene on that much-contended battlefield. Later on, in the autumn of 1917, when there was a general withdrawal of the army to new positions on the Piave, the cavalry divisions, which had been rapidly brought forward, took part in brilliant and heroic rear-guard actions, and whole cavalry units sacrificed themselves in those difficult days. But it was especially during the decisive Battle of Vittorio Veneto, which brought about the breaking of the central lines of the enemy's front, that the Italian cavalry got the much-hoped-for and long-awaited chance to act in accordance with its classical traditions.

### *Decision to strike at a vital point of the enemy lines:*

It will be remembered that the decision of the Italian General Headquarters to attempt to break the Austrian lines near Vittorio was arrived at only a short time before the battle actually took place. Preparations had been made for some time to attack on the Plateau of Asiago (northwest of Bassano) but the Italian General Headquarters later took advantage of the opportunity to strike a decisive blow in the region of the Piave River, by which the Austrian armies around Trent could be separated from the forces on the Piave. Two Austrian armies were deployed between Mount Grappa and the sea. The northernmost army, which was the Sixth, was supplied from its extreme left flank, which, of course, was a dangerous arrangement. This line of supplies passed through the towns of Vittorio, Conegliano, and Sacile. If Vittorio were taken by the Italians, the Sixth Austrian Army would have its supplies cut off. The Italian Headquarters decided to break the enemy's line on the Piave front, namely, between the 5th and 6th Austrian armies.

Success would have to be the result of surprise and rapidity of action, to a great extent. In view of these facts, the action was specially suitable to cavalry, although it must be stated that the rough ground made cavalry maneuvering extremely difficult. The weather during the preliminary stages was favorable to maneuvering, because airplane observation by the enemy was impossible on account of rain. However, great difficulties were encountered on account of the swelling of mountain streams. The Italian cavalry, consisting of four divisions, was kept as a maneuvering reserve behind the fifteen Italian infantry divisions and the Czechoslovak division.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

*The cavalry possessed unity of command; battle commences October 24, 1918:*

The cavalry was organized as a corps, under His Royal Highness the Count of Turin, and received its orders directly from General Headquarters. The Battle of Vittorio Veneto began on the 24th of October, when the 4th Italian Army attacked along the Grappa front. On the 25th of October the current in the Piave River was not as violent as it had been during the few preceding days, and a bridge was thrown across opposite Valdobbiadene in front of the 12th Army. Eight bridges were thrown across the Piave in front of the 8th Army. The passing of the Piave was contested obstinately along the whole front by the Austrians, but the Italians were able to progress, and early in the morning of the 29th the 8th Corps succeeded in getting over the river and capturing Susegana and Conegliano.

The 1st Division of Cavalry was then sent forward between the 8th and 10th armies, and had assigned to it as its objective that part of the Livenza which is north of Sacile and beyond to the Tagliamento.

*First Cavalry Division is launched toward Vittorio:*

On the night of October 29 a general advance on all fronts of the 8th and 9th armies took place. The First Cavalry Division had forded the Piave and reached Cimadolmo; thence it advanced in a northerly direction to reach the Vittorio-Sacile line, the bulk of the division moving on Vittorio. This movement was made in order to take immediate advantage of Italian successes in the direction most dangerous to the enemy—i. e., Vittorio. This town was at the junction between the Austrian Army of the Piave and that of the Trentino. Sacile also was important, because it was the joining point of the 5th and 6th Austrian Armies, which formed part of their army of the Piave. On the evening of the 29th the 1st Cavalry Division had reached the line of the Monticano River and was succeeding in breaking up the resistance it encountered there.

*Cavalry Corps ordered to cut off the enemy at the Tagliamento:*

The Italian General Headquarters ordered the remainder of the Cavalry Corps (2d, 3d, and 4th divisions) to cross the Piave and to advance to the crossings of the Tagliamento River between Pinzano and the sea, and thus cut off the retreating Austrian columns and prevent the destruction of the bridges. Pursuant to this order, His Royal Highness the Count of Turin, at 5:00 p. m. of the 29th, directed that the 4th Division should cross the Piave during the night at Pallazon bridge and Bridge H, 500 meters below the Ponte della Priula and head for the Cimadolmo-Borgomalanotte line. The 2d Division was to move rapidly toward the bridge at Folina, south of Cimadolmo, and the 3d Division to Pallazon and await orders.

## THE CAVALRY IN THE BATTLE OF VITTORIO VENETO

*General situation October 30, the seventh day of battle:*

Defeat of the enemy was obvious since the 28th of October; decisive on the 29th; precipitous on the 30th. Under the irresistible pressure of the three combined armies of maneuver—i. e., the Italian 12th, 8th, and 10th armies—the front, which the enemy had hastily patched up along rear positions, was again broken in several points. General Headquarters decided that the moment had arrived to advance those troops which were fighting along the lower courses of the Piave—i. e., the 3d Army, under the orders of His Royal Highness the Duke of Aosta. This was the general situation during the time that the 1st Cavalry Division was moving forward with its first brigade headed toward Vittorio, the second toward Sacile, attempting to pass the Livenza at its source.

*First and second brigades of First Cavalry Division march on Vittorio and Sacile respectively:*

The first brigade was preceded by a fast-moving column which had been made up by orders from the headquarters of the 8th Army. This column consisted of the regiment of Florence lancers, Bersaglieri (light infantry) on bicycles, and a company of machine-guns mounted on motors. This advance proceeded through Conegliano, Colle Umberto and Vittorio, which latter place it reached on the night of the 29th, capturing a few hundred prisoners.

The stubborn resistance shown by the enemy against our advance and his free use of machine-guns induced headquarters of the 5th Army to send toward the narrows of Fadalto, at 7:00 p. m., a column of the 1st Cavalry Division, along with the fast-moving troops of the 8th Army. These forces were to go around the narrows of Fadalto, if necessary taking the road which goes from Vittorio northward along the Consiglio plain and descends to Farra d'Alpago, in case the enemy showed signs of putting up a strong resistance. Therefore the 1st cavalry brigade marched in two columns, one to the east and the other to the west of a line through Conegliano and Vittorio.

The Rome Cavalry Regiment, at 4:00 p. m., was stopped at Revine by machine-gun fire from the edge of the village and had to dismount several of its squadrons to break up the resistance. At the same time the Monferrato Regiment of the same brigade, which was marching toward the east of Vittorio, sent forward some of its fast-moving elements to capture a wagon train of the enemy which was retreating and to intercept the road between Cordignano and Cappella Maggiore. In these places strong resistance was put up by the enemy and a battery of our horse artillery had to come into action. The action continued all night. The Austrians attempted a counter-attack, which was carried out energetically, but failed; the enemy also lost heavily and left 300 prisoners in our hands. In the meantime, toward evening, some parts

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

of the 2d brigade had become seriously involved in an action which was taking place around the Sacile station.

*Cavalry Corps crosses Piave; is given important objectives:*

The 4th Cavalry Division, which had been ordered on the previous evening to cross to the left bank of the river, found itself during the night with three regiments still on the right bank, because Bridge H broke down. It was not until 6 o'clock that the crossing of the Piave could be continued, and this by using also the Pallazon bridge.

The Count of Turin in the meantime received instructions from General Headquarters which required him to get his forces to the Tagliamento River from the sea to Pinzano and operate especially to the north of the Udine-Sacile Railroad. He therefore ordered as follows:

The 4th Division will continue to cross the Piave during the night; the 2d and 3d Divisions will cross the river on the morning of the 30th, at Pallazon bridge and Bridge H, respectively.

### *Objectives:*

- (a) To assure free passage over the Livenza; to press hard toward Brugnera;  
The 3d Division to form a front along the line Polcenigo-Sacile (exclusive);  
The 4th Division to take up the front Sacile (inclusive)-Portobuffolè (exclusive);  
The 2d Division to take up the line of Portobuffolè (inclusive)-Motta (inclusive).
- (b) To keep contact with the main body of the enemy's columns.
- (c) To reach the bridges over the Tagliamento River and keep them as follows before the enemy arrives:  
The 3d Division to take up the line Pinzano-Ponte Bonsicco (inclusive);  
The 4th Division: Ponte Bonsicco (exclusive)-Ponte della Delizia;  
The 2d Division: Ponte della Delizia (exclusive)-Ponte Latisana (inclusive).
- (d) If impracticable to cross the Livenza, then to bear down upon the flank of the enemy as his columns are retiring from the Piave to the Livenza, damaging them as much as possible.
- (e) In case the bridges across the Tagliamento are destroyed when the cavalry arrives, then to ford the river, sending across to the left bank enough troops in good condition to keep contact with the main force of the enemy.
- (f) The 3d brigade, 2d Division, to remain in reserve.

## THE CAVALRY IN THE BATTLE OF VITTORIO VENETO

*Positions of Cavalry Corps at 7:00 p. m., October 30:*

The 2d Division: Cimadolmo;  
The 4th Division: Vazzola-Codogno;  
The 3d Division: Mareno.

*1st Cavalry Division seizes crossing over the Livenza:*

On October 31 our armies—i. e., the 6th, 4th, 12th, 8th, and 10th—made a general advance from the Asiago heights to the sea. Early in the morning the 1st Cavalry Division, with the 1st brigade, overcame hostile resistance at Serravalle, while the 2d brigade fought along the Livenza in an effort to cross it north of Sacile. At 6:30 some detachments of the 2d brigade, which had overcome hostile resistance at Caneva pushed on toward Fiaschetti, but were stopped by a large force of machine-gun units. Our troops engaged the enemy in a frontal attack, at the same time endeavoring to outflank him on the left. A little later the dragoons, lancers, and Bersaglieri made a great dash, yelling "Viva Savoia!" and captured many prisoners and machine-guns. Some machine-guns which had escaped took up a position on Hill 180, covering the Fiaschetti road with enfilading fire. These, however, were soon neutralized by the fire of the horse battery.

This lightning attack went through the defenders and was able to prevent the destruction of the bridge at Fiaschetti. The Austrians put up a sturdy resistance, but were forced to give way before the onslaught of our cavalry. They fled in disorder when they were brilliantly charged in their positions on the left of the Livenza by the Genoa Cavalry Regiment. The enemy was then followed up by the fire of the second horse battery.

*Cavalry Corps fights its way across the Livenza and presses enemy:*

Simultaneously the three divisions of the Cavalry Corps were advancing on their objectives. At about 6:30 p. m. the 3d Division occupied Polcenigo after bitter fighting, in which it was efficiently aided by the horse battery. The division pushed forward patrols toward the Tagliamento River. The 4th Division occupied Sacile at about 11:30 a. m., after heavy losses, and deployed from Sacile to Brugnera.

The bridges across the Livenza, with the exception of the bridge at Fiaschetti, which had been seized by the 1st Division and used by the 3d Division, were all destroyed. Thus the 4th and 2d Cavalry Divisions met a system of hostile machine-gun positions on the banks of the river. The enemy's machine-gunners were all assault personnel and determined to resist until the main body had made its withdrawal. The crossing of the river, nevertheless, was started with small forces and at 7:30 o'clock the situation of the corps was as follows:

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

The 3d Division was crossing the bridge at Fiaschetti;  
The 4th Division lay between Sacile and Brugnera;  
The 2d Division, with the 3d brigade in reserve, was moving along the line from Portobuffol  to beyond the Livenza.

The Count of Turin moved with his headquarters to Sacile, and on the morning of the 1st of November went to visit his divisions in order to make an estimate of the situation. The 4th Cavalry Division, which during the night had met considerable resistance along the Livenza, had been able to push forward small detachments across the river by means of the debris of the Brugnera bridge. These detachments ascertained that the enemy was retreating rapidly, but they could not pursue him on account of the small numbers which had crossed the river. After a bridge was thrown across, the 7th brigade started to cross the river. Simultaneously the Bersaglieri battalion of the 8th brigade forced itself over to the left bank of the Livenza near Cavolano, compelling the enemy to retreat rapidly on Pordenone. The enemy, which was being harassed by this column of quick-marching troops, after a stiff fire action, abandoned Pordenone precipitously and retired in disorder to behind the Meduna. The 8th brigade, following the tracks of the 7th, had likewise effected the crossing of the Livenza and moved on through Fontana Fredda and Roveredo to Cordenons, which it reached late at night. The 2d Cavalry Division (4th brigade) sent quick-marching detachments beyond the Livenza from Portobuffol  to prepare bridges to permit the advance of the main body of the army. Meanwhile the third brigade of the 2d Division was held in reserve.

### *Third Cavalry Division meets hostile cavalry resistance between Sacile and the Cellina:*

The 3d Cavalry Division, on the morning of the same day, became seriously engaged in a hard fight along a line east of Aviano - San Leonardo - San Foca - San Quirino. It was well supported by 105mm. batteries. The division was fighting face to face with detachments of the 6th Austrian Cavalry, who had dismounted and were supported by a dense line of machine-guns. The first group of the Savoy Cavalry Regiment attempted a surprise attack mounted and suffered heavy losses. A squadron was considerably cut up, and four armored cars, knocked out by projectiles which perforated the armor, were left immobilized on the spot. A group of horse batteries in the meantime prepared a new attack to overcome the hostile resistance and to open up a passage to Spilimbergo. This attack was brilliantly conducted and forced the enemy to withdraw in disorder beyond the Cellina, where he had prepared new defenses.

## THE CAVALRY IN THE BATTLE OF VITTORIO VENETO

### *Cavalry assigned fresh objective—the Isonzo:*

The withdrawal of the enemy along the whole front induced Italian General Headquarters to start a rapid movement forward of the whole army with a view to "reaching the enemy's origin of communications and strangling him there." The Cavalry Corps was given instructions to anticipate his arrival at the bridges over the Isonzo, while the 1st Cavalry Division was directed to hasten as quickly as possible to Stazione per la Carnia, taking advantage of the routes which led from the Maniago-Pinzano front to the upper courses of the Tagliamento, in order to intercept the enemy's communications, which centered in the Valle del Ferro. The division was also directed to send detachments to the intersection of roads at Tarvis (beyond the Italian border). Upon receipt of these orders the division was put under the direct orders of the Cavalry Corps.

By November 2, from the Stelvio \* to the sea the Italian army was overpowering the last obstinate resistance which the enemy afforded. The 7th and the 1st armies, after brilliant actions, advanced on Bolzano and Trent in order to inclose the enemy in a circle of fire in the Trentino district.

### *First Cavalry Division commences wide flank march into foothills:*

Headquarters of the 1st Cavalry Division, in compliance with orders received from General Headquarters, subsequently worked out in detail by the Count of Turin, issued an operations order with a view to cutting hostile communications which led to the Ferro Canal and also with a view to reaching the line Tolmezzo - Stazione per la Carnia as soon as possible. This was to be done by means of a combined action of de Ambrosi's and Castaldi's columns, which had instructions to cross the Carnic Alpine foothills and proceed along the Tagliamento to Tolmezzo in order to overcome, especially to encircle, any resistance which the enemy might oppose in the gorges of Pinzano or farther to the north. Therefore the first brigade was directed to reach Aviano this day on its march toward Travesio and Stazione per la Carnia. The 2d brigade was transferred to the region just southwest of Aviano, as a division reserve.

De Ambrosi's column consisted of a battalion of Bersaglieri on bicycles, reinforced by the second company of machine-guns on motor-cycles, and the eighth squadron of machine-guns mounted on armored cars. This column pushed forward toward Meduno, and on the way overcame a slight resistance and occupied Maniago. Detachments of scouts from this column reached Travesio in the night and then pushed toward Stazione per la Carnia and Tarvis.

Castaldi's detachment consisted of two squadrons of the Genoa Cavalry Regiment and the machine-gun squadron. This column was detached from the

\* Stelvio Pass in the Alps; the end of the Italian line on the Swiss frontier.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

second brigade and began its movement on Maniago, later to climb over the crests of the Carnic Alpine foothills, thence to Tramonti di Sopra, and finally to come down into the valley of the Tagliamento a little to the east of Ampezzo.

### *Cavalry Corps is assigned its lines of pursuit:*

At the same time the Count of Turin, on receipt of instructions to anticipate the enemy at the bridges across the Isonzo, ordered:

- (a) The Third Cavalry Division to proceed toward Udine and Cividale in order to intercept the roads which lead up the valley of the Natisone and to reconnoiter the right bank of the Isonzo between Tolmino (Tolmein) and Plezzo;
- (b) The Fourth Division was directed to advance toward Gorizia by Pozzuolo and Cormons and occupy the bridges across the Isonzo from Salcano to Pateano, and to scout along the valley of the Vipacco;
- (c) The Second Cavalry Division to proceed via Palmanova and Gradisca to Monfalcone and to occupy the bridges from Pateano to the sea.

### *The Cavalry reaches the Tagliamento on tenth day of battle; makes big captures:*

The Third Cavalry Division on the morning of November 2 passed the hostile defenses on the line of San Leonardo-San Foca-San Quirino and faced the enemy, who had deployed on the left of the Cellina. The division was preparing to overcome this new resistance in order to move toward its objectives, the bridges of Pinzano and Bonsicco. The division rushed through the enemy's defenses, passed around the defenses on the Cosa and, deploying all its strength, captured Spilimbergo, taking many prisoners and a supply train, munitions, and cannon.

The 12th Saluzzo Regiment of cavalry in the actions about Spilimbergo pounced down on the flanks of hostile columns in retreat and dispersed them, inflicting great losses and taking many prisoners, pieces of artillery, and machine-guns. The regiment suffered only small losses and proceeded with the rest of the brigade to Pinzano, which it reached that evening. In the neighborhood of the Bonsicco bridge the regiment of Montebello lancers attacked some hostile detachments which were offering a resistance along the right bank of the river. The lancers dismounted and with the support of a horse battery forced the enemy to surrender.

The Fourth Division, after overcoming a strong resistance at dawn, entered Cordenons with the eighth brigade. They were enthusiastically received by the populace and captured many prisoners, at the same time freeing many Italian soldiers who were held there as prisoners. In the meantime the seventh brigade advanced energetically toward its objectives, reaching S. Giorgio at

## THE CAVALRY IN THE BATTLE OF VITTORIO VENETO

4:00 o'clock in the afternoon. Here the brigade was stopped because it found numerous hostile machine-guns in position along the line Provesano-Cosa River-S. Giorgio. At 6:00 o'clock, due to the efficient help of the seventh horse battery and the third section of machine-guns mounted on armored cars, the hostile resistance was overcome; nevertheless it was impossible to prevent the enemy from burning the bridge at Bonsicco.

On account of darkness, the fording of the Tagliamento was put off until dawn of the third, but this was preceded by reconnaissance in order to determine the best point to effect a crossing. The third group of Bersaglieri of this division, mounted on bicycles, in the meantime had passed beyond the Meduna, occupying Zoppola after a short but lively fight. In reporting the action, headquarters of this group stated that the bridge of Delizia had been burned and said that the line through Zoppola was occupied by the enemy.

At the same time some fast-moving elements of the 2d Division, after passing the Meduna, proceeded toward Latisana. At 7:00 p. m. the lines held by the different divisions were as follows:

- 1st Division: Maniago-Cavasso-Trevesio;
- 3d Division: Pinzano-Spilimbergo-Bonsicco;
- 4th Division: San Giorgio-Ponta della Delizia;
- 2d Division: One brigade at Gruaro, another along the line Sesto-Gruaro-Portogruaro.

### *First Division meets heavy opposition in the foothills on left flank:*

On November 3 the 1st Cavalry Division pushed forward energetically toward its objectives. De Ambrosi's column moved toward Pinzano from Travesio because it had to turn out of the way on account of insuperable obstacles afforded by the Cosa torrent. The column thence moved toward the north. However, it was stopped at Pinzano by heavy machine-gun fire from positions on the heights of Flagonia and Forgaria. The Bersaglieri closed in for an attack, but it was found that the enemy had a whole effective division deployed on dominating ground. The command of the column therefore decided to put off the attack, in order that it could better its position during the night by occupying points of tactical importance.

Headquarters of the first brigade, 1st Division, upon learning of the stubborn resistance which the enemy was opposing to Ambrosi's column, immediately sent a horse battery to reinforce him. At the same time an echelon of the Rome Cavalry Regiment was sent to Ambrosi's assistance and the whole brigade hastened its march in order to join de Ambrosi that evening.

The second brigade, 1st Division, in the meantime occupied Lestana in the afternoon, while Castaldi's column continued toward its objectives and reached Tramonti di Sopra.



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

### *First Division plans further flanking maneuver:*

After consideration of the situation of the Flagonia-Forgaria front, Headquarters of the 1st Division decided to start immediately an enveloping movement to the west of the above-mentioned hostile positions with a view to getting a position at Stazione per la Carnia. To accomplish this the following instructions were given:

- (a) De Ambrosi's column to move on toward Stazione per la Carnia as soon as it had overcome the defense which was being put up at Flagonia. In this march the column should move along the right bank of the Tagliamento via Cavazzo Lake;
- (b) A battalion of Bersaglieri on bicycles was to be sent during the night to Clanzetto, to push forward as soon as possible to Tolmezzo, following the S. Francesco-Pozzis road; then to go on to Stazione per la Carnia;
- (c) A regiment of the first cavalry brigade was to support the Bersaglieri bicycle battalion, following along the same road;
- (d) The other regiment of the first brigade and the first horse battery should, on the other hand, support de Ambrosi's column;
- (e) The second cavalry brigade, with the second horse battery, to act as reserve.

### *Third Division enters Udine:*

The 3d Cavalry Division forded the Tagliamento north of S. Odorico early in the morning of the 3d and, after capturing hostile detachments on the right bank of the river, made a surprise attack on the enemy's lines on the left bank, which were held by the 44th Austrian Division with a double line of machine-guns and twenty batteries. This dashing action of our cavalry opened up a breach through which the infantry was enabled to fall upon the hostile artillery and compel the surrender of the enemy.

A group of squadrons of the Savoy Regiment of the cavalry under the command of Colonel Marchino, which was acting as advance guard for the 3d Division, had the honor to gallop into Udine and liberate the martyred city, which had for several months been awaiting the return of its children. At 1:30 the city was restored to its motherland amid the general enthusiasm of the citizens.

### *Fourth and Second Divisions make important captures on the lower Tagliamento:*

The 4th Cavalry Division started to cross the Tagliamento at dawn, using the fords at S. Odorico and Gradisca. Its objective was the bridges of Delizia which were held by the Austrians. Colonel Vorchelli's regiment at 6:30 started the movement, and although it became the target for lively hostile

## THE CAVALRY IN THE BATTLE OF VITTORIO VENETO

machine-gun and artillery fire, nevertheless it succeeded in reaching the right bank under the heights of S. Odorico, capturing 500 prisoners and two batteries. A little later the seventh brigade and the third Bersaglieri group of bicyclists, who were following, reached the left bank, while the group of field pieces mounted on motor cars took up a position on the right bank opposite S. Odorico. After fording the stream the division pushed forward to the bridges of Delizia and cut around the hostile division, which surrendered at nightfall. The enemy's troops were disarmed, while his artillery was put out of commission.

The 2d Division, after conquering Gruaro and Cordovado and taking 1,600 prisoners, pushed forward and reached the Tagliamento. The third cavalry brigade, which had been held in reserve, received orders from the Court of Turin to put itself at the disposal of the 2d Division with a view to starting a drive on Palmanova and Gradisca.

The situation at 7:00 p. m. of the 3d was as follows:

- 1st Division: Tramonti di Sopra-Clanzetto-Flagonia-Forgaria;
- 3d Division: Udine, left bank of the Tagliamento to the north of S. Odorico;
- 4th Division: Left of the Tagliamento to the south of S. Odorico;
- 2d Division: Third brigade on the left bank of the Tagliamento; fourth brigade waiting on the Tagliamento between Morsano and Latisana.

### *Brilliant operations of First Division on extreme flank: Cuts off three enemy divisions:*

On the morning of November 4 the Cavalry Corps was energetically pursuing along its whole front.

De Ambrosi's column of the 1st Division, after passing the hostile positions at Flagonia and Forgaria, and after thoroughly cleaning the enemy out of the surrounding country, advanced by forced marches to Stazione per la Carnia, which it reached at 2:00 p. m. In the neighborhood of this place it cut through a hostile column in retreat at Resiutta and captured many prisoners, among whom were an army corps commander and the commander of the 34th Austrian Division, with his staff.

The machine-guns mounted on armored cars and the machine-guns on motor-cycles continued the pursuit, opening up a road through an indescribable confusion of wagons, animals, and hostile troops. The squadron of armored cars with machine-guns, after passing Resiutta, shot up and stopped a train; then drove forward toward Chiusaforte, which it reached before 3:00 p. m. In the meantime one of its most advanced elements reached Pontebba. Thus all roads by which large hostile units could retreat were closed along the left bank of the Tagliamento, in the Gemona district.

At the same time the Monferrato Cavalry Regiment of the first brigade of the 1st Division, which had been sent to support de Ambrosi's column, advanced

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

from Flagonia and left a detachment consisting of the fifth squadron and the machine-gun squadron at Ponto di Cornino to protect its right flank and to ford the Tagliamento, after which it was to go up the left bank thereof. This detachment was successful in taking the Braulins bridge, where it surprised a hostile platoon which was in the act of setting off mines which had been prepared there. Later, this detachment learned of a wagon train which was moving on the Maiano-Osoppo road and decided to take it. This wagon train, which was subjected to the raffales of machine-gun fire from the machine-gun squadron, which had taken up a good position, had to halt. It was then charged by the fifth squadron, which came down on its flank and put the enemy to flight. However, our detachments were surprised by violent machine-gun firing which came from an escort of the wagon train. This surprise forced our machine-gun squadron to take shelter behind the fifth squadron, which was fighting on foot. Luckily, however, at this moment five machine-gun sections of the regimental machine-gun detachment of the Monferrato cavalry arrived on the scene. They had come to the rescue, having heard the firing. Up to this time they had been moving with the main body of the army, along the right bank of the Tagliamento.

A little later the commander of the detachment learned that the enemy was trying to get around his right flank in order to cut off the way to the bridge at Cornino. In order to prevent this, a small column was sent forward, which formed a little bridge-head, which was used to protect the retreat of the machine-gun sections. Thus the enemy, who had put up a strong fight, was obliged to give up his plan of cutting around the flank and to retire in disorder, on account of the losses which he had suffered.

While the action described above was holding the enemy's attention toward the west, toward the north the 34th Austrian Division was being broken up by the action of Italian machine-guns on armored cars and Bersaglieri on bicycles, which actions took place at Stazione per la Carnia and in the neighborhood of Chiusaforte. The advance of the first cavalry brigade, 1st Division, proceeded, and before 3:00 p. m. four squadrons of the Monferrato Regiment, with the light battery, reached Tolmezzo. The Rome Cavalry Regiment, after experiencing considerable trouble on the road, had followed the Bersaglieri battalion, which had been sent during the previous night to Clanzetto, and later arrived at Tolmezzo. About the same time the 1st Division assembled at Tolmezzo with Castaldi's column. The latter had gone over the ridge of the Carnic Alpine foothills, performing a very tiresome and difficult march over vile roads, and had descended into the valley of the Tagliamento a little to the east of Ampezzo. Thence it headed for Cenova di Tolmezzo, which it occupied at about 3:00 o'clock. The 1st Division thus finished its brilliant operations, which blocked off the 41st, 51st, and 12th Cavalry Divisions of the Austrian army between Venzone and Gemona. The enemy left 90 cannon, 5,000 rifles, about 1,000 animals, and a large quantity of every kind of war material in the hands of the

## THE CAVALRY IN THE BATTLE OF VITTORIO VENETO

1st Division. Meantime the same division had, from the 29th of October to the 4th of November, captured two generals and over 10,000 men who formed part of the 34th Austrian Division.

### *Third Division reaches the Isonzo:*

The main body of the 3d Division moved out from the S. Odorico-Udine district through Cividale and S. Pietro and reached Rebio, near Caporetto, before 3:00 o'clock on the 4th, capturing considerable material and prisoners.

### *Fourth Division has hard fighting between the Tagliamento and the Isonzo:*

The 4th Division commander was suspicious of the actions of the Austrian officers who had surrendered themselves the night before and who had not been totally disarmed. He therefore left the eighth brigade as guard and, with the seventh brigade, preceded by the eighth battalion of Bersaglieri on bicycles, and all the regimental machine-gun sections, pressed on toward Gorizia, following the Pozzuolo-Manzano-Cormons road. The march went rapidly until the Galleriano cemetery was reached, where the column was stopped by a strong hostile detachment, which was deployed and supported by artillery and machine-guns. The Bersaglieri machine-guns attacked with resolution and obliged the enemy to surrender, and 985 soldiers, 18 officers, 20 machine-guns and 7 cannon were captured.

Continuing the march to Flumignano, the column came across some detachments who were huddled in houses and were resisting capture. The eighth horse battery came up and fired with a range of zero marked on their sights, but the enemy came out and attacked the battery. However, he was driven back after the drivers were called up to assist in the fight. In this fight about 1,000 prisoners were taken. At 3:00 o'clock detachments of the division were at Cormons, Manzano, and Buttrio.

### *Second Division makes good progress across difficult river country:*

The third brigade of the 2d Division, which was moving toward Palmanova, was stopped by a strong opposition at Morsano (on the Tagliamento), but was able to overcome it, thanks to the valor of the Victor Emmanuel Regiment of lancers, which lost considerably. At 3:00 o'clock the brigade entered Monteghiano, while fast-moving elements passed beyond Palmanova and reached Joannis.

The fourth brigade, which had crossed the Tagliamento during the morning, at Latisana, went on to Cervignano. When it was a little east of Palazzolo della Stella it found that the bridge had been destroyed, and a strong resistance of the enemy's rear guard was encountered. The brigade had to cross the Corno torrent farther north. The Mantua Regiment of lancers of the fourth brigade brilliantly charged the hostile rear guard in the neighborhood of Palazzolo della Stella on several occasions, capturing 1,000 prisoners and dis-



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

persing a wagon train after making a fine flank movement. The Aosta Regiment of lancers captured two enemy columns near Pocenia.

At the same time a fast-moving column, which preceded the fourth brigade and which was composed of two squadrons of the Royal Piedmont Cavalry Regiment, one company of Bersaglieri on bicycles, and a squadron of machine-guns on armored cars, before 3:00 p. m. entered Cervignano in triumph, after having overcome the enemy in strength at S. Giorgio di Nogaro by means of a dashing operation which gained many prisoners and all kinds of material.

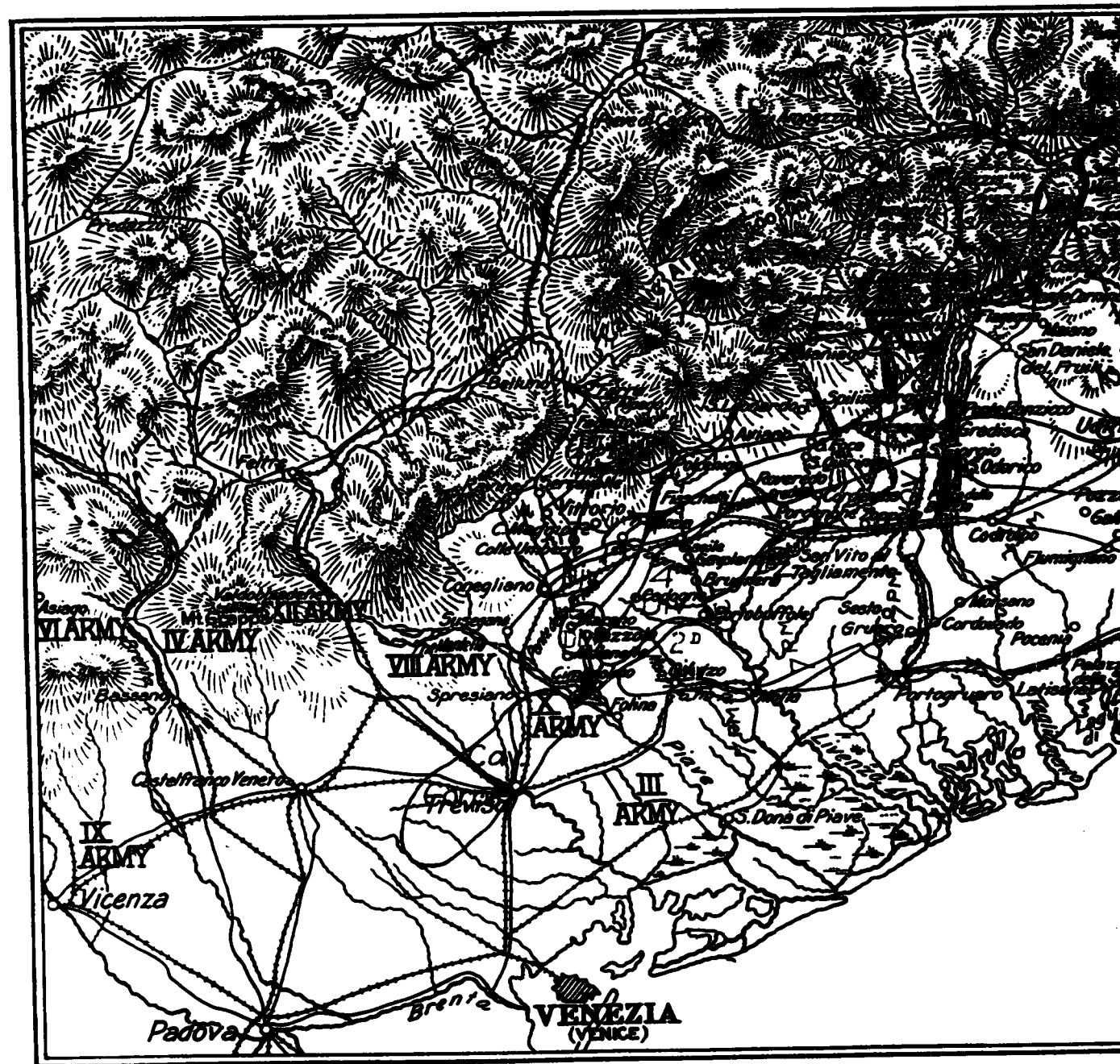
### *Termination of hostilities; the splendid cavalry success:*

The operations described above were going along beautifully when the order reached the cavalry corps to cease hostilities at 3:00 p. m. on November 4. At 3:00 p. m., when the notice was sent out, the four cavalry divisions were located as follows:

- 1st Division: Pontebba-Chiusaforte-Stazione per la Carnia;
- 3d Division; Caporetto-S. Pietro al Natissone;
- 4th Division: Cormons-Manzano-Buttrio;
- 2d Division: Joannis-Cervignano.

The Cavalry Corps had thus brilliantly accomplished its task of opening up the road for the infantry to take advantage of all the fruits of victory. The corps had overcome stubborn enemy resistance; it had endured great weariness in marches over difficult terrain (especially the 1st and 3d divisions), and notwithstanding the inevitable logistic deficiencies caused by the speed with which the corps advanced, from the 29th of October to the 4th of November it had penetrated to a depth of 200 to 250 kilometers and, as a result of maneuvering tactics carried on in mountainous regions, had completed the enemy's downfall and made victory decisive.

As yet, a sufficient amount of information has not been obtained on the system of communications used in the cavalry, etc., to permit a detailed report on this subject. From conversation with cavalry officers, it has been learned that most of the communications within the cavalry were by mounted messengers or bicyclists attached to the cavalry. The Italian cavalry was equipped with Very pistols, which were used on various occasions, but on the whole with unsatisfactory results. The squadrons also had reflectors, but visual signaling was more of a failure than a success. Wireless sets were very scarce and were assigned only to important headquarters, for communication between various headquarters. On account of the rapidity of movement, very little attempt was made to lay wire. It may be stated that communication, both lateral and from front to rear, was done entirely by messenger.



SCALE  
0 5 10 20 30 40 50 KILOM

THE CAVALRY OPERATIONS IN THE BATTLE OF VITTORIO VENETO  
Routes of cavalry divisions are shown in red; the number of each division is indicated by the

## Reducing The Army a Century Ago

**I**T IS interesting to note a considerable resemblance between War Department orders of the years following the war with Great Britain in 1812 and some of the orders of the past few years. In "A Compilation of Registers of the Army of the United States from 1815 to 1837," published in 1837, we find that in January, 1815, there was a single regiment of light dragoons, to which 44 officers are assigned. The 46 infantry regiments are allocated to States for recruiting. There were, in addition, at this time four rifle regiments, a small corps of rangers, another small corps of sea fencibles, and a few officers of Canadian volunteers.

The academic staff of the Military Academy, West Point, N. Y., numbered 24, including the Superintendent. There was a professor of natural and experimental philosophy, a professor of mathematics, and a professor of the art of engineering. The chaplain was also professor of ethics. The corps of cadets was authorized at 250.

The authorized army strength was 62,448 officers and men. A company of dragoons was composed of a captain, a first lieutenant, a second and a third lieutenant; also a cornet, 5 sergeants, 8 corporals, 2 musicians, 1 sword-master, 1 riding-master, 1 farrier, 1 saddler, 1 blacksmith, and 96 privates; aggregate strength, 121. There were 8 troops in the regiment, which thus had a total strength of 981.

Then follows a War Department order of May 17, 1815, covering the subject of the military policy of the country and the reduction of the army from its war status to a peace establishment of 10,000 men. The regiment of light dragoons, the Canadian volunteers, and the sea fencibles went out of existence.

The War Department instructed the Board of General Officers entrusted with the selection of officers to be retained as follows:

"The reduction of the military establishment to the number of 10,000 men sufficiently indicates the intention of Congress to be that the officers, non-commissioned officers, and privates should be selected and arranged in such manner as to form and complete an effective corps. It is, undoubtedly, a painful duty to make a discrimination which affects the interest and possibly the subsistence of honorable men, whose misfortune it is by age, by infirmities, or by wounds to be disabled from rendering further service to their country; but the task must be performed by those who are charged with the execution of the law, leaving the relief which may be justly claimed by suffering merit to the beneficent care of the legislative authority.

"It is the opinion of the President, therefore, that in the selection of the officers to be retained upon the military peace establishment those only should be recommended in your report for his approbation

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

who are at this time competent to engage an enemy in the field of battle.

"The number of field officers now in service amounts to 216 and the number of regimental officers now in service amounts to 2,055. Of the former about 39 and of the latter about 450 can be retained in service, according to the provisions of the act of Congress for fixing the military peace establishment. In every grade of appointment almost every officer has gallantly performed his duty. It is obvious, therefore, that with respect to the field officers and the regimental officers, as well as with respect to the general officers, men of high military merit must unavoidably be omitted in the present organization of the army. It has not been, and it never can be, under such circumstances, a mark of disrespect or a subject of reproach to omit the name of any officer, and the President wishes it may be distinctly understood that from the selection of officers nothing more ought to be inferred than his approbation of the selected individuals, without derogating in any degree from the reputation and worth of others."

The country was divided for military defense into a division of the north in five military departments and a division of the south in four military departments.

It is noted that a reduction was suffered at the Military Academy as elsewhere, for the register of 1818 gives only 12 members on the academic staff.

In 1821 the army was still further reduced. The letter of the Secretary of War, John C. Calhoun, to Major-General Jacob Brown and Brigadier-Generals Winfield Scott and E. P. Gaines called those officers to Washington "in order to aid by your experience and information in determining on the officers to be discharged, as well as on other points connected with the new arrangements and distribution of the army."

In 1822 the army, as reduced, was constituted of four regiments of artillery, seven regiments of infantry, and a corps of engineers, about 6,000 men.

There was one major-general commanding the army, two brigadiers commanding the two departments, a quartermaster-general (brigadier), two inspector-generals, and two quartermasters. A subsistence department, a purchasing department, a pay department, and a medical department constituted the services. The reorganization resulted in the establishment of two departments, a Western and an Eastern. The headquarters of the former was in Louisville, Ky.; that of the latter at Governor's Island, New York.

"All officers whose names are not included in the above list must consider themselves disbanded on the first of June next.

"The regulation relative to transfers is so far suspended that officers may be taken from one regiment or corps and arranged to another, the more perfectly to complete the organization, without consulting the individuals interested, until the first of January next" (General Order of May 17, 1821).

Nine officers of the whole army are definitely noted in the 1821 Army List as stationed in Washington. There is reason to suppose that the number actu-

## REDUCING THE ARMY A CENTURY AGO

ally stationed in the capital was slightly larger, but evidently the War Department was not permitted to be very strongly in evidence in the seat of government of the young nation.

The first army school established (except the Military Academy) appears to be an artillery school for practice, inaugurated at Fortress Monroe in 1824. The frontier posts of that day were Forts Crawford, Armstrong, and Snelling, described as being on the upper Mississippi, with Fort Atkinson on the Missouri (commanded by Brevet Colonel Leavenworth), Cantonment Brady, Forts Mackinac, Howard, and Shelby, in Michigan Territory. In the register covering the army at the beginning of the year 1826 the aggregate strength of the army is noted as 542 officers and 5,642 men. Of these 423 officers and all the enlisted men were of the line (the four artillery and seven infantry regiments).

In 1828 Fort Atkinson, on the Missouri, disappears from the list of army posts, and we find Cantonment Leavenworth, on the right bank of the Missouri, near the Little Platte, and the following year Colonel Leavenworth appears as commanding officer. Headquarters of the Western Department moves to Cincinnati, Ohio, keeping pace with the course of empire as westward it takes its way. In 1831 it is moved again to Jefferson Barracks, and in 1832 to Memphis, Tenn.

In the Register of 1833 is found the roster of the Battalion of Mounted Rangers, Major Henry Dodge commanding. This is the organization that is destined the following year to become the Regiment of Dragoons, with Henry Dodge as its colonel and Stephen W. Kearny as lieutenant-colonel. As first organized, it comprised 25 officers and 660 men, with the companies of a strength of 4 officers and 110 men each. When it was made a regiment, in 1833, it had a complement of 34 officers and 715 men, organized into 10 companies of 3 officers and 71 men each. The 1835 register notes this regiment's first stations as Fort Leavenworth and Fort Des Moines.

In the Register for 1829 the death of Major-General Jacob Brown, General-in-Chief, is recorded, and Major-General Alexander Macomb is noted as the Major-General Commanding the Army.

In the 1836 Register the resignation of Jefferson Davis from the dragoons is noted. In this register also P. G. T. Beauregard is reported as standing fourth in his class (fourth class) at the Military Academy.

In 1836 Stephen W. Kearny succeeds as colonel commanding the First Regiment of Dragoons, and in this year also a Second Regiment of Dragoons is organized, with D. E. Twiggs as colonel.

As an instance of slow promotion, the 1836 Register bears the name of Captain B. K. Pierce, who was commissioned captain in 1813; he was promoted in 1836—23 years a captain!

## The British Cavalry in Palestine and Syria\*

BY

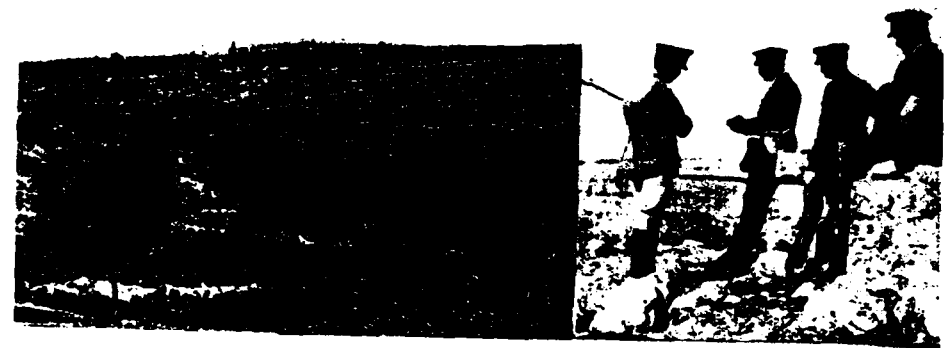
Lieutenant-Colonel EDWARD DAVIS, Cavalry  
(Observer with the British Cavalry)

**V**ARIETY is the spice of war, as of life in general. It was this condiment of experience which gave such peculiar zest to the activities of General Allenby's men, especially qualified as they were by versatility and adaptability. Changing terrain over which they fought their way required constant and thoughtful adjustment of tactics and of supply measures. We have seen how the first week was featured by the difficulties of a desert, or near-desert, region, practically roadless, waterless, and treeless, cut up by many dry creek beds, and so sandy that the advantages of motor transport were hardly a factor in the achievements. Next followed ten days' advance over gently rolling country, bad for wheels, but getting better every day. Now, finally, in the remaining days of November, 1917, we are to see the army advancing through an entirely different region—the tangled mass of rough, limestone hills, about one thousand feet in elevation, which filled the thirty miles of country between the army and Jerusalem. It was a bleak and forbidding area of jagged rock, quite justifying its description by a well-known writer as "the land that is desolate."

For the direction and observation of battle, the rolling plains of Philistia, the coastal area, had been peculiarly advantageous. For the platoon or troop commander leading the front line elements, for regiment, brigade and division, and for the corps commander himself, at his battle headquarters, there was frequently a succession of appropriate elevations affording a fine sweep of observation. At times the length of the entire front seemed within view, limited only by the power of human vision and interrupted, of course, as to areas blocked off here and there by intervening swells.

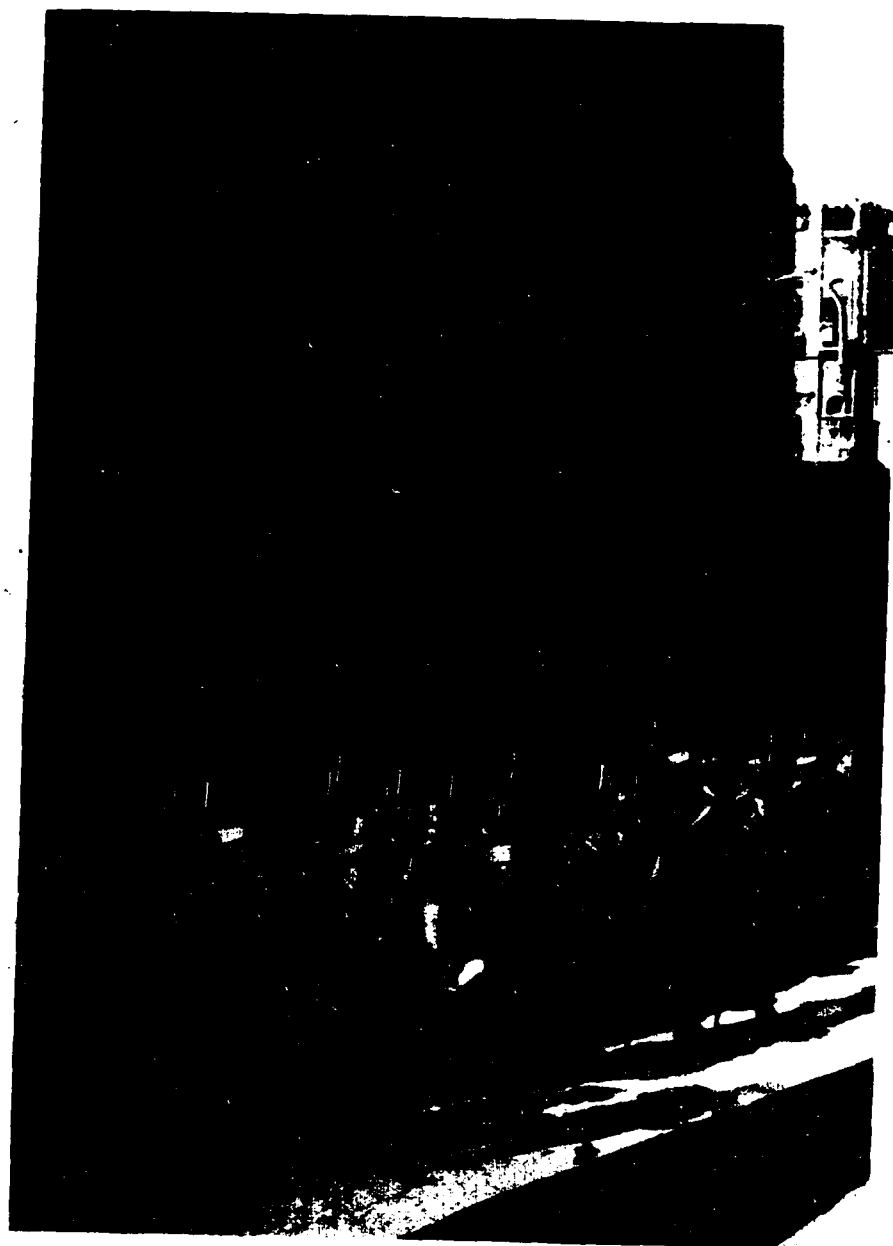
In the cultivated areas along the coast plain the occasional orange and olive groves and the small Arab and Zionist villages gave troop and squadron commanders opportunities for patrol activities conducted along lines quite like our own American training, but, as a rule, the pursuit was so hot from day to day that "No Man's Land" was not extensive enough in depth to permit the "far-flung" patrol. The Turk would usually be found at no great distance from where he had been the day before. His withdrawal, though steady, was not precipitate.

\*Continued from the October, 1922, number of the CAVALRY JOURNAL.



Upper left: HEIGHTS OF DEIR YESIN. Upper right: CONFERENCE IN THE FIELD. From left to right, Lieut.-General Chauvel, commanding Cavalry Corps; Major-General Hare, commanding 54th Infantry Division; Brigadier-General Howard-Vyse, Chief of Staff of Cavalry Corps; Lieut.-Colonel Garsia, Chief of Staff, 54th Division. Middle left: THE AUTHOR, Lieut.-Colonel Edward Davis, U. S. Cavalry, military observer—before Jerusalem. Right: ARTILLERY OF THE 60th DIVISION.

Bottom: THE YEOMANRY DIVISION TERRAIN.



Photograph by American Camp, Jerusalem  
 Proclamation of General Allenby from the steps of the ancient Tower of David.  
 Star indicates General Allenby. Notables of Jerusalem in left background.

## THE BRITISH CAVALRY IN PALESTINE AND SYRIA

Battle control was accomplished with what seems to us a minimum of overhead and a limited impedimenta. A brigade commander would be encountered occasionally, standing imperturbably in a central position, reduced in personnel to one staff officer and a few orderlies, with horses held near by under the shelter of a convenient hill. A division headquarters, as to its forward echelon, likewise appropriating a slope with wide field of observation, would present a group of six to eight officers. Even corps headquarters, responsible during a considerable period for the entire pursuit, in so far as immediate contact with the enemy was concerned, and likewise for the great question of supply, functioned with a small personnel and reduced equipage.

We are much interested in this matter of cavalry corps headquarters because we have nothing, as yet, to correspond to it, and in this particular case we have a model of demonstrated efficiency for our scrutiny when we get around to that particular item of organization. Its mission was to control the activities of three, and later four, cavalry divisions. These units were smaller than ours, and the general scheme of the army staff differed from our own; but, after all, our ultimate decisions as to organization will only come with the greater tranquillity of mind, the correction of perspective, and certain other adjustments which will be possible as the war gets a little farther behind us.

Hilltops in the midst of battle occupied by any headquarters give a practical setting and background for constructive observation somewhat more satisfying than the abstract contemplations of the office or conference room. The battle location of a corps headquarters during movement warfare necessarily implies reduced personnel and limited equipment. The obstacles—that is to say, the enemy positions—are immediately in view. The reactions to our commander's will—that is to say, our own advancing lines, our shrapnel bursts, and the great blurs and fountains of black smoke, debris, and dust made by our "heavies"—appear in concrete form before our eyes. The instrumentalities of communication within the corps are evidenced by the telephone and buzzer operators, grouped on the slope to the left with wires to the divisions, to other corps, and to G. H. Q. behind. Our wireless may or may not be immediately at hand, but if not, a telephone runs to it. On a bright day, heliographs flash brilliantly at many points along the front. Pigeons are available, but circumstances rarely call for their use. The motorcyclist dispatch riders are near at hand. The horses of all officers have been brought up to these battle headquarters and some of the best of these are the mounts of the "gallopers"—officers whose duty it is to carry very important messages, especially at night, or in very broken country, or when other instrumentalities of communication are not dependable.

In contrast with the mechanical noises of battle all around, the headquarters personnel is peculiarly unruffled and unhurried. The messengers, arriving by motor or by horse, do not "dash" upon the scene tense of visage and dramatic in attitude; they merely walk quietly to their objective. The

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

calmest person in the group is the one upon whom the greatest responsibility rests—the Corps Commander. He sits at one side, folded map in hand, watching the fight and conversing quietly with the "B. G. R. A." (Brigadier General, Royal Artillery). The latter is in theory a commander and not a staff officer. In this particular corps his function happens to include training and supply. He had at that time no "corps artillery," as such, but, as at Beersheba, he commands all the divisional artillery when circumstances dictate. The Corps Commander has great simplicity of control, because, with the possible exception of the "B. G. R. A.," all questions come to him solely through two officers, namely, the "B. G. G. S." (Brigadier General, General Staff) and the "D. A. and Q. M. G." (Deputy Adjutant and Quartermaster General), thus insuring presentation of broad phases only and also providing against interruption by too many people.

The "B. G. G. S.," as Chief of Staff, co-ordinates all the staff activities of the corps, in addition to his General Staff responsibilities regarding operations and intelligence. As to co-ordination, it is quite definitely his business to insure the smooth running of the whole of the staff. For instance, he is responsible for arranging the interchange of orders and for staff conferences and also takes the initiative in deciding which branch of the staff is to deal with certain matters, occasionally having to step outside the regulations. For example, with the corps' operations seriously threatened by extreme scarcity of water, the development and procurement of which by the engineers pertains normally to "Q," he has to hand over the job, to a great extent, to "G."

So at battle headquarters we see the "B. G. G. S." vigorously and spiritedly, but quietly, like the others, supervising the various activities. The messages, handled by "Signals," bringing constant items of information from the divisions, are formed by the "B. G. G. S." into a composite of the situation and briefly presented to the Corps Commander. The directions of the latter and the orders coming up from "G. H. Q." give the "B. G. G. S." his material for orders which must be issued, and he is next seen dictating to some five or six clerks, who with pencils, pads, and duplicating paper produce the necessary number of copies, their knees serving for desks and the dusty hillside itself taking the place of chairs. As the "Q" staff is necessarily farther back, on the corps line of communications, the supply interests here at battle headquarters are looked after by a junior "Q" officer who acts as liaison.

The movements of the cavalry corps up the coast plain were achieved by the eager and willing efforts of all ranks in units, great and small; but the vital element of momentum, the elimination of lost motion, depended on the smooth, prompt, and decisive functioning of the corps staff, presided over and spurred on by Brigadier General Howard-Vyse, C. M. G., D. S. O., an officer of the regular cavalry who in these post-war days commands the Royal Horse Guards.

But, to return to our narrative, we now find the cavalry in the last days of November, 1917, entering upon a period principally of difficult dismounted

## THE BRITISH CAVALRY IN PALESTINE AND SYRIA

work, the Yeomanry Division in their great rush through the hills toward Jerusalem and the Anzacs in their holding operations along the river Auja north of Jaffa. The Australian Division, after a brief rest, was to relieve "Yeodiv."

The Commander-in-Chief never displayed greater sagacity nor a finer appreciation of the rôle of cavalry than he did on this occasion, when he decided that the momentum of pursuit attained in the plains country should not slacken at the barrier of the hills, but be carried on until all the difficult passes had been secured. Hesitation, inferior generalship, or a lack of mobility had caused many commanders, in the earlier invasions of the Holy Land, to fail on the western slopes of these Judean defiles. General Allenby, profiting by the mobility of his cavalry, kept the Turk moving, so that he could not intrench and hold these strong positions until he was back against the Jerusalem defensive lines, on which he had been working, intermittently, for the greater part of a year.

To the Yeomanry Division fell the greater part of this continued offensive, in so far as the cavalry was concerned. After the great mounted charge of the 6th Brigade at El Mughar, November 13, the division advanced toward the northeast, encountering the enemy on the heights of Abu Shushah two days later. Here, by chance, the 6th Brigade was again the unit confronted at once by the greatest obstacle and the greatest opportunity. From the southwest there is a long gradual rise, with successions of folds or depressions and then the heights around the village rise, not exactly precipitously, but so steep that a horse scrambles or lunges forward at some places in making the ascent. The ridge runs approximately north and south and its height at the village is about 150 feet.

It is very interesting to note briefly the careful and systematic manner in which Brigadier General Godwin went at his task. First came his deliberate reconnaissance, accompanied by his regimental commanders—that fine feature running through so much of the work of the Egyptian Expeditionary Force. He then placed his horse battery and six of his twelve heavy machine-guns so that their fire could be delivered at an angle most favorable for the charging troops. As other troops of the Division were to attack the ridge from the north and northwest in dismounted formation, the 6th Brigade began its mounted assault. It would be difficult to describe this attack more concisely or more vividly than has been done by Lieutenant-Colonel Preston in his "Desert Mounted Corps," from which the following is quoted:

"As soon as the battery and the machine-guns were in action, Colonel Cripps led the Bucks Yeomanry out into the open, in column of squadrons in line of troop columns, and cantered forward toward the village, under a fairly heavy, but ill-directed, fire. As they neared the position, the Yeomanry came under severe enfilade fire from the group of enemy machine-guns on the southern portion of the ridge. Leading his regiment at a gallop into the shelter of some dead ground, Colonel Cripps halted them and signaled back for sup-

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

port. The Dorset Yeomanry were at once sent off to make a turning movement to the south and take the hostile machine-guns in rear. Some of the guns of the Berks Battery were also turned on to this party of the enemy.

"The appearance of the Dorsets engaged the attention of the Turkish machine-gunners, and the Bucks Yeomanry, taking advantage of the respite, emerged from concealment and raced at the position.

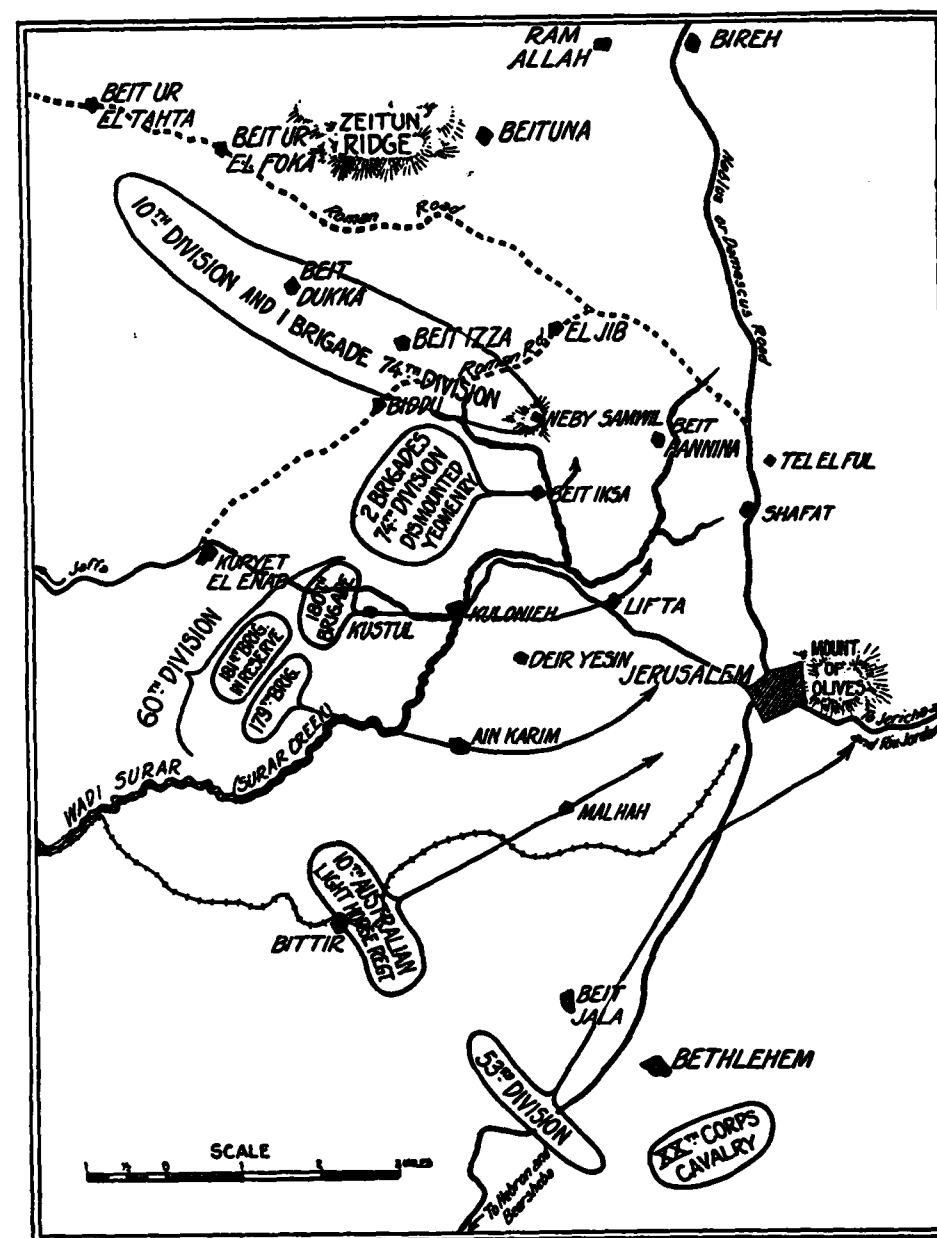
"Their appearance was met by an outburst of hysterical fire from Abu Shushah, through which they passed almost unscathed and reached the foot of the ridge. Then, catching their horses short by the head, they put them at the slope. Slipping and sliding, scrambling like cats among the rocks, they galloped up and went over the Turks with a cheer.

"The two squadrons of the Berks galloped up on the left at the same moment and completed the work. Once our cavalry were in the position, the enemy made but a poor fight."

In this action about 800 of the Yeomanry charged mounted against somewhat more than 1,000 Turks who had 10 machine-guns and two pieces of artillery. The Yeomanry lost 37 men and officers killed and wounded. The Turkish losses were 360 men, one field gun and three machine-guns captured, and their loss in killed and wounded was greatly in excess of that of the attacking cavalry. The charge was supported by the four guns of the horse battery in the beginning and by perhaps as many as eight guns of the 52d Division later. It had also the assistance of rifle fire from the dismounted attack—possibly 1,000 rifles and 12 machine-guns. It was another fine example of combining the mounted attack with fire action, and it illustrated, at one period of the advance, the advantage of keeping led horses close up when cover permits and the good judgment and boldness of the leader enable him to see it through. Finally this mounted attack was just another startling reminder of a certain period in our own American cavalry training when, at maneuvers, if an "enemy" shot was heard, "our own forces" would almost invariably "dismount to fight on foot." It was considered the "chic" thing to do. The war and the spiritedly correct cavalry teachings of the Cavalry School have checked this tendency and given proper value to our mounted practice. A cavalryman, in these days, who encounters that unimaginative and uniformed type of person who solemnly declares that the mounted charge is obsolete is perfectly justified in giving him the "horse-laugh."

After Abu Shushah the Yeomanry Division, starting from Ludd, had as an objective the village of Bireh, which lies straight east of Ramleh on the Jerusalem-Damascus road. The Yeomanry were to follow, as an axis, a road so old that the Romans, even in their time, had "improved" it, and nothing has been done to it since. In fact, this road was almost an imaginary line of advance, so close to obliteration was it through centuries of neglect; it was but a track through a wilderness of gray, stony ridges and jagged peaks, deep

## THE BRITISH CAVALRY IN PALESTINE AND SYRIA



THE ADVANCE UPON JERUSALEM



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

gullies and shapeless ravines. On the right of the Yeomanry Division the XX1st Infantry Corps was to advance from Latron, with the Jaffa-Jerusalem road as an axis, proceeding as far as Kuryet el Enab and thence northeastward. This latter road was the best in Palestine, which does not mean much. It had been properly surfaced at one time and could be called a modernized road in very bad condition. The XX1st Infantry Corps and the Yeomanry Division, it was planned, having achieved their objectives along the two roads mentioned, would finally seize Bireh and thus cut the only road leading from Jerusalem to the north. This would force the Turk to evacuate the Holy City without the necessity of a battle within its environs, a consummation which the Commander-in-Chief earnestly sought.

Lying on the route of the Yeomanry's advance, and about in the center of what was to prove the area of their most desperate fighting, were the two ancient villages of Beit ur el Tahta (Beth-horon the Lower) and Beit ur el Foka (Beth-horon the Upper). Bloody fighting was an old story in this locality, as the Old Testament sets forth somewhat "in extenso" in relating Joshua's activity, with the assistance of the Lord, in slaying the Amorites "with a great slaughter" and "smiting and chasing" them "along the way that goeth up to Beth-horon" (Joshua, Chapt. X).

Starting into the hills from Ludd November 18 the Yeomanry Division began to encounter the greatest difficulties at once; but, in the midst of these, great optimism prevailed, as the following extracts from notes of those days reveal: "Nov. 18th—1800—22d Mounted Brigade reported within one-half mile of Shilta, and country impassable for wheeled traffic . . . 2100—

Division cleared Beit ur el Tahta; preparing to push on to Bireh next day

. . . Nov. 19th—0900—Division moving on Bireh and Ain Arak. No opposition yet. . . 2200—8th Mounted Brigade held up three miles

east of Tahta and intend swinging south of Foka and then on to Bireh at dawn. 22d Mounted Brigade ready to attack Ain Arak at dawn and then on to Bireh.

. . . Nov. 20—1900—Division up against enemy organized resistance at Beitunia, but hope to reach Bireh tomorrow." But tomorrow, in that sense, never came to these very gallant troopers. "Nov. 21—1500—Enemy heavily counter-attacked Yeomanry at Beitunia . . . Division withdrawn to

Foka and Tahta." On this day, prior to the enemy's counter-attack, they had got within two miles of Bireh and the road they sought to hold; but, though they fought nine more days among the hills, it was a desperate fight to hold the ground already gained, with no prospect of further advance.

Cavalry combat, as such, from the beginning, had been out of the question. The horses had been kept well up, ready for possible use, until the sixth day, when all were ordered back to Ramleh and Ludd, where, on the bright moonlight night of November 27, as bad luck would have it, an enemy plane swooped down out of the skies and machine-gunned the picket lines, killing many of these faithful and spirited chargers.

## THE BRITISH CAVALRY IN PALESTINE AND SYRIA

The Yeomanry Division had started up the coast plain with possibly 4,300 sabers. In the dash for Bireh they were finally reduced to 1,200 sabers, and these, as riflemen, were disposed on a front of five miles, conducting an offensive with an artillery support which consisted of one mountain battery. Furthermore, owing to the size of the entire task in comparison with the number of divisions available at the moment, a gap of five miles on the left of this division stood open for four or five days—a reasonable risk for a brief period, while the Turkish armies were split, but obviously a growing danger. The gap was closed just in the nick of time by hurrying up elements of the Australian cavalry and by utilizing infantry battalions of the XX1st Corps as they withdrew, when their lines were taken over by the XXth Corps. The Yeomanry's first rush into the hills had been against enemy rear guards, but along the Jerusalem-Damascus road the Turk had his prepared positions as a resource, and it was on this line, too, that he was joined by fresh troops, hurried down from Aleppo, and here he received as well the full support of his heavy artillery, while the Yeomanry had at first only their lone mountain battery and later the 13-pounders of their horse batteries. With such inferiority of gun power and with odds of 3 to 1, and sometimes 10 to 1, against them, these British troopers had to contend. Wheeled transport as to supplies could not cope with the obstacles of such a terrain; so rations, too, reached a critical condition of depletion. Under date of November 22, for example, this entry appears in a notebook pertaining to those times: "It was proposed this a. m. to ration 'Yeodiv' by using airplanes; trying 5 planes, each carrying 150 pounds, and making repeated trips."

Students of the war need not be told that the Turk was crafty and resourceful in his tactical methods and expedients. In the hill country he lived up to his reputation. His personal camouflage showed ingenuity and his tricks were various. On one occasion a line of Turkish riflemen intrenched on the near side of a ridge, seemingly not too well provided with machine-guns, broke and fled over the sky-line. The minute their pursuers came out after them, the ridge revealed by stiff fire a very ample establishment of machine-guns which had not withdrawn, and, to make matters worse, the Turkish riflemen who had gone over the ridge raced back to their trenches, as in skillful team-play, and immediately resumed their fire with targets now in sight.

While the cavalry were having these difficult days in the Tahta-Foka region facing Bireh, the sector of the XX1st Infantry Corps, next on the south, had proved equally trying for General Bulfin's great infantrymen. They, too, had been outgunned and outnumbered even beyond their established ability to give odds. Their plight as to rations had probably been less severe, but their obstacles of terrain and their exposure to rain, cold, and battle losses had been quite the same. So it was decided to replace the XX1st Corps by the XXth Corps, which had been resting since Beersheba, and to relieve the Yeomanry Division by the Australians who had had a few days rest. These reliefs



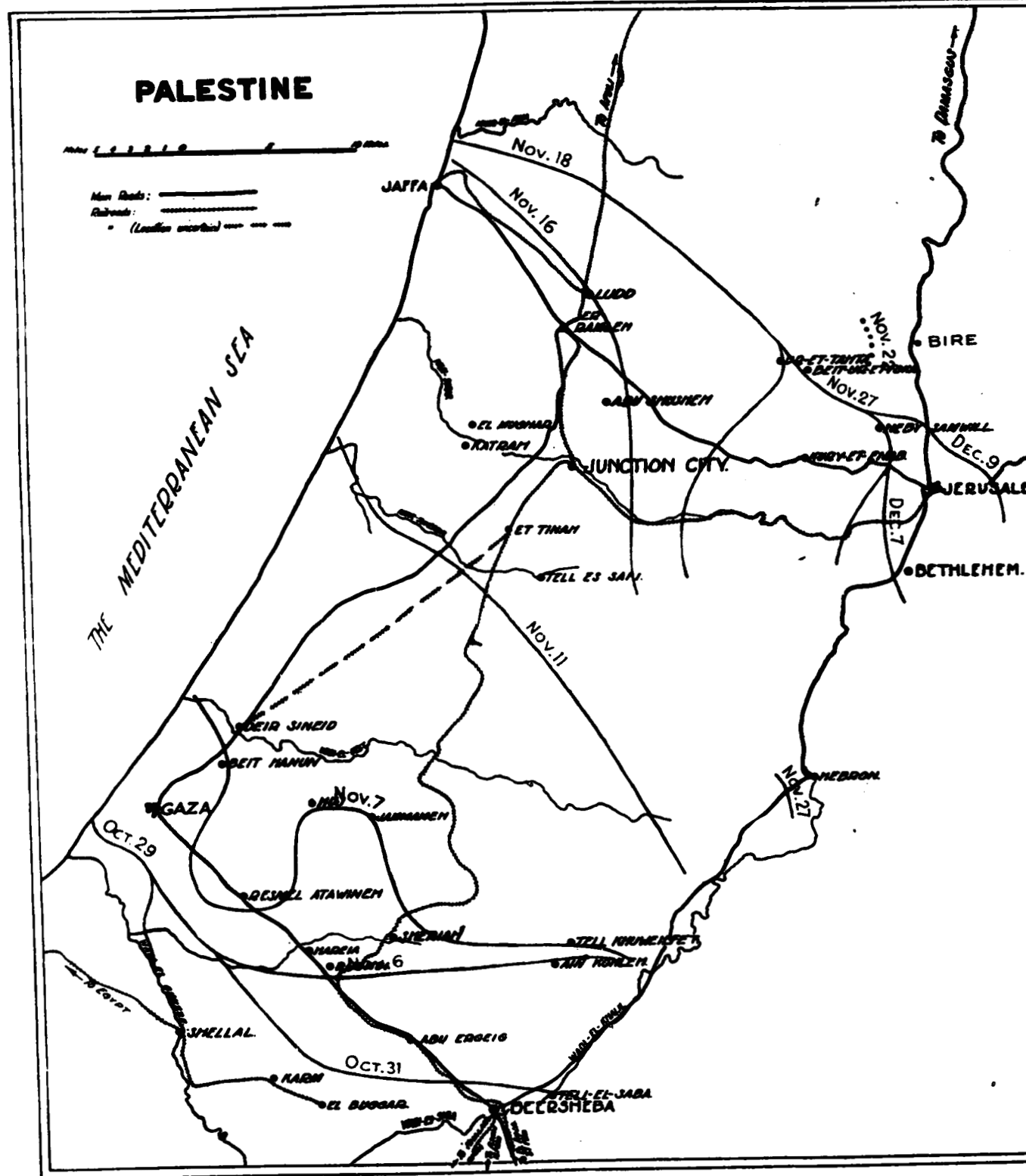
## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

were accomplished by December 4 and then began the final operations against Jerusalem by fresh troops, whose ultimate success was built on the essential advantages gained by the Yeomanry and by the XXist Corps.

In the final attack on the Jerusalem defenses an entire cavalry division participated. It is, perhaps, not yet clearly realized that the 74th Division of the XXth Corps was, in fact, a division of dismounted Yeomanry. In the earlier activities of the Egyptian Expeditionary Force on the Western Desert, over beyond the Nile, these troops had served in their chosen rôle as cavalymen, but reorganization for this later effort had put them on foot. They had not participated in the mounted achievements of their brothers of the Cavalry Corps, but an opportunity in keeping with their traditions was now their compensation. It was they who shared with the 60th Infantry Division the responsibility and imperishable glory of the great feat of arms against the western defenses of the Holy City.

Airplane photographs which had been taken in the Jerusalem area a year before had shown the Turks, even then, working on the trenches around the city, principally on those facing directly west. The key position consisted of a three-line system, beautifully sited and completely organized on the Deir Yessin Heights, a bastion-like eminence rising about 1,000 feet above the Surar Creek, which winds around its base. Many of these trenches had been sliced out of the solid rock by the use of explosives; they are there for all time. Opposite these trenches and about two miles due west there rose another great hill, the ridge called Kustul, and here the 60th Infantry Division stood astride the road to Jaffa. On the left of the 60th the dismounted cavalymen of the 74th held a line which trended to the northeast, and next on the north were the Irish, the 10th Division. Such was the order of battle of the left wing of the XXth Corps. The 10th Australian Light Horse Regiment, holding a line south of the 60th Division, served to connect the left wing with the right, which consisted of the 53d Division, coming north astride the Jerusalem-Bethlehem-Hebron road with the cavalry regiment of the XXth Corps protecting its right flank. In the attack, the 60th and the 74th were to assault the positions directly east of them, and then, pivoting on the 10th, were to change direction to the north, leaving the city clear on the right. The 53d, assaulting from the south, was to change direction to the east, so that its left might clear the city walls. The battle progressing in this fashion would, it was hoped, involve no destruction of or damage to the holy places. As Jerusalem is a Holy City of the Mohammedans as well as of the Christians, it was believed that the Turk would feel obligated to adopt measures in keeping with these, so as to insure against the violation of his own shrines. It was realized also that the Turk would look forward to the day when he might recapture the city—an undertaking which he actually essayed immediately after Christmas.

Soon after midnight of December 7-8, 1917, after twenty-four hours of



## THE BRITISH CAVALRY IN PALESTINE AND SYRIA

cold, soaking rain, the brigades of the 60th, in small columns, began to descend the slopes of Kustul toward the creek bed, a thousand feet below, along the crooked course of which they found their points of deployment. Starting up the opposite slopes in the early hours of morning, while darkness still prevailed, they drove in the enemy's advanced posts and moved to the assault, using the bayonet only. With daylight the fire fight developed to the maximum and progress was slow. Not until about 4 o'clock in the afternoon was the position completely taken, a bayonet charge by the 180th Brigade being the culminating onslaught of the day. From this last position the red roofs of some of the houses of Jerusalem could be seen, and the last act of one of history's most stirring dramas seemed very near. The dismounted Yeomanry, the 74th Division, had in the meantime gained all their objectives north of the Jaffa-Jerusalem road, effectively protecting the left of the 60th Division. Their advance had been especially rapid and successful against the strong Turkish positions at Beit Ikka and those which faced Neby Samwil. As night came on, the advance of the 53d Division against the southern defenses of Jerusalem had not materialized, owing to especially difficult weather conditions in that sector.

Remaining in place during the night of the 8th and pushing patrols out into the wilderness of boulders and crushed rock which surrounds the western and northwestern environs of Jerusalem, the 60th and 74th Divisions advanced on the 9th, while the 53d passed around to the east of the city. By nightfall, after some stiff fighting during the day, the lines of the XXth Corps were well beyond the city. The Turks had withdrawn during the night of the 8th and the Mayor of Jerusalem, at about 9 o'clock on the morning of the 9th, had come out along the Jaffa road with a party of civil officials, carrying a great white flag. One of the party afterward told the writer the story of the solemn and frightened procession which sought to surrender the city. They fully expected to be shot at each step and were almost paralyzed when a British sergeant and two privates suddenly jumped out from a place of concealment alongside the road and covered them with very threatening bayonets. Their fear soon changed to a feeling of security, and the Mayor, in due course, was able to deliver, in his own dignified manner, the formal words signifying the surrender of the city.

*(To be continued)*



## The Army at the National Horse Show

BY

Major GEORGE S. PATTON, Jr., Cavalry

**T**HE thirty-seventh annual show of the National Horse Show Association of America has come and gone, leaving in the minds and hearts of those army horse lovers who were fortunate enough to be present or who followed the events in the press a feeling of great pride and satisfaction in the improvement of the army horse, in the improvement in army riding, and a further sense of reflected glory in the truly grand performance of one officer, Major John Barry, senior instructor in equitation at the Cavalry School. Not only did Major Barry make a perfect performance himself, but the student officers whom he had instructed and who formed the other members of the Riley team covered themselves and him with glory.

Truly the year 1922 has been a memorable one in the history of army horsemanship. In polo, for the first time an army team won the junior championship; for the first time, army ponies outturned and outran civilian ponies; for the first time, an army pony played for civilians in an international match.

In the show-ring not only has the army been pre-eminent in its own sphere, but on several occasions army horses have won in open classes against the best competition. The climax in this respect, however, was reached when, on the opening day in New York, two army horses carried off the blue and red in the first event of the show; for in class 183, jumping, open to all, against 71 competitors, among which may be mentioned such famous horses as *Challenger*, *Sir Linsin*, *Silvercrest*, *Down East*, *Woodcock*, *Nancy Pansy*, *Silver Tip*, and *Foxtcatcher*, Major Barry, on *Moses*, and Capt. Bauskett, on *Raven*, scored first and second.

On the same day, in Class 211, the Moore Cup, officers' jumping, Bauskett, on *Raven*, again got the blue; *Pleasanton*, Major Schwenck, the red; *Morgan*, Major George, the yellow; and *Jeff*, Major Quekemeyer, the white. This also was a fine class, with forty starters and no poor performances.

On the second day the army started badly. In Class 200, troopers' mounts, we lost to the New York State Troopers, Sergeant Curry, on *Huachuca*, securing only the white.

In Class 199, artillery horse shown in hand, we again lost, the blue going to the 105th Field Artillery, of New York, while the 2d Field Artillery from Myer got the rest.

In Class 205, officers' chargers, light weight, *Submersible*, Major Barry, won the blue; *Allahmande*, Major Patton, red; *Babe Warthon*, Capt. Padget, yellow; *Saladin*, Major Wilburn, white. Three for Riley; one for Myer.

In Class 214, the Beresford Challenge Cup, officers' jumping, Riley split even with West Point, getting first and fourth. *Deceive*, Captain Gerhardt, won blue; *Pleasanton*, Major Schwenck, red; *Leonard Wood*, Major Taulbee,

## THE ARMY AT THE NATIONAL HORSE SHOW

yellow; *John Bunny*, Major Annin, white. All these horses went clean, but in the jump-off old *Deceive* came back with a second perfect score, adding fresh laurels to his nineteen years of victory.

The first event of the third day was Class 206, officers' chargers, heavy weight. There were nine very good horses in this class, which is a marked improvement, as usually the army has had fewer heavy horses. *Key*, Major Taulbee, got the blue; General Harbord's *Gay Lark*, Lieutenant Jadwin up, the red; *Chiswell*, the Cavalry School, the yellow.

In Class 207, the Bowman Challenge Cup, the 3d Cavalry had a great disappointment when *Allahmande*, who had twice won it for them, was beaten by two better horses, *Submersible*, Major Barry, getting the cup, while *Kye*, Major Taulbee, got the red ribbon. No other ribbons were given. This also was a very good class and the jumping, even in full field equipment, was excellent.

Class 188, the Grafton broad jump, open to all, was won by *Dandy Dude*, ridden by Major Quekemeyer.

The army opened the fourth day by winning Class 60, mares suitable for breeding polo ponies. This was an open class, with many entries, and was won by *Ella*, Major George, Fort Myer.

Class 203, officers' polo ponies, was a decided victory for West Point, *Vampire*, *Countess II*, and *Blues* getting the first three ribbons.

Class 204, officers' polo ponies, heavy weight, was won by *Ella*, Major George, with *Javelin*, Major Patton, red; *Marvel*, West Point, yellow.

Class 210, officers' charger championship, was won by *Submersible*, Major Barry, *Allahmande*, Major Patton, getting the reserve ribbon.

Class 208, the Overseas Cup, was a fine class, with twenty-seven excellent horses. This is a combination manners, conformation, and jumping class, and one of the most-sought-after prizes of the show. *Submersible*, Major Barry, won blue; *Babe Warthon*, Captain Padget, red; *Kye*, Major Taulbee, yellow; *Gay Lark*, General Harbord, Lieutenant Jadwin up, white.

In Class 187, hunters and jumpers over five-foot jumps, the army hoped for another open victory and only missed by one light hind tip, which put *Jeff*, Major Quekemeyer, in second place.

Class 184, open pair jumping, saw two army teams in the ribbons, *Custer* and *Groucho*, Captain Thayer and Lieutenant Jones, Fort Myer, getting third, *Dragoon* and *Allahmande*, Captain Thayer and Major Patton, getting fourth.

The fifth day, in Class 201, horses suitable for cavalry remounts, the army got second with *Huachuca*, Sergeant Curry, Washington.

Class 202, the Jockey Club Plate, is an open class, for conformation and manners, of horses suitable to be chargers. There were many good civilian horses in this class. *Submersible*, Major Barry, won blue; *Kye*, Major Taulbee, red; *Fairfield*, Mr. Lanier, yellow; *Allahmande*, Major Patton, white.

Classes 197 and 198, artillery teams, were won by the 2d Field Artillery, Fort Myer, with West Point second and third in each case.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Class 194, touch and out, was an open class, with 54 starters, open to all. In this class *Jeff*, Major Quekemeyer, got the yellow, while *Moses*, Major Barry, got the white.

Class 215, Grafton broad jump, officers' horses, was won by *Dandy Dude*, Major Quekemeyer.

Class 213, pair jumping by officers, was the best exhibition of this style of jumping ever seen at the show. *Moses* and *Deceive*, Major Barry and Captain Gerhardt, won blue; *Groucho* and *Geasmont*, Captain Thayer and Lieutenant Jones, red; *Allahmande* and *Dragoon*, Major Patton and Captain Thayer, yellow.

The last day had but two military events. In Class 212, officers' jumping, *Allahmande*, Major Patton, won blue; *Moses*, Major Barry, red; *Dato*, Major Thurman, yellow; *Raven*, Captain Bauskett, white. All these horses went clean and two jump-offs were necessary to decide the first two places, while the third and fourth places were selected by tossing a coin, as the horses insisted on performing equally.

In Class 209, Squadron A Cup, Major Barry, on *Submersible*, scored his final triumph for the show, again getting the blue.

No account of the horse show would be complete without mentioning at least some of the many friends the army numbers among the officers of the Horse Show Committee.

These gentlemen not only make our participation possible by largely defraying our expenses, but further, by their warm and generous treatment and hospitality, make us feel that we are not only in the show, but of it.

Among so many friends and benefactors it is difficult to choose individuals, but surely none will grudge us the pleasure of naming the following gentlemen, who both now and on many previous occasions have particularly endeared themselves to the army participants:

Mr. Alfred B. MacLay, president, our official host and friend; Mr. R. Lawrence Smith, vice-president; Mr. Charles W. Smith, secretary, who attended to all our wants and answered all our questions; Mr. John McE. Bowman, our frequent and genial host; Mr. William H. Moore, without whom the show could not exist; Mr. Pierre Lorillard, Jr., the greatest army booster; Mr. Harry Worcester Smith, horseman, poet, rooster.

To these gentlemen in particular, to the Directors and Executive Committee, to the donors of the cups and ribbons, and to the horsemen with whom we had the honor to compete, we extend our thanks, and in wishing them half the pleasure which they gave us surely are not guilty of niggardly appreciation.

NOTE.—It is possible that through inadvertence some class or name may have been omitted. If such is the case it is the result of accident and not design.—AUTHOR.

## The Fifteen Days' Training Period of the 62d Cavalry Division, Camp Meade, 1922

BY

Captain W. P. KING, 308th Cavalry, R. C.

FOR the benefit of the skeptical ones, also those Reserve Officers who were unfortunate in not being able to attend the Officers' Training Camp conducted by the 62d Cavalry Division at Camp Meade, August 20 to September 3, 1922, I wish, through the courtesy of this publication, to relate my experiences during those pleasant fifteen days.

Upon my separation from the army at the close of the war my feelings and attitude toward the service was pretty much the same as that of the majority of emergency officers who served with combat units during the World War—a feeling of “never again” and an antagonistic attitude toward the regular army and every one connected with it. As time passed, the “never again” feeling gradually disappeared and I reluctantly accepted a commission in the Cavalry Reserve Corps, with the feeling still existing that a reserve officer was something upon which the regular army officer could sneer and look down upon. I now realize how utterly mistaken I was and many others still are.

It was with a great deal of apprehension that I consented to attend the 62d Cavalry Division Training Camp during the period from August 20 to September 3, 1922. I still had visions of the old officers' training camp and service schools as conducted during the first few months of the war. These to me and others with whom I talked still remained a horrible nightmare; consequently all mention of training camp to 90 per cent of the reserve officers is like promising a child a nice big dose of castor oil. I shared this widespread mistaken impression when I proceeded to Camp Meade on August 19, 1922. My first pleasant surprise was upon my arrival at Camp Meade Sunday morning, when I was met at the station by a regular army baggage detail in charge of a very young and respectful regular army second lieutenant, who displayed the utmost military courtesy toward me. We were relieved of our hand baggage and conducted by the lieutenant to the registration office, where we were received by the regular army officers in charge with the same marked courtesy and respect displayed by the officer who met us at the station. We discovered that there is no difference between the uniform, insignia, and equipment of the regular officer and that of the reserve, and no distinction made in any way.

We were then assigned quarters, and settled down to what we expected to be fifteen days of heart-breaking study, with “catch question” examina-

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

tions and discomforts. In this respect, however, we were soon set right by the handing out of a typewritten program for the training period, which provided a schedule of the most pleasant and interesting fifteen-day period of my many years of military career. Our quarters and orderly service were excellent; the food and service at our mess was far beyond our expectations. During the afternoon, in walking about the camp, we met many of the regular army officers stationed there. We were again agreeably surprised to be received by all of them with the most whole-hearted brotherly welcome. We were introduced to their families and invited to their homes. In fact, we found that the old feeling or attitude of superiority, if it ever existed, had utterly disappeared.

That evening Major-General Charles L. Bailey, commanding the 3d Corps Area, gave a reception for the reserve officers at the "White House" Officers' Club. General Bailey acknowledged the unique honor of welcoming a brand-new unit to the Army of the United States; he urged loyalty to the organization and the creation of traditions which would endure.

Brigadier-General Charles H. Martin, Commander of Camp Meade, made a strong appeal for whole-hearted service. He said: "Military service is the purest and most unselfish; no man bears arms for himself; he serves his country and his fellow-men. No soldier desires war; his profession is to prevent war, and this great body of reserve officers, who now belong to the Army of the United States and comprise the overwhelming majority of this army, has a great work before it. Yours is the ancient and honorable profession and in you lies the hope of the preservation of American ideals and American liberty."

A buffet lunch and smokes were served, during which both Generals Bailey and Martin had a short personal chat with each officer present. This, our first evening in camp, was most pleasant and one we like to remember. Every officer was made to feel that he is a member of the Army of the United States and as such has all the responsibilities and is entitled to all courtesies and privileges. We met again many of our old friends, fellow-officers with whom we served during the World War and whom we had not seen since our return from France. I personally had the pleasure of meeting again two regular army officers with whom I served in the Philippines twenty years ago. To my mind this is one attractive feature of the training camp as it is now conducted; it gives an opportunity of renewing old acquaintances and the making of new friends.

The course of instruction began on Monday morning, August 21. There was no roll-call and no formation or duties seemed compulsory, but every officer felt morally obliged to do his best and we all enjoyed every minute of it. I do not believe any officer missed a single class, except, possibly, one or two "doughboy" officers who had recently transferred to the cavalry, whom I noticed were a little timid about backing up to a chair after the first day

## THE FIFTEEN DAYS' TRAINING PERIOD, CAMP MEADE

on the horses. The instruction began with terrain exercise No. 1, series 1, and terminated in terrain exercise 4, series 3, for a cavalry division. The staff of instructors consisted of the famous Leavenworth Team, the highest trained technical experts in the United States Army, who presented the most approved method, according to recent developments; and divisional, brigade, regimental, squadron, and troop problems were worked out by the instructors for the benefit of the officers. The first hour, in the morning, was spent in the class-room, where the instructors, by use of the blackboard and maps, outlined the day's problem and explained all features of the proposed operation. All officers were then taken by motor transportation to the ground over which the day's battle was to be fought. The position occupied by the enemy, as well as our own, was pointed out and our mission explained to us. Each officer or group of officers would then find a comfortable place to sit down and, by the use of the terrain maps and the actual ground, work out a solution. For this purpose we were given an hour and a half or two hours. I believe that the practice of working problems by groups was beneficial, in that practical and worth-while discussions usually resulted, which brought out many valuable points that might otherwise have been overlooked. During these periods the instructors were near at hand and always ready to answer questions, settle disputes, and render all necessary assistance in arriving at a practical solution. Each officer or group of officers made a written solution of the problem, which he or they retained and compared with the approved solution, which was later handed out by the instructors. After we had completed our problems, had a smoke, and possibly robbed a reservation apple tree or two, we all gathered for a general discussion of the problem, during which the instructor called for volunteers who wished to read and explain their solutions. This usually brought about some very interesting arguments from those of us who had served overseas and had actual experience with the enemy under similar conditions. The approved written solution of the instructors would then follow, with a lecture or explanation by the instructors on its technical merits. We would then return to camp, arriving in quarters seldom later than 11 o'clock, which gave us sufficient time for a shower and rest before the noonday mess.

Here I want to digress for just a moment to emphasize again the fact that the "hit and run" system prevailing in the pre-war officers' training camps, which all former officers dreaded, no longer exists. Instruction is now provided so as to teach and show how to do things, instead of preparing "catch question" examinations, in order to show you how little you knew. There is nothing to fear. Don't miss the next one. I will guarantee that you will leave camp at the end of the fifteen days with your self-respect intact and with more knowledge of military affairs than you gained in ninety days at the old training camps.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

The afternoons were devoted to educational recreation, such as military motion pictures, with lectures, demonstrations of the various branches of the service, and short cross-country rides on the horses provided for our use. The course throughout was very much diversified and gave one an insight as to how the division and larger units actually operate during war times. The demonstration of the various branches of the service was the most magnificent and thrilling sight imaginable. They reproduced actual battles fought in France and brought into action with real ammunition, infantry, machine-guns, artillery, tanks, trench mortars, bomb-throwers, smoke screens, gas and air service. To those of us who had served overseas, this sight brought back vivid pictures of actual conditions during the war. We occupied vantage points of observation, where we could see the infantry advancing, preceded by artillery and machine-gun barrages, the designated enemy positions ablaze with bursting high explosive shells, gas and smoke bombs, and our airplanes circling overhead in constant communication with the signal units. Every instrument of modern warfare was brought into action. The magnificence and efficiency of it all is beyond the scope of my poor vocabulary.

The evenings were usually devoted to social affairs, such as dances and receptions, given by the regular officers of the camp. On August 30 we, the officers of the 62d Cavalry Division, returned the compliment in a small way by giving a dinner dance which was largely attended. Among our guests were Assistant Secretary of War Wainwright and several members of Congress. Nothing seemed to have been overlooked by the camp officers to make every minute of our training period instructive and, above all, pleasant.

In closing I want to emphasize again the fact that in the present Army of the United States there is absolutely and positively no discrimination made between the regular officers and the reserve. We are all officers on an equal basis in one big harmonious army, *The Army of the United States*. The old feeling of jealousy (if one really existed) has entirely disappeared. There were instances, no doubt, during the war where regular army officers discriminated against those officers who came into the army from civil life. In this connection it is imperative to emphasize the fact that the delinquencies mentioned are not intended to refer to the great majority of regular officers; misconduct by a few, a very few, injuriously affected the reputation of all others. Let us freely admit that, in a very few instances, some regular army officers have not been without fault in their conduct toward reserve officers. However, in doing so we are not called upon to admit the honesty or the purity of motives of some who may have criticised unjustly. Criticisms of the American army officers after the war, it will be remembered, were not confined to the regular army officers alone, but included the emergency officers as well. The so-called "Hard-Boiled" Smith was an emergency officer.

We, the reserve officers, and others who served during the World War and have the experience and qualifications as leaders must, if we wish to

## THE MARINE CUP

preserve and protect our country, assist in the building up of the organized reserve, which comprises 80 per cent of our national defense. We can do this, with little inconvenience to ourselves, simply by accepting a commission in the *Cavalry Reserve Corps*, by attending the fifteen days' training camp, with full pay and allowances, if we can (if not, it is not compulsory); by taking the Cavalry Correspondence Course conducted by Division Headquarters, if we have the time (if not, it is not compulsory); by explaining to our friends that the Reserve idea is far beyond the experimental stage; that the plan is already working well, considering the fact that the organization has not, up to date, received the perfected co-operation of all concerned.

The filling up of the Reserve Corps depends largely upon the individual efforts of the Reserve Officers, and each one should make an honest attempt to procure the application of at least one prospect. If we are unable to "swing" him, let us send his name and address to Division Headquarters and they will do the rest. Now, that is not asking a great deal of a man who has the welfare of his country at heart. Right at the bottom of our hearts we are just as patriotic now as we were on April 6, 1917. Let us preserve the same spirit now that we showed then. *Our objective is 100 per cent. Action front! All reserve officers to the charge! All ex-officers the support! The public the reserve! Message center, Division Headquarters. Good luck, and let's see you in camp next summer!*

## The Marine Cup

**D**URING the firing of the skirmish run in the National Team Match at Camp Perry, in 1910, a marine officer, standing in the rear of the Marine Corps team, made some remarks in regard to the first shots fired which were held to violate the rule prohibiting coaching, and the Marine Corps team was disqualified by the executive officer of the matches. The score made by the Marine Corps team put them in second place and just above the Cavalry team. The Cavalry team, as an expression of good-will, made a request that the score of the Marine Corps team be counted for record, and, after consideration by the National Board for the Promotion of Rifle Practice, this was approved. In appreciation of this action on the part of the Cavalry team, the Marine Corps presented a cup to be awarded annually to the cavalryman making the highest score in the President's Match.

This incident has had a considerable influence in promoting good feeling and co-operation between the two services.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

The trophies for the President's Match include one for the high cavalryman, one for the high infantryman, one for the high man from the navy, one for the high National Guardsman, and one for the high civilian. It has been felt by cavalrymen that our branch should provide a trophy to be given annually to the high man from the Marine Corps in the President's Match.

The Cavalry Rifle Team fund, to which most cavalry officers have contributed, was sufficient to permit of the procurement of a suitable trophy, and with the sanction of the Chief of Cavalry a cup was accordingly designed and made, an illustration of which accompanies this article.

On November 21 last, the Chief of Cavalry, accompanied by the officers on duty in his office, visited the Commandant of the Marine Corps, Major General Lejeune, in the latter's office, and in the presence of the assembled cavalry and marine officers presented the cup with the following words:

General Lejeune, since the organization of my office, in July, 1920, the assembling of the records and data pertaining thereto have brought to my attention many items of interest. The one that stands out most markedly, by reason of the splendid spirit which actuated it, is doubtless familiar to you. I refer to an incident which occurred at Camp Perry during the national matches in 1910. On that occasion the cavalry felt it was but acting in a sportsmanlike manner; nevertheless, the very courteous act in response, on the part of the Marine Corps, will never be forgotten.

The Cavalryman's Cup, presented by the Marine Corps to the cavalryman making the highest score in the President's Match, has been and always will be a much-coveted trophy. General, I am glad to be the Chief of Cavalry, whose happy privilege it is to present to you, and to your corps, this trophy, to be awarded to the member of the Marine Corps making the highest score in the President's Match.

While this recognition comes a little late, be assured that it is freighted with the accumulated good-will of the passing years and with the heartfelt admiration which the cavalry has had and will have for the marines. The marines have always been models of esprit, morale, and of the other attributes which go to make up the good soldier. These qualities were wonderfully exemplified during the World War, and especially at Belleau Wood.

Allow me to wish for you and your corps a continuation of the splendid success which has marked your progress and which, I am sure, you will always achieve.

General Lejeune, in accepting the cup, replied that he received the cup on behalf of the Marine Corps, and on behalf of that corps desired to thank the cavalry and to express appreciation for the sentiments expressed by the Chief of Cavalry and the good feeling represented by the cup; that the members of the Marine Corps had the highest regard and admiration for the cavalry and desired very much to co-operate in promoting the friendliest relations between the two branches of the service.



THE MARINE CUP  
Inset: The Cavalryman's Cup





PRESENTATION OF THE MARINE CUP

Major-General Lejeune

Major-General Holbrook

## THE MARINE CUP

He referred to the fact that cavalry officers had served on the staff of the Second Division during the World War, and that the marines serving in that division held them in high regard. Finally, he referred to the fact that this cup would help to stimulate interest in good rifle shooting and would therefore be of much benefit to the Marine Corps and to the whole service.

The cup was entered as one of the trophies for the President's Match this past year, although it was not presented until after the matches were held. Lieutenant-Colonel Mumma, cavalry, Executive Officer of the National Matches, wrote from Camp Perry, September 20:

"MY DEAR GENERAL HOLBROOK:

"Receipt is acknowledged of your letter of September 16th, which I have had much pleasure in transmitting to the captain of the Marine Corps Rifle Team.

"Private Raymond O. Coulter, U. S. M. C., is the first winner.

"As a former winner of the Cavalryman's Cup, I am particularly well pleased with this action."

The cup carries as an emblem an etching of the Remington cavalryman that appears on the cover of the CAVALRY JOURNAL. The history of this drawing is furnished by Lieutenant-Colonel Seoane, Signal Corps. He states: "Since Remington, the artist, Colonels Hardie and Ripley have all passed away, it may be interesting to note that I used to hear Colonel Ripley state before gatherings of officers that Remington's horseman that adorns the front page of the CAVALRY JOURNAL was one Corporal or Sergeant Jack Lannon, who posed for Remington during the Spanish-American War. At that time he had about 30 years' service and belonged to Captain Hardie's Troop G of the 3d Cavalry; was tall and slender, and Colonel Ripley used to add that Remington described him as the most typical cavalryman that had ever come to his notice. He had already served thirty years, but one enlistment had been in another branch. He was so desirous that he should have a full service in the cavalry that, although eligible for retirement, he 'took on another hitch' in the cavalry, and so participated in the Santiago campaign. He contracted yellow fever and died at or near Santiago in 1898."



## Notes on the 1922 Endurance Ride

BY

Major J. M. WAINWRIGHT, 3d Cavalry

**T**HIS subject has been so well covered by Major C. L. Scott, Q. M. C. (Remount Service), in the November number of the *Remount*, that it is with considerable hesitancy that I submit these brief notes. However, as some readers of the *CAVALRY JOURNAL* may not see the *Remount*, it might not be amiss to here give a short description of the ride.

### PRELIMINARY JUDGING

Twenty-one entries were presented on Sunday, October 15, 1922, at Fort Ethan Allen, Vt., for participation in the annual Endurance Test. The conditions of this test are partially as follows:

The horse must be of known breeding and must be pure bred or at least a cross of one of the well-known breeds. Unlike the Colorado Ride, horses of unknown breeding are not eligible for entry. The breeding of the horses reported for preliminary judging was:

- One Arab (pure bred).
- Six half-bred Arabs.
- Two Morgans.
- Four grade Morgans.
- One saddle-bred.
- One grade saddle-bred.
- Two half-breeds (thoroughbred cross).
- Four thoroughbreds.

The preliminary judging was very thorough and included weighing and the taking of measurements. All defects and blemishes were carefully noted, in order that such other defects and blemishes as might be developed during the ride might be taken into consideration. Each horse was carefully judged, stripped, and under the saddle in motion. Each rider was weighed and the dead weight that he must carry calculated, in order to bring up the total burden of the horse to 225 pounds. I believe that all carried this minimum weight except the winner, *Vendetta*, who, on account of the weight of her rider, carried 235 pounds. After the completion of the preliminary judging, the horses were considered to be in the hands of the judges. Only forage furnished by the authorities might be fed and no one except his rider could care for a horse in any way. The horses were all stabled in the veterinary hospital at Fort Ethan Allen, each in a box stall. Such of the riders as so desired were furnished accommodations in the bachelor quarters; others stayed, from choice, in Burlington.

## NOTES ON THE 1922 ENDURANCE RIDE

### THE FIRST DAY'S RIDE

The route of the first day's ride from Fort Ethan Allen, Vt., to Brandon, Vt., was so laid as to cover sixty miles. The roads traversed were good and generally soft. Some macadam was encountered, but one could generally find soft going along the sides of the road.

All started off promptly at 6:30 a. m., "in a bunch." Soon, however, the riders strung out over considerable distance, due to the different gaits taken. Here I want to digress for a moment and advise any officer who may participate in this ride in future to let the crowd get away first, thus starting his horse out quietly and alone, particularly so if he be riding a horse inclined to be "hot." Failure to do this caused my mount, *Good Review*, to fret a great deal during the first twenty-five miles, causing him to be somewhat exhausted at the noon halt.

The noon halt of this day's ride was made at the Government Morgan Horse Farm at Middletown, Vt. All riders halted on this as on succeeding days to feed and water their horses and grab a hasty bite of lunch themselves. About twenty minutes were usually consumed at this halt. The afternoon's ride passed without incident, except that the rain, which had commenced at about 11:00 a. m., continued all afternoon, making the footing unpleasantly slippery in places.

All the riders reached Brandon, the end of the day's ride, at 3:30, thus arriving in the minimum time allowed, nine hours.

Immediately after arrival each day, all riders were weighed in with their equipment. On this first day all riders weighed more than at the start, on account of the rain-water that had been soaked up by the equipment, blanket, etc. I might add that at the end of a sixty-mile ride the packed saddle *feels* as if it weighed a lot more as it is carried to the scales than it did during the same operation in the morning.

The first night the horses were well stabled in large and roomy box stalls. Water and forage were conveniently placed. From arrival until about 6:30 all worked on their horses, cooling them and carefully hand-rubbing legs, grooming, and feeding. This practice prevailed daily. Cooling out is, as all horsemen know, one of the most important operations in the care of a tired, hot horse. I noted many times during the five days that a horse would cool out nicely, be quite dry, completely groomed, and apparently all ready for the night, and then break out in a sweat. In this case the wise rider starts all over again to cool his horse out, walking him, covered with a light blanket, in a sheltered place, if practicable.

The rules of the test required that the riders leave their horses alone from 8:00 p. m. until 5:00 a. m.; consequently, after having had an excellent dinner at the Brandon Inn, all went back to the stable, fed their last feed of grain and the remaining hay, and left the stable at 8:00 o'clock. The riders were very comfortably quartered at the Brandon Inn.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

### THE SECOND DAY'S RIDE

On the morning of the second day the grade Anglo-Arab *Oh La* was withdrawn before the start. All the others completed the day's ride without incident, but only a comparatively few finished on time. During the forenoon the roads were generally soft, but very slippery; in the afternoon the greater part of the roads were metaled and the country pretty hilly, making it very difficult to maintain the required speed. The rain continued during the greater part of the day. The day's ride terminated at Fort Ethan Allen, as did that of each succeeding day, which arrangement is far more convenient than stopping at a different place each night. This night the grade Morgan mare *Scotia* was withdrawn at 8:30. She was considered to be too much exhausted to continue.

### THE THIRD DAY'S RIDE

The morning of the third day opened up clear, bright, and cold. All horses got started between 6:30 and 7 except the grade Morgan *Cascade*, which was withdrawn before the start. At 8:30 Mr. W. R. Brown withdrew his grade Arab *Omar* and his Anglo-Arab *Fleuret*. At 9:45 the same owner withdrew his pure-bred Arab *Sargon*. *Sargon* was the only pure-bred Arab in the test and is truly a remarkable little horse. During the first two days' ride I noticed him trotting along steadily, with a low, straight action, making about 6½ miles an hour and keeping it up, regardless of the grades or the ground. He never seemed to be tired, never fussed or worried, but jogged jauntily along, carrying considerably over one-fourth of his own weight. I do not know his exact measurements, but I should judge him to be about 14.1 hands in height and to weigh between 800 and 850 pounds.

The forenoon of this day was delightful in every way—nice, clear, snappy weather, good roads, and a truly beautiful country. The route lay generally northward of Fort Ethan Allen, partly along the shores of Lake Champlain. The noon halt was made at St. Albans, from which place the return route lay east of that over which the forenoon's ride had been made and over rather higher, rougher country. During the afternoon it became colder and a strong wind came up. Twice during the afternoon violent snow-storms were encountered, accompanied by such a terrific wind as to make it next to impossible to follow the road. This weather very greatly added to the difficulty of the day's ride, already hard enough on account of the very hilly country traversed that day.

*Gold Review* was the only horse to finish the third day's ride in nine hours, and was, at that time, ahead on the time score. The saddle-bred mare *Sunray*, a beautiful animal, but without enough "bread basket" for this sort of work, was withdrawn this evening, after returning to Fort Ethan Allen.

## NOTES ON THE 1922 ENDURANCE RIDE

### THE FOURTH DAY'S RIDE

On the fourth morning the grade Morgan *Major S.* was withdrawn before starting, on account of exhaustion, accompanied by a severe congestion in the lungs, from which he died later. The severity of the weather encountered on the third day, more than the distance covered, is probably the cause of the death of this gallant Morgan.

At about 9 o'clock of the fourth morning, after having gone over 15 miles, *Gold Review* was withdrawn on account of lameness resulting from an old injury. He was the first of the thoroughbreds to drop out, and that only after having gone about two hundred miles with a perfect time score. The old horse was game to the last, a true descendant of his desert-bred ancestors, but more later of thoroughbred horses.

This day's ride was not so trying on man and beast as the third day's ride, for the weather was fine. The majority of the horses finished on time. The route was in a northeasterly direction from Fort Ethan Allen, over a very hilly country, but with good footing the majority of the way.

### THE FIFTH DAY'S RIDE

On the morning of the fifth day the ground was covered with a wet snow. This made the going very bad, as the horses' feet continually balled up. Most of the riders carried their shoeing hammers in their hands for the first two or three hours, dismounting frequently to knock out the balls. The route lay in a southeasterly direction from Fort Ethan Allen, generally following the course of the Winooski River. The going, which would have been good, except for a few miles of a metaled road, was during the forenoon very bad, on account of the wet, soft snow. The noon halt was made at Waterbury, Vt., from which place the return trip lay principally over the same roads as had been traversed going out. The ride terminated at the hay scales at Fort Ethan Allen, where the nine horses that finished were at once weighed. Therefore, in studying the weight lost by the winners, consideration should be given to the fact that when weighed before the start, the horses had been fed and watered just before they were weighed. When weighed at the finish, they had just completed a sixty-mile stretch with the attendant shrinkage.

Before starting on the fifth day the pure-bred Morgan mare *Fair Lady* was withdrawn on account of the illness of her rider; the grade Anglo-Arab *Toute Bell* and the thoroughbred *Vagrant* were also withdrawn, the latter on account of an enlarged hock due to a little "jack" that he had thrown out. He showed no lameness.

The following table shows the score, time, breeding, weight, etc., of the six horses that were placed. Of the nine horses to finish the test, two were withdrawn before the final judging, which took place the morning after the completion of the ride. These animals were the grade Morgan *Jane Gray* and

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

the half-bred Arab *Rustern Bey*, a veteran of four endurance tests, in each of which he has finished and three times been placed—a truly remarkable record of a wonderful horse!

Name.	Breeding sire and dam.	Height.	Weight.	Condition score (max. 60 per cent).	Time score (max. 40 per cent).	Total score.	Loss of weight.	Rider.
<i>Vendetta</i> ...	Thoroughbred, by <i>Alon-a-Dale</i> out of <i>Marcotina</i> .	15.2½	1,012½	56	39	95	4%	Major L. A. Beard, Remount Service.
<i>Gladstone</i> ...	Morgan, by <i>General Gates</i> out of <i>Minnehaha</i> .	15½	922½	56	36	92	11.3	Mr. Chas. Gordon.
<i>Grant</i> .....	Grade saddlebred, by <i>Missouri King</i> .	16.1¼	1,185	50	38½	88½	10.6	Mr. A. A. Langley.
<i>Cragmore</i> ...	Half thoroughbred, half standardbred, by <i>Goodrich</i> out of <i>Lady Roma</i> .	15.3	1,032½	45	38½	83½	6.1	Major C. P. George, F. A.
<i>Pathfinder</i> ...	Thoroughbred, by <i>Firestone</i> out of <i>Margaret Alice</i> .	15.2	990	45	38½	83½	7.3	Major C. L. Scott, Remount Service.
<i>Clonmell</i> ...	Irish hunter, three-quarter bred, by <i>Ceradoe</i> .	16	1,050	40	38½	78½	7.1	Mr. John J. Morris.

NOTE.—Last year the total score of highest horse was 84 7/45 per cent and on sixth horse was 61 7/45 per cent.

### GENERAL REMARKS

**Preliminary Training.**—I think that all riders in the 1922 endurance test will agree with me that in past years the horses, particularly the army entries, have been overtrained. In many cases the horse has run his race before the test started. This year the horses were not overtrained, but were trained hard. This was accomplished, so far as the army horses were concerned, by two months' training, including long, slow rides (never over thirty miles) twice a week; short, fast work (all trot and gallop) once a week, and walking exercise and grazing the balance of the time. The result was that the horses, while hard and accustomed to carrying weight, were in rather "high" condition, which I believe is what cavalry horses should be before entering on hard field service. Of course, I don't refer to horses rolling in soft fat.

**Watering.**—I found that every time I watered my horse he at once freshened up. While he drank, I bathed off his head and nostrils with cold water, rubbed his flexor tendons, and washed him around the flanks and between the hind legs. For these purposes I carried a sponge where it would be readily accessible, and recommend that all cavalymen do likewise on long, hard marches, particularly in hot weather.

## NOTES ON THE 1922 ENDURANCE RIDE

**Feeding.**—Not more than fourteen pounds of grain is allowed daily, so I am of the opinion that not more than this amount should be fed in training. Of course, during the severe work one wants his horse to eat all he will, and the problem, therefore, reduces itself into a division of the amount allowed, so that the horse will eat it all and will get the most good out of what he eats. I found the best division of the feed to be as follows:

Morning feed .....	4 pounds grain.
Noon feed .....	2 pounds grain.
Afternoon feed, given as soon as cooled out....	4 pounds grain.
8:00 p. m. feed.....	4 pounds grain.

The hay ration was unlimited. I fed a small amount as soon as I got in in the afternoon and a little more after the afternoon grain feed, and then gave the horse all he would eat during the night, just before I left him, at 8:00 p. m.

**Massaging.**—A great deal of good can be done by properly placed hand-rubbing, particularly to the flexor tendons and hocks. One must know how and where to rub, to do any good; but every race-track tout learns it; so should every cavalryman.

**Equipment.**—With one exception, every officer in the test rode a regulation officers' saddle (model 1917 or French pattern). Not one of our horses had a pimple on its back at the finish, which cannot be said of some of the horses ridden with stock saddles. We (the officers) used *all-wool* blankets, much softer and finer than the issue saddle blanket. To make up the necessary weight (225 pounds), we all carried fitted horseshoes, shoeing hammers, rasps, pincers, clinch cutters, and hoof hooks. Most of these were, of course, essential, in case of a lost or loose shoe, but they added weight in a more useful way than carrying lead. Everything used on the horse had to be carried on his back, so our equipment included an unlined horse cover (issue pattern), dandy brush, rub rags, folding canvas bucket, rope halter, surcingle, and sponges. Each rider also carried a slicker.

A snaffle bit for these rides is a great advantage, as the animal can drink comfortably without having the bit removed. If a curb bit is necessary, a broken pelham is good, as far as the ease in drinking is concerned. For cavalry in the field, of course the double bridle is necessary, but great comfort to the horses will result if, on long and hard marches, where tactical considerations can be eliminated, the bit is removed, put in the saddle-bags, and the horse ridden only in the bridoon.

**Gaits.**—On these rides, where sixty miles must be covered in nine hours or the time score suffer, one must trot practically all the time, except up and down hill or on bad ground. Great care must be taken to frequently change the diagonal on which the rider posts. To stick to one diagonal on any long, hard ride spells "lame horse" surely. I believe that a gallop of a few hundred

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

yards every hour or so is a good thing and, when practicable, it should be done in small cavalry commands. The winner in this year's test galloped about a quarter of a mile each hour. This eases the rider and the horse too.

**Endurance of Riders.**—One of the riders of this test (a cowboy, bucaroo, and broncho buster) said to me: "I have ridden sixty miles a day lots of times, but this is the first time I ever rode sixty *measured* miles." He expressed the sentiments of every rider. Sixty miles is a long ride, and to keep it up for five consecutive days and care for your horse at night is a severe test of the man. If one could lead his horse once in a while, it would be grateful. This last was so firmly driven home to me that never again will I march a cavalry command long distances without leading frequently.

**A Few Suggestions for Future Rides.**—In case this ever falls into the hands of those who so well manage these endurance tests, and for other reasons, I want to register a few suggestions as to future endurance rides:

First. Have each day's ride start and finish at the same place. No useful purpose is served in going to different places each or any night.

Second. Have the ride in a "horse country" where soft roads are plentiful. I suggest that next year it be held in the Genesee Valley or in Virginia, in the neighborhood of Warrenton.

Third. Select the time of year, depending on the locality in which held, that the weather will probably be moderate.

Fourth. Allow grooms; a tired man does not do justice to a tired horse.

**Participation by Cavalry Officers.**—This year's ride was participated in by only two cavalry officers (Major Joseph Plassemeyer and the writer), one field artilleryman (Major C. P. George, 2d Field Artillery) and three Remount officers (Majors C. L. Scott, A. H. Jones, and L. A. Beard) being the other army participants. This event is of great educational value to a cavalryman, and I would like to see a lot of cavalry officers who can get horses of any good known breeding take part in these tests.

**Thoroughbreds.**—A word or two about thoroughbred horses in these long rides. This year (1922) the two big endurance rides, one in Colorado and the other in Vermont, were both won by thoroughbreds. Of the four thoroughbreds entered in the latter, two finished and were placed. Two fell out, due to injury, not to fatigue. None of them ever showed the slightest tendency to quit and each one has a heart as big as a house. No matter how tired they might have been, they were always eager to go forward. All the thoroughbreds in the Vermont test were ridden by army officers. They were:

**Vendetta**, by *Allan-a-Dale* out of *Marcotine*, owned and bred by Mr. J. Watson Webb, of Shelborne Farms, Vt., was ridden to win by Major L. A. Beard, Q. M. C.

**Pathfinder**, by *Firestone* out of *Margaret Alice*, was ridden to fifth place by Major C. L. Scott, Q. M. C., and is owned by the U. S. Government.

**Vagrant**, by *Allan-a-Dale* out of *Nuit Blanche*, like his half-sister, the

## A SCHOOL FOR ARMY WAGONERS

winner, was bred by Mr. J. Watson Webb, and was ridden by Major A. H. Jones, Q. M. C. He is owned by the U. S. Government.

**Gold Review**, by *Oriolus* out of *Excitement*, is an imported Irish horse. He is owned by Major Stanley Koch and was ridden by the writer.

**Conclusion.**—These tests do not prove "what horse for the cavalry." They prove that a *well-bred* horse is superior in stamina, power, courage, and in every other respect to a "cold-blooded plug." The outstanding feature about this test is that it amounts to a 300-mile race, is a big sporting event, and a liberal education in horsemanship in the field.

## A School for Army Wagoners

BY

Lieutenant RICHARD M. GAW, Cavalry

ACCORDING to the Tables of Organization, reduced peace strength, a regiment of cavalry has 17 escort wagons and 12 light wagons or trailmobiles in its field and combat trains. Of these, the escort wagons are drawn by four mules and the trailmobiles by two horses. Thus 29 vehicles are united in the Service Troop of the regiment. However, as the trains will be split up among the troops and squadrons in the field, drivers for the trailmobiles must be provided by the troops. The average trooper is a poor driver, knowing little about draft animals, harness, or the theory of correct driving. Hence a school was formed, as a part of the E. & R. system, which was attended by the wagoners of the service troop and selected men from the lettered troops of the regiment. There was a total of 36 members of the school, of whom 32 were graduated. If a man showed himself to be unadapted to the work, he was eliminated and his place filled by another.

A schedule of instruction was adopted, consisting of one hour's instruction four or five days a week, with an occasional session of three hours. The first days were devoted to talks and demonstrations on nomenclature and care of harness and harnessing. Then came demonstrations on nomenclature and upkeep of vehicles. The class assembled four new escort wagons and made repairs on old ones.

After all members of the class were familiar with the harness and vehicles, driving lessons were begun. Old teamsters and new ones were placed together on a wagon, the old-timers helping and instructing the beginners, first with two animals and later with four. Finally the beginners were given a two-line team by themselves. When they could drive in a straight line, turn, back, zigzag through a line of stakes and back into a difficult place, they were given a four-line team, and the same procedure gone over until they were

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

proficient. Interspersed with these driving lessons were informal talks and conferences on stable management, feeding, and hippology. Questions from the men were encouraged and interest was shown.

When the students could drive and had their teams under control, close-order wagon drill was taken up, the movements conforming to Cavalry Drill Regulations. This work was first given at a walk and later at a trot. Once or twice the gallop was taken up, but only for a short time.

Finally the train was required by a reviewing officer to pass in review at a walk, trot, and gallop, with the result that even gaits and good alignment were maintained. All the previous work, both individual driving and combined drill, had been of great value in training the animals as well as the wagoners.

March discipline was taken up during several road marches by the train. Instruction was given in loading and unloading various kinds of loads, parking, camping, the defense of a convoy, and hasty road and bridge repairs. Wagons were overturned, placed in difficult positions in ditches, wheels taken off, and various breakdowns made or simulated and the wagoners instructed and examined in methods of repair in the field.

The wagon-masters and assistants were utilized as assistant instructors in the school, which lasted four months. Competition was encouraged in all lines of the school work, and small cash prizes were given every month to stimulate interest. At a field day, given just before the school closed, three wagons were tied for first place. Their teams were equally well groomed. All harness was spotless. All wagons were completely equipped and equally clean, and all three were able to back into a narrow space at the first trial. After much worry on the part of the judges, the prize money for first, second, and third places was pooled and equally divided among the three, and all bets on the result were called off.

In order to insure continuation of the training received in the school, a practice is carried out in the regiment which has proved a great benefit. Every morning all stable police wagons are formed in a train after they are loaded, marched to the dump by the wagon-master, unloaded and cleaned simultaneously, and marched to the forage sheds. Here they are loaded with the day's forage and grain, the wagoners help each other in the loading, and then return to the stable area, each wagon going to the troop to which it is assigned for stable police, unloading the forage and grain and returning to the service troop. Thus all wagons get to their stables at approximately the same time, and stables can be held formally, as in the lettered troops. This was a difficult thing to do formerly, as wagons were coming in at all hours of the morning, and the proper supervision could not be given to the grooming of mules and cleaning of harness.

## NOTICE

ANNUAL MEETING OF THE UNITED STATES CAVALRY ASSOCIATION.

The Annual Meeting of the United States Cavalry Association will be held at Washington, D. C., on Monday, January 15, 1923, at the Army and Navy Club.

The election of officers and of members of the Executive Council will take place at this meeting.

## PRIZE ESSAY CONTEST

**T**HE Executive Council of the U. S. Cavalry Association announces a prize essay contest for which all members of the Cavalry Association are eligible. The subject may be chosen from the entire field of cavalry interest. It may be historical or original; it may deal with tactical employment of cavalry, training, cavalry weapons, the horse, or any matter closely connected with cavalry activities.

It must contain not less than 2,500 words nor more than 6,000 words. It may be accompanied by illustrations, which may be of any character. The essays will be judged by a committee of the Executive Council, which will consider interest, instructional value, original thought or research, and presentation (literary merit, readability, attractiveness).

All manuscripts submitted will be available for use if desired by the Editor and will be paid for in such case at the usual rates.

Prizes:

First, \$150.00; Second, \$75.00; Third, \$25.00

If, in the judgment of the committee of award, the manuscripts submitted do not have sufficient merit, it may withdraw any prizes from the competition.

Manuscripts should preferably be typed double space and in duplicate. They should be mailed so as to reach the Secretary not later than May 1, 1923. Each manuscript should be signed with a nom-de-plume; the nom-de-plume and writer's name and address should be submitted inclosed in a separate sealed envelope, without any superscription, attached to the manuscript. The author's name should not appear on the manuscript nor elsewhere, except in the sealed attached envelope.

## Editorial Comment

### RESERVE CAVALRY TO HORSE

THE GREAT OBSTACLE to the fullest development of a cavalry reserve would seem to be the lack of opportunity for mounted training. The correspondence courses provide for instruction in a number of subjects. Even theoretical instruction in horsemanship and the care and management of horses may be given by this means. A few reserve officers are able to attend a course at the Cavalry School and a fortunate few are the possessors of saddle horses or have the opportunity of using them. Nevertheless the lack of a general opportunity for reserve officers (and eventually the enlisted reserve) to mount up and ride is a serious drawback.

In this connection it is interesting to note what is being done in somewhat analogous cases in France and Belgium. In the former country a system of riding societies is already actively functioning, which has for its avowed primary purpose the elementary preparation in horsemanship of the young men who will later be called to service, and has been resorted to as a preliminary to the garrison training, now reduced from two years to eighteen months.

In Belgium the reserve officers are encouraged to take regular courses of mounted instruction in the military garrisons where there are mounted troops. They are even permitted—under regulation—to take horses of active mounted organizations for individual riding. Above all, in both countries the provisions for the use of horses by others than the active military personnel recognize that Sunday is the day on which the opportunity is greatest.

To be sure, our country does not in the least resemble France or Belgium. Many American reserve officers would have to make a railroad journey of some hundreds of miles to avail themselves of the opportunity which the average Frenchman or Belgian will find close to his hand; also, there are other considerations. Horses in the regular service are assigned to its individuals, and the occasional use of individually assigned horses by reserve officers has its possibilities of trouble; but this difficulty, like many of a similar character, can doubtless be overcome.

The conception of the Regular Army as only one component of the Army of the United States will inspire the proper attitude with which to approach this problem. The realization must come that just as the regular cavalry must furnish the nucleus for organization of the reserve cavalry and the means of its instruction—officers, men, camps, correspondence courses—so also must it expect to contribute horses.

If it is objected that the cavalry is most of it stationed too remote from centers of population to make this practicable, then it can only be urged in reply that *ipso facto* it is failing to accomplish its principal task, which is the

## EDITORIAL COMMENT

building up of the other and larger components (in its own branch) of the national defense project. Many other elements admittedly enter into the distribution of regular cavalry units and will prevent for a long time, if not, indeed, always, an ideal distribution, regarded from this angle alone; but since the building up of the National Guard and the Organized Reserves is, after all, the most important of our missions, this matter of closer physical contact between the regular cavalry and the other components is bound to influence the future distribution of regular cavalry troops; so that ultimately the plans adopted in the thickly populated European countries may find a ready application with us. The degree of success of those plans should therefore be of interest to us.

In the meantime the case is not hopelessly bad in this country. While much of our regular cavalry is far removed from thickly populated regions and many army posts have no cavalry contingents, nevertheless some of our cavalry garrisons are ideally located for the purpose of experimenting with this idea. Its success or failure at these points will go far to determine whether the plan will come eventually to have a wider application.

It is interesting to note that reserve cavalry officers in the vicinity of Chicago have been allowed to avail themselves of the opportunity for mounted training represented by the 14th Cavalry at Fort Sheridan. At a training day recently held at that station on a Sunday, forty-four reserve officers had an hour and a half of mounted drill and a ride on the bridle path, and after a dinner at one of the troop barracks had two and a half hours of dismounted pistol practice on the near-by target range; also, the 3d Cavalry, at Fort Myer, has offered an opportunity for some of the officers of the 306th Cavalry to participate in an organization officers' ride. These activities are a hopeful indication of what can be and, to a limited extent, is being done in this important direction.

If we are going to have a cavalry reserve that is worthy of the name, it must be a mounted cavalry reserve. It's a long way to go, doubtless, and the first steps are being taken in a tentative fashion, but they are necessary steps and the effort of the whole branch will ultimately overcome the difficulties. The effort will be more than justified by the result.

### CAVALRY JOURNAL BINDING AND INDEX

THE INDEX OF VOLUME XXXI (1922) of THE CAVALRY JOURNAL is ready for distribution, free of cost, to any subscriber who may make request for a copy. It is appropriate here to inform subscribers that the management of THE CAVALRY JOURNAL will have the numbers of any year bound in half morocco for about \$1.25. Subscribers who desire their JOURNALS bound should furnish them to THE CAVALRY JOURNAL office, as stocks of back numbers are very limited and in the case of many numbers are entirely exhausted. Indices for Volume XXIX (1920) and Volume XXX (1921) are still available for those who may desire them.



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Copies of January and April, 1922, JOURNALS are in demand, and the October, 1922, edition is nearly exhausted; it is requested that any one having a copy of these numbers forward same to THE CAVALRY JOURNAL office; 25 cents will be paid for back numbers.

Old numbers of THE CAVALRY JOURNAL are received from time to time by THE CAVALRY JOURNAL office, which will welcome requests for such numbers. They will be supplied in so far as they are available. If not available, they will be advertised for in the JOURNAL.

### HOPES FOR AN ARMY HORSE SHOW TEAM AT THE OLYMPIC GAMES

IN A RECENT number of *Rider and Driver* a front-page editorial invited attention to the desirability of providing for the attendance of American Army officers at foreign horse shows. This has been a matter of discussion in several circles for some months and has latterly become of more wide-spread interest. Especially the fine showing made by our officers at the horse shows at Rochester, Syracuse, and New York this past fall has interested a number of keen horse lovers in this matter and *Rider and Driver* proposes the establishment of a fund for the purpose of providing proper mounts and sending officers. Officers who have become acquainted with the project have assuredly been highly appreciative of this spirit shown by their civilian friends, and the War Department has evinced a hearty approval of the idea. The whole matter was taken up by the American Remount Association, and its present status can best be indicated by a letter from the chairman of the Sports and Competition Committee of the American Remount Association to Colonel R. H. Williams and a letter of the latter to the Chief of Staff, which follow:

DECEMBER 4, 1922.

Colonel R. H. WILLIAMS, Jr.,  
#1 Broadway, New York, N. Y.

DEAR SIR: Great interest is being displayed by civilian horsemen in sending suitable horse-show teams to the Olympiad in London and to the Olympic Games in 1924. Many inquiries as to what work is being done and also many offers of assistance are daily being sent to this Association and to me as chairman of the Sports and Competitions Committee.

In order to handle any such work, it is thought that a special horse-show committee should be appointed by the Sports and Competitions Committee of the American Remount Association. It is further thought that the full support and co-operation of the War Department in any plan should also be obtained. Therefore, with the approval of the Executive Committee of the American Remount Association, I, as chairman of the Sports and Competitions Committee, name you and Mr. Pierre Lorillard, Jr., as the committee of

## EDITORIAL COMMENT

two, with full power to make necessary arrangements for proper organization and action for an Army Horse Show team at the Olympiad in London and the Olympic Games in 1924, including obtaining the approval and co-operation of the War Department.

Sincerely yours,

C. L. SCOTT,  
Chairman, Sports and Competitions Committee.

DECEMBER 4, 1922.

CHIEF OF STAFF, U. S. ARMY,  
State, War and Navy Building, Washington, D. C.

DEAR SIR: In order to finance, without expense to the government, an army horse-show team at the Olympiad in London and at the Olympic Games in 1924, a number of civilian horsemen have expressed a willingness to donate both horses and funds for that purpose, and some have even begun work thereon.

In order to formulate a definite plan for this undertaking and to have the nucleus of a central organization for handling the work, the chairman of the Sports and Competition Committee of the American Remount Association, with the approval of the Executive Committee of said Association, has designated Mr. Pierre Lorillard, Jr., and myself as a committee of two, with full power to make the arrangements for proper organization and action, including obtaining the approval and support of the War Department.

This Special Committee, consisting of myself and Mr. Lorillard, thinks that, in order to complete the committee, a cavalry officer, an artillery officer, and an officer of the Remount Service, Q. M. C., should be included thereon. The Special Committee therefore requests that you designate, or have the Chief of Services designate, three officers, as indicated above, to serve on this committee.

All plans of the committee will be submitted to the War Department for approval. As I was informed by you in your letter to me dated November 24, 1922, before the organization of this Special Committee, that a scheme of this character for entering an army team for Olympiad and Olympic Games in 1924 had the official support and backing of the War Department, I trust that the above plan, more in detail, and the organization of the committee as suggested herein will meet with the full approval and support of the War Department.

Yours truly,

R. H. WILLIAMS.

As this number of the CAVALRY JOURNAL is being prepared for the press, it is learned that the War Department has given approval to the plan and will name three officers, as proposed, to form with Colonel Williams and Mr. Lorillard a committee to complete arrangements.

Success of this project seems assured, therefore, and it is evident that it will be in competent hands. The best interests of the service require that mounted officers back this project with the utmost enthusiasm and endeavor, in so far as they may be invited, to co-operate by the committee. Certainly,

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

the army should be generally informed of this project, for a general interest in this work will be an encouragement not only to the civilians who proposed it and pledged a liberal support, but also to the officers who may be selected to compete.

### PROGRESS IN THE ORGANIZED RESERVES

IT IS ASSUMED that the attention of Reserve officers will naturally be drawn to THE ORGANIZED RESERVES Section of the CAVALRY JOURNAL. It is to be hoped that officers of the regular service and of the National Guard will also have a regard to that section. In this number one of the regular officers on duty with the Organized Reserves tells just what has been done and is being done to develop a Reserve division of Cavalry from a paper theory to a physical fact. Regular officers who may be detailed some day on this character of duty will do well to keep informed of the splendid progress which is being made.

### CAVALRY AND THE ENDURANCE RIDES

READERS OF THIS CAVALRY JOURNAL will note the accounts of the two endurance rides of the past year written by participants of those rides, and will also probably note the small share in those rides undertaken by the cavalry. In one of them a cavalryman was the winner, through his own individual energy and efforts. The cavalry participant in the other calls attention to the deplorable lack of interest shown by the cavalry in the eastern ride. The cavalry must sit up and take notice.

The Remount Service, the Field Artillery, civilian horsemen, and cow-punchers are getting the principal benefit from these rides. Assuredly, the cavalry should take the lead.

The difficulty lies principally in the great expense which an individual officer must sustain, since either ride is held at a great distance from the stations of most officers. It is suggested, therefore, that this is a matter to be taken up within each regiment or cavalry garrison, or possibly by the whole branch, to the end that a number of officers will be enabled to participate in these important horse events in the future.

### "JOURNAL" SUBSCRIPTIONS

AS THE CAVALRY JOURNAL goes to press for this issue, there is but one regiment which has a 100 per cent subscription list, the 13th Cavalry, in which every officer and troop is paid up. Captain Ira A. Correll, Adjutant of the Thirteenth, is responsible for this proper condition. The lack of remittances from one officer in both the 8th and the 12th is all that prevents those regiments from maintaining their previous record. The 4th Cavalry has only

## EDITORIAL COMMENT

three officers preventing a 100 per cent record. About 80 per cent of regular cavalry officers are members of the U. S. Cavalry Association. It should be 100 per cent. Regimental representatives can do no more than ask officers to join. The individuals must see their duty and come in—and stay in! Every officer commanding a unit must see that his unit is paid up at all times. The men of the cavalry are entitled to know all about their arm. The CAVALRY JOURNAL can be better and more attractive in proportion as the management gets support from its proper field.

### EMBELLISHING THE OFFICE OF THE CHIEF OF CAVALRY

NINE OUT of the fourteen regiments have ordered coats of arms for exhibition in the office of the Chief of Cavalry. Seven of these have already been finished and framed, and they make a handsome show which every visitor to the Chief must appreciate. The special organization insignia which is now authorized by uniform regulations is being collected as it is being manufactured and will be on exhibition. The tabards of the several regiments are also being collected for exhibition. The 7th Cavalry was the first to send in its tabard, adorned with its very handsome hand-painted coat of arms.

A complete set of panoramic views of all the cavalry garrisons and regiments decorate the walls of the office, while a gallery of panels afford an opportunity to present to the visitor a fine collection of photographs showing spectacular jumping and other cavalry activities. Cavalry equipment is illustrated by actual sets of equipment which are kept properly shined and polished. Cavalrymen may be assured that the office of their Chief makes as fine an appearance as any in Washington.

### COMPENSATION TO CONTRIBUTORS

THE EXECUTIVE COUNCIL has authorized the Editor to offer to contributors to THE CAVALRY JOURNAL a remuneration at the rate of one dollar a page, such compensation to be not less than five dollars for any contribution. It is recognized that the amount offered is inconsiderable, and it is offered, not as a measure of the value of the contribution to THE CAVALRY JOURNAL, but purely as a recognition of the fact that the author has given to THE JOURNAL something of value.

The Prize Essay Contest (announced on page 85) and this proffered compensation are for the purpose of inspiring a more general effort of composition—which of course involves study and professional preparation. This is conceived as being one of the objects for which the Cavalry Association was founded. The Editor will give careful consideration to every manuscript submitted.

## Topics of the Day

### ARMORED CARS FOR CAVALRY UNITS

IN THE FRENCH ARMY there have been organized, for use with the cavalry, fourteen battalions of armored cars carrying a 37 mm. gun and a Hotchkiss machine-gun in a turret. The combat group is commanded by a captain and is organized in 3 or 4 combat sections, each section being commanded by a lieutenant and including 3 or 4 combat cars, 1 liaison car, and 1 motorcycle. Each cavalry division has three groups, or 42 armored cars with turrets. Each armored car is commanded by a warrant officer, who has under his orders a driver, a gunner, and a loading number; so that four men are carried in the car.

The combat cars of a cavalry automobile machine-gun group are the American "white" truck and are armored. They carry a Hotchkiss machine-gun and a 37 mm. semi-automatic gun located in a revolving turret. They are protected all over by plates of 8 mm. shrapnel-proof armor, which can resist the normal small-arms bullet up to 30 meters and the armor-piercing bullet up to within 200 meters. In addition to the four men, this vehicle transports a supply of ammunition, including tracer bullets and explosive shells.

These cars are capable of traveling forward or backward with nearly equal facility and their practical speed is from 18 to 20 kilometers an hour. Their gasoline supply will be sufficient for 250 km. These cars are 5.60 meters long and 2 meters wide; they weigh six tons.

The liaison cars are the ordinary touring type, armored, and are used to transport officers and liaison agents. They can also be utilized to bring up light ammunition supply during an action.

### NINTH CAVALRY MAKES BRILLIANT SHOWING

#### 31st Infantry Gives Praise to Cavalrymen

IT IS FORTUNATE that success is in a large measure its own reward. There is the feeling of satisfaction and joy of accomplishment which springs from a sense of duty well performed, of high attainment, of excellence and superiority following honest effort.

It has been our pleasure recently to observe at first hand a very fine body of troops. It is with considerable pride that we point to the fact that we belong to the same army as E and G Troops of the 9th Cavalry, which were recently combined to form an escort for Secretary Denby. Although they belong to a different branch of the service, who among us was not filled with admiration and inspired to new efforts by their example?

What soldierly bearing! What splendid deportment! What immaculate equipment! What quiet efficiency! New uniforms, cut to the latest pattern; every button lacquered; shoes and leggings new and stained to match

## TOPICS OF THE DAY

each other and all leather horse equipment; white stocks; new hats, newly blocked; new hat cords; new chin straps, all uniform; spur straps new and alike; saber scabbards cleaned with "Khaki Blanco;" spurs burnished to perfection. It is apparent that every man must have expended a good deal of his own money to prepare himself as above for this occasion.

Horses were in good condition after a three days' march, but all were clipped upon arrival in Manila and given an extra hour's grooming before the ceremony.

In order to make the best appearance possible, an extra set of saddle equipment had been carried along in the wagons. These saddles were the crowning feature of the display. Each one, together with all straps and attachments, was polished like cordovan, every metal part, down to the smallest rivet, was highly burnished, and all saddle cloths and blankets were new. Bridles were polished to match the saddles and all metal parts brilliantly shined.

There is no excellence without great labor, and those of us who observed these cavalrymen can testify to the labor as well as the excellence. The day not being long enough they worked well into the night and arose long before daybreak to complete the final touches.

Troop E is regularly commanded by Captain R. S. Parker, Troop G by Captain R. B. Trimble. The latter officer commanded the combined troop with 1st Lieutenants W. L. Barriger and E. F. Cress.

It is regrettable that bad weather prevented this immaculate body of men from showing to best advantage when Secretary Denby arrived. By their accomplishment they aroused the respect and admiration of their friends in the 31st Infantry and reflected credit on the whole Army as well as the Ninth Cavalry.—*Here and There with 31st.*

### THE FRENCH CHARGER CLASS CHAMPIONSHIP

AFTER A SUSPENSION during the war and the several subsequent years of poor showing, the past year witnessed a charger class championship of the French Army worthy of its former traditions. This event was held from April 1 to 8, in Paris, and was contested for by many officers. It was won by Captain de Sartiges, on *Jehova*, with Colonel Bucant, on *Eperlan*, second, and Lieutenant Rigon, on *Spahis*, third.

In an interesting article in the *Revue de Cavalerie* for May-June, 1922, General Blacque-Belaire gives a review of the history of this championship, which dates back to the year 1902. In 1914 it had become a well-developed, popular, and useful event. The author states: "This competition before the war had the most rapid influence upon the development of French equitation. To find a race-horse, a school-horse, a horse for the horse-show, a hunter, is always a good fortune for the cavalryman. To possess a horse which has all

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

these merits and proves them by severe tests is truly rare. To develop such qualities demands, moreover, on the part of the proprietor knowledge, patience, determined will, and real skill."

The post-war performance has not been satisfactory. In 1914 there were 136 contestants; in 1920 there were 30, and in 1921 only 14. Moreover, the contestants lacked sufficient training in many respects.

With a view to affording a fresh opportunity for this competition, which should be the most useful of all to the cavalry, the championship was introduced into the Army of the Rhine in the fall of 1921. The results, it appears, have not been satisfactory; but the author believes that they have called such attention to the lack of all-round training that the institution of this event will prove to be highly profitable.

The conditions are given herewith, as they should be of interest to American mounted officers:

*Object.*—The charger-class championship has for its object to recompense the labor of officers who by their knowledge and skill have been able to develop in a horse the qualities indispensable for a cavalry mount which may be used in advance guard or on reconnaissance—that is to say, the conformation indispensable to the prestige of a leader; quality, which may be defined further as power of endurance, handiness, strength, speed, which requires sound organs and members; absolute submission to the aids of the rider, either in combat or in riding across country.

The tests necessary to determine the existence and the degree of these qualities are:

- (a) An examination of conformation.
- (b) An endurance ride of 25 to 30 kilometers, made at rapid gaits, partly on the road (test of good feet), partly on varied ground (test of bottom and handiness).
- (c) A test of training (submission to the aids).
- (d) A test called "*Parcours de chasse*" (training for obstacles).
- (e) A test of steeplechasing (speed, freedom, strength).
- (f) A presentation, mounted, at the three gaits, designed to determine the condition of the horse after the preceding tests.
- (g) In addition, the jury will consider the correctness of the rider and the style of the horse throughout the event.

In order to put the horse into the best condition and to facilitate the task of the rider as well as that of the jury, the order of the test will be (unless changed by unavoidable circumstances):

- 1st. Reception of the horses; examination for conformation (first day).
- 2d. *Parcours de chasse* (hunting course?) and steeplechase (second day).

## TOPICS OF THE DAY

3d. Test of training (riding hall or corral) (third day).

4th. Endurance test (fourth day). The author recommends that this test be delayed by one day to give a preceding day of rest.

5th. Presentation, mounted, at the three gaits.

Final considerations and classification (fifth day).

Contestants are limited to mounts at least seven years old (except for thoroughbreds, which may be six years old), and less than 15.

The *Parcours de Chasse* will be held in an inclosure over a course of from 1,500 to 1,800 meters, comprising about 15 obstacles from 1 meter to 1 meter 15 in height, disposed so as to tax the suppleness, handiness, and free-going of the horses to the exclusion of all idea of speed. The pace should not, however, be less at any time than 300 meters to the minute.

The steeplechase will be over a course comprising 2,000 meters over obstacles and 600 meters on the flat. The obstacles will comprise six to eight, including wide hedges and water jumps of 3 meters 50.

The test of training (to prove the horse to be free of leg, light in the hand, and submissive to the aids) will consume about 10 minutes for each mount. It will include half turns on the forehand, on the haunches, work on two tracks at walk and trot, the gallop departs, false gallop, circles, serpentines, change of lead, and will not include the higher airs or high schooling. Great precision will be insisted upon.

The relative weights to be given these several tests are: *Parcours de chasse* (work over obstacles, jumping), 6, which the author believes should be reduced to 4; steeplechase, 3; test of training, 6; endurance test, 6; conformation, 1; presentation after tests, 1; style of rider, 2.

## TRAINING REGULATIONS

DRILL REGULATIONS, old manuals, and old instructional pamphlets will soon be scrapped. In accordance with G. O. No. 82, W. D., 1919, as amended by G. O. No. 51, W. D., 1921, the existing drill and training manuals for the army are being revised and are being published, under supervision of the General Staff, by the Adjutant General of the Army, in one series of pamphlets, as Training Regulations.

The pamphlets are grouped under the following general headings:

Doctrines, Principles, and  
Methods.  
Officers.  
The Soldier.  
Specialists.  
General Training.  
Equipment.  
Instruments.  
Weapons.  
Ammunition.

Supply.  
Animals.  
Transportation.  
Each of the branches of  
the service.  
Combined Arms.  
Field Training.  
Staff Manual.  
Field Service Regulations.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

The agencies and branches of the service most concerned with the different subjects are now preparing the pamphlets. The series of pamphlets is to include all subjects required in the training of the army. This will do away to a great extent with the necessity of the purchasing private publications on training.

The pamphlets are to be uniform in principles, terms, preparation, arrangement, and size throughout the series. Each pamphlet has a number and a title and shows by what agency or branch prepared. Each pamphlet covers a subject or part of subject and will be for the use of any branch of the service requiring same.

Careful co-ordination is being had between all branches concerned with the different subjects in the preparation of the pamphlets. This co-ordination will bring about a thorough study of the subjects and will tend to the perfecting of the pamphlets.

Officers, commanders, headquarters, and organizations will not require all pamphlets of the series. Printed lists will contain the pamphlets required by each. The pamphlets required by an officer, commander, headquarters, or organization are to be bound together as a book in an adjustable or loose-leaf binder, the same as now furnished for Army Regulations. A pamphlet can be revised and published without the necessity of disturbing other pamphlets not affected by the revision. This will make revision less expensive.

Of those published up to date may be mentioned No. 10-5, Doctrines, Principles, and Methods, Basic. This covers the doctrine, principles, and methods of war, doctrines, principles, and methods of training, and systems of training.

The Cavalry Branch has been particularly progressive in the matter of these training regulations. Those pamphlets prepared under the direction of the Chief of Cavalry and already published include:

- The Soldier. Instruction Mounted, without Arms. T. R. No. 50-45.
- The Soldier. Instruction Mounted, with Rifle. T. R. No. 50-50.
- The Soldier. Instruction Dismounted, with Pistol. T. R. No. 50-55.
- The Soldier. Instruction Mounted, with Pistol. T. R. No. 50-60.
- The Soldier. Instruction with the Saber. T. R. No. 50-65.
- The Soldier. Saber Exercise. T. R. No. 50-70.
- Animals. Training Remounts. T. R. No. 360-10.
- Cavalry. The Cavalry Rifle Squad. T. R. No. 425-25.
- Cavalry. The Cavalry Rifle Platoon. T. R. No. 425-30.
- Cavalry. The Cavalry Machine Rifle Squad and Platoon. T. R. No. 425-35.
- Cavalry. The Cavalry Troop. T. R. No. 425-45.
- Cavalry. The Cavalry Squadron. T. R. No. 425-50.
- Cavalry. The Cavalry Regiment. T. R. No. 425-55.
- Cavalry. Duties of Machine-gun Personnel. T. R. No. 425-60.

## TOPICS OF THE DAY

Other training regulations already published, of general interest, are First Aid; Outlines of First Aid for Injured or Sick, T. R. No. 112-5, and Hygiene, Principles of Personal Hygiene, T. R. No. 113-5.

The Cavalry Regulations, together with a few more not yet published, supersede the Cavalry Drill Regulations of 1916. Most of them have previously been published in mimeographed form, and in limited numbers have been available for the past year, but the new printed pamphlets are more complete and contain the necessary illustrations and diagrams. Photographic illustrations are used when appropriate.

These pamphlets have not all, unfortunately, been printed in sufficient numbers to permit of general distribution. Requisition should be made in the customary manner to the Adjutant General of the Army. In so far as they are available they will be supplied to the National Guard and Reserve as well as to the Regular Army. They may, however, be obtained by purchase from the Superintendent of Public Documents. A post-office money-order should be forwarded with the request. Each pamphlet is listed at 5 cents.

### BELGIAN CAVALRY CHARGED WITH INSTRUCTION IN HORSEMANSHIP OF OFFICERS OF OTHER ARMS AND OF RESERVE OFFICERS

A RECENT ORDER issued from the Belgian Ministry of National Defense provides for courses of equitation for officers of other than the mounted arms. These courses will be given every year, October 15 to the 1st of August. Station commanders are charged with the organization of these courses under higher instructions. The horses and instructors are to be made available from the mounted units of the several garrisons. Besides the practice of equitation, the course comprises the theory of equitation, general ideas of hippology, the principles of horse management in garrison and in campaign, the care of horse equipment, as well as instruction in the matter of saddling, bridling, and packing. Generally, lessons in the riding hall will be of one hour's duration; lessons outside, of two hours. Applications to take the course will be voluntary, but the attendance then becomes obligatory.

Also, courses are to be provided for reserve officers of whatever grade of cavalry, for other reserve officers of the grade of captain and senior, and for reserve lieutenants assigned as adjutants. These courses will be given Sunday mornings. If reserve officers reside in a garrison where there is a mounted unit, they may make their applications direct to the commanding officers; in other cases, to the proper higher authority.

Furthermore, in cases where the aptitude and training of the reserve officer is deemed sufficient, the station commander concerned may authorize him to use a horse on Sunday morning for individual riding outside the post. These horses must be taken from and returned to the stables by the reserve officer himself.

## PRESENT-DAY TENDENCIES OF GERMAN CAVALRY

FROM AN ARTICLE by Captain Brown de Colstoun in the *Revue de Cavalerie* of May-June, 1922, the following abstract is submitted:

The Treaty of Versailles fixed the cavalry of the German Army at three divisions, each of six regiments of cavalry and one mounted artillery battalion. The plans and basis for instruction and training are not, however, it appears, predicated on this organization, but are designed to prepare the troops for the employment of arms and engines of war expressly prohibited by the Treaty of Versailles. The German Ministry of War plans for a cavalry division that shall be a unit of combat possessing within itself all the means which will enable it to perform independently all of its missions. The cavalry corps planned by the German Army is purely a command agency. The divisions are made unusually strong and independent.

The squadron will comprise about 185 men and 200 horses; it will have a complement of 6 light machine-guns. The regiment will comprise four squadrons, a machine-gun detachment of 12 heavy guns, and a section of artillery (probably 77mm.). The regiment will in the proper case form a dishounted unit analogous to an infantry battalion. The brigade is composed of two regiments.

The cavalry division is composed of 1 headquarters, 1 transmission group, 3 cavalry brigades, 1 group of armored cars (12), 3 groups of cavalry machine-guns (each of 12 heavy guns), 1 cyclist battalion, provided with automobiles mounting machine guns and trench mortars; 1 support battalion of infantry (truck transportation), and 1 regiment of artillery, composed of 1 battalion of 3 horse batteries, 1 mixed battalion of light field tractor howitzers and of 10 cm. cannon, 1 group of anti-aircraft defense, 1 section of cavalry pioneers, 1 air squadron, 1 sanitary group, and 1 veterinary ambulance.

The strength of this division may be estimated at a minimum of 500 officers, 12,000 men and 9,500 horses, with an armament of 180 light and 138 heavy machine-guns, 12 guns of small calibre (on armored cars), 12 infantry accompanying guns, 2 light trench mortars, 12 field pieces (77's), 8 light field howitzers (105's), 2 heavy guns (10 cm.), anti-aircraft guns sufficient to provide some of them with each brigade, 12 to 24 airplanes.

One truck train and one automobile train will be provided.

The divisional cavalry is quite transformed into a mobile detachment of all arms, which will be composed of two cavalry squadrons, a cyclist company, a section of armored cars, and a section of transmission (cavalry type).

It is conceived that neither aviation alone nor cavalry alone can be entrusted with the duty of distant reconnaissance. This task is shared by these two arms, and in any case cavalry must undertake the distant reconnaissance in the event of lack of sufficient aviation. The radius of action of the cavalry divisions is increased by their own air service, and it is contemplated to entrust to the cavalry division a zone of exploration of a width of 40 to 50 kilometers.

Particular thought is bestowed upon the movement of the infantry component, which "will frequently march between the advance guard and the main body, or it may be sent ahead, accompanied by one or more squadrons, to be joined in the course of the march by the rest of the division."

With respect to the employment of cavalry, it remains an organ of reconnaissance, of security, of maneuver, and of combat, particularly adapted for enveloping maneuvers and actions on the flanks and in the rear of the enemy. Distant raids against the enemy's lines of communications are again regarded in favor, as being possibly very profitable. In the accomplishment of its missions the cavalry must endeavor to seek out the enemy cavalry and drive it from the field.

The contemplated employment of cavalry can be epitomized as mounted maneuver and fire combat. The mounted combat is still contemplated, but for small units under favorable conditions.

## HARRY WORCESTER SMITH ON ARMY HORSEMANSHIP

"THE EXHIBITIONS put up by our officers are one of the greatest attractions of our horse shows," writes Mr. Harry Worcester Smith, prominent horseman and sport lover, in a special article in *Rider and Driver's* special Horse Show Number of November 4, 1922. In the course of a long article on the development of horsemanship through the ages, which will delight the bibliophile no less than the lover of horses, beautifully illustrated with some reproductions of quaint plates from Pluvinal's "Horsemanship," published in 1623, the writer, who has officiated as judge at many horse shows and is well known by many of our army horsemen, takes occasion to review the progress of riding education in our army and finishes by unstinted praise of what the army has done and is doing to develop horsemanship.

The writer heads his article with a picture of the noted equestrian statue of Colleoni, the great Italian general, who at thirty-two years of age conquered all before him. Then, after a couple of spirited verses of Will Ogilvie's

"My song is of the horseman who rides, unblanched, the vale,  
Who dares the deepest river and risks the stoutest rail," etc.,

the author plunges into Xenophon and the Comte de Foix and emerges, after a learned chat about a dozen or so masters of horse, in company with our own great Phil Kearny. From this point it is a natural step to Colonel Guy V. Henry, General William Harding Carter, Colonel Short, the Junior Polo Championship, the army at Syracuse and Rochester and Major John Barry, only to mention a few of the facts and personalities upon which the author touches so delightfully. When the army attracts the notice and praise of such an eminent civilian sportsman, who, moreover, makes his appreciation public in so noteworthy a fashion, the army can do no less than say, We thank you, sir!



## New Books Reviewed

The Book Department of the U. S. Cavalry Association can furnish any of the new books reviewed or referred to in this department, and will give prompt attention to any orders submitted by the readers of the Journal.

**COMBAT ORDERS.** The General Service Schools, 1922-1923. (Price, paper, 50 cents.)

This revision of the "Combat Orders" of 1920 embodies the material contained in the earlier pamphlet in a new and improved arrangement. There are some minor changes in instructions and forms, but the revision has consisted principally in a much more admirable arrangement, which should considerably facilitate the study and use of this textbook. The size of page and size of type is increased, which is an improvement. The book, as in the case of the earlier edition, is composed of three principal parts—the text, covering the whole matter of combat orders, including letters of instruction, warning orders, movement orders, field orders, and administrative orders; forms for all kinds of orders, as orders for advance, outpost, attack, passage of lines, relief, position in readiness, withdrawal from action, retreat, pursuit, etc.; and a compilation of sample orders covering the same scope. A form for estimate of the situation and a list of authorized abbreviations are included.

**TEXTBOOK ON FIELD FORTIFICATION; COURSE IN FIELD ENGINEERING.** The General Service Schools, 1922. (Price, paper, 50 cents.)

This new textbook, which is printed in limited numbers for use as a text at the General Service Schools, should not be confused with the several editions of an earlier publication in pamphlet form with the similar title, "Notes on Field Fortification." The distinction in the titles is a guide to the difference between the earlier text, which was formerly used in the School of the Line, and the new book, which is a complete textbook, carefully prepared, with the subject-matter well arranged. The organization of a position for defense is fully covered, several degrees of preparation being discussed. The general position is first considered; then the details of the position in natural succession; then the detailed preparation of the position is taken up, with attention given to trench forms and traces, obstacles, weapons, time and labor estimates.

A sample map problem is appended. This is not an engineer manual on trench construction, but rather a treatise and text on the larger subject of the selection, organization, and preparation of a defensive position.

**THE RUSSIAN TURMOIL** (Memoirs: Military, Social, and Political). By General A. I. Denikin. E. P. Dutton & Co. (Price, \$8.00.)

The author was born in the Russian Army. His father was a soldier before him and retired a major. The author's career has been a marked one, and one is struck by the fact that he had experimented with democratizing the army

## NEW BOOKS REVIEWED

when merely a company officer. He apostrophizes near the end of this book: "Yes, Mr. Kerensky, I did this also in my younger days. I privately abolished disciplinary punishment—'watch one another; restrain the weak-spirited. After all, you are decent men; show that you can do your duty without the stick.' I finished my command. During the year the behavior of the company had not been above the average; it drilled poorly and lazily. . . . It was said afterwards that the company (after my departure) soon showed improvement."

The author held high command during the war and was commanding the Eighth Army Corps when the revolution broke, in February, 1917. General Alexeiev, who had been chief of staff since the fall of 1915, was designated commander-in-chief by the provisional government and Denikin was appointed chief of staff. He held this high post for a few months, until Brussilov succeeded to the command. The author then went to command the Western Front.

The Russian Turmoil is a history of the Russian Revolution in its effect on the army. When it is remembered that in February, 1917, the army was a powerful part of the Russian nation, this phase of the revolution is realized to be an important one. Of course, to a military student and professional soldier it is of paramount importance.

The author traces the roots of disruption in so far as they were recognizable in the army before the revolution. He deals frankly with the defects of the Czarist régime. Then, one after another, he describes the course of the revolution from its outbreak in Petrograd; the weak, vacillating surrender of the Czar; the rise of the Soviets to power; and, within the Soviets, the increasing influence of the Bolsheviks. He narrates the brief career of Kerensky; the management (or mismanagement, better) of the army by commissars and committees of the front; the loss of all discipline and the rapid disintegration of the army, until the democratized mass of Russian soldiery were devoid of all power, either for offense or defense. A final flicker of spirit—the Kornilov effect—and then the last vestiges of authority obliterated. The author, commander-in-chief of the southwestern front, was arrested and thrown into a common jail, to be reviled and cursed by a frothy bestial crowd of revolutionary soldiers.

The course of events, intensely interesting, is well narrated. The author displays a complete grasp of their interrelation and significance, and while the author is a military man, writing of the revolution principally in its effects on the army, he includes a surprisingly comprehensive survey of the political, economic, and social factors.

### FIRST DIVISION HISTORY.

A number of copies of the "History of the First Division"—price, \$5.00—are available at the publishers', the John C. Winston Company, 1010 Arch Street, Philadelphia, Pa. This handsome volume of five hundred pages, with eighty photographic illustrations and maps, was prepared by the Society of the First Division and gives a complete and accurate history of the division from the date of its organization until its triumphant return to America. In addition to the history, the volume contains the Honor Roll of the Division, commendations, field orders, and twelve exact reproductions of the maps used in campaign. This book is a valuable contribution to the authentic history of the World War. The entire proceeds from the sale of this book are to be devoted to the completion of the fund for the erection of the monument to the First Division in Washington.



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

**THE MARNE, HISTORIC AND PICTURESQUE.** By Joseph Mills Hanson. A. C. McClurg & Co. (Price, \$3.50.)

Were you at Langres, or Chaumont, or Chateau-Thierry? If you were at any of these three centers of the American Army in France, you will brighten up over this new book. For that matter, every person who has been in northern France will find great interest within its covers. This is not a guide-book or a collection of geographic statistics. It is a delightfully written account of the country through which flows the historic river, replete with legend and inspiring story. Beginning at its source at Langres, Captain Hanson guides the reader along the banks of the famous Marne to the confluence of this river with the Seine, in a very instructive and fascinating manner. He covers every mile of the ground thoroughly, stopping at Langres, Chaumont, St. Dizier, Chalons, Epernay, Chateau-Thierry, Meaux, Vincennes, and many smaller towns in between long enough to point out places of great historic interest, to get pen-pictures of scenic, artistic and architectural attractions and to entertain the reader with an occasional pertinent story. With consummate ease, he recounts the momentous events that have transpired in each locality along this short yet famous river, and just as ably describes the scenery and the places worth while observing and enhances interest in the book by injecting into it a very pleasing personal note. *J. Andre Smith* has illustrated the book with fifty drawings which convey cleverly the quaint appeals of this old-world country.

**ELEMENTARY EQUITATION.** By Baretto de Souza. E. P. Dutton & Co. 338 pages, 96 illustrations. (Price, \$3.50.)

This book has been received so lately that it has not been possible to review it as carefully as it deserves. A general examination and a careful reading of the first few chapters enables one to state, however, quite positively, that here is an excellent book in its field. It may prove somewhat annoying to the average military reader on account of its insistence on certain varieties of practice as opposed to others. For example, the author prefers the "backwards" method of mounting to the extent of not even mentioning the method taught in military riding. It would be easy to point out objections to the author's method, which, however, has the merit of being clearly stated in this book. And that, by the way, clarity of explanation, fortified by a large number of very helpful drawings, is one of the principal virtues of this book. Add to that the indisputable fact that the writer is a well-trained and experienced riding-master, who bases his methods and explanations on sound principles of anatomy and horse mechanics, and the merit of the book will be apparent. It will be helpful to any rider. His emphasis upon certain desirables—lightness of hand, suppleness of trunk and arms, for example, just to mention a few—is sure to get under the skin of the most confirmed horse-killer. The chapter on "correct position of the rider" is particularly good. Matter not commonly found in horse books on the side-saddle is presented in this book. The several gaits, the use of the legs and the reins are given quite fully, as well as excellent cautions as to the manner of applying these aids. A few simple suppling exercises and flexions are described, and the last chapter deals with stumblers, shiers, rearers, runaways, punishments, and rewards.

## NEW BOOKS REVIEWED

**MODERN ARTILLERY IN THE FIELD.** By Colonel H. A. Bethell. MacMillan and Co., 1911. (Price, \$2.50.)

Although this book was written before the war, which introduced great development of artillery matériel and methods, it is nevertheless of considerable merit as gauged by present-day standards. Its chapters on matériel are of value even now, as they cover in a general fashion the principles of recoil systems, sights, ammunition, fuses, etc. Artillery draft and mechanical traction are treated briefly. Part II is devoted to gunnery and shrapnel fire, percussion shrapnel, howitzer fire, howitzer percussion shrapnel, high explosive fire; fire discipline, direct and indirect laying, ranging, fire for effect, observation of fire, fire at aerial targets, etc., are successively treated.

To cavalry officers this book will be particularly informing, because it is based principally on open warfare and gives full instructions about the destruction of captured guns, discusses the employment and tactics of artillery with advance and rear guards, with cavalry, and against cavalry. It is conceived that this book, excellently illustrated and clearly written, being the résumé of artillery practice up to 1911—since which time open-warfare artillery practice, with which cavalry is more specially concerned, has changed but little—may be quite the best book available from which a cavalry officer may obtain the information about artillery most likely to be useful to him. He will learn from this book all the essentials which are well presented; and he will be spared all the minutiae of map-firing, barrages, and latter-day trench warfare refinements, with which he has little concern.

**INFANTRY DRILL REGULATIONS.** Illustrated and Simplified, with Hints to Drill Instructors. By Lieutenant-Colonel P. S. Bond, C. E.; Major E. B. Garey, Infantry; Major O. O. Ellis, Infantry; Captain T. L. McMurray, Infantry, and Lieutenant E. H. Crouch, Infantry. The New Military Library. The Army and Navy Journal, Inc., publishers. (Price, \$1.25.)

This excellent manual easily escapes the charge of being merely a compilation; it is an original, thoughtful presentation of infantry drill, so designed as to make infantry drill as plain as possible to the student or recruit and to enable the officer instructor to get the best results by furnishing him with a guide to intelligent effort. No officer can afford to disregard this book on the ground that there is a War Department publication known as I. D. R. In the first place, the authors have composed a textbook (designed to teach), and the War Department publication is a manual. There is a vast difference. Moreover, the War Department is issuing its publication anew in the form of training regulations, and it is presumed that these will be of limited availability for the present; also, while the separate-pamphlet-common-binder idea has much in its favor, there are many who will prefer to have a subject like the basic one of Infantry Drill complete in a single bound volume.

This new book is remarkable for its very clear, helpful explanations and hints, as well as for its many illustrations and clever diagrams. Many officers have had in the past to work out difficulties of drill evolutions by means of matches. This new work has diagrams that beat matches or any other extemporaneous method. The present need for such a book is indisputable. Our task is no longer to teach the methods that were once laboriously drilled

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

into us, to long-term soldiers, with the assistance of non-coms., ancient in service. The World War has introduced many changes in the drill, and the instruction must be simplified so that it can be "put over" quickly, yet thoroughly, to R. O. T. C. students, to the boys who attend the citizens' military training camps, as well as to recruits in the Regular Army, National Guard, and, eventually, in the Reserves.

The officer who fails to understand that he may on very quick notice be assigned to duty at a school or a camp, where, cavalryman or artilleryman or engineer though he may be, he must be able to give instruction in the first element of all military instruction—infantry drill—may some day cut a sorry figure.

This book is a meritorious contribution to our national-defense job. With its assistance, the officer of whatever branch, or the student, or the ambitious non-com. should be able to make of himself a good drill instructor.

## Foreign Military Journals

*Revue Militaire Francaise*, June, 1922.

"The campaigns of Hindenburg-Ludendorff on the Eastern Front" (concluded from previous numbers), by General Buat.

"The Mongol Campaigns of the 13th Century," by Captain H. Morel.

"The Cavalry in the Defensive," by Commandant Prioux. This article is a review of the operations of the 2d Corps of French Cavalry in closing the breach made by the Germans in the last days of May, 1918. Based upon these actual operations, the author's discussion then covers the whole rôle of cavalry as a strategic reserve, operating as a complete corps unit with all the necessary auxiliary and attached units. He makes an interesting comparison between this intervention of the French cavalry in the battle of 1918, when the Germans had the upper hand, and the battle of Rezonville, in 1870, when Bredow's Cavalry Brigade restored the fortunes of the day for the Germans.

*Revue de Cavalerie*, May-June 1922.

The leading article by General de Lagarenne, President of the Union of Military Equestrian Societies of France, refers to the need for encouragement by the regular cavalry garrisons of the work of these new societies, in view of the reduction of the term of service from two years to eighteen months, which time, he urges, is not sufficient to train cavalry soldiers unless the recruits have already been trained to some extent in military riding, which preliminary training is the purpose of these societies.

General Blacque-Belair's article, "On the Banks of the Rhine," is continued in this number. He refers to the races at Wiesbaden and includes the report of the President of the Committee of Mounted Sports of the Army of the Rhine on the meets of 1921. This report comments very favorably on the flat racing. The author devotes considerable attention to the charger

## FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS

class championship. This dates back to 1902 and has had a varied history. (See further note in "Topics of the Day.")

The author refers to the mounted sports of the American Army on the Rhine and reproduces the memorandum, signed by General Hay, on the subject of the Coblenz Hunt Club.

"The Present Tendencies of the German Command in the Matter of Cavalry" is the subject of another interesting article in the number. As the 100,000-strong German Army includes eighteen cavalry regiments by terms of the Peace Treaty, and as the Ministry of Defense does not intend to limit its studies and instruction to a scale appropriate to only 100,000 men, its cavalry ideas should be worthy of close attention. Their cavalry, in brief, is being trained to function as the cavalry of a modern army of a great military power. (See further note in "Topics of the Day.")

Two noteworthy examples of the employment of armored cars in groups in co-operation with infantry and dismounted cavalry are related in *Faits d'Autos-Mitrailleuses de Cavalerie*. The director of Moroccan Remounts Service contributes an article that should be of interest to our own Remount Service and particularly to those who are specially interested in the Arab horse.

*Revue Militaire Générale*, January to August, 1922.

In the January and February numbers appear a valuable account by Colonel Monsenergue of "The French Cavalry During the First Three Months of the Campaign." This account is mainly a summary of the cavalry employment, but gives some details.

The instructive article by Commandant Toussan, on the German offensive of March, 1918, appeared translated in the *CAVALRY JOURNAL* for July.

In the July number is found an interesting study, by General Lavigne-Delville, of the problem of making good cavalry on the new basis (French army law) of 18 months' service. Most of his comments and suggestions are not of general interest to us whose circumstances and methods of recruitment differ so widely, but it is interesting to note that he actually predicts the necessity for supplementing the imperfect peace-time training by an intensive course of training undertaken immediately upon the outbreak of war. He ventures the opinion that in the future war one will see the inverse of the process of the World War, viz., instead of dismounting cavalry in the course of the war and instructing cavalymen to be used as a dismounted arm, dismounted troops will be trained to be used eventually as cavalry. He lays emphasis upon the vital necessity of providing the cavalry with a proportionately large number of officers and non-commissioned officers for instructional purposes.

In the August number appears the first installment of an interesting article by Adolf Köster on the question, "Could the Germans have continued to fight in the autumn of 1918?"

*Journal of the Royal United Service Institution*, August, 1922.

Among the interesting contributions to this number are a lecture by Captain Shepp, delivered before a meeting of the institution, on "The Marne Campaign from the German Side," which, together with the comments of the chairman, General Edmonds, is very illuminating with respect to the

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

principal features of that operation; "The Cinematograph as an Aid to Training," "The Campaign in Palestine from the Enemy's Side," by Kress von Kressenstein, which is quite brief and deals principally with the early operations of 1914 to 1916; "The Allied Effort on the West," which is a statistical summary.

*The Royal Engineers Journal*, August, September, October, 1922.

Cavalry officers and all who are interested in a study of the Palestine campaigns should be acquainted with the excellent account of these campaigns which is appearing in successive numbers of the *Royal Engineers Journal*. In the August 1922 number Chapter IV records the formation of the E. E. F. and narrates the Battle of Romani, in August, 1916; gives the actions at Maghdaba and Rafa and carries the advance of the E. E. F. up to El Arish. Chapter V describes the first and second battles of Gaza and concludes with the arrival on the scene of Sir Edmund Allenby. Chapter VI, in the September number, covers the capture of Beersheba and Gaza. Chapter VII, in the October number, includes the cavalry action of El Mughar and the capture of Jerusalem. Chapter VIII deals with the crossing of the Auja River, and Chapter IX narrates the preparations for the offensive of the spring of 1918 and the raids on Amman and Es Salt. These installments bear the general title "An Outline of the Egyptian and Palestine Campaigns, 1914-1918," and are written by Major-General Sir M. G. E. Bowman-Manifold. Useful maps and diagrams are included and the treatment of supply and engineering problems is particularly excellent.

It is worthy of note that in the October number also appears an instructive lecture by Major A. E. W. Salt on "Imperial Organization," in which the political fabric of the far-flung British Empire is examined and the mutual relations of its varied aggregate of states, commonwealths, provinces, colonies, and protectorates are explained.

*The Cavalry Journal* (British), October, 1922.

In this number appear Chapters XXII and XXIII of "Operations of the Mounted Troops of the Egyptian Expeditionary Force," these chapters embracing a discussion of the preparation for the final phase of the campaign, the attack which opened a door by the seashore for the cavalry divisions to pour through and come down upon the enemy's communications far in his rear. Not the least valuable part of this installment is the "Fighting Instructions" to the 4th Cavalry Division issued at this time by its commander, Sir George Barrow. These comprise a classic in cavalry combat instruction. Other noteworthy articles in this number are "Notes on the Work of the Independent Air Force During the War," which narrates the long-distance bombing operations carried on in the enemy's country toward the end of the war, "The Stream-line Bullet," and "The Machine-gun Corps (Cavalry) in the Second Battle of Le Cateau." This latter is quite interesting, because it narrates the machine-gun operations in conjunction with a cavalry advance.

Some details of last year's graduation exercises at Fort Riley are given in this number. Among the "Sporting Notes" is a brief account of the Olympia International Horse Show, June 17-24, 1922.

## Polo

### SIXTH CAVALRY

When the Headquarters and First Squadron returned from Camp McClellan, polo activities were resumed at once, the Field Soldiers defeating the Home Guards in the first game by a score of 9-4. But the Home Guards, under the able guidance of Major Richard H. Kimball, soon were whipped into such shape as to preclude the possibility of such a thing again, and Colonel Tompkins' Field Soldiers have been forced to surrender five games during the past quarter as a result. However, this condition obtains mostly because of the absence on the target range of the Field Soldier troops and the impossibility of practice during this time.

Commencing November 25 and lasting through December 3, the post simply lived POLO. A team each from Fort Bragg and Fort Benning, arrived for the tournament, and from the class of polo played by the infantrymen, whose team consists of Captain E. F. Brooks, No. 1; Captain E. C. Betta, No. 2; Lieutenant Fred W. McKinney, No. 3, and Captain R. A. McClure, No. 4, against the Sixth Cavalry Yellow Jackets, made up of Captain Truxes, No. 1; Captain Ocha, No. 2; Lieutenant Dewey, No. 3, and Colonel Tompkins, No. 4, one must predict a most interesting tournament. The team from Fort Benning played a hard and fast game and lost only by a score of 11-7. They are well mounted and are excellent hitters.

There is much undeveloped material for polo players on the post, as well as some promising pony material, and with the enthusiasm and effort of Colonel Tompkins and Major Kimball, polo prospects were never brighter in the 6th Cavalry.

### THIRTEENTH CAVALRY

The polo team attended the tournament sponsored by the Denver Country Club, at Denver, August 26 to September 10. Four teams participated. A series of accidents to players seriously handicapped our team in nearly every game. Some of them were serious. However, replacements were furnished from other players at the post from time to time, which enabled us to keep a team in the competition throughout. Due to orders for the Cavalry School and for other reasons, however, three of the members of the first team, who had done such good work all the summer, could not be kept together, and our showing was somewhat less than we anticipated.

In the final result the team was awarded the Senator Phipps Cup, and returned to the post, feeling that, despite the many accidents, they had thoroughly enjoyed the good sportsmanship and the hospitality of their Denver friends, and had brought home at least one cup to add to the collection that decorates the club rooms.

### SECOND CORPS AREA

The 1922 polo season was by far the most successful in the history of the Corps Area. Three polo centers, exclusive of West Point, were developed, namely, Camp Vail, Fort Hamilton, and Governors Island. Citizens of the Bay Ridge District, Brooklyn, have shown especial interest in army polo and the Fort Hamilton team. The games at Fort Hamilton are all attended by large crowds of from 5,000 to 15,000 people.

The Corps Area tournament, which was held at Fort Hamilton, was won by the Fort Hamilton team. The Bay Ridge Perpetual Challenge Cup, donated by the citizens of Bay Ridge, was won by the Governors Island team.

## First National Bank

Junction City, Kansas

The only United States Depository for Disbursing Officers' Accounts adjacent to Fort Riley.

Over Thirty Years' Experience  
with Army Accounts

*The Bank of Courtesy and Service*

### OFFICERS

Thomas B. Kennedy, *President.*  
James V. Humphrey, *Vice-President.*  
O. O. Clark, *Vice-President.*  
W. F. Miller, *Vice-Pres. and Cashier.*  
E. J. Denver, *Assistant Cashier.*

## EISENHOWER'S

622 North Washington St.  
JUNCTION CITY, KANSAS

*Drugs*

*Eastman Kodaks*

*Developing and Finishing*

*Fountain Service*

*Fine Candies*

*Perfumes*

(Will always cash a check for a Cavalry Officer)

## The B. Rockwell Merchandise & Grain Co.

JUNCTION CITY, KANSAS

Established 1865.

Incorporated 1892.

**WHOLESALE GROCERS**

**RETAIL GROCERS**

Fresh Meats

Dry Goods

Women's Wear

Shoes

Luggage

Bargain Basement

Grain

57 YEARS' CONTINUOUS SERVICE  
TO THE ARMY

*V. W. Faber*

**CAVALRY BREECHES**

JUNCTION CITY, KANSAS

## Good Eats Cafe

607 N. Washington St.

Junction City, Kansas

The Junction Cafe which caters to  
Army trade

## MARQUIS' FAMOUS SADDLE EQUIPMENT

(Successor to RAOUL DUVAL, Saumur, France)

By special arrangement with M. Marquis, the U. S. Cavalry Association is prepared to accept orders for and deliver the following articles. Prices will closely approximate those given here; there may be small variations, due to rates of exchange, stamp taxes, transportation, consul's certificates in cases of large orders, etc. The duty of 35 per cent is included in these prices. The Association has been unable to get this equipment entered free of duty, since there is no provision in law for doing so. Due to the narrow margin of capital on which the Association operates, a deposit will be welcome upon ordering, and full payment will be required upon notification that equipment is in the possession of the Association and is ready for shipment to the customer.

### FRENCH OFFICER'S FIELD SET

Military Saddle, Leather Panels	\$83.00
Pommel Pouches, pair	18.50
Straps for Package	3.00
Grain Bag	3.00
Side Bag, each	8.75
Saber Carrier	2.75
Stirrup Straps, pair	5.00
French Regulation Military Girth	4.00
French Regulation Military Bridle with Halter	18.50
French Regulation Military Bit	3.00
French Regulation Military Snaffle	1.50
French Regulation Military Stirrups, pair	3.00
Name Plate, brass	.75

### SAUMUR TRAINING EQUIPMENT

Saumur Saddle	60.00
Dee Ring, each	.25
Stirrup Straps, pair	5.00
Leather Girth	12.00
Ring Martingale	5.00
Breastplate	6.50
Standing Martingale for Polo	7.75
Saumur Bridle	11.50
Saumur Noseband	2.25
Snaffle Headpiece	4.50
Plain Rein, each	3.75
Plaited or Twisted Rein, each	5.75
Saumur Bit	3.00
Snaffle	1.25
Chantilly or Verdun Big Snaffle	3.75
Knife-edge Stirrups, pair	5.00
Saumur Whip	5.00
Solid Nickel Spurs	2.00
Spur Straps, set	.50
Head Stable Collar	5.25
Stable Rope	.50
Watering Bridle	5.25
Breaking Cavesson	4.50 to 5.25
Lounge, Rope	2.25 to 2.75
Lounge, Web	5.25
Sam Browne Belt	6.50
Map Case	5.25
Dubbin (grease for saddle), tin	.75
Brecknell's Saddle Soap, can	.50

Address: **UNITED STATES CAVALRY ASSOCIATION**

1624 H Street Northwest

Washington, D. C.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Cordial relations exist between the Regular Army and the National Guard organizations which play polo. The Regular Army teams at various times played with the 81st Machine-gun Squadron (Squadron "A"), N. Y. N. G., the 101st Cavalry, and the 102d Cavalry.

The 1923 season promises to be even more successful than the past season. Work is under way at present at Mitchell Field to make an army polo center at that post. Two fields are being built. The 61st Cavalry Division, with headquarters in New York City, is planning to take an active part in polo next year.

### COLORADO SPRINGS

*Rider and Driver* for November 4, 1922, has two illustrations of special interest to army poloists. In the first are shown the 20 army officers who played in the Western Polo Tournament at Broadmoor, June 25-July 6, and the other shows the 147 polo horses of the U. S. Army lined up on the Cheyenne Mountain Country Club polo grounds.

### POLO TOURNAMENT AT SAN ANTONIO

By Lieutenant-Colonel W. V. Morris, I. G., Polo Representative Eighth Corps Area

The Association Polo Tournament, authorized by the War Department and the American Polo Association, to be held at San Antonio, under the auspices of the Headquarters 8th Corps Area Polo Club, was completed December 3, 1922. Notwithstanding the prominence of San Antonio as a polo center, this is the second Association tournament ever held there, the first having been held last spring under the auspices of the San Antonio Polo Club.

Two events were on the program—one for the San Antonio Light cup, a handicap event, and the other for the St. Anthony Cups, played without handicap. Three fields were used, at Fort Sam Houston, Camp Travis, and Brackenridge Park, respectively. All of these were turf fields, the last named comparing favorably with the best in the country.

Eight teams participated, as follows (handicaps of players given):

#### Headquarters 8th Corps Area

- |                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 1. Lieutenant R. S. Jett..... 1 | 3. Major H. J. M. Smith..... 3            |
| 2. Captain C. S. Kilburn..... 3 | 4. Lieutenant-Colonel W. V. Morris..... 3 |

#### 2d Division

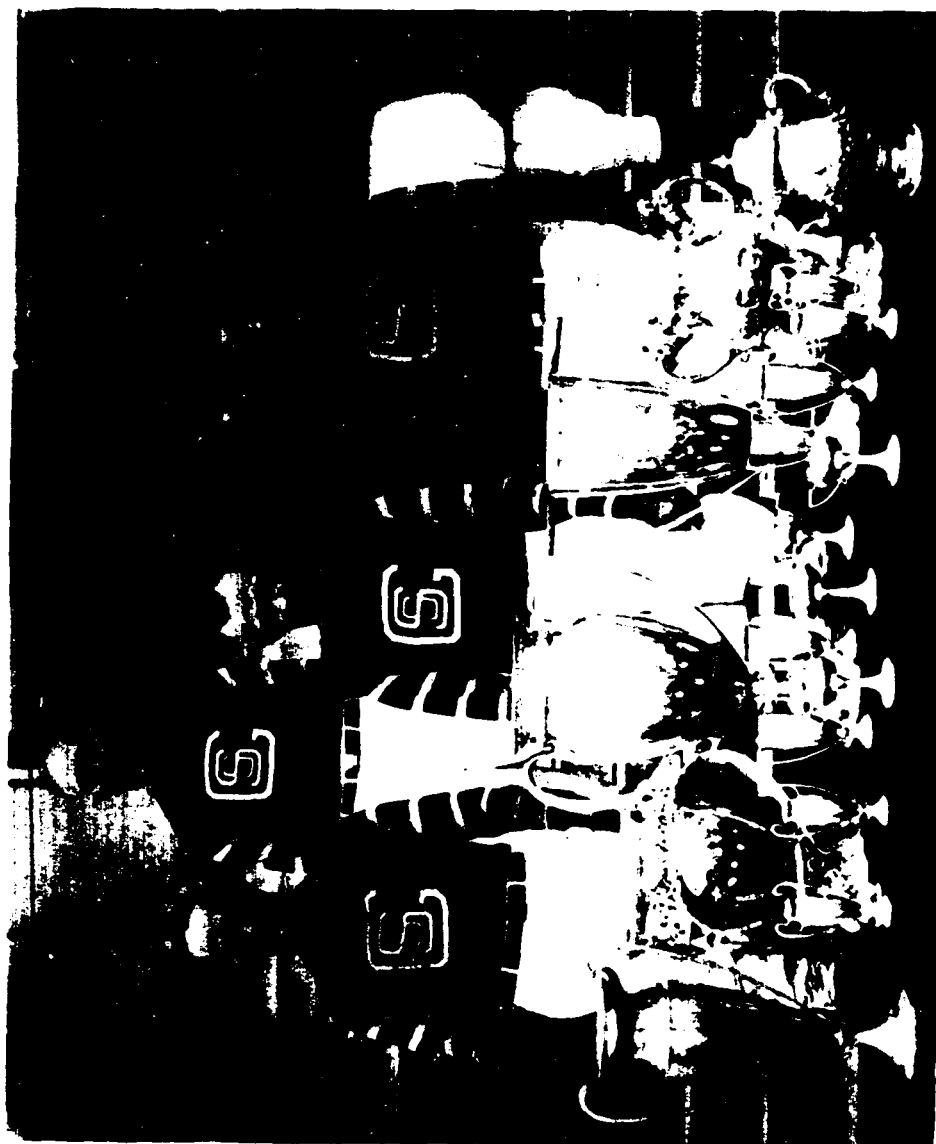
- |                                      |                                |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Lieutenant J. A. Smith, Jr..... 0 | 3. Captain J. S. Tate..... 3   |
| 2. Lieutenant Guy C. Benson..... 3   | 4. Captain F. H. Carter..... 1 |

#### San Antonio Polo Club

- |                           |                         |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. James Chittim ..... 0  | 3. J. H. Lapham..... 3  |
| 2. R. V. M. Negley..... 1 | 4. W. D. Meadows..... 2 |

#### 5th Cavalry

- |                                 |                                 |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Captain E. M. Daniels..... 1 | 3. Captain C. H. Unger..... 1   |
| 2. Captain M. F. Meador..... 2  | 4. Colonel W. D. Forsyth..... 2 |



THE UNDEFEATED FT. LEAVENWORTH POLO TEAM WITH SOME OF THE TROPHIES WON, 1922

Top row: Major N. E. Margetts, No. 4; Brigadier-General H. E. Ely, Commandant G. S. S.; Major T. J. Johnson, Utility. Bottom row: Major C. Parker, No. 2; 1st Lieutenant M. L. Stockton, No. 1; Major I. P. Swift, No. 3. Trophies: Booger Red, Walsh, Sr.; Foxhall P. Keene, Broadmoor, Walsh, Jr.; Lysle.

## POLO

### Kelly Field

- |                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1. Captain E. De V. Willis..... 0 | 3. Major C. J. Browne..... 2            |
| 2. Lieutenant N. D. Brophy..... 2 | 4. Lieutenant-Colonel S. W. Cook..... 1 |

### 4th Cavalry

- |                                   |                                |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Lieutenant C. H. Noble..... 0  | 3. Captain L. G. Gibney..... 0 |
| 2. Captain C. E. Dissinger..... 1 | 4. Major R. M. Cheney..... 1   |

### 12th Field Artillery

- |                                     |                                     |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Lieutenant B. M. Fitch..... 0    | 3. Lieutenant Mark McClure..... 0   |
| 2. Lieutenant E. T. Williams..... 0 | 4. Lieutenant W. H. Bartlett..... 0 |

### 15th Field Artillery

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Lieutenant M. F. Wakefield..... 0 | 3. Lieutenant T. A. Roberts, Jr..... 0 |
| 2. Lieutenant E. S. Molitor..... 0   | 4. Lieutenant P. R. M. Miller..... 0   |

The 5th Cavalry showed a very commendable spirit in sending a team at their own expense to participate in the tournament. Their horses were sent overland from Fort Clark, a distance of 135 miles.

Both the handicap event and the no-handicap event were won by the Headquarters 8th Corps Area Polo Team.

The results of the various games are given below:

### San Antonio Light Cup (Handicap Event)

KELLY FIELD	12	HEADQUARTERS 8TH CORPS AREA	16
vs.		vs.	
15TH FIELD ARTILLERY	7 (5)*	SAN ANTONIO POLO CLUB	10 (4)
2d DIVISION	16	2d DIVISION	10
vs.		vs.	
4TH CAVALRY	7 (5)	KELLY FIELD	6 (2)
5TH CAVALRY	12	HEADQUARTERS 8TH CORPS AREA	9
vs.		vs.	
12TH FIELD ARTILLERY	8 (6)	5TH CAVALRY	7 (4)

### Final.

HEADQUARTERS 8TH CORPS AREA	13
vs.	
2d DIVISION	10 (8)

### St. Anthony Cups (without Handicap)

HEADQUARTERS 8TH CORPS AREA	15	2d DIVISION	11
vs.		vs.	
KELLY FIELD	1	5TH CAVALRY	6
HEADQUARTERS 8TH CORPS AREA	11		
vs.			
SAN ANTONIO POLO CLUB	2		

\* Goals by handicap in parenthesis.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

### Finals

HEADQUARTERS 8TH CORPS AREA 10

vs.

2D DIVISION

8

The scores in the handicap tournament show the necessity for our army handicaps, as there is so much difference between the strong and the weak teams that the latter have no show at all under the Association handicaps.

As to the quality of mounts, the teams may be arranged as follows:

1st. Second Division.	} Very little difference.
2d. 5th Cavalry.	
3d. San Antonio Polo Club.	
4th. Headquarters 8th Corps Area.	
5th. 4th Cavalry.	
6th. Kelly Field.	
7th. 12th Field Artillery.	
8th. 15th Field Artillery.	

At present the fields in this vicinity are, with the exception of that at Camp Travis, in very good shape, the Brackenridge Park Field being especially so. The Fort Sam Houston field is entirely covered with turf, which those who have played there in the past will appreciate. A turf field is in course of preparation at Kelly Field and will be ready for play in February.

The civilians of San Antonio take a great interest in polo and turn out in large numbers for Sunday games. At the finals of both events the field was entirely surrounded by closely parked automobiles. At Fort Sam Houston a fine new grand stand, with a capacity of 250, adds to the enjoyment of games by spectators.

As the scores indicate, the Headquarters 8th Corps Area team and the 2d Division team somewhat outclass other teams in this vicinity.

The San Antonio Light Cup was donated in 1920 by the San Antonio Light for annual competition. Funds for individual trophies for this event were obtained by assessment of competing teams. The St. Anthony Cups were donated by the St. Anthony Hotel.

## Cavalry School Notes

THE CAVALRY SCHOOL—Fort Riley, Kansas

Brigadier General Malin Craig, Commandant

The school year 1922-1923 opened with the following classes present: Troop Officers' Class, 109 members, 9 months' course; National Guard and Reserve Officers' Class, 24 members, 3 months' course.

In accordance with the recommendations of a Board of General Officers, convened to report on the organization of service schools, the basic class has been discontinued. The field officers' course will be of five months' duration this year, the class assembling about January 15.

Lieutenant-Colonel L. W. Oliver, cavalry, has been appointed Director of the Department of Tactics, vice Colonel H. La T. Cavanaugh, relieved and now in command of the 14th Cavalry, at Fort Des Moines, Iowa.

## CAVALRY SCHOOL NOTES

The subjects of pistol and saber instruction have been transferred to the Department of Horsemanship, leaving the Department of Cavalry Weapons responsible for instruction in rifle, machine rifle, and machine-gun work only.

The 2d Cavalry has been used more than ever this fall as school troops, their particular function in this field being to give demonstrations of various forms of cavalry action to the students. So far this year the regiment has put on seven demonstrations, in units varying from a squad to a regiment in size, and are preparing others for the spring of the year, when the weather and ground will be more suitable to this type of work.

On October 28 a competitive mounted drill was held in the vicinity of Morris Hill, between the platoons of the Troop Officers' Class, which was won by the 1st platoon, Captain F. E. Carr, Instructor. The 2d platoon, Captain R. C. Winchester, and the 3d platoon, Captain W. T. Bauskett, Jr., tied for second place, which was decided on the drill off in favor of the 3d platoon.

Fall hunting has been held every Sunday morning, weather permitting, under supervision of Major D. W. McEnery, Medical Corps, M. F. H. Some good runs, both drag and coyote, have been had and the hunts are becoming more popular with the members of the garrison from week to week.

Polo has continued throughout the fall. Polo matters have now been concentrated in the hands of a polo committee consisting of the Assistant Commandant, the Commanding Officer 2d Cavalry, the Director of Department of Horsemanship, and the polo representative. The duties of the committee are to conduct polo activities in an equitable manner, and especially to consider and foster the development of new players and mounts. An enjoyable feature of fall polo has been the polo teas following games, which have been handled by the ladies of the post.

The 16th Observation Squadron, Air Service, under command of Major C. L. Tinker, assisted by ships from Fort Sill, Okla., gave an interesting air circus on November 9. The events included an aerial review, stunt flying, formation flying, landing to a mark without motor, and a 100-mile race. The new Corps Commander, General Duncan, was present and was an interested spectator. Appropriate prizes were given to the winners. In the formation flight Major Tinker was first and Lieutenant Nowland was second. Lieutenant Nowland was first in the landing to a mark without motor and Lieutenant Wisehart was second. Lieutenant Wisehart won the 100-mile race, with Captain Boland a close second. The two visiting planes were driven by Lieutenants Schmidt and Walker.

Colonel F. C. Marshall, of the Chief of Cavalry's office, inspected the school and the 2d Cavalry from November 5 to 11 and expressed himself as highly pleased with the various activities.

A weekly newspaper of from eight to twelve pages, known as the *Standard*, has been started on the post, under the editorship of Lieutenant R. M. Eichelsdorfer, cavalry, and serves to keep the garrison informed of the various activities of its different individuals and organizations.

The Cavalry School Horse-show team, which was sent to the National Horse Show at New York City this fall, consisted of the following officers of the Department of Horsemanship and the following mounts:

Major J. A. Barry, *Submersible* (private mount), *Moses*; Major A. E. Wilbourn, *Saladie* (private mount), *Miss O'Shanter*; Major R. O. Annin, *Sandy*; Captain R. L. Coe, *Jackemipe*; Captain J. H. Irving, *John Bunny*; Captain C. H. Gerhardt, *Deceit*; *Touraine*, *Chiswell*; Captain V. L. Padgett, *Tango Dance* (private mount); Captain W. T. Bauskett, *Raven*, *Rabbit Red*; Captain C. E. Davis, *Babe Worthan*, *Comanche*.

The results at the horse show are given in Major Patton's article in this number.



## Regimental Notes

### FIRST CAVALRY—Camp Harry J. Jones, Douglas, Arizona

Colonel A. V. P. Anderson, Commanding

During the month of August the regiment participated in combat practice and fired the annual proficiency test. The results attained were considered satisfactory in every respect, considering the reduced personnel.

On September 14 160 recruits were received and assigned to the various troops of the command. In view of the fact that the regiment had been carrying on with greatly reduced numbers, their arrival was a source of gratification to all concerned. During the month of September all recruits were instructed in range practice with service ammunition, in order to enhance their chances of qualifying with the rifle during the supplementary season.

On September 16, 17, and 18 the regiment was inspected in the field by the Brigade Commander, Brigadier-General W. H. Hay, in a march to Slaughter's Ranch, September 16, and return to Camp Harry J. Jones on September 18. Distance marched, 36 miles. The Brigade Commander's inspection included tactical problems involving advance in face of hostile opposition, successive positions being attacked during the march from camp. Problems involving outposts, advance, rear and flank guards were conducted during the period in camp and on the march returning to the post. The Brigade Commander expressed himself as being highly pleased with the results attained by the regiment during his inspection.

On October 11 the Corps Area Commander, Major General John L. Hines, honored us with a visit and held the annual tactical inspection of the command. The Corps Area Commander's inspection included an inspection of the entire garrison—quarters, stables, mess halls, kitchens, etc.—and also his annual tactical inspection, embracing camping, outposts, an advance in face of hostile opposition, dismounted combat, jumping, equitation and close and extended order drills.

Supplementary target practice was held from October 18 to November 25, 1922, the personnel participating being composed almost entirely of new men who had never fired on the range.

### SECOND CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas

Colonel Charles A. Romeyn, Commanding

The regiment, less Troop E, which is now on duty at Camp Funston, has been busily engaged in demonstrations of mounted and dismounted combat. These demonstrations ranged from patrol problems by squads to combined action in which squadrons reinforced by a machine-gun troop were employed. Each exercise was carefully planned and, in spite of handicaps caused by lack of personnel, the success attained evoked many compliments from all who witnessed them.

Dismounted and mounted pistol practice was continued throughout the fall. The many necessary interruptions have been quite a handicap to the systematic and progressive scheme of following out the courses in both rifle and pistol marksmanship. However, advantage is taken of every opportunity to develop these phases of instruction and the results have been quite satisfactory.

## REGIMENTAL NOTES

The regiment was inspected by Colonel Francis C. Marshall, Assistant Chief of Cavalry, who expressed himself as being highly pleased with both its appearance and its proficiency. The regimental combat problem, in which both machine-guns and air craft were employed, was quite successful.

The winter schedule has been planned and will go into effect as soon as outdoor work becomes impracticable. By spring the regiment should be in excellent condition to carry on its function as the demonstration regiment for the Cavalry School.

### THIRD CAVALRY—Fort Myer, Virginia

Headquarters and Second Squadron, Colonel William C. Rivers, Commanding

Rifle firing was completed at the Camp Sims range, Anacostia, D. C., September 27.

During the first two weeks in October three 3d Cavalry polo teams competed in the Fall Tournament of the War Department Polo Association in Potomac Park.

November 4 an Exhibition Drill and Rough Riding Show was held in the post riding hall to raise additional funds to send men and horses to the National Horse Show in New York. This was quite successful and 25 horses, with six officers from Fort Myer and the District of Washington and 16 enlisted men from F Troop, 3d Cavalry, made the trip to Squadron A armory and showed from November 13 to 18, inclusive. The Rough Riding detail sent from F Troop appeared each evening and were enthusiastically received.

November 11 a provisional squadron escorted the President of the United States upon his visit to Arlington to place a wreath on the grave of America's Unknown Soldier.

November 30 the squadron marched for Baltimore, stopping at Camp Meade that night and arriving at Pimlico race track, where they were quartered during their stay, on December 1. On December 2 they marched in the army day parade and were reviewed by the Secretary of War, the Secretary of the Navy, the Deputy Chief of Staff, and the Commanding General, 3d Corps Area. That afternoon officers and men witnessed the football game between the 3d Corps Area team and Marine Corps team, which was won by the latter 13 to 12. On Monday the squadron escorted ex-Premier Clemenceau of France upon his arrival in Baltimore and marched for Fort Myer that evening.

December 9 the annual ride for the benefit of the Army Relief Society took place in the post riding hall at 2:30. After the drill tea was served at post headquarters, the proceeds also going to the Army Relief.

### FOURTH CAVALRY—Fort McIntosh, Texas

Colonel Howard R. Hickok, Commanding

During the quarter just ended reconnaissances by various troops were made of the regimental sector along the Rio Grande. The supplementary target season was also held and very satisfactory results obtained.

On Armistice Day the Commanding Officer, Staff and the Regimental Band took part in the American Legion parade and memorial services.

The regimental football team defeated the American Legion team and made a trip to Fort Clark, playing the 5th Cavalry team.

A Thanksgiving Eve dance was given by the Officers and Ladies of the Post. One hundred and ten recruits were received during the past quarter. This increase was very opportune as the regiment had fallen 40 per cent below strength.

The polo stable has been re-established and practice resumed twice a week.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

A rifle and pistol gallery has been constructed, utilizing a deep arroyo for this purpose. The rifle range is 100 yards long and the pistol range is the standard range up to and including 50 yards. The best rifle and pistol shots are being further developed and are given extra training as coaches and instructors. The range is also being used for troop tri-weekly competitions. In order to make these competitions interesting and close the competitors have been classified according to their season's qualification score and only men in the same class are pitted against each other.

### First Squadron—Fort Sam Houston, Texas

#### Major Robert M. Cheney, Commanding

During the first week in October, 1922, a provisional platoon consisting of one officer and twenty enlisted men took part in the Bexar County fair, held at the Speedway, San Antonio, Texas. Exhibition drills and jumping exhibitions were given daily. As a token of appreciation of the efforts made by this platoon the Bexar County Fair Association presented the squadron with a beautiful silver cup. First Lieutenant Henry I. Hodges was awarded a cup for individual honors in jumping.

On October 3 supplementary firing was held at Camp Bullis, Texas. October 20 one troop acted as escort of honor to General Pershing. The troop was highly complimented on its fine appearance. From October 28 to November 1 the squadron participated in the maneuvers of the 2d Infantry Division, at Camp Stanley, Texas.

November 11 the entire squadron participated in the Armistice Day parade in San Antonio. November 20 the squadron was inspected by the Corps Area Commander and on the 24th by the Corps Area General Inspector.

The Remount Depot No. 2 held their annual horse show at Camp Travis, Texas, November 25. The squadron was well represented, and carried off several places, notable among them being the winning of the quarter and half-mile flat race for officers.

November 19 saw the opening of the Association Polo Tournament for the San Antonio Light cups. The squadron team was defeated by the 2d Division team by a score of 16 to 7, in the opening game; this eliminated the squadron from further participation in the tournament. December 1 the squadron team defeated Kelly Field by a score of 11 to 2; no further games have been played to date.

During October the First Squadron football team won the Post championship, receiving for permanent possession the cup awarded for the winning team in the Post series.

### FIFTH CAVALRY—Fort Clark, Texas

#### Colonel William D. Forsyth, Commanding

On December 1 Troop C marched to the subpost of Camp Eagle Pass for temporary station, relieving Troop B, which returned to Fort Clark for station, and Troop F marched to subpost of Camp E. E. L. Michie, at Del Rio, for temporary duty, relieving Troop E, which returned to Fort Clark.

On November 14 the regimental polo team, consisting of Colonel W. D. Forsyth, Captains M. F. Meador, C. H. Unger, E. M. Daniels, F. H. Barnhart, and Lieutenant J. P. Gerety, V. C., proceeded to Fort Sam Houston, Texas, to participate in the Corps Area Polo Tournament.

The regimental football team got away to a flying start this season, having won all three games played to date, with scores as follows: Fifth Cavalry, 36; Carrizo Springs, 0; Fifth Cavalry, 32; Fort Sam Houston All Stars, 0; Fifth Cavalry, 20; Fourth Cavalry, 0.

## REGIMENTAL NOTES

Keen interest is shown in the contest for permanent possession of the Regimental Commander's Cup. The cup is awarded to the organization winning the highest number of points in the monthly mounted field meets. In order to gain permanent possession, it must be won three times by an organization. The cup has been contested for once each month commencing last spring with the following results: Troop A, once winner; Troop E, twice winner; Troop F, twice winner; Troop G, once winner.

The formal tactical inspection of the regiment was made from September 19 to 22 by the Corps Area Commander. In nearly all respects the command was rated excellent or very good. Special commendation was made of the training in communications and of the demolition squads.

"All the elements that make up a well trained field force, such as a proper estimate of the situation, clear-cut orders, prompt and co-ordinated action, together with cohesive ranks, were found in this regiment. The field training of this command is considered very satisfactory. . . . This command is considered ready and fit for field service. . . . The progress noted in all phases of training in this regiment furnishes much satisfaction to the Corps Area Commander."

### SIXTH CAVALRY—Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia

#### Colonel R. J. Fleming, Commanding

The regiment, on November 17, 1922, completed its range practice for 1922, except for automatic rifle and combat practice. Every officer and soldier fired the required course as laid down in *Rifle Marksmanship*, all officers qualifying. Because of the duty of Headquarters and the First Squadron at Camp McClellan, firing has been delayed, and the entire target season will not be completed before well into December, but the percentages obtained with the rifle are very gratifying when the adverse conditions of firing are considered, the qualification of the regiment being 80.6 per cent. The results of those troops which fired since returning from Camp McClellan are as follows:

	Per cent.
Headquarters Detachment, First Squadron (Major Kimball).....	94
Headquarters Troop (Captain Truxes).....	93
Troop C (Captain Lawrence).....	93
Troop A (Captain Simmons).....	79
Troop B (Captain Wadleton).....	79
Service Troop (Captain Steiger).....	69

Troop E, commanded by Captain Wilkie C. Burt, and Troop G, commanded by Captain William V. Ochs, gave demonstrations for the Chattanooga Fair during the latter part of September.

At the Fourth Corps Area Boxing Tournament the 6th Cavalry was awarded two first places. They were won by Private (first class) Walker, of Headquarters Detachment, First Squadron, and Private Feeney, of the Service Troop.

On October 28, the bachelor officers of the post were hosts to the married officers, their families and friends, at the first party since the return of the regiment from Camp McClellan. The occasion was a Halloween mask ball. The hop room was beautifully decorated, the costumes were both charming and funny, and the evening was one to be remembered for a long time.

The week of November 25-December 3 was known as "POLO WEEK" at Oglethorpe. The program which follows was prepared for the entertainment of the visiting polo players.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Saturday, November 25, 4:00 p. m., informal reception at Officers' Club; hostess, Mrs. Roy Brown; band concert during reception; 8:00 p. m., box party, Bijou Theater.

Sunday, November 26, 10:15 a. m., special Thanksgiving service, sacred band concert; 10:30 a. m., Thanksgiving sermon; 3:00 p. m., polo—Sixth Cavalry vs. Fort Bragg or Fort Benning; polo tea at club following game; hostess, Mrs. William Simmons.

Monday, November 27, 1:30 p. m., luncheon at Signal Mountain, followed by ride to Lookout Mountain.

Tuesday, November 28, 3:00 p. m., polo—Fort Bragg vs. Fort Benning; Visitor's Cup; polo tea at Officers' Club following game; hostess, Mrs. Robert Maxwell.

Wednesday, November 29, 6:30 p. m., dinner at Signal Mountain, followed by dance.

Thursday, November 30, 9:00 a. m., horse show, featuring Ladies' Class for Andrews Cup; 3:00 p. m., polo—Sixth Cavalry vs. Fort Bragg or Fort Benning.

Friday, December 1, 8:00 a. m., ride through Chickamauga Park; 1:00 p. m., luncheon at Golf and Country Club.

Saturday, December 2, 3:00 p. m., polo—losers of first and third games; Consolation Cup; 9:00 p. m., polo dance.

Sunday, December 3, 3:00 p. m., polo—winners of first and third games; Tournament Cup; polo tea at Officers' Club following game; hostess, Mrs. Robert Fleming; 6:30 p. m., dinner at Patten Hotel; 8:00 p. m., theater party at Tivoli.

The horse show held on Thanksgiving Day was a huge success. The weather was ideal and, except for a bad spill sustained by Lieutenant Reybold, which rendered him semi-conscious for a day, nothing interfered with an otherwise perfect day. The results follow:

*Officers' Chargers.*—First prize, Lieutenant Dewey; second prize, Captain Ochs; third prize, Captain Wadleton.

*Enlisted Men's Mounts.*—First prize, First Sergeant Green; second prize, Corporal Monroe; third prize, Corporal Soughan.

*Officers' Jumping.*—First prize, Captain Ochs; second prize, Lieutenant Dewey; third prize, Lieutenant Kleinsmeyer.

*Troopers' Jumping.*—First prize, Corporal Napier; second prize, First Sergeant Schneider; third prize, Private Osborn.

*Individual Jumping* (open to all).—First prize, Sergeant Williams; second prize, Lieutenant Dewey; third prize, Captain Ochs.

*Polo Pony Class.*—First prize, Lieutenant Gross, 5th Field Artillery; second prize, Captain Betts, infantry; third prize, Lieutenant Baker, 5th Field Artillery.

*Ladies' Class, Gernet Andrews Cup.*—First prize, Miss Betty Fleming; second prize, Mrs. Vernon McT. Shell; third prize, Mrs. William V. Ochs.

### SEVENTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel Walter C. Short, Commanding

This regiment now consists of 35 officers and 625 enlisted men, being nearly up to the authorized strength. During the winter of 1914-15, the 7th Cavalry returned from the Philippine Islands and was stationed along the Arizona-New Mexico border in tents for about 14 months; in Mexico for 11 months; in tent camp, El Paso and Fort Bliss, Texas, 29 months; since July, 1919, to date in brick cantonment at Fort Bliss, Texas. Thus during practically eight years the 7th Cavalry has been quartered in tent camps or bivouac for 54 months and 41 months in semi-permanent cantonment. December 4, 1922, orders were issued by the Commanding Officer, Fort Bliss, Texas, directing the 7th Cavalry to move into the permanent buildings in the post proper of Fort Bliss, Texas. This move was ordered as a matter of equity and will no doubt add greatly to the morale and esprit of both the commissioned and enlisted personnel of the regiment after being quartered so long in tents and semi-permanent buildings.

## REGIMENTAL NOTES

### EIGHTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel James H. Reeves, Commanding

During the last three months the general activities within the 8th Cavalry have been centered on opening up the winter's work program. Inspections by the Corps Area, Division, and Brigade commanders, with the consequent problems and military maneuvers, have engaged much time, both in preparation and in the actual inspections. The early fall was given over to this type of work.

The extra-military activities of the regiment may be divided into recreational, social, and athletic affairs. The Board of Governors of the Service Club, a selected body of non-commissioned officers, with the commanding officer, adjutant, athletic officer, and chaplain as ex-officio members, control the recreation, social plans, and athletic offerings of enlisted men. This board meets every Monday night, lays out the program for the coming week, and hears reports of the success of the week just closed. By co-ordinating the work of this board or committee with the leadership of the commissioned personnel as organized in the officers' call, a well-rounded-out program for the regiment has been placed in operation.

Social affairs within the regiment are centered in the monthly regimental dinners for the officers and their ladies. At these dinner dances about six of the officers are selected to give short talks on some interesting subject-matter. Dances for enlisted men and their families and friends are held twice a month; these have been very popular. On Halloween a mask dance was given by the enlisted personnel which created much enthusiasm and was very largely attended.

One of the activities of a social nature which is uniquely successful is the Women's Club for wives of enlisted men. This has been in operation for some months.

Just now it is taking on advanced ideas. Programs are planned of a practical as well as an esthetic nature. Studies in cookery, housekeeping, care and feeding of children, and dress-making have been planned. That the practical may not be overdone, other studies in art, music, interior decorating, and the like are being planned and presented at the weekly meetings. Every other meeting is given over to purely recreational features. The success of this venture in the organization of the families of the enlisted men has already justified itself, and there is yet much to be attained in completing and systematizing the efforts.

Athletics, always the center of recreational life with soldiers, have not been neglected in this regiment. The baseball season closed with the 8th Cavalry as champions of the Post League. Troop and squadron games did much during the summer to develop morale among the men. With the advent of the football season, teams were organized in each of the troops, and a schedule of twelve games was played, which was won by Troop E. Squadron teams competed, and finally a regimental team, which is prospected as the winner of the post season, was organized. Basket-ball is being organized and many men are practicing in the regimental gym.

The most notable of the regimental athletics has been the Boots and Spurs Club, our boxing organization. Two boxing cards have been put on each month. Most of the talent used has come from within the regiment, although outside men have been freely placed on the cards. Not only has the club been well patronized by the regiment, but all organizations of the post have attended its principal cards.

Although the winter training program keeps the officers on their toes, both day and night, nevertheless there has been considerable progress made in polo. Last year's team was disrupted, due to three of the members being sent to Riley, but with the addition of Captain Hammond polo has picked up in the regiment. New ponies are being trained

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

and sixteen officers are playing. The first team, consisting of Captains Hammond and Upton and Lieutenants Manger and Bosserman, bids fair to be one of the best teams that ever represented the regiment.

### NINTH CAVALRY—Camp Stotsenburg, Pampanga, P. I.

Colonel Edward Anderson, Commanding

After about five months construction work, training was resumed on July 5th, 1922. On July 26 Troops E and G, Captain R. B. Trigable, 9th Cavalry, commanding, left for Manila, P. I., to escort Secretary of the Navy Denby. On September 13 Troops A and F, Captain L. C. Frissell, 9th Cavalry, commanding, escorted the departing Department Commander, Major General William Wright, from his quarters to the transport. On the former occasion the Governor General, Major General Leonard Wood, and on the latter occasion the Department Commander complimented the troops very highly, in writing, for their fine appearance. July 29 the regiment was inspected by the Division Commander, Major General Omar Bundy; as usual, the regiment made an excellent appearance and was highly complimented. August 25 the regiment won the Transportation Show, held at this post, in competition with two other regiments. August 30 was a 9th Cavalry Day in all events for the post field meet. The regiment made more points than all the rest of the post put together.

The regiment sailed for the United States October 12 on the U. S. A. T. *Logan*, after nearly seven years at Camp Stotsenburg.

### TENTH CAVALRY—Fort Huachuca, Arizona

This regiment underwent the annual tactical inspection by the Corps Area Commander, Major General John L. Hines, on October 8, 9, and 10. On October 28 the regiment had the honor of being reviewed and inspected by General Pershing. Since that time the rifle and pistol supplementary season has occupied a large part of the training program. On November 14 the strength of the regiment was augmented by 299 men, transferred from the 9th Cavalry.

The regiment's late chief, Colonel Edwin B. Winans, who has commanded the 10th Cavalry since the summer of 1920, has just been promoted to be a brigadier-general.

### ELEVENTH CAVALRY—Presidio of Monterey, California

Colonel John M. Jenkins, Commanding

The first squadron (less Troop A) arrived on the Post at 8:00 a. m., October 9, having completed their march from Los Angeles. The squadron made the 303.5 miles from Los Angeles to San Lucas in eleven days; then made the remaining 74.5 miles from San Lucas to the Post in 29 hours. Men and animals, including the transportation, finished in excellent condition. The Corps Area Commander commended Major Chadler and his officers and men very highly for their efficient, soldierly work in this march.

Troop G, under the command of Captain Joe C. Rogers, left the Post by marching for San Francisco October 9. They arrived there October 12 and participated in the Annual Horse Show, from October 18 to October 22, with a monkey drill team and a musical drill. The officers of the troop did exceedingly well with their mounts in the different entries.

The first squadron was encamped at Gigling from October 20 to October 30, for their annual field firing and combat tests. Excellent results were obtained and some particularly nice work was done with auxiliary aiming points.

## REGIMENTAL NOTES

The Post has been in quarantine since November 16, an epidemic of glanders having broken out. Troop G will not be able to return from San Francisco and the second squadron will not be able to fire their combat tests this year; also, it appears that we will be out of the running for polo this year; but everything that is possible is being done to stamp out the epidemic and prevent its spread and we have not given up hope that we will be able in some way to participate in the winter tournaments on the coast.

A very successful football tournament is now under way between the organizations on the Post. Boxing matches are being held monthly and lots of talent is being developed in that line. The winter bowling tournament has started again and basketball starts in January. The regular biweekly card parties, dances, and "stag" nights have kept up our social interests and have been well attended and thoroughly enjoyed.

The garrison turned out *en masse* to help the city and the navy celebrate Navy Day. Athletic events were arranged between the garrison and the personnel of the *New York* which came into Monterey Bay for the holiday, accompanied by H. M. S. *Capetown*.

### TWELFTH CAVALRY—Fort Brown, Fort Ringgold, and Camp Fordyce, Texas

Colonel Sedgwick Rice, Commanding

A very successful turkey shoot was held at the target range of Fort Brown on Sunday, November 26, 1922, under the supervision of Captain John J. Bohn. The events for individuals included firing at 3-inch butter plates at 200 yards, pistol firing at 20 yards and 50 yards, and firing with .22 caliber rifles at 50 yards, on small national pistol target. Captain John J. Bohn and Warrant Officer Michael Fody tied for highest average scores on all ranges. Headquarters Troop, under the direction of Captain Oron A. Palmer, took first place in a team event which included rifle and pistol firing, leading its nearest competitor by 147 points. A large number of civilians from Brownsville and other points in the Rio Grande Valley participated. A. H. Allen, of Brownsville, led in the pistol firing, making 92 per cent at 50 yards and 94 per cent at 20 yards. The shoot proved such a success that it is planned to repeat it during the holidays.

The strength of the regiment was augmented in October by the arrival of 173 recruits from various recruiting centers, filling the 1st and 2d Squadrons to practically full peace strength. The eight weeks' course of recruit instruction for these men was commenced October 30.

Pistol practice for the regiment has just been completed, with Headquarters Troop holding the record, having qualified 100 per cent in both the dismounted and mounted courses.

The 12th Cavalry gave up one of its posts on October 31, when Camp McAllen was abandoned by the War Department. Troop G, which has been stationed there for the past year, marched to Fort Ringgold and took up its abode with the balance of the 2d Squadron at that station.

The regiment has taken considerable interest in football during the present quarter. Fort Brown and Fort Ringgold each have a good team, and a number of games have been played with the Brownsville, San Benito, and Mercedes teams. In each of the two games played between the squadron teams the 2d Squadron eleven of Fort Ringgold has won.

The regiment assisted in the Armistice Day celebrations at San Benito and Mercedes. A representation from Fort Brown went to San Benito with the regimental band and participated in the parade and ceremonies which followed, Colonel Rice serving as grand marshal of the parade. Fort Ringgold sent a platoon and its football team to Mercedes.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

### THIRTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming

Colonel Roy B. Harper, Commanding

Due to the reduction in the strength of the garrison and the consequent demand for men for garrison purposes, the field training of the regiment was of necessity conducted on a somewhat limited scale. Advantage was taken, however, of the proximity of the excellent maneuver grounds at Pole Mountain and arrangements were made to have one-half the regiment conduct field exercises, involving the tactical use of communications and other available equipment, and upon return to the post to send out the other half. The marching, camping, and practical use of all field equipment was closely observed and resulted in demonstrating that officers and men had been well grounded in the art of field service and could, if called upon, give a satisfactory account of themselves. While more or less strenuous in some particulars, these exercises were enjoyed by the entire personnel, who welcomed the change from garrison duty.

Early in October the long-deferred "Regimental Day" festivities took place. "Organization Day," as such, properly falls on May 1, but, due to the absence of various units at different times, it was decided to await a favorable opportunity, when the entire regiment could be assembled and a holiday enjoyed by everybody. The post authorities co-operated in perfecting arrangements to have every man present. The weather proved to be ideal. A beautiful park was placed at the disposal of the regiment, which contributed more than a little to the successful outcome.

The troops had prepared in advance for a "carnival," erected tents to house their special attractions, selected "ballyhoo" men, and otherwise staged a real carnival, with all the trimmings. The program called for a number of athletic events, including four excellent boxing bouts, some vaudeville by members of the 13th Cavalry Minstrels, and a picnic lunch at midday.

Promptly at 9:30 a. m. the entire regiment, with wives and sweethearts, assembled to hear the Regimental Commander outline the program for the day. His remarks on discipline, morale, and *esprit de corps* were thoroughly appreciated by all his hearers. Following him, selected officers gave a brief outline of the history of the regiment and of the 15th Cavalry, its inactive associate. The Post Commander then made a brief address, complimenting the regiment upon its discipline, appearance, and faithful performance of duty, following which, with appropriate remarks, he presented to the regimental baseball team the silver cup awarded the champions in the just-completed Post Baseball League.

After the "speeches" were completed the boxers and vaudeville performers took over the stage and entertained everybody until the sounding of "mess call." Especial pains had been taken by the mess officers and mess sergeants, and the lunch was not the least enjoyable feature of the occasion. After lunch dancing and the "carnival" came in for a liberal patronage. Altogether it was a most enjoyable occasion.

The regiment was reviewed by Colonel Theodore Roosevelt, Jr., Assistant Secretary of the Navy, upon the occasion of his recent visit to Cheyenne. Following this ceremony a reception was given him at the 13th Cavalry Club and Mess. The Colonel was complimentary and especially remarked upon the splendid appearance of Troop C, which had just arrived in the post a few days prior, after its six-hundred-mile march from Fort Douglas, Utah.

Supplementary target practice had just begun (November 1) when we were visited by the first winter storm for the year. A genuine blizzard shattered several records for the Weather Man. This was closely followed by two more severe storms, which have prevented further firing up to date.

Just when the snow was piled over the landscape, Colonel Francis C. Marshall, of the office of the Chief of Cavalry, arrived to make the annual tactical inspection. Not a

## REGIMENTAL NOTES

bit discouraged by conditions, he put the various troops through their paces, and, utilizing the riding hall and other facilities, gave them a pretty thorough inspection. We feel that he was not at all displeased with the results. A prettily arranged reception and tea was tendered him by the officers and ladies of the regiment at the club, which was attended by all officers and ladies of the post and many distinguished visitors, including the Governor of Wyoming. Later in the week a formal hop in his honor was given by officers and ladies of the post.

Following the regimental policy in promoting interest in athletics and athletic competitions with civil organizations, the regimental football team has just closed a very successful season. Games were played with teams from Cheyenne, the University of Wyoming at Laramie, and Sidney, Nebr., both at the post and on the home grounds of the various organizations. Of the six scheduled games played, three were won and three lost. As an indication of the interest in the sport and the support given to the team, it may be stated that on the occasion of the visit to Sidney, Nebr., a hundred miles distant, a special rate was secured on the railroad, and more than a hundred "rooters" accompanied the team. At each game played on the post and in Cheyenne the attendance of the regiment was practically 100 per cent. The post field was surrounded by the automobiles of civilians at each game, a large proportion of whom were decided and strenuous partisans of the "Lucky 13th."

At this writing a basket-ball team is practicing in the hope of again annexing the championship, as was done last year.

Mention should be made of the very creditable performance of Troop C during the summer. This troop left the post early in the spring; marched, with all of its equipment and animal-drawn transportation, to Fort Douglas, Utah; took part in the Civilian Military Training Camp at that place, and returned to the post by marching. In all, more than a thousand miles of difficult country was covered without the loss of a horse. An inspection of the troop upon its arrival showed all equipment and animals to be in excellent condition.

### FOURTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort Des Moines, Iowa

Colonel H. La T. Cavanaugh, Commanding

During the month of October the Fort Leavenworth polo team visited the post and played the Wakonda Country Club and the regimental team one game each. The Leavenworth team played the Wakonda team of Des Moines on Saturday, October 7, and were defeated by the score of 15 to 8. The Wakonda team was allowed a 6-goal handicap, but this, as the score indicates, played no part in the defeat of the Leavenworth four. Although the field was wet, the game was fast and well played. The Wakonda team is composed of civilians from Des Moines, who have taken a great deal of interest in polo and maintain stables at the Wakonda Country Club, which is about two miles from the post. In the second game, Sunday, October 8, the Fort Leavenworth team defeated the 14th Cavalry in a well-played match by the score of 14 to 7. Both games were well attended, many civilians from Des Moines being present.

A post football league has just been completed and the results were very gratifying. The Service Troop, 14th Cavalry, played the entire series without meeting defeat, and a suitable trophy will be awarded them. A great deal of interest was shown by the entire command during the series.

It is believed that the Basket-ball League now being conducted will be even more successful than formerly due to the fact that the 9th Field Artillery is represented by a team.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

The riding hall has recently been thoroughly renovated and painted and has an entirely new footing of shavings and sand. Classes for officers, non-commissioned officers, and selected privates are held regularly, in addition to the usual equitation for the troops. Two classes for ladies' equitation are in operation and are thoroughly enjoyed by the ladies of the post and Des Moines. Exhibition rides for all classes in both school work and jumping are planned for the winter months.

The 1st (Separate) Battalion, 9th Field Artillery, Major W. H. Shepherd, 9th Field Artillery, commanding, arrived and took station at Fort Des Moines on September 19, 1922. On October 30 a smoker was held for them which was well attended.

### FIRST MACHINE-GUN SQUADRON, DOUGLAS, ARIZONA

Major Ernest R. Harris, Commanding

This squadron celebrated Organisation Day November 3, 1922, thus commemorating its formation a year ago, when Troop D, 1st Cavalry, and the Machine-Gun Troops of the 1st, 5th, and 12th Regiments of Cavalry combined to make up the new unit. The event was celebrated by a field day, with dismounted events and a fine dinner.

## First Cavalry Division

Brigadier General Robert L. Howze, Commanding

HEADQUARTERS FIRST CAVALRY DIVISION,  
FORT BLISS, TEXAS, October 27, 1922.

### GENERAL ORDER No. 9.

1. The Division Commander desires to publish to the division the remarks of the Commanding General of the Army, made by him immediately after the termination of the inspection and review, on October 26, of that portion of the division at Fort Bliss.

"I wish to say, speaking of the division as a whole, that I have never seen a better mounted command. There are some minor things that need correction, due, I believe, to the recent addition of new men. The equipment, the appearance of the men and animals, the cleanliness of the uniforms, the gaits, were noticeably excellent."

2. It is with great pride and satisfaction that the Division Commander publishes the above statement to the command. The credit for this high commendation is due to the untiring zeal and efforts of the officers and enlisted men, whose devotion is deserving of high praise.

3. The Division Commander hereby extends his appreciation to all members of the division for their whole-hearted response to the demands that have been made upon them during the year, and especially during the period of maneuvers and inspections culminating in the inspection by General Pershing. The splendid spirit of helpfulness and co-operation displayed by all, coupled with a healthy, friendly rivalry and competition, is the spirit that begets in each man his best effort. With such a spirit all things are possible.

4. This order will be read to the command and a copy posted on each bulletin-board for three days.

## The National Guard

### ENDURANCE RIDE OF OFFICERS OF THE FIRST SQUADRON OF CAVALRY, RHODE ISLAND NATIONAL GUARD, IN CONNECTION WITH THE ONE HUNDRED AND TENTH CAVALRY (MASSACHUSETTS N. G.) HORSE SHOW AND SOCIETY CIRCUS

By Colonel George F. Hamilton, Cavalry

On October 31 several officers of the 1st Squadron of Cavalry, Rhode Island National Guard, participated in an endurance ride from Providence, R. I., to Boston, Mass., to compete for a trophy to be presented to the winner by the 110th Cavalry, Massachusetts National Guard, and also to attend the opening night of the first annual Horse Show and Society Circus given under the auspices of the Massachusetts organization.

The data concerning the ride have been furnished by Major George S. Andrew, Cavalry, DOL, Instructor of Cavalry, R. I. N. G., who was present at the armory in Providence when the party left and was also at the armory in Boston when the party arrived there.

The party of officers, consisting of Major Samuel A. Hall, Captains Earle C. Chandler, Leighton T. Bohl, First Lieutenants John R. Jones, V. C., John E. Baird, and Milton H. Price, left the armory of mounted commands in Providence at 8:25 a. m. The contestants remained quite close together throughout the entire distance. Major Hall and Lieutenant Baird arrived at Commonwealth Armory in Boston at 1:45 p. m., the remainder of the party at 2:00 p. m. The distance covered is approximately forty miles, about half over dirt roads and the remainder over macadam, with occasional soft footing at the sides. The weather was clear and cool, but not cold. The contestants rode at catch weights.

The horse ridden by Major Hall is his own private mount; the others are owned by the United States and issued to the Rhode Island Cavalry for its use. The breeding of all the animals is unknown. They had been used for some time previously only at armory drills and had not been subjected to any course of training for the ride. All were in good condition. Upon arrival at Commonwealth Armory, Boston, three horses were capable of continuing immediately for a further distance; one was very tired, but could have proceeded after a few hours' rest; two had the "thumps" and were not considered for place. No permanent ill effects followed in the case of any horse.

The horse awarded first place, a brown gelding, was ridden by Lieutenant Jones, V. C. The riders of the other horses that were placed were: second, Major Hall; third, Captain Chandler; fourth, Lieutenant Baird.

The performance of the winning horse is quite remarkable. Without previous conditioning, he carried his rider, entering at 185 pounds weight, over the course of forty miles in five hours and thirty-five minutes, an average of a little more than seven miles an hour. Upon arrival at the finish the horse was cool and normal: pulse, 58; temperature, 99 4/5; respiration, 12.

This horse was exhibited in hand at each performance of the horse show. Vendetta, the thoroughbred, owned by Mr. J. Watson Webb and winner of the 1922 endurance ride, was also exhibited at each performance. Many classes of excellent horses were shown by well-known exhibitors. One of the most interesting events of the show was a high-jumping contest on Saturday evening, November 4, between *Blighy*, a tall black gelding, owned by Mr. M. F. Murphy, of West Roxbury, Mass., and *Broadwood*, a chestnut gelding,



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

owned by Mr. George Chipchase, of Philadelphia, Pa. Both horses cleared the marvelous height of 7 feet 9½ inches, only 4 inches below the world's record. Due to a rather better performance, *Blighly* was declared the winner. These horses would no doubt have cleared a greater height had it been possible to raise the bar beyond the limit reached.

### SERVICE STRIPES

A note is received from Wisconsin by way of *The Badger Trooper* advising that stripes representing three years of National Guard service are now being worn for the first time by Wisconsin cavalrymen. The troopers take great pride in these service stripes, and it is to be hoped that every National Guard cavalry unit will attend to it that its qualified men appear properly decorated with the prescribed stripes after the completion of successive enlistments.

### THE TWENTY-SECOND CAVALRY DIVISION

The 22d Cavalry Division Headquarters reports its nearly complete organization in an article by Lieutenant-Colonel J. Tracy Hale, Jr., in *The Badger Trooper*. The Division Commander and aides and chief of staff are still lacking, but the G's are all appointed, as well as the Ordnance and Judge Advocate's sections. The Postal Section, Chaplain Section, Inspector's Section, and Medical Section have yet to be organized.

### POLO IN THE ONE HUNDRED AND SIXTEENTH CAVALRY, BOISE, IDAHO

On October 13, 14, and 15 a round-robin practice polo tournament was held at Boise, Idaho, in which the members of the 116th Cavalry of the Idaho National Guard took quite an active part. The Boise Polo Club acted as hosts to the teams from the Headquarters Troop and Troop A of the 116th Cavalry. Another team, composed of army officers detailed on duty in Idaho, also took part in the tournament. The various teams were massed against each other, not so much with the idea of securing fast contests, but more with the idea of learning the game and for the purpose of instruction. Representatives of Troop B, which is located at Weiser, Idaho, were also present and plan to form a team in that organization.

Headquarters Troop of Boise have been playing the game during the past summer and are getting quite well equipped, and plan to make polo a permanent part of their sports program. Troop A of Gooding have built a very good field, secured equipment and some private horses, and expect to get at least two full teams out of that organization. Members of Squadron Headquarters Detachment, also located at Gooding, are planning to take up the game. The action of the Boise polo team in sponsoring a practice tournament of this kind is very highly appreciated by members of the various National Guard organizations.

During the spring of 1923 it is planned to stage the annual Northwest Polo Tournament at Boise, and the 116th Cavalry will probably be represented by at least two good teams.

### PROGRESS OF THE NATIONAL GUARD

From a report just published by the War Department, entitled "The progress of the War Department in compliance with the National Defense Act of 1920," under the section devoted to National Guard, it is stated:

The National Guard constitutes one element of the first echelon of the force to be mobilized in a national emergency, the other being the small mobile component of the Regular Army. Its condition of readiness must permit it to be used promptly in emergencies to support the more rapid mobilization of the Regular Army.

## THE ORGANIZED RESERVES

Under the national defense act the National Guard was given an excellent program of development. Economies have, however, handicapped this development. Numbers have been held down by failure of Federal funds and equipment, and the training of units has been somewhat handicapped by reason of shortage of officers of the Regular Army available and suitable for duty as instructors.

The approximate strength of the National Guard on June 30, 1921, was 114,000; on June 30, 1922, 160,000; on June 30, 1923, it is estimated it will reach 191,000. Enforced curtailment of estimates of funds for the fiscal year 1924 will limit the strength of the National Guard during that fiscal year to 215,000. It will be noted that, according to the program specified by Congress, the strength of the National Guard during the fiscal year 1924 should reach 435,800. It will be less than 50 per cent of this strength.

The program for the National Guard consists of individual training during the armory period, supplemented with target practice where local facilities exist, in preparation for the field training period of 15 days, during which target practice is to be completed and tactical problems for small units conducted.

During the coming year it is desired to extend the field training to such larger units as reports indicate are ready for it. Continuation of reduced appropriations for the National Guard will force a modification of the program for its development. This will involve the discontinuance after July 1, 1923, of the recognition of new units and the gradual reduction of the then existing units to maintenance strength. It will be necessary for the National Guard to reduce its activities to a very moderate program. This will make it impossible for all of the National Guard to take its assigned place in the line of defense at the outbreak of war. Plans must therefore be made to shorten the dangerous period required to mobilize and train the National Guard in an emergency.

On October 31, 1922, there were in the National Guard 74 regiments, 4 battalions, and 3 companies of Infantry; 16 regiments, 20 battalions, and 56 batteries of Field Artillery; and 16 regiments, 9 squadrons, and 6 troops of Cavalry. All of these units have been federally recognized as organizations and would be available for immediate use after mobilization at their respective State encampments. This process should not delay them materially in making their appearance in the theater of operations with the Regular Army.

This is, however, but a third of the strength authorized by the national defense act and which the National Guard is counted upon to provide in a national emergency.

The organization, equipping, and training of this large remainder would be a difficult task after the emergency arose, and their appearance in the front line of battle would certainly be delayed long beyond the first critical need for troops.

## The Organized Reserves

### SIXTY-FIRST CAVALRY DIVISION

The annual dinner of the Division November 1, at the Army and Navy Club, New York City, was a most inspiring event for the officers of the staff group engaged in organizing the Division and it is also certain that the officers of the Division shared in the inspiration.

It is the first time that any gathering of the Division has been attempted and the result was most satisfactory, approximately eighty officers of the Division attending.



## SIXTY-SECOND CAVALRY DIVISION

The confidence of the present there could be no doubt in anyone's mind that the future of the Division is already assured.

Major General A. C. Bullard, Commander and the Chief of Cavalry, Major General Bullard and H. L. Cook were present and talked to the gathering, as did the two brigade commanders, Generals Andrews and Disque. After these officers, Lieutenant-Colonel Edward C. Davis lectured on the Allenby Campaign in Palestine and showed a large number of pictures he took while with Field Marshal Allenby.

The enthusiasm showed by the officers present evidenced the fact that they appreciate their responsibility to the country which their commissions demand and the seriousness of their intention to perform the duties incumbent on them in keeping fit and being ready for duty if called upon.

At the Division Dinner it was announced that a series of conferences would be held during the coming winter.

In general, conferences will take place on the first and third Monday of each month at the Army and Navy Club at 8:00 o'clock. The one of the first Monday will be for senior officers of a rank down to and including lieutenant colonels, and for staff officers of all ranks. The one on the third Monday will be for all line officers up to and including the grade of major. Line officers may attend the staff officers' conferences, and vice versa, but in each case only as spectators and listeners.

The first staff conference will cover the general mechanical operation of a division in its various phases; the second will relate to the functioning of G-1, the third to G-2, and so on. The conferences for line officers will cover troop duty in general and will supplement the correspondence courses. They will be conducted by officers who are qualified to instruct.

As far as is possible, it is desired that all conferences be preceded by the regular club dinner at the Army and Navy Club. After dinner the class will adjourn to a special room at the Club set aside for this purpose where the discussions will be conducted.

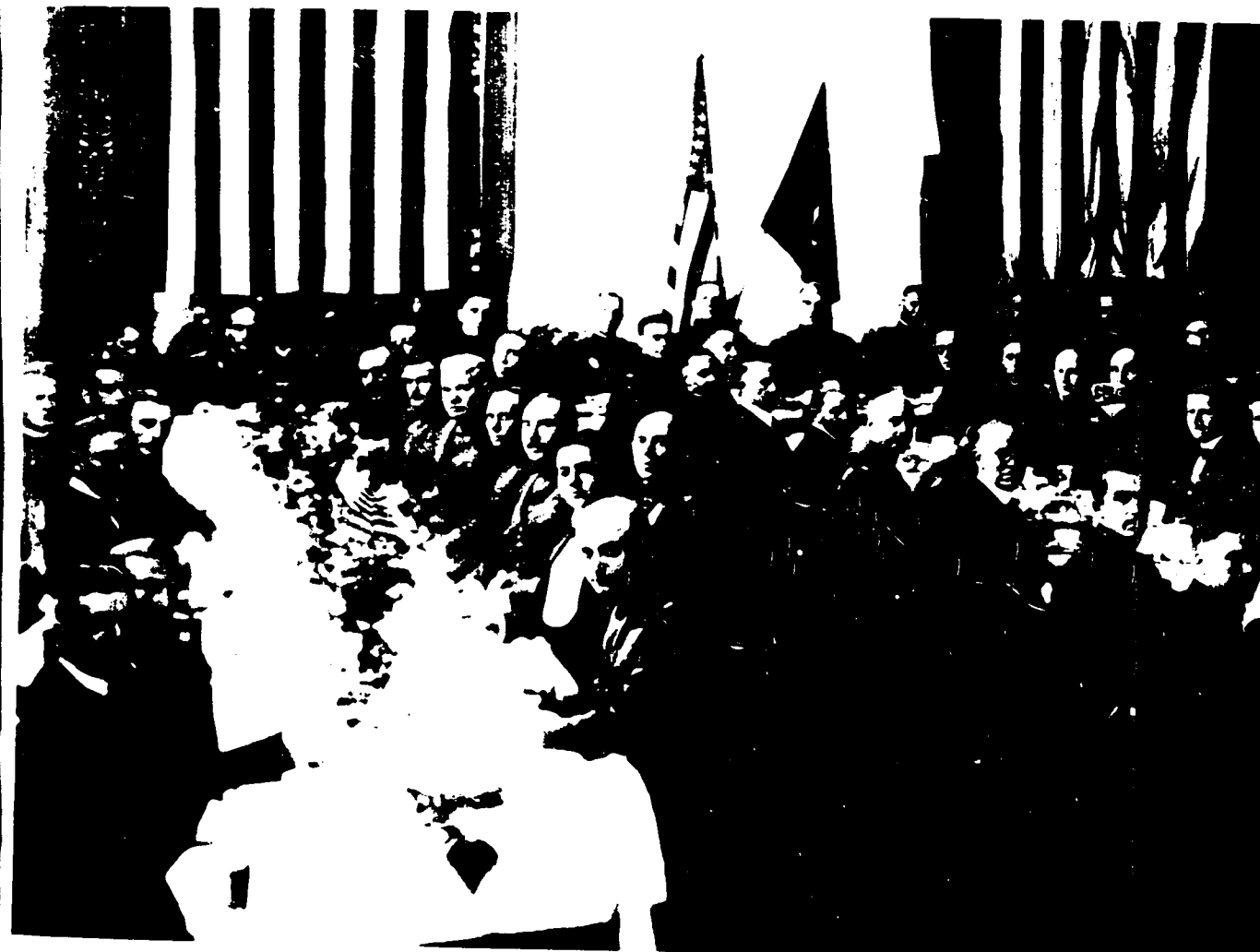
The riding class is an actuality. Eighteen officers of the 61st Cavalry Division and twelve from the 77th Division have signed up for the class. Riding is held every Thursday evening at 8:00 p. m. at Durland's Riding Academy, 60th Street and Central Park West. A progressive schedule of instruction has been laid out which should hold the interest of the members of the class and be of great value to them as cavalry officers.

At present this Division has no polo team, club or available fields. But it is hoped that by next summer, fields and accessories may be made available and a team put in the field. To facilitate playing, tentative plans are being made to establish polo centers at Camp Vall, N. J., and Mitchell Field, Mineola, L. I. At Camp Vall, regular and reserve officers of the Division will be permitted the use of the fields for games and practice, and will be given an opportunity to board grooms with one of the military organizations there. The situation at Mitchell Field will be more difficult. But it is hoped that the same facilities can be furnished there as at Camp Vall. Major Walter Weaver, commanding Mitchell Field, and Major-General R. L. Bullard, commanding general, 2d Corps Area, are giving their assistance to further this scheme.

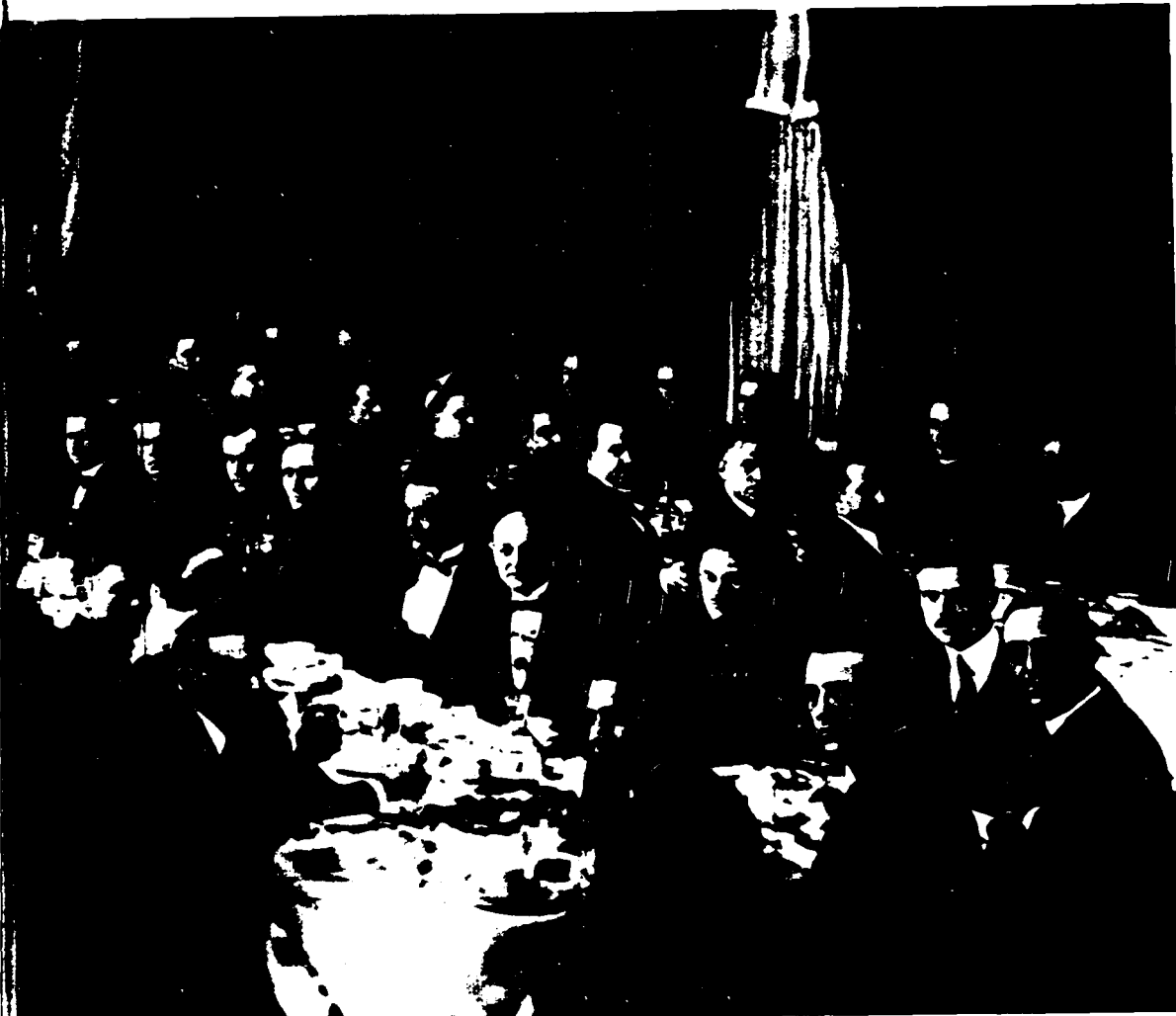
To carry out the plans for polo it will be necessary to secure about seven or eight practical polo players who are mounted and will be ready to function in the spring. A nucleus of three or four players who will have available about eight or nine ponies is already in sight. Major Terry Allen is the divisional polo representative.

## SIXTY-SECOND CAVALRY DIVISION

The new uniform design has been designed by Lieutenant Colonel John Philip and is now being adopted by the 61st Cavalry Division.



SIXTY-FIRST CAVALRY DIVISION DINNER, NEW YORK



NEW YORK CITY, NOVEMBER 1, 1922

## THE ORGANIZED RESERVES

A popular description of the insignia would be as follows: Confederate Gray on a Fesse or Knights Belt and a Cross Botonny of Army Blue, all within a Bordure of Army Blue.

The significance of the insignia is as follows: The 62d Cavalry Division is made up of troops from Pennsylvania, Maryland, District of Columbia and Virginia, and it is therefore appropriate that this insignia should be made up of some feature relating to the history or insignia of these four units. The Division also combines States which were formerly Confederate and Union States. Within a Bordure of Union Blue to represent the District of Columbia, on a field of Confederate Gray, there appears the St. Andrew's Cross, which was the main feature of the Virginia Confederate Flag. The Cross appears in conjunction with a Fesse or Crusader Knights Belt, taken from the seal of Pennsylvania, and which originally came from the coat of arms of William Penn.

In the center of the shield upon the United Saltire and Fesse appears the Cross of the Maryland Seal, which was derived from the coat of arms of Lord Baltimore. Both the Virginia and Maryland Crosses, as well as the Pennsylvania Fesse are crusader emblems and particularly suitable for a cavalry insignia.

### THE SIXTY-THIRD CAVALRY DIVISION

The 63d Cavalry Division has been organized, with headquarters in New Orleans. Colonel James H. Hornbrook, cavalry, has assumed the office of chief of staff, with Lieutenant-Colonel L. S. Carson as assistant. Under date of December 1, 1922, the first bulletin (mimeographed) was published from the headquarters of the new division, and in this bulletin appears the following interesting letter of the executive officer of one of the regiments, with headquarters in Nashville, Tenn.:

Officers of the 310th Cavalry have displayed marked interest in the regiment. An association of the Army of the United States was formed in Nashville, on November 8, 1922, with forty-three members, and charter has been requested from the area association headquarters at Atlanta, Ga.

Polo, cross country riding and mounted terrain exercises are participated in by Reserve Officers in this city.

A club, known as the "Bit and Spur," has been formed at Nashville, and consists of about eighty members, all of whom own their own horses and many of whom are Reserve officers. Advantage is taken of the rides through the week to solve terrain exercises by those on the ride who are Reserve officers. Two paper chases were given in October, and on each occasion a large quota of cavalry and field artillery officers participated.

An excellent polo field is being prepared on the estate of Captain Henry Dickinson, Cavalry Reserve Corps, and active playing will begin in the spring.

Jumps are being prepared to be placed on several adjoining estates, and in all about 7,000 acres can be used on the estates of Colonel Berry, F. A. R. C., Colonel Lea, F. A. R. C., and Captain Dickinson, Cav. R. C., for the placing of jumps and for cross-country rides.

Four officers of the 310th Cavalry have been appointed as recruiting officers and the outlook is very satisfactory. One officer of the 310th Cavalry has asked for authority to enlist enough men for a squadron. If authority can be procured, enough men can be gotten to fill the entire regiment, as authorized for the Cavalry Reserve Corps.

### THE SIXTY-FOURTH CAVALRY DIVISION

By Captain Carl B. Byrd, Cavalry

History shows that the Regular Army of the United States has never fought any of the nation's wars unaided. It has been the traditional policy of the country, and is now the declared and enacted policy, that the greater part of the responsibility for national defense will rest on the citizen soldiery. The traditional policy made little or no allow-

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

ance for the training of a citizen army until war was declared. The recently enacted policy is a preparedness policy and provides for both the organization and training of the citizen army in peace time. To the Organized Reserves have been allotted three of the six field armies, with corps, army, and headquarters troops, as its contribution to national defense.

Owing to the fact that a great many officers have been too busy at other duties to become acquainted, except in a very general way, with the Organized Reserves and its work, the procedure in its organization, the problems encountered and means of solution, and whether or not it is fulfilling the expectations of those who saw fit to assign it to its present place of importance in the scheme for national defense, it is thought that the history of the 64th Cavalry Division would present a fairly true conception of the development of units of the Organized Reserves.

The 64th Cavalry Division (less 158th Brigade) and the 200th Infantry Brigade, together with various division, corps, army, and general headquarters troops, comprising in all thirty separate organizations, were allocated to Kentucky. Lieutenant-Colonel R. W. Walker, cavalry, U. S. A., arrived in Lexington about September 1, 1921, and initiated the organization of the 64th Cavalry Division. There was no authority for the rental of an office, but desk space was temporarily provided by the Remount purchasing officer in the city. In October two offices were procured in the post-office building.

The first task was the allocation to areas of all the Reserve units assigned to Kentucky. For this purpose a board of three officers, with Colonel Walker as president and two Reserve Officers, Majors Frank D. Rash and Talbott Berry, as members, was appointed. The allocation of all these organizations and their subordinate units was made according to population. The fact that there are so few large towns in Kentucky made the allocation difficult. In the whole State there were only eight cities with a population of more than 10,000. The work of allocation was completed December 13, 1921, and was approved by the Corps Area Commander.

The total number of officers of all branches and grades available for assignment to these various organizations was 763. Of this number only 11, none above the grade of first lieutenant, were cavalry officers and these eleven officers constituted the nucleus of the 64th Cavalry Division.

Colonel Walker was designated chief of staff. Major Frank D. McGee was on duty as adjutant of the division for a short time, but was relieved and sent to Walter Reed Hospital, where he was retired for disability. Major Charles T. Smart, infantry, reported to the Chief of Staff on January 1, 1922, and was assigned as adjutant. Later the following regular officers were assigned to duty with division headquarters in time to take an active part in its initial organization:

Major William E. Murray, Q. M. C.

Major John W. Watts, M. C.

Major Louis L. Pendleton, C. A. C.

Captain Carl B. Byrd, cavalry.

Division headquarters was moved to Louisville, Ky., March 14, 1922, where with the more convenient offices secured, together with the fact that this city is more centrally located, the move proved very advantageous. The jurisdiction of about 40 per cent of the organizations assigned to Kentucky was turned over to Fifth Army Corps, with headquarters at Fort Thomas, Kentucky. Headquarters of the 314th Cavalry were established at Lexington, with Captain Byrd as executive officer.

Since the existence and purpose of such a thing as the Organized Reserves was practically unknown, a state-wide publicity campaign was conducted. Two principal mediums of publicity were used—newspapers and form letters to individuals. Press articles stated briefly the military policy of the United States, the Reserve unit allocated

## THE ORGANIZED RESERVES

to that section, and how the personnel was to be provided. The papers welcomed this news and gave it considerable space, with subsequent results which were very gratifying. It was discovered that mimeographed or form letters to individuals, inviting them to apply for commissions in the Officers' Reserve Corps, or touching on their qualifications for and transfer to the cavalry section met with no results. It was necessary to either interview them personally or write them a personal letter. Since there was no appropriation for mileage, that the staff officers might visit different sections of the State and become acquainted with the Reserve Officers and ex-service men, that phase of work resolved itself into a great amount of correspondence, except in Lexington and Louisville, where the officers of the division staff were located. These two localities have amply contributed their quotas to the Organized Reserves, due to the personal contact with the officers on duty with the division.

American legion posts were informed concerning the work and their co-operation invited. Although but little immediate result was obtained, the proper information regarding the Organized Reserves was thus placed before large numbers of war veterans.

From the beginning, there was a surplus of Reserve Officers in the infantry and field artillery. Many of these were especially qualified for mounted service and were transferred upon their applications to the cavalry sections for assignment to the 64th Cavalry Division. Many former officers eligible for commission were interviewed or written personal letters, and Reserve Officers already assigned to the division were urged to secure applications for commissions from among their friends who were eligible for appointment. In this way a large number of Reserve Officers were obtained who were really interested in the Reserve as a means of national defense. In the early summer a great deal of the time of the division staff was taken up in getting the required enrollment for the Citizens' Military Training Camps, and every staff officer made one or more trips through different sections of the State in the interest of this work. Needless to state, every advantage was taken of this opportunity to become acquainted with all the Reserve Officers and as many ex-officers in the places visited as time would permit.

It was recognized that one of the most important factors in such an organization as the 64th Cavalry Division would be the creating and fostering of a proper *esprit de corps*. Fortunately, in the cavalry it has always been comparatively easy to develop such an *esprit*, and in the 64th Cavalry Division such has been the case. One of the most potent agencies for promoting a real *esprit de corps* has been the *Bulletin*, issued monthly by the Chief of Staff and mailed to all the officers of the division. Considerable time and thought are spent on the preparation of each issue of the *Bulletin*, and both appearance and contents of each number have caused favorable comment from readers. In addition to articles of general interest to the cavalry service, contributions from the Reserve Officers are printed and the officers of the division are made to feel that it is their publication.

A division shoulder patch designed by one of the Division Reserve Officers has been adopted and approved by the Chief of Cavalry. It is a beautiful piece of heraldry, being a saber and coonskin cap superimposed on yellow arrowhead, which is in turn mounted on a black shield, and it is a source of much pride to all the officers of the division.

The Reserve Officers' training camp at Camp Knox during the summer was highly beneficial to the division. Although the attendance was small, due solely to the limited appropriations available for that purpose, the spirit of those attending was excellent. The interest of those who did not attend was displayed by the way in which the work was followed through the publications of the *Bulletin*. There is no doubt that next year, as was the case this year, more officers will desire to attend the camp than can possibly be sent, even taking into consideration the increased appropriation expected. During the camp members of the division staff attended daily, meeting the Reserve Officers and

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

becoming acquainted with them. This proved to be of great service, the result being a better understanding and a more efficient co-operation between these Reserve Officers and the division staff in all matters concerning the development of the division.

In accordance with the policy of the War Department, the Division Staff has done all in its power to encourage and aid the formation of Reserve Officers' associations. As early as May, 1922, such an association was formed at Lexington, Ky., and now has an enthusiastic membership of fifty officers. This was the first association of its kind in the 5th Corps Area. This association holds its meetings regularly, usually in the form of dinners, and the attendance is growing, as is also the membership. This association plans to give a banquet in June of each year in honor of the Reserve Officers graduating from the R. O. T. C. unit of the University of Kentucky. A similar association has been organized in Louisville with splendid results. Both of these associations sent delegates to the recent National Convention of Reserve Officers' Associations at Washington, D. C. The association at Lexington has already taken steps to call a State convention for forming a State organization of Reserve Officers' associations, which is expected to be completed before the first of the year.

C. M. T. C. activities have fitted in very well with the program of the division. Thirteen of the 27 officers who attended the training camp for the Officers' Reserve Corps were selected, with their consent, to remain at the camp an additional month as instructors in the C. M. T. C. Through this contact the candidates were encouraged to enlist in the Reserve and were also encouraged to complete the courses in order to obtain commissions in the Officers' Reserve Corps. Names and addresses of the successful candidates were secured with a view to soliciting them to enlist in the 64th Cavalry Division. Even though all of these do not enlist, their names are kept on file and they would be useful in an emergency.

There has been an encouraging amount of interest manifested in the Cavalry Correspondence Course, there now being 47 officers enrolled in this course alone. Some of the students find the first few lessons dry and tedious, but as they progress to the later lessons their interest in the course grows. As a whole, the students are very attentive to their study of the cavalry course and are enthusiastic in developing their professional and military knowledge by the means the War Department has offered them.

The 64th Cavalry Division (5th Corps Area) has made a better showing than any other cavalry division, according to the most recent War Department figures, as to both commissioned and enlisted personnel. These figures show the division to be 61.8 per cent filled as to commissioned officers. Results in the division, while not permitting the staff to rest on its laurels, are still regarded as highly satisfactory. Starting with 11 lieutenants, the division now has 99 cavalry officers in grades from colonel to second lieutenant, inclusive. Including 14 infantry and 2 artillery officers attached who have not yet transferred to cavalry, there are only 37 vacancies for cavalry officers in the division. The Field Artillery Battalion (404th Horse) has a surplus of officers, while the 404th Battalion of Engineers has its entire commissioned quota.

The excellent spirit of the officers of the division, which has been so apparent, has been especially gratifying to the Chief of Staff and the other officers on duty with the division, to whom are personally known most of the Reserve Officers of the division. The commissioned personnel is considered the pick of the War Veterans of the State, and the Chief of Staff is confident that they would not be found wanting in case of a national emergency, which is the sole *raison d'être* of the Organized Reserves.

### SIXTY-FIFTH CAVALRY DIVISION

This newly organized division has also come out with a bulletin, its initial number being issued under date of November, 1922, from the Headquarters in Chicago. Major W. C. Christy, cavalry, is acting chief of staff.

## THE ORGANIZED RESERVES

Get-together meetings of the 318th Cavalry, the Headquarters Special Division Troops, and the 405th Engineer Battalion were held during the months of July and August, but upon the recommendation of the several commanding officers of units in Chicago an experimental meeting was held on September 14th to which all Reserve Officers assigned or attached to organizations of the division in or near Chicago were invited. An attendance of about seventy officers, representing all the different arms of the service with the division, resulted, and it was unanimously voted to adopt this combined form of meeting, and the second Thursday of each month was set for the regular monthly meeting.

The meeting on October 12 resulted in an attendance of about seventy-five officers, at which meeting Lieutenant-Colonel T. A. Siqueland, commanding the 317th Cavalry, gave a most interesting talk on the military intelligence work during the war and showed official German War Department films of submarine activities in the Mediterranean.

The first get-together meeting of the 319th Cavalry was held in the Army and Navy Club, Detroit, Michigan, on the evening of October 10, at which about eighteen Reserve officers were present. A fine spirit was manifested and the complete organization of this regiment is assured without a doubt.

Thanks to the hearty co-operation of Brigadier-General Moseley, commanding Fort Sheridan, Major Bootz, his executive officer, and Lieutenant-Colonel Gillem, commanding the 1st Squadron, 14th Cavalry, the Reserve Officers of the division in Chicago and vicinity have been allowed to take advantage of the exceptional opportunities in the way of training afforded by the close proximity of the Regular Army post of Fort Sheridan. A training day, at which there was an attendance of forty-nine Reserve Officers, was held on Sunday, September 24, and a second training day, at which there was an attendance of forty-four Reserve Officers, was held on Sunday, October 22. An hour and a half of mounted drill and a ride on the bridle path was held in the morning and, after an excellent dinner at one of the troops, two hours and a half of dismounted pistol practice was held on the target range adjoining the post.

Judging from remarks made by those Reserve Officers attending, the two days were a decided success: they provided an excellent outing, at the same time combining practical instruction and enjoyable recreation, and without a doubt have contributed largely to the excellent *esprit de corps* of the Illinois units of the division.

It is hoped that arrangements can be perfected with the commanding officer of Fort Wayne, Michigan, so as to enable the Michigan units to avail themselves of the same opportunities offered by that Regular Army post.

### The Swavely School

PREPARES BOYS FOR ANY  
COLLEGE

For particulars, address

4101 Connecticut Avenue N. W.  
Washington, D. C.

HENRY SCHICK

FRANK J. KRUPP


### Henry Schick & Co.

FORMERLY WITH JOHN G. HAAS

Army and Navy  
Uniforms

1421 F STREET NORTHWEST  
Washington, D. C.

CIVILIAN DRESS A SPECIALTY



**POLO GOODS**  
**MALLETS—BALLS—SADDLES**  
 (1921 CATALOG WITH BOOK OF RULES ON REQUEST)  
**CHAS. MEURISSE & CO.**  
 4638 Cottage Grove Ave.  
 CHICAGO  
**MEURISSE**

J. SHIRLEY KINES

F. C. KINES

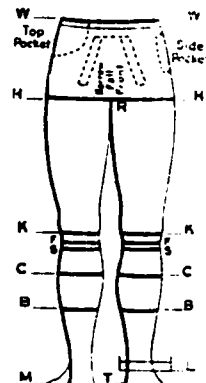
**RIDING BREECHES**  
 CORRECT SMART DURABLE

**J. SHIRLEY KINES & BRO.**  
 UPPERVILLE, VIRGINIA

WE build only the best breeches and aim to please the most particular officer.

WE carry a full line of materials. Bedford cord, domestic or imported; Serge, heavy, medium or light Whipcord, Elastique, Gabardine, Khaki; Polo Breeches. Special—Ladies' Riding Breeches.

PRICES, \$22 to \$40. According to quality and weight of material



Buttoned or laced under knee, outside, in front or inside.... Top or side pockets.... Narrow fall or fly front.... Cut small, medium or large.... Height.... Weight.... Around waist over trousers W.... Around largest part of seat (measurement snug).... Outside seam W to heel seam of shoe M (not including waist-band).... Inseam R to T.... Next four measures to be taken tight over drawers or bare leg: Around largest part of knee K.... Around smallest place below knee S.... Around largest part of calf C.... Around bottom B (should be about 4 inches below C).... From W (not including waist-band) to hollow just under kneecap F.... From W to S smallest place below knee, about 2 inches below F.... From W to C largest part of calf.... From W to B.... In case Jobdports are desired give measure W to L length, which is finished with cuff.

If these measurements are taken carefully the breeches will fit. In case they should need any alteration we will make the changes desired, purchaser to pay transportation charges. Make no allowance in taking measure. State any departure from regulation desired.



THE FORT LEAVENWORTH POLO TEAM WINNING THE TOURNAMENT  
 AT COLORADO SPRINGS, AUGUST, 1922

VOLUME XXXII

APRIL, 1923

NUMBER 131

---

# THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Devoted to the Interests of the Cavalry,  
to the Professional Improvement of Its  
Officers and Men, and to the Advance-  
ment of the Mounted Service Generally

EDITED BY  
**JEROME W. HOWE**  
MAJOR OF CAVALRY

COPYRIGHT, 1923, BY  
THE UNITED STATES CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

---

Published quarterly by the United States Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street, Washington, D. C. Editor, Major Jerome W. Howe, Cavalry. Managing Editor, Captain George A. Moore, Cavalry. Entered as second-class matter March 22, 1920, at the post-office at Washington, D. C., under the Act of March 3, 1879. Acceptance for mailing at special rate of postage provided for in section 1103, Act of October 3, 1917, authorized May 29, 1920.

\$2.50 per year; single copy, 65 cents. Canadian and foreign postage 25 cents, additional.

KNOWLEDGE ✓

POWER



THE NEW  
MILITARY LIBRARY

## Can You Afford to Get Out of Date?

GENERAL BUAT,  
CHIEF OF STAFF TO MARSHAL  
FOCH:

"I am pleased to find in these books a sense of reality, which is so characteristic of the American methods of instruction. Your works are equally interesting to persons already with knowledge of military affairs and to civilians completely ignorant of technical questions commencing the study for the first time."

Profusely Illustrated with New  
and Clever Drawings

A Nation capable of raising, training, and successfully directing 4,000,000 soldiers in a world conflict should have its own "Military Library," recording for study and reference those principles used in the training of its soldiers and their leadership.

In *The New Military Library*, by Colonel P. S. Bond, U. S. Army, we have, for the first time in our history, a truly American Military Library, in keeping with our achievements.

Each book is a new treatment of one or more subjects of the art of War, based on our experience in the World War and the courses taught at our Service Schools, and the treatment of each subject is co-ordinated with every other subject, making the entire library indispensable to the military student, to all charged with the training or instruction of officers or enlisted men, and to the officer who desires to succeed at the Service Schools.

### TACTICS—NOT EUROPEAN BUT AMERICAN

By Colonel P. S. Bond, U. S. Army

Based on American doctrines, as taught at the Service Schools, containing 500 pages with 126 original illustrations, it is a military classic.

Price, \$2.75, postpaid. Order a copy today.

Scouting, Patrolling, and Musketry

By Colonel P. S. Bond, U. S. Army.

This book, embracing within its scope three kindred subjects and co-ordinating them with the treatment of Tactics, fills a long-felt need. Its 127 highly instructive and original illustrations are alone worth the price of this book of 300 pages.

Price, \$1.50, postpaid.

Field Engineering, by Colonel P. S. Bond. 170 pages, 68 illustrations. Price, \$1.50, postpaid.

Map Reading and Military Sketching, by Colonel P. S. Bond. 108 pages, 50 illustrations. Price, \$1.25, postpaid.

Infantry Drill Regulations. Illustrated and simplified, with Hints to Drill Instructors. Up-to-date, modern methods. Full explanations. Helpful diagrams. 203 pages, 273 illustrations. Price, \$1.25, postpaid.

Book Department, U. S. Cavalry Association

1624 H Street N. W.

WASHINGTON, D. C.

## CONTENTS FOR APRIL, 1923

VOL. XXXII, No. 131

	Page
MODERN CAVALRY AND FAST MOVING COMPOSITE UNITS.....	137
Lieutenant-General Grazioli, Royal Italian Army.	
A RAZOR, SOME HORSES AND WOLVES.....	146
Captain Gordon Gordon-Smith, Royal Serbian Army.	
STANDARD CONSTRUCTION FOR NATIONAL GUARD ARMORIES.....	149
Major Joseph J. Johnston, 107th Cavalry, O. N. G.	
THE EXPERIENCES OF THE FIRST AMERICAN TROOP OF CAVALRY TO GET INTO ACTION IN THE WORLD WAR.....	153
Captain Stephen H. Sherrill, Cavalry.	
THE BRIDLELESS SQUAD.....	160
Major Charles B. Amory, Cavalry.	
HOW CAVALRY EXPLOITS A VICTORY.....	163
Captain J. R. H. Cruikshank, B. A. (Camb.), F. R. G. S., late 18th Lancers.	
AN IDEAL TYPE OF CAVALRY HORSE.....	171
Edward H. Carle, ex-First Lieutenant, 308d Ammunition Train, 78th Division.	
WITH THE GERMAN CAVALRY ADVANCE IN 1914.....	173
(Extracts from 3,000 Kilometers with the Guard Cavalry, by Dr. Vogel), translated by Colonel N. F. McClure, Cavalry.	
THE FOURTH AUSTRIAN CAVALRY DIVISION IN THE FIGHT AT VOLCH- KOVTSY, AUGUST 21, 1914.....	183
General N. N. Golovine (translated by Colonel A. M. Nikolaieff).	
FIDDLERS' GREEN AND OTHER CAVALRY SONGS.....	196
J. H. S.	
TRAINING OF NATIONAL GUARD CAVALRY.....	198
Colonel G. C. Thayer, 108d Cavalry.	
THE EMPLOYMENT OF CHEMICAL AGENTS AND THE CAVALRY SERVICE...	202
Captain John W. Weeks, 2d Cavalry.	
NATIONAL GUARD JUMPING.....	204
EDITORIAL COMMENT:	
A CAVALRY COMMUNITY CHEST—THE ART OF COMMAND—FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS AVAILABLE—REGIMENTAL COATS OF ARMS—NEED FOR CO-ORDINATION IN NATIONAL GUARD TRAINING—HUNT CLUBS AND RESERVE CAVALRY—SUB- SCRIPTIONS TO THE CAVALRY JOURNAL—CAVALRY JOURNAL MAILING SERVICE— SUBSCRIPTION RENEWALS THROUGH HEADQUARTERS SERVICE.....	
205	
TOPICS OF THE DAY:	
THE ENDURANCE TEST RIDE—ARMY TEAM TO COMPETE AT FOREIGN HORSE SHOWS—THE NEW BOAT TAIL BULLET—THE ARMY IN GALLERY PRACTICE MATCHES—THE NEW CAVALRY REGIMENT (26th CAVALRY, P. S.).....	
212	
NEW BOOKS REVIEWED.....	220
FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS.....	227
POLO.....	230
CAVALRY SCHOOL NOTES.....	240
REGIMENTAL NOTES.....	241
THE NATIONAL GUARD.....	251
THE ORGANIZED RESERVES.....	253



# The United States Cavalry Association

## DESIGN

1. The aim and purpose of the Association shall be to disseminate knowledge of the military art and science, to promote the professional improvement of its members, and to preserve and foster the spirit, the traditions, and the solidarity of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States.

—ARTICLE III of the Constitution.

Organized November 9, 1885

## OFFICERS

### President:

Major-General WILLARD A. HOLBROOK, Chief of Cavalry.

### Vice-President:

Brigadier-General STUART HEINTZELMAN, A. C. of S., G-4.

### Secretary and Treasurer:

Major JEROME W. HOWE, Cavalry.

## EXECUTIVE COUNCIL

Brigadier-General JOHN P. WOOD, National Guard of Pennsylvania.

Colonel GEORGE C. BARNHARDT (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Colonel WILLIAM R. SMEDBERG, JR. (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Colonel HERBERT B. CROSBY, Cavalry.

Colonel LEON B. KROMER (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Lieutenant-Colonel EDWARD DAVIS, Cavalry.

Lieutenant-Colonel JOHN PHILIP HILL, Cavalry, Reserve Corps.

Major JOHN C. MONTGOMERY (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Major JONATHAN M. WAINWRIGHT, 1st Cavalry.

## MEMBERSHIP AND SUBSCRIPTION FOR THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Membership shall be of three classes, which, together with the conditions of eligibility therefor, are as follows:

- (1) Active, for which all general officers of the Army of the United States and all commissioned officers of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States shall be eligible.
- (2) Associate, for which all present and former commissioned, warrant, and non-commissioned officers of honorable record of the military or naval services of the United States not included in class 1 shall be eligible.
- (3) Honorary.

Any person desiring to become an active or associate member shall make application to the Secretary, which application shall set forth facts establishing his eligibility and be accompanied by payment for at least one year's subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL; and, the applicant's eligibility appearing, the Secretary shall award him membership from the date at which his subscription to the JOURNAL is commenced.

Active and associate members of the Association shall subscribe annually for the JOURNAL and make payment therefor in advance.

Application for membership should be addressed to the Secretary, U. S. Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street N. W., Washington, D. C., showing present or former military status and accompanied by remittance to the order of the Association for \$2.50, first year's subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL. Membership is continued after the first year by renewal of subscription to the JOURNAL.

Any person or organization not eligible for membership may subscribe for the JOURNAL at the regular subscription rates of \$2.50 per year. Canadian and foreign postage, 25 cents additional.

Members and subscribers are requested to give prompt notice in advance of change of address.

# THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Vol. XXXII

APRIL, 1923

No. 131

## Modern Cavalry and Fast Moving Composite Units

BY

Lieutenant-General GRAZIOLI, Royal Italian Army

THE following is a translation of an article by Lieutenant-General F. S. Grazioli, of the Royal Italian Army, published in a recent issue of the *Rassegna dell'Esercito Italiano*. The article is of interest, not only on account of the subject-matter it contains, but also because the ideas set forth are those of a general whose war experience and accomplishments have caused his promotion to very high rank while still young, and who, since the armistice, has done more toward making use of lessons learned in the war to remodel the Italian Army than perhaps any other officer. General Grazioli is now in charge of all military instruction in the Italian Army and is a member of the Army Council. The stand he takes in favor of the cavalry is significant, because, before becoming a general, all his service was with the artillery, infantry, and general staff.

I

I think we all agree that, since the recent war was predominantly a war of position, it cannot be considered as a complete and conclusive experiment in arriving at a decision about the future of the cavalry as a fighting arm. Therefore it seems to me that we should call unsound the opinion of those who favor abolishing this noble arm because it was used to such a limited extent in the last war as compared with the brilliant results obtained from mechanical means of offense and defense. On the other hand, I think that the proposition to make no changes in the pre-war proportion and method of employment of the cavalry is likewise unsound.

By avoiding extreme views and reasoning cautiously, we can formulate along these lines some definite ideas from the incomplete lessons of the war.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

These ideas, to be sure, will not suffice to solve the difficult problem of the future of the cavalry, yet they may help toward reaching a gradual and well-thought-out solution.

For example, this concept might be put first: Granted the probability that future wars will be more mobile than the recent war was, nevertheless there will have to be long periods when the lines are stationary and when reorganization takes place. During these periods the fighting will temporarily and necessarily become a war of position. We can conclude from this that in the future cavalry action will of necessity be intermittent. Much more surely than in past wars more or less prolonged periods of inaction will occur. These periods, however, will be very useful for the cavalry, because its tactical employment causes great wastage, which must be attended to during periods of reorganization.

Another definite deduction which can be arrived at from the lessons of the recent war is this: That to use cavalry units (no matter how small they may be) on foot as ordinary infantry is an error. It would be better to transform them once and for all into infantry and cease to consider them as cavalry. It should be borne in mind that a cavalry division on foot is numerically equal only to a regiment of infantry, and when on foot they have not the mobility and special training which the infantry has. To prove this it is enough to ask ourselves what actual results were gained by employing our large cavalry units in the trenches. It must be clearly understood that I am not speaking disparagingly of the dashing valor which they showed under these circumstances on such a difficult and restless part of the front.

Cavalry used as infantry—no. This does not mean that it is an error for cavalry to fight on foot when by so doing they are properly employed, according to the tactics of the arm. This is an entirely different matter and we will speak of it later.

Another lesson of the recent war is that even during periods when active operations were at a halt cavalry units must be kept constantly available for any favorable chance to use them, even if they are at the rear in the process of reorganization. Just think how useful it would have been for us to be able to use a strong mass of really agile and mobile cavalry in August, 1916, after breaking through at the Gorizia bridge-head.

I have said above that there is a tendency to condemn cavalry to extinction on account of the small use which was made of it during the recent World War as a fighting arm, but some theoretical considerations will show us the fallacy of this theory.

The soldier on horseback, through centuries, has been considered as one of those means of combat which are intimately and naturally allied with the art of warfare. The horse has always accompanied man to war, not only because of the caprice of man, his owner and master, but because the horse, of all

## MODERN CAVALRY AND FAST MOVING COMPOSITE UNITS

animals, has those natural qualities which so well correspond to the manifold exigencies of the kinds of warfare in which man has participated. There is no mistake in considering the horse as one of the natural and essential elements of warfare.

The development of mechanical means applied to transport may in the near or far future cause the horse to disappear as a motive force for draft; but just as the development and application of mechanical means of warfare can never eliminate the use of man himself as one of the natural and essential elements of combat, so, likewise, man will never be induced to deprive himself entirely of the co-operation of the noble animal which has accompanied him every time he has gone out to battle.

Even today, if, in conformity with the usual mistakes in judgment which always immediately follow a great war, we were to decide that the mission of the horse in combat were at an end, and if we were to go so far as to attempt something impossible, namely, to try to forget the record of historical acts of the cavalry arm, then tomorrow, notwithstanding all the marvelous progress made in mechanics applied to war, new men would appear who would, as it were, invent anew fighting on horseback as a necessary element of warfare.

When I think back over the time when I commanded large units in two very different but equally characteristic periods of the war—i. e., the retreat from Caporetto and the offensive of Vittorio Veneto\*—I remember perfectly that in both cases I felt the greatest need to make every possible use of the few cavalry units which I had at my disposal. I may state, too, that I could not have assigned to other arms or to other means those duties which I assigned to the cavalry. They performed the tasks assigned them in a distinguished manner, even under the withering fire from the enemy.

Why, then, is the efficiency of the cavalryman so enduring and indestructible and the need of the cavalry arm so great?

Up to half a century ago the cavalry, and the cavalry alone, had within itself the greatest qualities for speed and shock action, both in the strategic and tactical field. This was before mechanical means had been so extensively applied to warfare and before such extraordinary progress had been made in firearms. On account of its characteristic qualities, the cavalry was the ideal arm for long-range scouting, for reconnaissance at short distances to the front and to flanks when large columns were on the march; it was the ideal arm for surprise and for dashing combat action; it was the arm which crowned the victory by completing it, or which sacrificed itself heroically in defeat.

But as mechanical means of warfare progressed, the cavalry little by little lost its eminent position in some of the missions referred to above. Troops on bicycles, and later many other varieties of perfected mechanical transport, along with improved roads, caused it to lose its speed as compared with other troops.

\* The Cavalry in the Battle of Vittorio Veneto. CAVALRY JOURNAL, JANUARY, 1923.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Aviation appeared, and the cavalry lost its leading position in exploring, especially from a strategic point of view. With the perfecting of firearms, at first by firing faster, then by repeated fire, then by automatic weapons and by concentration of fire, it became possible for fire to destroy the shock action of cavalry before it was delivered. On the other hand, the shock action of infantry, too, was necessarily supplanted by fire action, which was constantly brought closer to the enemy and intensified. Finally, the appearance of tanks and automatic means of offense brought about a kind of mechanical shock action which, to a certain degree, took the place of the old cavalry charges. Likewise, the heavy bombardments which were conducted from the air by concentration of airplanes over sensitive parts of the battlefield had also a similar shock effect.

All these great inventions which have taken place within the last fifty years have invaded to a great extent the cavalry's sphere of action, taking away from it much work which belonged to it exclusively. Yet, in one of its fields of activity, namely, quickness of movement off the roads or on roads not adaptable to bicycles or other mechanical means of transport, the cavalry has not been replaced.

In every possible war zone, the terrain which lies between the network of roads—and sometimes this network is very loose—makes it possible for the cavalry to continue to rank first for quickness, adaptability to the country, ability to supply itself, to infiltrate, and to beat large areas. These qualities can be exerted in proportion to the training which the cavalry has received along lines of dashing conduct and sportsmanship. In free and broken terrain where the bicyclist cannot go except on foot—then he becomes an ordinary infantryman—the cavalryman can go faster and can scout, surprise, fight, and reconnoiter. In covered terrain where the aviator cannot see anything, or in thickly wooded country where firearms, even automatic firearms, lose their field of fire and efficiency to a great extent, small detachments of cavalry can still hope to obtain success by surprise. Finally, they can be of great use to the infantry in precisely that work which for foot troops is so laborious—i. e., reconnoitering, orientation, and liaison.

Aviation itself, which took such a tremendous jump during the recent war and which has such a sure and tremendous future before it, has assumed many of the duties of the cavalry as regards strategic exploration, but it will never be able to replace efficiently the cavalry for close reconnaissance, because it cannot give the big marching columns that safety which they can get from the cavalry. Anybody who has been subjected to the troubles connected with a retreat under hostile pressure can testify to this. In pursuit, the substitution of aviation for cavalry is not clearly conceivable because the airplanes will never be able to reap the material fruits of victory, namely, take prisoners and capture supplies. Without these it is impossible to insure complete victory.

## MODERN CAVALRY AND FAST MOVING COMPOSITE UNITS

Although it is true that tanks are much more independent of the kind of terrain than any other auto-vehicle, it is certain that their concerted action for a prolonged period of time is very difficult, especially in terrain such as ours; in any case, certainly, more difficult than cavalry concerted action, because when employed in large numbers over vast areas one cannot expect to get prompt obedience from them.

It seems to me rational to conclude that the various means of mechanical transport do not properly form a substitute for cavalry. They should rather be considered as new means which are very adaptable to work harmoniously and to reciprocate with the cavalry. This relationship is comparable to that which exists in small infantry combat detachments between weapons which must be fired from the ground, weapons which are carried by the infantryman, and the actual infantry assault.

In the summer of 1918 I had an opportunity to try out these very same ideas in the war zone. I took advantage of the nearness of the 1st Cavalry Division, under my command, to a corps park of mechanical assault vehicles. Under the auspices of H. R. H. the Count of Turin, we carried on some most interesting experiments in the territory between Bacchiglione and Brenta preparatory to the great offensive of Vittorio Veneto. In these exercises we made practical studies of the combined use of cavalry with mechanical means of offense and transport with good results. The published report on this sums up what the results were and contains in this connection many observations which I think should be of great use.

It seems to me that the variety and versatility of action still left to the cavalry is of considerable importance because of the changes in the tactics of the infantry and other arms resulting from war experience. We know that these changes in tactics must result in loosening or thinning out tactical formations. There will be a notable enlargement of the zone in which a unit deploys and large gaps are bound to occur between units. Furthermore, it will be necessary for the offensive to penetrate deep into the enemy's defense to be effective. On the other hand, the opponents will have to counteract this deep penetration by an arrangement of obstacles in depth and by concentration of forces. Up to the middle of the recent war, maneuver was done away with as a part of the tactics of small infantry units, but later it seems to have assumed all its prior importance and efficiency; this because of the greater amount of deployment, because of the greater width and depth of zones, and because of the increased efficiency and mobility of automatic arms.

Space and maneuver are the slogans of the new tactics which we have gotten from the recent war. Space and maneuver are two things which are very suitable to that arm which has the greatest, if not perfect, adaptability to terrain and which still holds first place for speed off the road.

The cavalry has to face the serious question of hostile fire, which has recently become so tremendously destructive. It is an extremely vulnerable

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

target because it is the least able to get down on or into the ground. This is of so great moment that it actually assumes the importance of an essential issue, and therefore requires particular examination. There is no doubt that the power and efficiency of hostile fire has attained such development as to require the cavalry to make fundamental changes in its tactics. This is the naked and crude truth, and I hope that there will not be any cavalry officers who are of a different opinion. The cavalry has always made an effort to be ahead of the times. For traditional reasons, and also on account of the high *esprit de corps*, this arm, although decidedly progressive in the field of horsemanship, its passion and pride, has been persistently conservative in the tactical field. This is because, before the war, it did not come sufficiently into contact with its sister arms, and especially with the infantry. It took all the forces which the necessity of war imposed in order to bring about that thorough co-operation between arms which we hope will last, based, as it is, upon mutual admiration for the sacrifices which have been gone through together.

The transformation of the cavalry, then, must be studied in connection with infantry tactics. This is where we will find the new road to usefulness without excluding the possibility that cavalry may even be employed usefully under its old tactics, with or without the co-operation of mechanical means under special circumstances, in particular regions, or against certain enemies.

Let us confine ourselves to the field of modern infantry combat. First we must consider our present financial conditions and the fact that it is impracticable to obtain an overabundant proportion of cavalry. Then we must not only consider the enemy's fire, but we must also bear in mind the fact that our own fire has now become automatic, rapid, and easily carried around. This kind of fire can be given abundantly also to the cavalry, which is especially suited to it because the cavalry has the faculty of being able to carry abundant ammunition.

I wish to lay great emphasis on the fact that, although hostile fire is destructive, it is much less so when the terrain is covered with woods, shrubs, &c. For this reason, in zones where the terrain is covered and where cavalry can get around it is particularly suitable, for its employment under these conditions is not so costly and gets good results for what it gives.

Finally, I claim that the cavalry can hold its leading position as a quick-moving arm off the roads. In such localities, especially if they be not covered, it can combine rapid changes of position on horseback with work on foot, bursts of fire from machine guns, and action with hand grenades and the bayonet. It is certainly in a position to realize exactly those qualities of maneuver and surprise which constitute the spirit of modern battle tactics. In this connection it would be sufficient to quote a few characteristic examples of dashing, successful employment of small detachments of cavalry on the Allied side during the great German offensive of 1918 in France. There one could often see detachments on horseback maneuvering with the smallest losses

## MODERN CAVALRY AND FAST MOVING COMPOSITE UNITS

and with great success, in the face of very destructive enemy fire, only because their action depended upon speed and surprise. Again, if we wish to confine ourselves to surprise actions which occurred on our own battlefields, we find examples of these in our victorious battle of June on the Piave and later in the operations of August 6th and 7th in Albania during the advance from the Vojussa to the Semeni rivers, in which the squadrons of Catania, Palermo, and Sardinia regiments took part.

To sum up:

- (a) If we insist upon the instruction of the individual small units in cavalry;
- (b) If we develop their skill in horsemanship and their tactical education along new lines;
- (c) If we supply the cavalry with numerous light automatic fire-weapons;
- (d) If we train them along lines which until recently were considered more suitable for mounted infantry than for cavalry;
- (e) If we accustom its leaders to a bold marauding kind of warfare, which at one time openly held a place of honor;
- (f) If we will not hitch the horse to mechanical means, but will make these two different elements harmonize their tactics;

If we know how to do all this, perhaps we will open up another field of action for cavalry as an arm in which it is strictly auxiliary to the infantry. This would be of great advantage to both.

We have imposed different conditions in order that the cavalry may become an arm which will not meet insurpassable difficulty in the enemy's fire. These conditions themselves tend to exclude the idea set forth above, which can apply only to a too-restricted field of action, such as work in conjunction with a regiment or smaller unit of infantry. Above these detachments are regiments, groups of regiments, and so forth, up to higher units. These in turn must develop new tactical ideas along with the progress made in firearms. The larger units will have to cover very great deployment areas (a division front from 3,000 to 4,000 meters; army corps, 6,000 to 8,000 meters, with a depth of 7-8 kilometers.) This certainly will offer a variety of terrain and permit the possible use of cavalry in some sector. That sector will be just the sector where, if the commander did not have his cavalry, he would feel the lack of it very keenly.

In the war of maneuver and on proper terrain the employment of cavalry as outlined above will certainly be possible. Therefore cavalry officers must not only intensify their own study but they must also carefully attend to the instruction of their troops in order that the cavalry may play its new tactical rôle with the other arms in a worthy manner.

This is the great and inviting field for study and activity where the cavalry will add to the already effulgent glory which it has reaped in warfare on foot

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

and on horseback, where it will add to the many examples of admirable discipline which it has shown since the war in the face of heartrending reductions caused by dire financial necessity. Here is a field for noble ambitions, imbued with the spirit of modernism, to prepare themselves for new duties on the battlefields where they will defend the fortunes of the motherland.

### II

The ideas which we have been expounding in connection with the cavalry should make us see the necessity for the organization and instruction on a large scale of special fast-moving composite units. In many strategic and tactical situations in future wars these units could be of incalculable service if they were assigned as masses of mobile reserve to important large units operating over terrain suitable for their use.

Our experience in the recent war shows us the great similarity between the big battles of the Napoleonic period and what happens now on an infinitely larger scale on the long modern battle-fronts. Under the predominating fire action and maneuvering of one of the opponents, at a certain moment a part of the line breaks and a breach is opened. If we take into consideration the difference in length of the front and its depth, these breaches bear a striking similarity to those caused by Napoleon's offensive concentrations at a decisive point. By pushing these attacking columns into these breaches, Napoleon made them irremediable. After them he hurled the irresistible force of his cavalry like the stroke of a cleaver, which, smashing all resistance, completed the success and gathered the fruits of victory. The enormous gaps, sometimes 60 kilometers wide and deep, which we have seen opened up on the various fronts during the recent war by resolute and ponderous offensives, are after all nothing but a large scale reproduction of these Napoleonic breaches. Both were obtained by labor and fire action and a concentration by maneuver. The more modern variety took infinitely more time and trouble on account of the enormous forces of resistance available on modern battle-fronts and on account of the tremendous amount of armament and protection available to the defense. Yet in most cases, notwithstanding the great size of the gaps, the enemy's line was not completely smashed because of the weariness of the attack. Then, too, the length of the time necessary to complete the rupture diminished at the supreme moment the assailant's vitality and gave the defense time to patch things up as best he could, principally by plugging up the front of the hole where it was deepest and starting counter-offensives against the flanks of the offensive wedge.

Therefore it seems clear that there was almost always something lacking which prevented the attack from completing its work. On the other hand, the defense could have acted much more promptly and energetically if it had at its disposal some means with which to start a quick and resolute reaction. The means, then, which would have been so useful to both offense and defense

## MODERN CAVALRY AND FAST MOVING COMPOSITE UNITS

would be precisely those fast-moving composite corps which we referred to above. As a matter of fact, we are just talking about a modern reincarnation of the old concept of "the mobile reserve," which could be turned loose at the decisive point either to complete the rupture of the enemy's lines or to prevent our own from being broken. The difference is principally one of scale, due to more extensive fronts and larger breaches.

This modern maneuvering mass should be made up of elements whose special characteristic is speed. It should consist of both land and air troops. This group of fast-moving units should be able, by itself, to undertake any kind of operation—that is to say, it should be able to act offensively, defensively, or on the counter-offensive; it should have the individual and combined training necessary to enable it to go through all phases of combat, namely, scouting, preparation, attack, and charge, no matter how rapidly these phases succeed one another.

For this reason its aircraft should be able to scout, observe, make liaison, and fight (bombardment and machine-gun action). The land forces should be as follows:

- (a) Troops on horseback: cavalry with a large proportion of light automatic weapons and light artillery drawn by horses;
- (b) Troops on bicycles: bicyclists and machine-gunners on bicycles;
- (c) Troops with auto-mechanical transport: automobile machine-guns, armored cars, tanks, artillery mounted on or drawn by motor vehicles, infantry storm troops, and engineers on light motor cars.

Naturally, although all these troops can move fast, yet their degree of speed depends upon the terrain over which they operate. Aircraft is, of course, the fastest and is absolutely independent of terrain. Of the land forces, those on bicycles and those supplied with mechanical means are the fastest on good roads, but the slowest off the roads; troops on horseback are the slowest on the roads, but the fastest off the roads. Nevertheless, a commander who has a good imagination, plenty of energy, and is able to make quick decisions will be able effectively to take advantage of these heterogeneous elements, provided they are perfectly trained and capable of getting the greatest possible results from their exertions. The commander must be able to drive this fine group of aggressive forces with the same boldness and skill that an expert driver would handle a four-in-hand of strong horses all of different character and different amount of spirit—that is to say, he should regulate the total efforts according to the special characteristics of each unit in order to obtain the greatest final results from all. Anybody can see what a vast and fruitful field of action opens itself up before an energetic maneuvering commander. The most refined ambition for command would certainly be satisfied by such a mission as being turned loose at the head of such an admirable instrument of

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL.

offense in the midst of a war of maneuver at the right moment and with adequate liberty of action and in command of mixed air and land forces.

The vastness of his field of action will greatly surpass all the usual proportions between strength and kilometers of front which confine the ordinary large units in their deployment. Thus, within this vast and free field of action, the composite unit of mixed arms, without having to rest its flank on anything, without having to trouble about its liaison, or all those other annoyances which go with holding a certain part of the front, can, or rather must, maneuver with the greatest and most complete freedom. It may dare; it may give the *coup de grâce* to an enemy whose front has been broken, or, if the enemy is succeeding in breaking our line, it may spring at his throat. Such fast-moving composite units would be our supreme defense.

These views and remarks barely suffice to sketch the problem. To complete this study in its multifarious phases (and to take into consideration the variety of terrain over which we are called upon to fight) it would be necessary to go into details far beyond the limits of this article, which is essentially dedicated to cavalry. However, I had to mention them because many of the duties which will be assigned to these new fast-moving composite units are closely related to the traditional duties of the cavalry arm. It is very natural that these problems should thrill the minds and hearts of modern cavalry officers. They should study them eagerly and put into their solution all of that aggressive spirit which in the past has been that noble arm's pride. Nowadays there is no command for which the versatile spirit of a Seidlitz or of a Murat could better be reincarnated than for that of "Chief of fast composite units."

## A Razor, Some Horses and Wolves

BY

Captain GORDON GORDON-SMITH, Royal Serbian Army

THE World War, in its last phases, was a sordid affair of mud, trenches, poison gas, long-range artillery, and deadly, soul-killing monotony.

But at the beginning, during the short "war of movement," which ended with the Battle of the Marne, it was varied, picturesque, and full of incident. Most of these were tragic; others had their humorous side.

One incident of the retreat to the Marne had a mixture of both elements, as it was tragic in its results, while its execution had its comic side. It happened late in August, 1914, during the retreat to the Marne. About 6 o'clock

## A RAZOR, SOME HORSES AND WOLVES

in the evening a squadron of British Hussars, retiring before the Germans, reached the village of Neri, a few miles from Compiègne. They put up for the night at a farm-house near the exit from the village.

They told the villagers that the Germans were about a day's march behind them and might be expected to enter Neri the following afternoon. The squadron spent the night in the farm and next morning, about 5 o'clock, they saddled up and rode off, all but one man, who had not finished shaving. He had saddled his horse and had attached it to a ring in the wall of the farm-house, while he proceeded to remove a two days' beard. Shaving with Tommy Atkins is a solemn rite, just as important as his cup of tea in the afternoon with the inevitable bread and marmalade. French's "contemptibles," under the most adverse circumstances, kept themselves and their horses as spick and span as when they were in barracks at home.

This particular Hussar started then to smarten himself up. He had just got his face nicely lathered when, to his surprise, he heard dropping rifle shots coming from the village. Razor in hand and with his face covered with soap, he went to the door to see what was happening. He got there just in time to see a German Uhlan get off his horse, draw his carbine, and shoot his (the Hussar's) horse, which was standing attached to the ring in the wall.

The astonished Hussar stood an instant petrified, then, with a yell of rage, he jumped for the German, seized his head with his left arm, drew it back, and with one slash of his razor, his only weapon, cut his throat. Luckily for the village of Neri, at the very moment he did so a German patrol rode round the corner of the village street and saw what happened. If by any chance they had not done so and a German soldier had been found in the farm-yard with his throat cut, nothing could have saved the village and probably most of the inhabitants from destruction at the hands of the Prussians. On such occasions they showed no mercy.

The Hussar saw his danger. He made a rush for the Uhlan's horse, sprang into the saddle, jumped the nearest hedge, and galloped across the fields in the wake of his retreating comrades. As he rode he turned in the saddle and shook the razor at the astonished Germans. Half a dozen men with carbines jumped from their horses and opened fire on the fugitive, but he got safely away.

Another curious incident came under my observation later in the war. A friend of mine, the Vicomtesse de Vauchier, owns a château near Lure, a small town on the Paris-Belfort line, not far from the latter fortress. Her son-in-law, M. Doyen, before the war raised thoroughbred stock, having over a hundred horses in the stables at the time of the declaration of war. As M. Doyen was mobilized and with him all the men in his employment fit for military service, it fell to the women to see that the horses were, according to French military law, handed over to the authorities for military service.



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

There were sixty horses, all thoroughbreds, which had to be taken from the château to Lure, a distance of about 20 miles.

The Vicomtesse de Vauchier and her daughter mounted their horses and started to ride round and round the stable-yard of the château. Each time they passed the door of the stables two horses were let loose and fell in behind them. They rode round and round the yard until they had the whole sixty trotting docilely behind them. Then they set out for Lure. Their one fear was that when they crossed the railway line at the level crossing about half way to Lure a train might happen to come by and stampede the horses. Fortunately this did not happen and they reached Lure without mishap and handed over the horses, which, being animals of the highest class, were mainly used for officers' chargers.

The Vicomtesse still had forty or so horses left, two-year-olds, too young for military service. As an instance of the indomitable spirit of the women of France, I may mention that Madame Doyen harnessed four of these horses to a reaping machine and went out cutting the wheat on the farms for 20 miles round, working from sunrise to dark, often returning to the château so tired out that she was hardly able to eat her dinner.

After the war had been going on about a year I happened to be in Lure and drove over to see the Vicomtesse. She took me down to the pasture land below the castle to see the thoroughbreds grazing there. There were about a couple of score of them, beautiful animals, nearly all of pedigree stock.

A fortnight later I got a letter from the Vicomtesse, informing me that she had lost half a dozen of her finest horses under extraordinary circumstances. They had been killed by wolves. It was over a century since a wolf had been seen in that part of the country. Their presence was due to the fighting in Alsace around Hartmannsweiler Kopf. The ceaseless rifle and artillery fire had ended by scaring all the wolves out of the Vosges Mountains, and they had come in packs into France, passing through Belfort and Lure and penetrating as far as Villers Sexel. On their passage they had killed and partly devoured three of the Vicomtesse de Vauchier's thoroughbreds and so mangled three others that they had to be shot.

Wolves as the Kaiser's allies devastating the French remount seemed to me to be the "last word" in modern warfare.



## A RAZOR, SOME HORSES, AND WOLVES



A NARROW ESCAPE





THE NEW 107th CAVALRY ARMORY, AKRON, OHIO

## Standard Construction for National Guard Armories

BY

Major JOSEPH J. JOHNSTON, 107th Cavalry, O. N. G.

**S**INCE the war the organization of cavalry units in the National Guard has proceeded rapidly. In many of the States cavalry troops were reorganized in communities where troops had existed before the war and had been adequately housed. In the majority of instances, perhaps, new units were organized in towns where no facilities for indoor riding existed. It is, therefore, to be assumed that the problem of adequately housing mounted units of the National Guard will be of interest to National Guard cavalry officers and inspector-instructors of the Regular Army detailed to National Guard cavalry organizations.

In Ohio several of the troops had well appointed armories awaiting them when they organized. With the others, however, it was necessary for the State to rent outlying barns to stable the horses, and to fit out more or less suitable rooms, either in the barn or in near-by buildings, for the personnel and equipment. While these more or less makeshift buildings have passed the Federal inspection, they are far from ideal, principally because of the lack of facility for indoor drill during the winter months.

After passing their first winter in a rented barn, the officers of Troop E of the 107th Cavalry resolved to better their housing conditions. As the city of Akron, in which the troop was located, had one of the finest infantry armories in the State, it was out of the question to ask the legislature to appropriate funds for another armory. The problem that confronted the officers was to secure a building suitable for their purposes and at the same time economical enough to allow easy financing.

### TYPE OF BUILDING

The type of building finally decided upon was the so-called standard all-steel unit construction building of the Truscon Steel Company, which has been used by large manufacturing concerns when it has been necessary to erect a large building economically and quickly. There are a number of firms in the United States that manufacture standard steel buildings and they can be secured in various sizes and in several different types.

Owing to the limited finances, it was necessary to select a type of building in which the largest amount of floor space could be secured for the smallest

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

amount of money. The building selected is 100 x 160 feet and contains three bays. The center bay is the riding hall, 60 x 160 in the clear, with 21 feet of head room. The bays on each side, being 20 x 160, are divided into club, orderly, storage, and locker rooms.

The floor of the riding hall was constructed by filling in four feet of cinders and rolling these with a steam roller. On top of the cinders a foot of clay and sand mixture was rolled hard and shavings were placed on top. This has proven very satisfactory, as the shavings mix with the sand and form a suitable cushion and also serve to keep down the dust.

The building is heated by placing large stoves in the rooms in the side bays. It was not found necessary to have heat in the riding hall.

### STABLES

In addition to the main building, two stables were erected of similar construction. In this case, however, the buildings are 28 x 110. Stalls are provided for 32 horses each. The width of the stables is not satisfactory; but owing to the fact that widths over 28 feet require structural steel, it was necessary to shorten the stables in order to save on the cost. A row of stalls was put on each side of the building, with an eight-foot aisle between the two rows of stalls. The stalls are all arranged to accommodate two horses, and have removable plank floors. Above each stall is a large window, so that the building is exceptionally well lighted and ventilated. The floor of the stalls is raised six inches above the concrete aisle, and two small drainage gutters run the entire length of the building, at either side of the aisle. The stables may be flushed out with a hose when necessary.

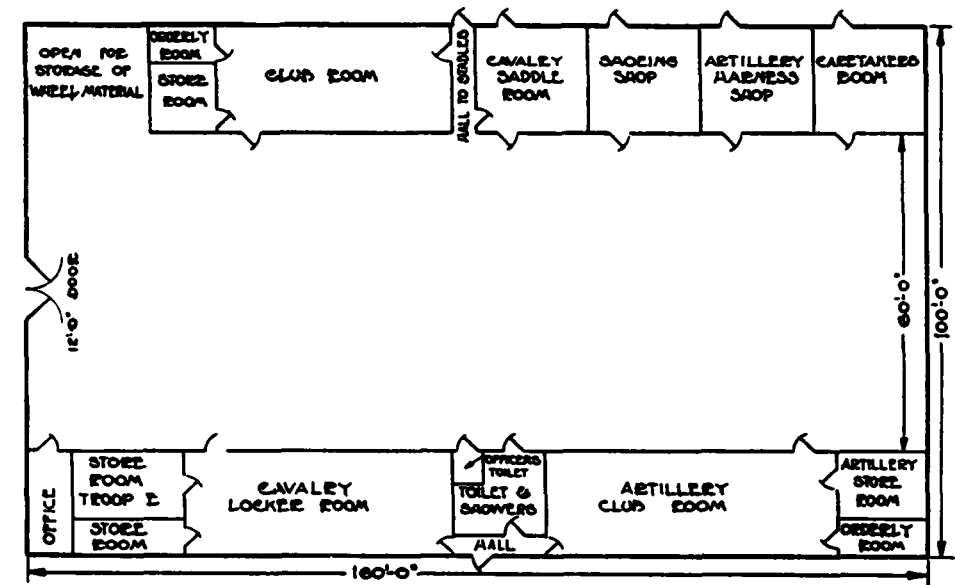
The three buildings are so arranged that they form three sides of a corral of about half an acre, in which the horses may be turned out during the day.

### FINANCING

Shortly after the troop had been formed, the squadron headquarters and headquarters detachment of the 2d Squadron of the 107th Cavalry was mustered in and also assigned quarters with the troop. An ammunition train had been organized and was without permanent quarters and a battery of artillery was in the process of organization. It was proposed to house these four units in the new building. The State of Ohio allows \$2,000 per year for each organization, for rent and upkeep of buildings. This would make \$8,000 a year available for the four organizations. A local contractor was willing to erect the building upon a deferred-payment plan, \$8,000 to be paid down and \$8,000 a year until the building was paid for, the interest to be included in the payments. It was found that the building described above could be built complete for \$32,000, including the interest on the deferred payments to the contractor.

## STANDARD CONSTRUCTION FOR NATIONAL GUARD ARMORIES

At this time the question of a location for the building arose. As the city had donated the site for the infantry armory, the officers decided to ask for a location from the city council. However, the people in the city who opposed the National Guard, headed by professional pacifists and labor agitators, went before the council and by exercising political influence against certain members secured a defeat of the ordinance. The city council offered to give a piece of ground later, when the agitation against the National Guard had subsided. However, the officers were in no humor to wait any longer with a



chance of the ordinance again failing. The support of the leading citizens and business men of the city was solicited and in a very few days these gentlemen had purchased for the guard about two acres of land. This piece of ground was located near the center of the town, on the border of a large natural park which had recently been optioned by the city. The land was given to the State with a restriction that it be used for armory purposes only, and that a building be immediately erected.

The Adjutant General and the local contractor were then brought together, and an agreement was drawn up in which the contractor agreed to build the building as specified and the Adjutant General agreed to pay \$8,000 a year rent for the building. It was also agreed that when \$32,000 had been paid, a local trust company, which was to hold the land in trust for both the contractor and the State, would deed the building to the State of Ohio.

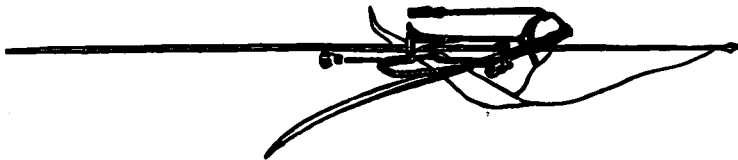
Within two months of the signing of the agreement the new armory was completed, and the four units had a splendid home. Recently the contractor, becoming pressed for cash, made the State an offer of a substantial discount, and the amount due was paid up at a considerable saving. However, had the original agreement been carried out, the State would have acquired an armory without expending other than the customary rental money.

SUGGESTED IMPROVEMENTS FOR THIS TYPE OF BUILDING

It has been found that a considerable amount of money would have been saved, both in first cost and in repair, had many of the windows in the main building been left out and had all of the windows been placed three feet higher. The building is, for the main part, used at night and is easily lighted, so that a large number of windows is not necessary. They should be high enough from the ground to prevent breakage by men and horses. This was taken care of in the stables, where the windows were all placed at the proper height. The stables should be attached to the main building, so that the horses could be led directly to their stalls without being taken out of doors. This can be arranged without extra cost.

For an organization that can afford to spend a small amount more than was spent in this case, it would be well to have the 20-foot side bays open to accommodate spectators, and to have the club-rooms at one end of the building. With this arrangement, horse shows and other entertainments could be given, which would aid the organization funds. At a horse show recently given by Troop E, the gate receipts were in the neighborhood of \$1,000, and about 200 people were turned away.

In attempting to finance this building the officers discovered several other possible means of financing, and the writer is led to believe that in any public-spirited locality an aggressive troop commander will have very little difficulty in securing a suitable hall for his command.



## The Experiences of the First American Troop of Cavalry to Get into Action in the World War

BY

Captain STEPHEN H. SHERRILL, Cavalry

TROOP I, 2d Cavalry, had an enviable record for gallant actions in the various wars of our country, and it was with enthusiasm that we received our orders to go overseas, and each of us determined to make every effort to add to the glory of its record. After many weeks of preparation, we departed from Fort Ethan Allen on March 17, 1918, with the rest of the regiment, for Camp Merritt, and on March 22 sailed for France, arriving at Bordeaux on April 6. After a few days at Camp Genicart, Troops H and I, forming a provisional squadron, entrained for the trip to the front, there to join the 2d Division in its first sector.

After detraining at Souilly, we hiked to Camp de Cinq Frères, about a kilometer from Ancemont, not far from Verdun. We had not brought our horses from the States, but we never permitted our horse equipment to get out of our hands, as I determined to get mounts as early as possible.

The day following our arrival at Camp de Cinq Frères—a place that we always remembered by the size and number of the rats that infested it and took unbelievable liberties with us in our quarters—I reported to Colonel Preston Brown, Chief of Staff, and to Major-General Bundy, the 2d Division Commander. I succeeded in getting horses assigned to both troops that first day and was instructed to work with them in drilling in some sheltered place until called on for use.

We worked hard for three weeks, whipping these mounts into trained cavalry horses, all the while things being fairly quiet in the sector. We were all greatly disappointed when, on April 30, we received orders for I Troop to proceed to Selles-sur-Cher, near Tours, to help out temporarily the situation in the S. O. S., where they were short-handed in men to care for remount stations. We had, however, got acquainted with the front and were somewhat familiar with conditions and life there.

I will not dwell on our experiences at Selles-sur-Cher, other than to say that every man in the troop pitched in with his usual vigor and enthusiasm to build up, with hard work, the little remount station there into a model, nearly complete when we left in July.

All the while we wanted nothing but to get back to the front and really get into things up there. I had been careful to keep our horses and to drill the

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

troop a short time each day, and I had let the authorities at Tours know that we were fully equipped and trained and ready to entrain immediately when any one on the front called for a small body of cavalry.

Late in July, orders were received to report, fully equipped, to the Commanding General of the 3d Army Corps, and on July 29 the troop entrained for Dammartin-en-Goele. While we were en route, corps headquarters had moved, so we followed, detraining at Château-Thierry on August 1.

A little incident happened while on this journey that shows something of the speed of the troop trains in France, that were so familiar to so many of us. Our horses had been loaded eight in the car, and while traveling from Dammartin to Noisy-le-Sec, Paris, one horse got loose and jumped out of the door before the men assigned to that car could get him. At the next stop those men were sent back up the track to look for the horse, which I naturally supposed had been badly injured and would have to be shot. Imagine our surprise when, a few hours later, the men overtook us during our wait at Noisy-le-Sec, leading the horse, who was not even bruised!

The afternoon of our arrival at Château-Thierry we marched to Gland, across the Marne, and went into camp. The following morning I reported to General Bullard, the Corps Commander, at Mont St. Pere. General Bullard asked if men and animals were ready to proceed at once to the front and join the French cavalry in its work there. Upon being told that every man and horse was ready, he ordered the troop to leave Gland at noon and report to the colonel commanding the French cavalry, at Coulonges.

By the time the troop arrived in Coulonges it was dark. The road just beyond was being heavily shelled and the traffic was blocked. On the approach march we had seen many dead Germans lying on either side of the road, for this country had seen fierce fighting but a few hours before, and so by the time we reached Coulonges we felt that we were really at the front. The P. C. of the French cavalry could not be found, due to the confusion, darkness, and heavy shelling, so I decided to go into bivouac for the remainder of the night. Because of the pitch darkness, it was impossible to reconnoiter for a site, but finally I ordered the men to fix themselves in a narrow-gauge railroad cut, which afforded fair protection. It was our first night under fire, for "Jerry" was sending big ones over very often, and that fact, coupled with a heavy rain-fall, made it a really miserable and endless night.

Early the following morning I reported to the commander of the French cavalry and was directed by him to proceed to Les Pres-Fermes (Death Valley), a site overlooking Fismes and the Vesle, and there report to Major Nadot, of the 10th French Cavalry. The Major, who had about 200 troops under his command, described the work they were doing and informed me that we would assist his men in their duties. These were almost entirely patrolling. A small detachment of ten or twelve men under an officer or non-com would go out at

## EXPERIENCES OF FIRST AMERICAN CAVALRY IN WORLD WAR

various hours, riding up as near to the front line as cover would permit, picking out vantage points and noting from them the location of enemy troops, machine-guns, artillery, etc. It would then send back messages covering important points; then, leaving the horses, part of the patrol would proceed by walking and crawling into the front line, and there obtain information as to location of the enemy, our own troops, the condition of the ammunition supply, etc.

Major Nadot told me he wanted three men to go out with a patrol to get acquainted with just what he was doing. I called for volunteers for this honor, and practically every man responded. I choose three, and while they were gone a bivouac was selected in the valley and the horses groomed and fed. After an absence of nearly three hours the patrol returned. My men reported to me and I learned just what a dangerous mission ours was to be. But I learned, too, the stuff that was in the men of my troop, and that I need never fear that they would fail to carry on its old traditions for gallantry.

In the first patrol there were eight men—five French and three Americans—and these French cavalrymen were daredevils, bent, it seemed, on trying to make up for their inactivity as cavalry and make the most of this opportunity. They paid very little attention to cover and never hesitated to gallop across an open space in full view of the enemy. They made it all right going up, it seemed, but they must have drawn the Boches' attention, for they no sooner broke from cover on their return than a heavy barrage was laid down all over the field. Straight ahead they galloped, but two of the eight were hit—both Frenchmen—one horse and its rider being killed and the other wounded man left on the field. As soon as cover was reached, the horses were halted and two of the Americans crawled out into the field and rescued the man, bringing him to a first-aid station.

As soon as darkness fell, we realized that our night was to be far from comfortable. The presence of many German planes overhead all day had looked rather ominous, and the fact that the valley was filled with batteries of artillery that would go into action as soon as night came made us certain of what entertainment the enemy planned for that particular section. It was everything we expected, much gas and H. E. being sent over all night. On the evening of the 5th we moved out a few kilometers and bivouacked, and the next morning marched in company with the French to the Arcis-le-Ponsart woods, a few kilometers away. We continued this patrolling with the French until they were ordered out of the area, on the 7th of August.

During these days the Americans had captured Fismes, and part of the Third Division had remained to hold part of the corps front on the Vesle River. Upon the departure of the French, the troop was assigned this 3d Division sector in which to continue the work alone.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

At 3:30 a. m. on the morning of August 8 the first All American Cavalry Patrol went out, under the command of 1st Lieutenant James S. Rodwell, 2d Cavalry. This patrol performed its work excellently, as did all of its successors, the patrol returning without a casualty. At least three patrols were sent out daily thereafter.

The following day Sergeant Cleary's patrol ran into a very heavy barrage and encountered considerable gas. Private Du Pont, of this patrol, was struck by a shell fragment and his leg shot off, his horse being killed. Several of the men were gassed.

Meantime our own woods were getting some pretty severe shelling and each night we were entertained by continuous bombing from the Boche.

On the morning of the 10th Sergeant Benson had the patrol, and he was directed to cross the Vesle from Fismes to Fismette, on the opposite side of the river, and occupied both by Germans and Americans. While crossing the remains of the bridge, he and Corporal Drapalik drew some heavy machine-gun and rifle fire. They continued to worm their way and reached Fismette, though Corporal Drapalik was shot through the hand. They got in touch with the American commander there and brought back some very valuable information. Both men deserve the highest praise for their work that day.

Those of us who went out on these patrols during this period—and every officer and practically every man did go—had good cause to remember the abandoned aviation field just below Fismes. It was impossible to skirt this field, and it appeared that the Boche watched for the patrol's appearance, for he would always lay down a heavy barrage the moment the first horseman appeared at its edge. It was no fun to cross the aviation field, and a horse going at a dead run seemed to the rider to be standing still. One man even jumped off his horse because he thought it wasn't going fast enough!

On the 9th Lieutenant Rodwell, leading the morning patrol, was charged with sending back information as to the number and condition of the bridges across the Vesle east of Fismes. He found it necessary, in order to obtain the information, to crawl some distance out in front of the first-line trenches. He very promptly was fired upon several times by a sniper in a tree across the river. Upon returning to the trenches, he made use of a one-pounder and brought the fellow out of his tree.

The night of August 13-14 will not be soon forgotten by those who were in the abandoned German camp in the Arcis-le-Ponsart woods. The Boche bombers concentrated all their efforts on us from 9:30 to 4:30, and he had everything his own way, as there was no opposition.

At 8:00 a. m. August 16 the troop left Arcis-le-Ponsart and marched to the hill above Coulonges. As things had quieted down, we were turned over temporarily for M. P. duty. With the exception of a little bombing, there was no further excitement for us while in this area. We remained until the

## EXPERIENCES OF FIRST AMERICAN CAVALRY IN WORLD WAR

corps turned over this area, on September 10, when we marched to Mezy, on the Marne, thence to Dormans (a total of 28 kilometers), where we entrained that night. We detrained at Lemmes, in the Argonne sector, at 11:30 the following morning, marching at once to Camp Pampaville and two days later to the Bois de Nixeville.

From Nixeville daily patrols of one platoon were sent out all over the area to keep circulation down on the roads in anticipation of the big surprise attack that was so soon to come and which turned out to be the last of the great war. These platoons would go practically into the front line—everything was very quiet—and there would scatter and cover the area of a division. Some drilling was done by the platoons that stayed in camp. Moonlight nights encouraged the enemy to make his usual bombing attacks, and there were the customary airplane battles overhead.

This patrolling was kept up daily until September 26, the day of the big attack. The troop was cited in General Orders No. 26, Third Army Corps, September 21, 1918.

Late in the afternoon of September 25 I was informed that the corps would "jump off" at 5:30 a. m. the next day, and I was to have mounted men in the front lines at "H" hour, and at "H + 1" was to have my men a few kilometers in advance of that line. Our mission was to direct and assist traffic across the No Man's Land of four years. The area here was so torn up and covered with wire that there could be no real cavalry mission assigned us.

The troop's work throughout the Meuse-Argonne show was hazardous, but not particularly exciting. It consisted almost entirely in directing and over-seeing traffic. The first night every man in the platoon sent out to accomplish the mission assigned us acquitted himself most creditably. During the morning of that first day of the Argonne battle, two of the men captured 18 Germans in a dug-out near the Bois-de-Forges, not far from Malincourt.

We continued to remain at Nixeville as our base until the night of October 2, when sudden orders were received to move up farther toward the new front lines. These orders were received at 9:00 p. m. It was pitch dark, but the troop was turned out, ordered to make packs, and saddle up. We left the Bois-de-Nixeville at 10 o'clock, full pack, every wagon loaded and every one ready to go. We marched for four hours through the night and over shell-torn roads, arriving at Esnes at 2:00 a. m. As we rode into the remains of the town, so long at the edge of No Man's Land, shells were whistling overhead and striking within and without the little village. We made camp as best we could, picketing the horses and pitching the tents in the most sheltered location we could find.

During our stay in Esnes we received our share of shelling each night. There were only two real dug-outs available and no shelter except that we were in a valley out of sight of the enemy. On the night of October 7-8 the Ger-

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

mans commenced their fire on Esnes at 2 in the morning. All the shells that came over that night fell right about our little camp. The men were crowded as many as possible in the remains of some old dug-outs, while the others were in shelter tents. Several of the shells struck among the tents, killing one man and wounding two, one with a shrapnel in the back and the other with a badly shattered arm. Four of the horses were wounded also. Several of the men had narrow escapes.

The horses kept in excellent shape all of this time, in spite of the grueling work that they were getting.

We later left Esnes and moved to Cuisy, and after a few days left there for Bantheville, where we remained until the Armistice was signed.

Following the Armistice came the interesting and never-to-be-forgotten march into Germany. G-3 of the corps, Colonel Chaffee, directed that the troop precede the corps, or rather its left, and by means of patrols cover all roads, reconnoiter towns, and maintain liaison with the Canadian corps on our left. The troop was, therefore, the first American organization to pass along the route to and into Germany.

We left Dun-sur-Meuse on the night of November 19, marching to Louppy. The following day—a cold, blustery one—we moved on to Cosnes, where the horses were picketed in a German aviation field, containing several hangars and many bombing planes. The next day we proceeded across a corner of Belgium into Luxembourg, to a village called Capellon. All the Belgian villages were decorated with flags and evergreens, in honor of the Allies' victory. Signs such as "Welcome to our deliverers" were very numerous, as were American flags, all home made, some fixed up out of a piece of gingham for the stripes and with three or four stars in the field.

After two nights in Capellon, we moved on to Gonderange, still in Luxembourg. Here we spent Thanksgiving Day, remaining five days there, during the rest of the whole Army.

On the 29th we were attached to the 2d Division for the remainder of the march. We stopped the night of the 30th in Bettendorf, right on the border, and the next morning, December 1, bright and early, we crossed the border line into Germany, at Wallenborn. During that day we reconnoitered the towns and roads in advance of the corps. We covered over 40 kilometers that day and it was long after dark when we reached Lichtenborn. We had been proceeding so rapidly that our wagon train, which had been ordered to travel with the brigade trains, did not overtake us for two days.

The following morning we proceeded to Prum, only about 15 kilometers away. Prum was a large town, and we found the inhabitants very friendly, but no man was permitted to leave the billet unless fully armed. We found the inhabitants more afraid of us than likely to harm us, however, particularly in the smaller towns, the streets of which were deserted when we rode in. We

## EXPERIENCES OF FIRST AMERICAN CAVALRY IN WORLD WAR

could see the people peaking out of windows at us, but only the bolder ones ventured out to look at us.

The next day we moved a few kilometers to Weinheim. It was here that the wagon train, with food and forage, overtook us. Thereafter I kept it out of the brigade train and under my own control and had no more trouble.

The next morning we marched 26 kilometers to Gondersdorf, where we spent two nights; then on December 6 we moved to Dollendorf. On each day patrols were sent out over roads in advance of the corps and to the left until cavalry patrols from the Canadian corps were met.

The following day we marched to Insul, about 30 kilometers. The weather had been beautiful and the scenes along the Ahr valley were wonderful. At 10 that night I received orders from corps headquarters to complete, on the next day, the remaining distance to the Rhine. We got away very shortly after daybreak, full of enthusiasm to see the Rhine at last.

The troop reached Remagen on the Rhine, at 1 p. m. December 8, covering the distance of 45 kilometers in 6 hours and a half. We were, then, the first American troops to reach the Rhine, as the remainder of the American Army of Occupation did not come up until the following day. Shortly after our arrival the wagon train arrived. The horses were groomed and then our billet selected. We chose Haus Calmuth, a large estate on the banks of the Rhine a kilometer from town. The troop remained here for five days—the most comfortable billets all the time we were overseas—and good use was made of the time in cleaning up and giving the horses a rest. They had come through splendidly all the way.

On the morning of the 13th the Army was to cross the Rhine and the troop got away early, crossing on the Ludendorf bridge at Remagen. We patrolled all that day the roads in the bridgehead area, coming into Altwied late in the evening. The following morning the troop proceeded to Neuwied and reported to the corps for duty.

After remaining in Neuwied until January 2, the troop moved to Ehrenbreitstein, just across from Coblenz. Colonel Chaffee informed me that the troop was to be drilled and trained for escort duty. During the stay in Germany we turned out for Marshal Foch twice, for General Pershing a number of times, for the Secretaries of War and Navy, and numerous other notables.

The troop left Germany May 25, 1919, and arrived in the United States June 29. And so ended another chapter in the long record of Troop I, 2d Cavalry.



## The Bridleless Squad

BY

Major CHARLES B. AMORY, Cavalry

**E**ARLY in December, 1920, Colonel Edgar Sirmeyer, commanding officer, Fort Ethan Allen, directed me to develop an exhibition squad, using two men from each of the nine troops of the 3d Cavalry stationed at that post. February 22, 1921, this squad gave its first exhibition at the Post Horse Show.

The squad entered the riding hall, horses without bridles but with flat saddles, and to the music of a band went through the following movements, executed at a trot and on blast of whistle:

Entered hall in column of troopers, went around once, and formed "on right into line" at end of hall. Moved down center of hall in line, halted opposite the commanding officer, and saluted. Moved "right by trooper," then half way down side of hall and "column right" across the hall. On reaching opposite side of hall, moved "1st trooper to the right, 2d to the left," etc., continuing around the hall and meeting in the center of the opposite side; formed twos and moved across the hall. Next, "1st two to right, 2d two to left." The sets of twos on reaching the short side of the hall moved down the center, opening out slightly and increasing distances. The troopers, as they met from opposite sides, executed a "grand right and left." On reaching the short side of the hall the two columns each executed "right trooper to the right, left trooper to the left." This formed the squad in four sections in column of troopers. The sections met half way down the long sides and changed direction across the hall, forming two sections in column of twos. The two sections on meeting in center of hall changed direction down the center, forming column of fours. The squad then executed "column of troopers," and serpentine down the length of hall. When on the short side "by threes by the right flank" was executed; then "by the right flank," followed by "threes, column left." This placed the squad in column of troopers on the long side of hall. Fours were then formed, the leading trooper coming to a walk. The squad then went "fours left, trot" and down the center of hall in line. They halted in line, then broke into two sections in column of troopers from the right and left flanks; moved down each side of the hall in broken lines, and came back the same side in a series of rolling circles. The two sections joined, forming column of twos just before reaching the end of hall; then separated on reaching the end, to the right and left. When on the long side of hall each section executed "by the flank" toward the center and passed through the other section. The sections then met in the center

## THE BRIDLELESS SQUAD

of the short side of hall, moved down the center in column of twos, and immediately formed line, fan-wise, coming to a walk. As soon as line was formed it moved forward at a trot, halting at the opposite end.

A fire jump, consisting of a bar and an overhead arch wrapped in gunny sacks and saturated with kerosene, was then placed in the center of the hall and ignited.

The squad then broke into column of twos from the center, split to the right and left, rode around the squad, formed column of twos in center of hall, and jumped through the fire. The twos on passing over the jump opened out and came back into column of twos in the opposite direction and took the jump once more, the movement forming a heart.

On passing through the fire the second time, line was formed fan-wise, and the squad halted, saluted, and left the hall.

The movements were designed to give a series of ever-changing figures with as few changes of gait as possible.

The idea of a bridleless squad was gotten from the great acclaim accorded a horse and rider at the National Horse Show when the rider, in a trained saddle-horse class, took off the bridle and guided his horse by slapping him in the face with his hands. I had seen Sergeant Paine, Troop D, 3d Cavalry, train a horse to be controlled by touching him on the shoulder with the spur. I concluded that a squad of horses thus trained would be spectacular.

### METHOD OF TRAINING

Quiet horses that were steady in their gaits were selected. These horses were ridden carefully at a uniform trot until they would go in line or column at a set gait without increasing or decreasing when the reins were let slack. This was very essential, for there is practically no control of the gait possible when bridles are removed. This gaitting was the most difficult part of the whole training.

The method of teaching the horse to be controlled by touching him on the shoulder I got from Sergeant Paine. The horse was put in a chute and a man on foot in front of him would press on the points of the shoulder until the horse would take a step back. This was continued until the horse would readily back by being jabbed lightly with the thumbs on the points of the shoulder. The animal would then be mounted with an assistant on foot. The rider would move the horse forward, the man on foot would stop him by jabs of the thumbs, and get him to take a step or two to the rear. This was repeated.

The next step was to have the rider stop his horse by reaching forward and touching him on the shoulders with the spurs and then cause him to back a few steps. This was continued until the horse would readily halt from a trot by the aid of the spurs.

To teach the horse to turn, say to the right, the left spur would hold the shoulder, the right would drive the croup around: a turn on the forehand.



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

The reins were used to aid the turns in the beginning and were not entirely discarded for a considerable period of time.

The greatest difficulty I experienced, next to gaiting, was that the individual men would try to progress too fast and would get their horses to "running through the spurs" or refusing to halt when the spurs were applied. If a horse got to doing this, it was easier to break in a new horse than to try and correct the fault. I think the best way to overcome this is not to allow the men to work at will after the preliminary stages, and have them keep on bridles for a considerable period, even after the horse appears trained.

Numerous persons said I was attempting the impossible; that it might be possible to get individual horses to go under certain conditions without bridles, but to get a squad to go through an intricate drill with a band playing could not be done.

I must confess at times I had very grave doubts. It certainly was discouraging; horses would be spoiled, and the tediousness of gaiting, and that bugaboo, guard and fatigue, continually making absentees, would test my patience to the limit. However, I kept at it, and the men showed the greatest perseverance.

The squad was given great applause after its exhibition. Colonel Sirmyer was highly pleased. Dr. Townsend, a local horseman, said it was the best exhibition he had seen, and he had seen all that had taken place at Fort Ethan Allen in the last twenty years.

Some, including myself, were skeptical as to whether the drill could be executed in the open. However, in the spring, the squad gave an exhibition on the open parade for the Chief of Cavalry. I do not recall his exact remarks to the squad after their drill, but it was to the effect that it showed what the two P's could accomplish.

That is the secret: Patience and perseverance.

### GENTLEMEN—THE HORSE!

Here's a toast for all who love  
Courage, Strength and Beauty;  
Whose simple creed is Play the Game,  
Ride straight and do your duty.  
A toast to him who never failed  
In wagon, cart or limber;  
Whose gallant spirit never quailed  
'Fore line of guns or timber.  
To him whose heart knows no defeat  
In hunting field or battle,  
On classic course, at jungle meet,  
Or turning maddened cattle.

A toast to him who'll always share  
Your pleasures, wars and labour;  
The "view halloo" or trumpet's blare,  
Lance, polo-stick or sabre!  
So lift your glass and honour him—  
Man's staunchest friend and treasure.  
As true as steel, as kind as love  
In action or at leisure.  
He lives in memories dear and far,  
Of noble deeds in Peace and War.  
He paid the Price for what we are!  
Gentlemen—The Horse!

—STANLEY HARRISON.

## How Cavalry Exploits a Victory

Being Extracts from the Diary of a Subaltern under Allenby in Palestine

BY

Captain J. R. H. CRUIKSHANK, B. A. (Camb.), F. R. G. S.  
Late 18th Lancers

ACRE, September 24, 1918.

HERE we are in Acre, the scene of so many of the Crusaders' battles and the end of Napoleon's Asiatic dream. We captured it yesterday afternoon. Last night was the first good sleep we've had for four nights. We've cut off and annihilated two Turkish armies. It's impossible to realize the enormity, the true and great significance, of all that has taken place. I shall never be able to describe it. Are they pleased in England?

To begin at the beginning. I wrote last on the 16th of how we had been doing hard cavalry maneuvers—magnificent charges and pursuits along the Mediterranean shores towards Askalon.

That all came to an end on the 17th, when orders suddenly came for me to go as advanced party to the regiment and meet S——, the brigade staff captain at Sarona, north of Jaffa. I had just two hours to pack my kit, saddle my horses, and get away. I rode through Jaffa and stopped there for drinks, at the Y. M. C. A., about noon, and it's extremely hot at that time of day in Palestine. From there it was a very short ride, and I met S—— at Sarona about half past 2. He showed me the camping ground, which was nothing more than a grove of orange trees. Watering had to be done by hand from a cistern. When dusk came I rode back a few miles to meet the regiment. Riding along that afternoon, it had struck me how deserted the roads were. The only thing out of the ordinary was an armored car, camouflaged like a lorry and spinning along with a convoy of lumbering Pierce-Arrow lorries. Now that it was dark, the roads were simply packed with troops on the march—infantry swinging along, singing and laughing, transport wagons creaking by, pack-mules plodding past with their huge loads, and camels padding steadily on, with heads held high, as though they were bored with the whole proceeding; best of all, the batteries rumbling past, and then the cavalry. It made one thrill. My regiment arrived about half past 9, and by midnight we were camouflaged in our camp.

Next day we kept hidden in the groves. It was a good thing we didn't have to stay there long, as the horses were eating the camouflage, viz. and to wit, the orange trees! That afternoon I went on again as advanced party, crossed the Wady Auja, and rode along the sands by the edge of the sea. This time

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

we were detailed to a section of the beach close to the firing line. The regiment came about half past 8, and that night we slept on the sand.

September 19th was the great day. At half past 4 every one was awakened by the guns opening the barrage on the second at 4 o'clock. It was still dark and the sky was aflame with flashes. It made one feel what a perfectly bloody thing war is. As it got lighter, one could see the navy out at sea, co-operating. Then came the order to "Advance." How many times in France had we ridden up to the front line to break through, only to be shelled and ride disappointed back again. It was the dream come true at last, after four years waiting.

At half past 5 we got away, riding along the beach at the trot, sometimes in the sea. It was a magnificent sight, seeing the beach packed with advancing cavalry. One saw our wounded coming back. They're always so quiet and patient. Some waved at us cheerily. One passed some little pack donkeys killed by a shell. They looked so pathetic, lying in the sand, with their ears still pricked intelligently. They'd done their bit. On one hand one saw tragedy, and on the other farce. Nowhere else on earth will you see the two so jumbled as in a battle. One passed a smiling Indian Sepoy strolling behind a fat German, whom he was making carry his kit. Then one saw a captured Turkish colonel coming back, riding a mule. He had lost his cap; he jogged uneasily and his legs dangle loosely. He wears many orders and he's pompous—in fact, so pompous that he won't look at us.

We were soon across the old trenches and wire, which had been cleared, and came out into fields in front of the infantry at the Wady Falik. It is in this wady, by an extraordinary coincidence, that Richard Cœur de Lion beat the Moslems. His footmen advanced, and so great was their impetuosity that a gap was broken in the Saracen ranks. King Richard then poured his cavalry through, completing the Moslem rout. The infantry were calmly sitting down cooking their breakfasts, and we halted while the advanced guards pushed on. "Where are the Turks?" we asked them. "Miles away. Why, they can run faster'n you can ride." One didn't feel so sure of that, though, when several shells and some shrapnel came whining over, bursting with nasty crashes about us. They were only one or two guns, though, hanging on to the last. In a few minutes we were off again. We rode on at a fast trot over a lovely plain, the Plain of Sharon. It was a warm, bright and sunny day, without a cloud in the sky, and far away to the east we could see more cavalry moving forward. Above us our airplanes circled low, taking messages from the sheets spread out on the ground and sending replies in Morse on their Klaxon horns. Batches of Turkish prisoners and occasional Germans passed us on their way back. The Bedouins were congregated outside their villages to see us pass. A little inland there were strings of loose enemy transport camels racing wildly about, with some villagers trying to catch one or two for themselves.

## HOW CAVALRY EXPLOITS A VICTORY

By 1 o'clock we reached Hudeira, just east of Caesarea, and off-saddled there to feed and water. "C" Squadron was on outpost duty. We had done eighteen miles at the trot with hardly a halt, and one saw many of the horses trembling, and then just dropping down to die of a broken heart. My splendid chestnut hasn't minded it, and even my orderly's mare, which puffs like a steam-engine, has come through it.

The brigade wireless is busy buzzing away every minute.

At the farm where we watered, there was rather a crush round the cistern. They say that the 200 Turks we expected to fight here left two hours before we arrived. There were Turks wandering round, though, coming out of odd places, and you never knew when you wouldn't bump into one. Most of us rested that afternoon, and at 5:30 we had a good meal, the last till the evening of next day. The advance was to be continued at 6 o'clock, and I went out to relieve B——, commanding "C" Squadron's outposts.

"C" Squadron had that afternoon shot a German officer who was reconnoitering and captured his patrol. They had also got in touch with the division on our right. In the meantime the outposts rejoined, and as the regiment moved out again on the track to the northeast they picked us up, B—— taking over his squadron again, and we rode together during that long night ride. We moved at the walk, no lights being allowed. There was a full moon and everything seemed intensely still; there was very little talking and only now and then the sharp click of a horse's hoof striking a stone. Then we began moving upwards into the hills of Samaria. The track began winding and became a mere goat-track in places, where we were moving in single file. Often we passed through little mountain villages. The villagers stood in groups, in the shadow of the mud huts, watching us, and some of the bolder had come forward with pitchers, giving the men water.

Looking back now, one realizes a little more the magnitude of the victory if the Turks had had time to defend those rugged gorges and impossible passes. Once the general himself, as he rounded a bend, came on two Turkish transport wagons, who were too surprised to do anything but surrender to him.

By 4 o'clock we had emerged from the eastern slopes of the hills, crossed the Plain of Esdraelon and the railway leading to Haifa, and were moving on Nazareth, our objective. Half an hour later we were on the ridges surrounding the town and broke into a trot. Dawn was breaking then. In the distance rose Mt. Tabor; to the south and behind us stretched the plains, and as far as one could see was cavalry moving eastward in long lines, as though drilling on parade. We were across the enemy's lines of communication.

I saw a new artillery piece by the side of the road, in a particularly big village we rode through. There were Turks standing about everywhere in groups. It was a gunnery school, and we were what one might describe as rudely disturbing instructional classes. Some one gave me a message: "Col-

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

lect the prisoners in Yaffa." I took half a dozen men with me and rode down the narrow little streets of the village, my horse slipping at every step. It didn't look very warlike, somehow, and the inhabitants were eagerly leading the way to the school-house and church, where their late rulers had taken refuge. Sixty-nine were collected, and as we came out on the main road again we handed them over to what seemed an endless column of prisoners moving back along the road. There were very swagger German officers belonging to the Yilderim G. H. Q. walking back. Many had rows of decorations; several were carrying suit-cases; some were talking in English to their guards, while others walked along dejectedly or defiantly, as their nature was. There were about 2,000 altogether. German ambulances and motors were passing back, too. Nazareth was only a few hundred yards farther on, but was hidden by a ridge. We had picketed the ridge, while the Yeomanry had passed on through us and had had some street fighting in the town. The German commander-in-chief, Liman von Sanders, had left the night before with his two daughters. We had missed catching him by a few hours. Machine-guns were firing very close, but nobody seemed to notice them. I watered my horses at a near-by fountain and noticed the men casually picking figs in a grove by the fountain, though bullets were dropping about. A wicked-looking German 'plane flew over and sputtered away with its machine-gun, but soon disappeared when our own 'planes came in sight.

What a victory! The men were elated. Slowly we rode back along the Nazareth road to join the remainder of our division at El Afule, where we arrived at half past 4 in the afternoon. We had covered 80 miles in 34 hours. What a sight the roads were! Abandoned lorries and cars, cut off in their attempt to escape, stood every few yards on the road. Their contents had been looted by the Bedouins and were scattered all over the fields. B—— pushed a lorry over a precipice today to see it smash; but, funnily enough, it careered down the side and landed right side up; then ran along seemingly undamaged. He filled another lorry full of souvenirs and sent it back, but a general took it himself! "C" Squadron shot a driver who set fire to his lorry, which contained state papers, and they also got a lorry with £20,000 in it—army pay, probably. It was all handed over, though, to the proper authorities! But the best trophy we have is the little red, white, and black flag off the radiator of Liman von Sander's automobile.

El Afule was a shambles. Engines and trains full of army winter clothing and kits stood in the stations, just as they were surprised that morning. I'd heard of the Germans using paper bandages, but hadn't believed it till I saw them in a dressing station there.

At dusk orders came to take up an outpost line to the south of El Afule. After a cup of tea, some bully-beef and biscuits, the first meal that day, the squadrons moved off into darkness over the plain. In the hills towards

## HOW CAVALRY EXPLOITS A VICTORY

Nablous, the ancient Shechem, numerous fires of burning stores lighted up the sky. I was detailed to command "B" Squadron, as L—— had gone to escort a battery and to remain in reserve with headquarters. C—— and I lay down together to snatch a few hours' sleep, after such a day as we'd had. When I awoke once I saw a collection of Germans lying near me, who had come into our outposts. The Turks were retiring into our outposts all night. At dawn I heard a German officer explaining in broken English that he hadn't had food for forty hours. Poor fellow! He belonged to a smart dragoon regiment and was lying in the bottom of a cart drawn by oxen, almost too done up to speak.

Wasn't it magnificent work? Our motor lorries got up during the night with rations and I saw our own distributed on the "dump" at 6:30 that morning. We heard that morning, too, that General Allenby was very pleased with our advance, saying it was probably one of the finest cavalry feats in history. At 10 o'clock we were off again, to go back to Nazareth, and arrived early in the afternoon.

The hills round Nazareth are like a cup, and on the northern side of this cup meet two roads in a "V." One road comes from Tiberias and the other from Acre. Our outposts were on the apex of this "V," looking out over the country which sloped away to the north. The Yeomanry were on the right of the road, and "A" Squadron, under H——, held from the road inclusive to about 300 yards to the left, where there is a small track. "B" Squadron, under L——, who had returned, held the ridges to the left of "A" Squadron from this track. Their headquarters were in the "English Girls' Orphanage." "A" Squadron had their headquarters in a large stone building just on the left of the Tiberias-Acre road. Their horses were just under the ridge. "C" and "D" Squadrons were in reserve, and picketed their horses in the square in the middle of the town. The Virgin's fountain is in this square, and our horses were watered from the fountain. Regimental headquarters were made in a large convent on the square which had been used as a Turkish hospital.

While the squadrons were settling down for the night, I requisitioned grapes, bread, and stores for the men. Our breakfast had been small that morning, but on the balcony of the convent this evening we had one of the best meals I think I've ever had. Outside, there was a full moon; here and there in the houses showed a light; but everything was silent in the town. In the square one only heard the horses stamping or munching their tibbin, and now and then the click-clack of the signaling-lamp, as a message was sent up to the two squadrons on the hills. The men were sleeping—snatching what sleep they could. Splendid fellows! Nobody knew when we might not have orders to march suddenly. Looking over this scene made one think back to the Crusading times—how the Turks had held this holy town for four hundred years; and now the British had returned again, to this place where the Prince of Peace spent His childhood, not as conquerors, but as deliverers.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

It was half past 11 that evening, after I had seen "A1. Echelon," the first line transport, parked, which had caught up to us, when I lay down on one of the hospital beds in the convent. Another minute and I should have been asleep, when the sudden rattle of a machine-gun being fired towards me woke me. There's no tonic that takes sleepiness out of one's eyes and tiredness out of one's limbs quicker. With the stillness of the night, this machine-gun sounded only two or three hundred yards away. We imagined it was a machine-gun nest in the town which had been overlooked, and were almost on the point of going to bed again, when our own Hotchkiss rifles began to fire, firing breaking out all along the ridge; so I went up to see what had happened. "A" Squadron's headquarters and horses were deserted, except for a guard of two men. Machine-gun bullets were soughing through the air, interspersed with the whine and whirr of rifle bullets. It was rather too evident that the line of outposts were having a scrap with somebody.

I reported to Major M——, in the square, what was happening. He gave me eight men and an Indian officer to reinforce the line, and also two Indian officers, who were to see the road and go back to regimental headquarters again as guides, in case more reinforcements were needed. I eventually found H——. The colonel was with him, as he had been going round the outposts when the attack opened. "A" Squadron were firing over a stone wall which luckily ran along here. Messages had gone back for a squadron to reinforce the line, and in the meanwhile the colonel gave me directions to strengthen the left flank of "A" Squadron with the men that had come with me. I found D—— lying bareheaded on a flat rock, directing the fire of the men in the vicinity, and handed the reinforcements over to him. On the way to rejoin the C. O. again I lost my way and found myself in front of the wall "A" Squadron were firing over—in fact, in "No Man's Land"—and a very good target I must have made in the moonlight against the white wall. Bullets striking the rocks, I noticed, made clean white splashes on the stone, while sand trickled off the spots. I was never more thankful that the Turks were such bad shots.

Just as I got back to "A" Squadron's headquarters I met Major M—— leading up "C" Squadron in file for a counter-attack. Getting a rifle, I joined him. He led round the left flank of "A" Squadron and we went down the track for two hundred yards. D—— joined us with his men, as we were masking his fire. I shall never forget seeing the forms of the men outlined against the sky, crouching low, as we crossed the ridge. The noise of firing, even without artillery, is so deafening in a "show" one cannot hear one's own voice.

Major M—— had formed the men in small groups, and then shouted, "Come on!" There was a cheer that drowned the firing—twenty yards and one was into them, dark forms lying among the rocks. D—— and I came on two first in a hollow. One put up his rifle and fired obliquely at us, which

## HOW CAVALRY EXPLOITS A VICTORY

we returned with 100 per cent interest, but didn't wait, you can bet, and just charged on for others. One saw them running, clearly shown up on the white-ribboned road, some hundred and fifty yards below us. Their transport wagons creaked and they were lashing their animals into a gallop. We could not catch them, but one stopped and fired and followed.

Everyone, somehow, collected on that road after the charge. There was B——, L——, and A——, with whom I walked back slowly. On the way we shot three badly injured horses with our revolvers. The road was littered with bombs, ammunition, packs, and kits thrown away in the flight. As B—— and I got back to the town again, dawn was just coming on. We met S—— coming from brigade headquarters to find out the latest news. We told him. Prisoners and carts with the Turkish wounded came past us, which was a goodly sight, we thought, for the staff captain.

"D" Squadron, under "Crumps," a few minutes later, moved off mounted for the pursuit and followed ten miles over a road strewn with enemy kits. They captured the remnants of the force, which, we found out, was part of the garrison of Haifa attempting to reach Tiberias, and was intercepted by us. We killed a good many and got over 300 prisoners, besides several machine-guns, only having two men slightly wounded ourselves, and I believe the force attacking was over 700 effective rifles.

Breakfast was, as usual, at 7 o'clock—a jolly good one, too. It was a charming Sunday morning, September 22, in Nazareth, and the church bells were ringing. The good Nazarenes—at least the Christian ones—were going about their streets in their Sunday best, as though it was the ordinary thing for a British force to enter their town and *strafe* the king's enemies on their main highway.

That Sunday was a day of rest. B—— and I wandered over the battlefield in the morning. I saw L—— in the orphanage afterwards and he showed me a piece of lead he'd found embedded in the leather of his boot. Later in the day L—— began collecting all the guns in the town, as some of the inhabitants, probably Mohammedans, were unfriendly. Our telephone wires had been tapped and also cut. Regimental headquarters decided to move into a more comfortable convent, where German officers had lived. There was a comfortable mess and the place was electric lit. Two German medical officers and a German Red Cross sister still remained, but from the state of the rooms one could imagine the hurried departure of the remainder. Facing the stairs was a huge picture of the Kaiser and round the walls maps of the various fronts. One map of the western front had the various phases of the spring advance marked in, in ink. They must have thought they'd won the war then.

Orders came in the evening to march on Acre at 4:30 next morning. Rations were late arriving, and it was midnight by the time we lay down for the three hours' sleep. The Australians relieved us, and we moved off in the darkness with "B" Squadron as advanced guard.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

It was rather amusing to see the kit on the small gradients on the road which had been thrown away by the enemy in his rout that night. We got to Acre about half past 4 in the afternoon and camped just north of the town, occupying a near-by house for our mess. "B" Squadron didn't get back till dusk, as they were chasing Turks along the shore. They captured about 150 prisoners, including a naval officer and some sailors. There were camels and bullocks in the collection, too. An Indian non-commissioned officer was killed chasing a Turk. An Indian officer, with his patrol of twelve men, charged and captured two field guns which managed to let off two rounds at us. Wonder how the brigade capturing Haifa yesterday got on? We saw quite a lot of shelling across the bay yesterday. We weren't on outpost duty last night, so it was our first good night's sleep.

B—— has been made military governor of Acre. W—— and I went into the town to see him this morning. He looked most imposing as an official, sitting in his office, with all the municipal authorities round him receiving instructions and proclamations. He's Indian Civil Service, you know, and there's nobody more capable or who loves that kind of work more than he. The inhabitants wouldn't believe him when he told them there was a broad-gauge railway from Cairo to Jerusalem, and that he was on leave in Alexandria on the 16th of this month.

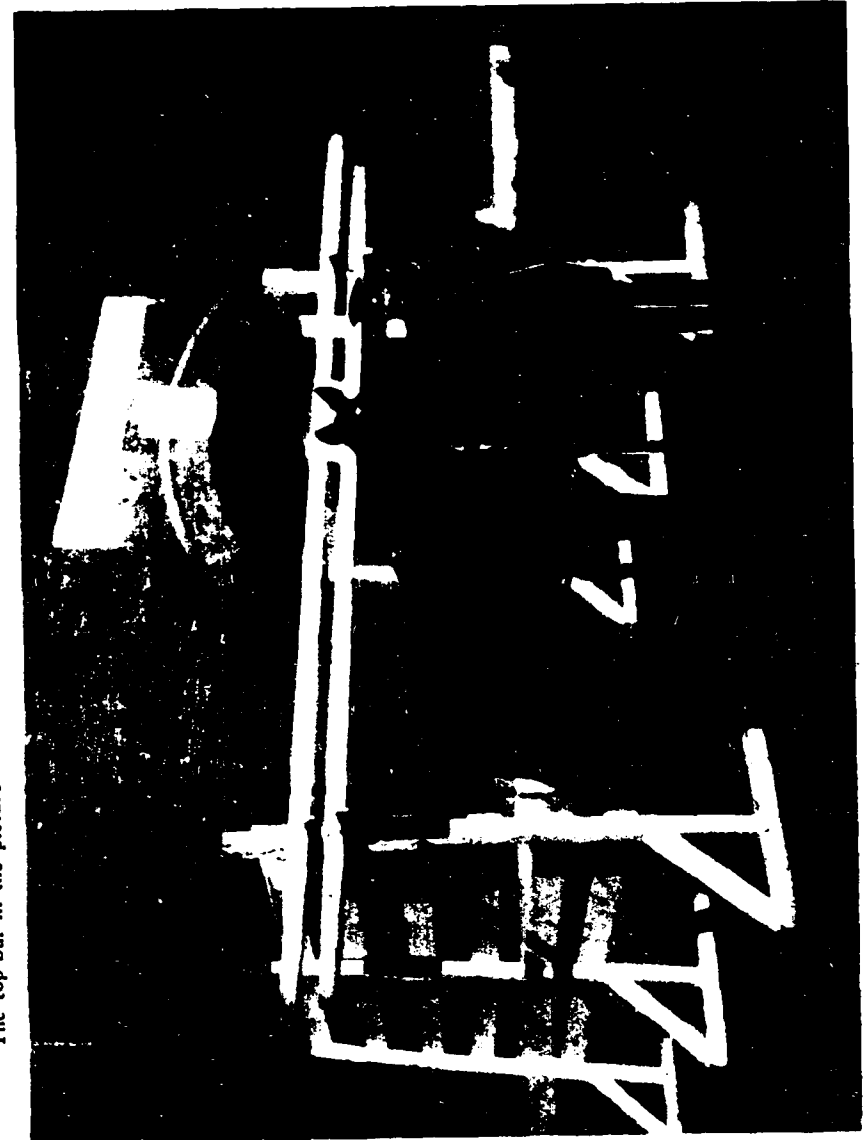
Acre is quite a clean town, with fairly wide streets for the East. The population are getting confidence and opening their shops again. All along the streets one sees huge cannon-balls and pieces of old guns, the remains of Napoleon's "stunt."

D——, C——, and I went for a bathe this afternoon. The bay of Acre is perfectly lovely, with a wonderful shore of hard sand. You can wade out for over three hundred yards on the sand bottom without being over your head, and we rode our horses in naked. I haven't had such a good time for ages. We're probably resting two or three days here, but I expect we shall have to push on to Damascus soon. It seems a long, long way.

Congratulations on the division's success came from the corps commander today. One feels that the war at last is really beginning to turn in our favor.



Captain Herbert E. Watkins, 13th Cavalry, and "Diamond," the Troop A, 13th Cavalry, horse that won the "free for all high jump" at the Western National Stock Show, January, 1923, with a jump of 6 feet 6 inches. "Diamond" stands 15.2 and weighs 900. Captain Watkins with his equipment weighed 180. The top bar in the picture is set at 6 feet 6 inches. (See Regimental Notes, 13th Cavalry.)





A CAVALRY MOUNT

## An Ideal Type of Cavalry Horse

BY

EDWARD H. CARLE, Ex-First Lieutenant, 303d Ammunition Train,  
78th Division

**I**F we had had a division of cavalry, or even a few troops, just before the armistice was signed, the figures that represented the Hun prisoners would have been very much larger. The country through which we marched, ending up not many miles from Sedan, was a beautiful, open, galloping country, with no wire entanglements and no trenches. Just think of the opportunity that was lost!

I heard great praise in France for the American draft-horse, and I certainly agree that this praise was well deserved. But, on the other hand, it is not believed that we have any cavalry horses to amount to anything in this country. Cavalry today must be able to gallop; when they hit, it certainly must be with great speed. After a long, hard march, if men are asked to fight, they are better able to do so if they have been mounted on horses that have good action—in other words, that are good movers.

The accompanying photographs display, it seems to me, a very fine type of cavalry horse for the following reasons: Because he is 15.1½ hands high, unshod. A horse for cavalry purposes over 15.2, and certainly over 15.3, is, in my judgment, unsuitable. The smaller horse will thrive on much less forage; he is a great deal easier to mount, and is more adapted to warfare conditions where a man has to saddle a horse with full equipment in the dark, under shell fire. Moreover, such a horse is very short from his knees to the ground and measures 8½ inches under the knee and 9½ inches under the hock, which is a balance. Again, he girths 6 feet 4 inches and has a short back and good loins, so necessary for one that has to carry weight, and is well ribbed up, and is therefore an easy keeper, carrying his dinner with him. The horse in the photograph weighed 1,250 pounds when I took the picture, but he was very big and fat at the time. I should hazard a guess that his weight, when fit, was from 1,075 to 1,100. Then, too, this type of horse is fast. (He has proved that he can gallop, for he has carried our huntsman brilliantly through many hard days with hounds.) And, lastly, because he is up to weight.

The next question is how to produce this horse in numbers. Breeding is a lottery, more or less, and is a most expensive undertaking. A breeder has to take what God gives him, the good with the bad. It is not thought that such a horse can be produced without at least two crosses of thoroughbred blood, and probably three, taking for granted, of course, that the first cross be on a common draft mare.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

The result could be accomplished in a shorter time if a start could be made on a mare having more blood, but I do not believe there are many such in the Government service. Company "E" of the 303d Ammunition Train had a very fine lot of draft animals at Camp Dix, N. J., before the 78th Division went overseas, and there were a good many mares in the lot that were most useful types for army draft purposes. Many of these were an excellent type to breed. As Company "E," however, did not take any animals with them, let us hope that all the best of these mares are now available for breeding purposes. The mares that made the greatest appeal, both for draft and for breeding, averaged from 15.2 to 15.3 and weighed from 1,400 to 1,500 pounds. Apparently, they were mostly grade Percherons.

It is believed that this sort of mare—and there ought to be many available—should make an admirable brood mare for a beginning, and the second or third cross of thoroughbred blood would, it is thought, give great chances of producing a very fine cavalry horse. I see no reason why the first cross should not be a useful all-round light draft-horse.

The horse whose photograph is here shown has two crosses of thoroughbred. He is by a thoroughbred and out of a mare by a thoroughbred, which mare was out of a common work-mare. He was bred in Virginia.

The Government has at present a very fine lot of thoroughbred stallions, among them *Marse Henry*, foaled 1913 by *Ben Brush* (a wonderful sire and winner of the Suburban Handicap) out of *Nun's Cloth*; *Adams Express*, foaled 1908 by *Adam-Frederica* (this horse won the stallion class at the National Horse Show in New York in November, 1919); *Square Set*, 1914 by *Duke of Ormonde-Dora I*; *Light Arms*, 1909, by *Labrador-Light Shot*; *O'Sullivan*, 1910, by *Oddfellow-Rosinante*; *Achievement*, 1913, by *Hastings* (a very successful sire) *Achieve*; *Ed. Roche*, 1914, by *The Commoner-Niazus*.

I feel reasonably sure of the ultimate success of this Government breeding scheme if the mares are selected with as much judgment as the stallions have been. I also hope that men experienced in the care of thoroughbred stallions may be placed in charge of them. It is not fair to the gentlemen that have so generously donated several of these stallions not to have them well looked after.



## With the German Cavalry Advance in 1914

The following narrative consists of portions of an account entitled *3,000 Kilometers with the Guard Cavalry*, by Dr. Vogel, the division chaplain, translated by Colonel N. F. McClure, cavalry, with the assistance of Master-Sergeant Harry Bell, U. S. Army, retired. For the benefit of officers on duty at Fort Leavenworth and Fort Riley, it should be noted that Colonel McClure has deposited two copies of the complete translation of this material at the General Service Schools and the Cavalry School. This lively and interesting diary has sufficient repute to be used as one of the many sources for the newly published British "History of the Great War Based on Official Documents" (compiled by Brigadier-General J. E. Edmonds).

### THROUGH BELGIUM—PATROL ENCOUNTERS

THE mission of the two divisions (Guard and 5th) of the 1st Cavalry Corps under Baron von Richthofen was to reconnoiter through the Ardennes forest, in the direction of Dinant, on the Meuse and beyond; but as an advance of strong French forces from the Belgian garrison of Arlon against the stationary Rhenish Infantry Division on frontier guard at Luxemburg appeared not unlikely on the next day or the day after, the leader decided to keep in touch with that division, so as to be able in such a contingency to support it. For that reason not Wiltz, in Luxemburg, as originally intended, but Diekirch was selected as the march objective, and accordingly the advance commenced the next morning.

The first day of our march was in a torrential rain, which made it uncommonly difficult ascending and descending the precipitous mountains and the serpentine Eifel roads. The teams of the ration, forage, and baggage trains were well fitted for the level roads of Brandenburg, but were hardly equal to this country, especially during such weather. So on this first day slidings off the road and other misfortunes were unavoidable, and arrangements for having the troops help out were necessary.

At the village of Roth we crossed the German-Luxemburg frontier and immediately got news that an enemy cavalry division had left at noon in the direction of the frontier beyond Arlon. We prepared ourselves to meet the enemy, and the artillery went into position on the steep Herren Mountains with a spirit of warlike enthusiasm. But, although we watched and strained our eyes, the wished-for target did not appear.

So the following evening we pushed on to the town of Diekirch, on the Sauer, where the headquarters occupied a large inn. About 3 o'clock the next morning the division moved toward Medernach, again in the hope of being able to cross swords with the enemy. However, the sought-for antagonist did not appear. All searching patrols reported with much accord that streets and



roads were free from enemy, and shortly we received positive information that the enemy's troops had evacuated Arlon. Having passed Castle Mountain, the residence of the young Grand Duchess of Luxemburg, we came toward noon to Ettlebrück, which was occupied by two German Landsturm companies. So, being assured that the Rhenish Division needed no support, we again took up our previously ordered reconnoitering duties, and the division sent two reconnoitering squadrons toward the Namur-Dinant line. Each squadron was strengthened with additional munitions wagons, medical pack-horses, and forage wagons requisitioned from the country. . . . We established satisfactory communication with the reconnoitering squadrons through wireless in the course of the night. Their messages clearly proved that the roads to be used by us were free of the enemy.

## BATTLE IN BELGIUM TO THE EAST OF THE MEUSE

Joyous pride filled the hearts of Captain von Levetzow and the troops of his reconnoitering squadron. They were to be the first of the whole Cavalry Corps to cross the Belgian frontier to open the way and hunt out the enemy. They were imbued with the hopeful enthusiasm of cavalry spirit and the lust for battle. What would this ride bring us? What awaits us yonder behind the forest-covered mountains? But avast such thoughts: A short adieu, a hand clasp, "Good luck; God speed!" resounded back, and the squadron trotted away. Soon the connecting files were stretched out, a patrol went straight ahead, a second dropped off to the right, a third to the left; then over the border, and the picture changes. Strong trees lie across the highroad, telephone poles and wires, farm implements and vehicles—in short, everything in the nature of defensive material which the Belgians were able to procure in the neighborhood had been made use of for many kilometers to make the way impassable, and thus allow time to make preparations for delaying the expected German invasion. But we did not trifle long; the inhabitants were energetically called upon and they were forced to turn all their beautiful obstacles round about by the sweat of their brow, and it was not very long before the road to the first hostile city, Bastogne, was open.

The captain called a halt. He himself rode ahead with a strong platoon of men; pistols and carbines were ready, for who could know what sort of a reception we might receive? The citizens were cold, but not hostile; so no resort to our weapons was necessary. The first objective was the post-office, in order to effect a destruction of the telephone and telegraph centrals, thereby preventing the sending of news and warning of the march of our troops to the interior of the country. Immediately, also, the sacks of mail on hand were confiscated, and as soon as we found time we went over the letters, from which we gained many important facts about the location, strength, and intentions of the enemy. . . .

The following day brought us for the first time in contact with hostile troops. The squadron, having continued the advance, found itself in the large forest of St. Hubert, when suddenly, at a distance of a few hundred meters, the patrol in front of the point was fired upon. Our troopers had again struck a blockaded highway, and therefore led their horses close alongside a small forest road, when all of a sudden, from behind the trees, French dragoons rose up and opened a lively fire upon them. Soon more and more of the enemy appeared and we were opposed by a good half squadron, whose manifest purpose was to fall upon our troops from the obscure wooded terrain as soon as we arrived in front of the barricade. With quick resolution, however, the eight men under the leadership of Sergeant-Major Kochel opened a very heavy fire, while the captain deployed a number of cyclists, who hurriedly extended beyond and outflanked the French skirmishers. The surprise was so complete that they turned back as quickly as possible and fled at a gallop. Several of them had not escaped the German bullets, and among other things the riding whip and the blood-bespattered helmet of the badly wounded enemy's leader were the first war booty of this opening engagement.

About noon the squadron moved into the village of Champlon. Here likewise it was necessary, in order to continue the advance, to have the obstacles piled up in the road removed. As the native population had put the obstacles on the road, they were now required to remove them. Their obstinacy was quickly broken by the seizure of several hostages. Despite the seriousness of the situation it was certainly a humorous spectacle, as hundreds of the yet stubborn people went rapidly to work, after they had heard the threat that those arrested as hostages would be shot if the people refused to remove the obstacles from the road. And much quicker than they were set up the barricades throughout the distance of a kilometer were removed. In the meantime, in the village itself, the post-office was seized and searched. In the current outgoing mail was found a letter to be forwarded, from which the important information was brought to light that in the immediate vicinity a French flying-machine had come down quite close by and was now concealed in the forest. But a young man from the village who it was evident had knowledge of the letter doubtless knew the exact place of concealment. He was seized and found it convenient to yield to circumstances; but it was, nevertheless, only after the third demand, backed up by Jena's pistol, that he pointed out the location. A brand-new Voisin double-decker was found, the pilot of which had had the intention of staying in the rear of the German troops and obtaining information as to their movements, strength, and composition. Unfortunately, it was impossible for the squadron to salvage the aircraft, as it was completely wrecked. The pilot had escaped.

It was further ascertained that hostile cavalry was concealed in the woods. Undoubtedly they were in touch with the villagers and a night attack upon the squadron in the town seemed to the captain not at all improbable. For

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

that reason, at 10 o'clock he suddenly broke camp, that we might leave the narrow wooded valley and take possession of higher ground. In order to avoid all noise, the wheels of the wireless wagons were wrapped with straw, and marching quietly, on both sides of the road, we set out.

We had the feeling that we were accompanied on the ride by spies. All the time we could hear the dried twigs snapping in the underbrush. Toward morning, at 4 o'clock, two hostile squadrons were reported beyond the forest, but as the dragoons deployed to the attack, this enemy was soon driven away.

In Rockfort it chanced that we seized a freight train ready to depart, which was laden with forage and oats. That night the squadron, surrounded by hostile cavalry, bivouacked secretly in the forest, and the next morning we were relieved of the reconnaissance service by troops from the division, to the regret of both officers and men, who would have liked to have a sharp engagement with an enemy worthy of their steel.

### ADVANCE OF THE DIVISION

On the morning of August 10 the division, following its reconnoitering squadrons, crossed the Belgium-Luxemburg frontier at Donkholz. An airplane appeared over us and was at once taken under carbine fire, without results, it is true, as we saw it swing gracefully away. On this day the main body received sharp fire and the maneuvers of the previous days, such as the ride through Luxemburg, gave way to the serious business of war.

The Guard-Corps Regiment was the advance guard and the patrol in front of the point was commanded by Lieutenant Count Frederick Solms. In Sibret, a town southwest of Bastogne, the point ran into a patrol of Lieutenant Count Henry Lehndorff, of the Guard-Cuirassier Regiment, which had the task of finding out whether there were hostile troops moving along that road. In the railroad station, along the railroad, in the city itself, things looked suspicious; and at the very moment that the troops loosened curb chains to water, both patrols were suddenly attacked by a squadron of hostile dragoons, and, at the same time, still other hostile platoons appeared around a bend in the road, galloping toward them.

One of the hand-grenades thrown by the opposing side, by the unaccustomed noise of its powerful explosion, added to the surprise and confusion. Every one fired, thrust with their lances, and defended themselves with the sword as best they could. Two cuirassiers fell; others went down with their horses or were wounded; of two others who were in the act of watering, one promptly held the horses, while the other, from the garden, fired with his carbine into the hostile dragoons, using "rapid fire."

Count Lehndorff brought down the hostile leader by means of a well-aimed shot in the forehead, so that the assailants desisted from the attack. Count Solms was able to rally his detachment behind the railway embankment and even to take with him his wounded, whom the people had threatened to kill.

## WITH THE GERMAN CAVALRY ADVANCE IN 1914

Upon the receipt of the news of this mishap three squadrons of the same Uhlan regiment set out from Bastogne for Sibret. The hostile cavalry made itself scarce and could not make another stand, but one of our cuirassiers held prisoner in an outhouse was set free. Toward noon the division moved back to Bastogne and the headquarters occupied the hotel Lebrun.

Things were less peaceable at our headquarters. The news came in that a patrol of the 3d Guard Uhlan Regiment, under Lieutenant Baron von Brandenstein, to whom had been given the aspirant officer, Lieutenant Baron von Geuder, had been almost annihilated at the village of Tillet. Indeed, the patrol had allowed itself to be surprised while watering their horses. Lieutenant von Brandenstein fell wounded into captivity and Baron von Geuder was killed. A platoon of the 3d Guard Uhlan Regiment, led by Lieutenant Baron von Geuder, brother of the fallen aspirant, was sent out forthwith to retaliate and to take over the service of security for the future.

In the city, during the night, some dark forms approached the crossing over the railway for the purpose of blowing it up, but our outposts drove them away. Very early, about 5 o'clock, we did not know whether it was done accidentally or deliberately, the roof of the hotel in which His Excellency Baron von Richthofen was quartered burst into flames.

During this advance through the Ardennes forest a French infantry division, which had arrived at Liege too late, passed us by, on the west side of those mountain ridges, on its way to France, neglecting in the most astonishing manner to block the narrow, heavily wooded defile on the road being used by the invading cavalry column. This could easily have been accomplished with the assistance of a few machine-guns.

The movement of the trains, especially of the heavy automobile trucks in the Ardennes Mountains, as in the Eifel Mountains, was very difficult, and this was all the more true because on narrow mountain roads separate baggage trains cannot be crowded together. On account of the continually belated arrival of the regimental baggage into camp, due to this crowding, the supply of the regiment was very difficult.

In the evening information was received again of the approach of hostile troops. We at once saddled again and took up a position in readiness, so as to be able to meet the enemy's attack, to move out and fall upon him. Unfortunately, the information proved to be erroneous and it was only toward morning that we were able to secure warm food for the men.

In Marche the Guard Rifle Battalion, which for five days had been protecting the frontier at Malmedy, joined the division. An inspector from His Majesty brought with him a spy with the commission that the battalion was to escort the man as far as possible toward the French frontier. The history of his life was a variegated one: Pupil at the Potsdam non-commissioned officers'

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

school, member of the Foreign Legion, ten years in America, now serving in the German Army. His diary of fifty-two pages had a different handwriting on each page. Though early in the morning a French cavalry division had left the city, departing in the direction of Givet, nevertheless First Lieutenant von Natzmer succeeded after a cautious automobile journey in letting the spy out at a wood not far from Givet, and disguised as a peaceful peasant, a short pipe in his mouth, he cried, "Good-bye until we meet in Paris," and sprang into the bushes at the side of the road.

### PATROL RIDES

The first patrol which was sent against the enemy fell to the lot of the Bodyguard Squadron of the Guard-du-Corps Regiment, commanded by Captain Baron of Inn and Knyphausen, under Lieutenant Landgrave Fugger. This patrol of ten men broke camp early, August 6, at Banter, on the Luxemburg frontier, crossed the mountains of the Grand Duke's dominions, and reached the vicinity of Bastogne.

The two troopers in advance of the point, Kaufert and Rohloff, when only 200 meters from the railroad station, discovered that hostile cavalry had just detrained there. However, they were seen, and the enemy at once sent a squadron to follow them. The patrol at once left the road, moved northwest, and took cover in a wood near Bizory. There it was hemmed in on three sides and was in a ticklish place for two hours, while a storm with heavy mists set in. Suddenly was heard the clattering of hoofs from a runaway horse, which was captured, and from the brand on him it was established that he was from the 16th French Dragoons. So it was learned with whom we had to do for the moment. Sergeant Theilke and Lance Corporal Schrader reconnoitered the terrain and discovered that the road to the east, toward Margaret, was clear of the enemy. They left the wood with long distances between troopers and at an accelerated pace and got back without any losses.

August 11, 1914, a squadron of the 3d Guard Uhlan Regiment had to provide two patrols. One was to reconnoiter toward the Meuse and the other toward Custinne. The leadership of the latter fell to Lieutenant Johann August, Prince of Stolberg-Roessa. Early in the morning, at 4 o'clock, the patrol rode forth in all haste, after being strengthened by a cup of hot coffee.

It was a beautiful summer morning. Light mists hung over the luxuriant meadows and commons of Belgium. Here and there could be seen German pickets and likewise patrols of other organizations coming back. The deepest peace seemed to prevail everywhere. With great satisfaction the leader again inspected his men, all of them men in whom he could implicitly trust and who, like himself, were anxious to do their full soldier's duty in a reconnoitering patrol, but were impatient to attack the enemy.

The village of Montgautier was found free of the enemy. No traces were found of automobile trucks having been used to hurry reconnoitering infantry

## WITH THE GERMAN CAVALRY ADVANCE IN 1914

to the front, though this was naturally what might have been surmised. In Custinne likewise nothing could be ascertained as to the enemy. The patrol was right on the route of advance of the 5th Cavalry Division operating with us; it was not necessary to cover the ground twice, so it could return. For that reason the Prince dismounted in a little wood two kilometers northeast of the village and wrote his message. It was about 9:45 a. m., and just then there came galloping toward them, along the highway from the village, a sergeant-major and eight men of another regiment, who cried out that they were pursued by a hostile squadron. Immediately there appeared, only 500 meters away, a platoon of the enemy, who were coming toward them in hot pursuit. The other patrol had disappeared, and the Prince, having sent two men back to the division with a message, was alone with only five Uhlans. Now was the time to be quick, determined, cautious. The orderly, Plewnia, was sent into the wood with the led horses. The others took possession of the ditch alongside of the road and brought their carbines to a "ready." Hearts throbbed, muscles hardened, eyes glanced along the sights at the unsuspecting oncoming target. Like a whirlwind the hostile platoon, sixteen dragoons from Rheims, rushed on in column of fours. Now cracked the volley of the little squad into their ranks. The horses were startled and threw their riders. Those who tumbled down dead and wounded were left behind. There was scarcely time to reload before the second platoon was already upon them. It fared no better than the preceding one. Bending the upper parts of their bodies behind the necks of their horses to protect themselves, the French troopers, with loud cries, drove their steeds at top speed, making use of their lances only, which they turned as best they could. Only the officers and a few of the non-commissioned officers fired their revolvers blindly in charging by. Badly wounded, the leader of the squadron, a first lieutenant, sank to the ground with his dead horse near Prince Stolberg. But our patrol had also a casualty to mourn. The steadfast orderly had received a pistol bullet which passed through his abdomen and spine, and he lay on the ground severely wounded. Though the shadows of death hung over him, he held tightly in his stiffening hand the bridles of the horses that had been entrusted to him. He died almost at once in the arms of his chief, who hastened to him. Then on came the third and strongest platoon of the hostile squadron. The Prince seized the carbine of the dead orderly, for his pistol had been emptied twice. He opened fire with the rest of the cartridges on the advancing enemy, who likewise played in hard luck. Besides the dead men, there lay twenty horses in the road. Lieutenant Derman and ten other wounded were taken prisoners. The French officer asked the Prince not to shoot him, as was the custom among the Germans with their prisoners, because he was a married man and had children. He carried maps of the vicinity of Strasbourg, Mayence, and Wurzburg.

But it did not always go so well and so gloriously; on the contrary losses were often heavy. About this time a message was brought in by an airplane

that a hostile battalion had crossed the Meuse. A patrol of twenty men was sent out to obtain information. They started out early at 6:30 a. m. The villages through which they passed were along a narrow road and the troopers could have cut the telegraph and telephone lines without difficulty. Toward 2 o'clock they reached Yvoir, on the Meuse. There stood in the door of a house located just at the outskirts of the village the owner of the house and his two daughters. "Have the French been here?" asked the patrol leader. "Indeed they have, this forenoon," was the answer. To the left of the road lay quite a steep height, covered with thickets; the patrol turned off toward this to look over the country better. Scarcely had they reached it when from the road ditches below, which were held by hostile riflemen, a skirmish line deployed, with men at five-pace intervals, which opened fire upon the hill. Probably they were notified of the patrol's approach by telephone, as the destruction of the telephone line between the last village and Yvoir had been neglected. The height was too steep to attack forward mounted, there was no cover from fire on top, and to the rear the hill fell precipitously to the Meuse: so there was nothing left to do but to go back the way they had come and seek escape and salvation by the road running oblique to the main highway. Some of the men who rode young remounts, which now became unmanageable, did not mount the animals quickly enough and were shot; others fell on the way. The leader tumbled down also, but made good his escape on foot into the brush, while his horse ran away. One man whose animal went down with eight bullets in him sprang upon a loose horse and escaped.

In the next village it was found that only five had escaped, of whom two were wounded. The unhurt men joined their regiment and the others were captured. One was shot; the other reached Namur, where, due to the fall of the fortress, he was soon set free. One other sent word later of his imprisonment in England. The leader came back on foot the third day with one man on a bicycle. He had doubled himself up in a fox-hole on the steep reverse slope of the hill and had to stay in those cramped quarters the rest of the day and half the night. He saw how the French buried his fallen comrades and heard how the villagers, until 1 o'clock in the morning, celebrated the "victory" at the grave with yells and cries.

On the 16th Captain Count Dohna, in command of a reconnoitering squadron of the Guard-Cuirassier Regiment, was sent to the line Custin-Houy. The point, commanded by First Lieutenant von Gagern, received a very severe fire from French cyclists concealed in a small wood. It turned aside without sending word back and reconnoitered toward Houy. For this reason the two patrols following, commanded by Sergeant-Major Quielitz and Stark, were completely shot to pieces. Stark turned back alone on foot. Quielitz fell under his horse, severely wounded, but his soldierly duty outweighed all need of help. "Get a message back, a message!" he cried to the members of his platoon. He was taken prisoner by the French.

## COMBAT IN BELGIUM BEYOND THE MEUSE

From Huy the division continued its march northerly toward Namur and behind the 2nd Army, in order to reach the right flank, as directed. On the way we saw again the cannonading of Namur, this time from the other side, and passed through many devastated villages. For the night both headquarters stopped at the Petit Leez Farm. At a long table in the farm yard we ate by very dim lights, while most of the personnel slept in the hay-loft of the stable.

On the following morning we came through Gambour, a large Belgian factory town, in which we again found ruined houses. At the western outlet of the town we found a large field storehouse, with bread and oats collected there. It was announced that the troops going through could take from these supplies what they needed. Every one thought that a hard march was to be expected, and it was easier to take things from a well-filled storehouse than to rustle for them outside. Therefore permission was given for each to take what he wished. To his usual pack, each of our dragoons added a loaf of issue bread under each arm and one buttoned inside of his blouse, and thus, laden with loaves of bread, he sprang into a gallop across country to rejoin his regiment, a true circus-rider.

In the village of Estinne, where the led horses were held, the shell explosions were followed by the hurling of roof tiles and pieces of the walls down upon us. The animals, becoming restless from all this turmoil, broke loose, and two hundred led horses, with packed saddles, charged down the main street, massed as in war; and all that was in their way or tried to stop them was carried along with them. They halted in the market-place and an opportunity came to round them up and catch them.

Crash! A shell burst in the church tower and a piece of the gable came rumbling down, plowing up the ground.

Frightened again, milling around anew; and then the wild flight of the column!

It looked for a while as though there would be two squadrons of the regiment without horses, so badly were they scattered. But in war it appears that things sometimes come out better than is expected; and so was it here. The wild mob of led horses fled in a dense mass toward the open entrance of a stock inclosure, into which they went, and were soon easily and completely secured.

## OUR FIRST DAY IN FRANCE

During the noon hour the division received orders for further pursuit of the hostile forces defeated in the battle of Mons and to reach Sars Poteries, in

France, the same evening. "Boots and saddles" was sounded and we took a southerly direction, keeping always parallel to the French-Belgian frontier.

Between Marbes and Sars la Buisserie we rode over a battlefield upon which the Westphalian Corps had victoriously thrown the enemy back, but with heavy losses to themselves. A large freight yard, over which the battle had raged, was still burning; there were crater-like holes, from 4 to 5 meters in diameter, made by the explosions of the shells of our heavy guns; abandoned limbers standing about indicated the position given up by the hostile artillery. The underbrush of the woods concealed the corpses of the enemy. After crossing the Sambre River, on the highway from Thuin to Beaumont, the hubbub of fleeing inhabitants grew worse.

On foot, in wagons, in carts, they were running away in their uncertainty, taking with them a few domestic animals and only such household effects as were necessary—the men with solemn mien, the women frightened, the old folks dumfounded. These men had scowling countenances, the women were full of anxiety, the old people met us with stolid, defiant looks—and then the children! Our officers told me many times, later on, that as soon as these fleeing children looked them in the eye it would cut them to the heart. Did the German father unconsciously think of his own children at home?

Powerful masses of marching infantry and ammunition and baggage columns were taken along with us. One would ride at a trot, then walk, then dismount and lead; then again trot, walk, and so on without rest, without watering, thus ever forward.

Soon lively hurrahs began to burst forth, and then the "Watch on the Rhine" from the regiments on the right and left of us, which were crossing the French frontier on parallel roads. From the wagon of a baggage train halted in a sunken road my colleague, Grunwaldt, from Dusseldorf, called to me, but I could not halt and give him a handshake, for we were very crowded in this flood moving to the front in the growing darkness, composed of roads full of troops and columns, from the headquarters on down, and should one leave his place he would never find it again that day.

At 10 o'clock we came to the little Belgian city of Sivry. In order to hold up the advance of the Germans, the retreating French had without hesitation recklessly set on fire this little city of their allies. It was burning in every street. The large church in the market-place, even to the roof timbers of the massive towers, was one mass of flames. Troops of all kinds pushed into and through the town. The harsh rattling of the gun carriages, the shouting of orders, the cries of the inhabitants, the crashing of falling timbers, the crackling of falling roofs were heard; in all directions were seen flying sparks and frightened horses. It was a war picture of the night, beautiful to look upon indeed. For a long time the light of the burning city helped us to find our way in the dark through the forest. In rear of the town of Sivry we soon crossed the French frontier.

## The Fourth Austrian Cavalry Division in the Fight at Volchkovtsy, August 21, 1914

BY

General N. N. GOLOVINE

(Translated by Colonel A. M. Nikolaieff)

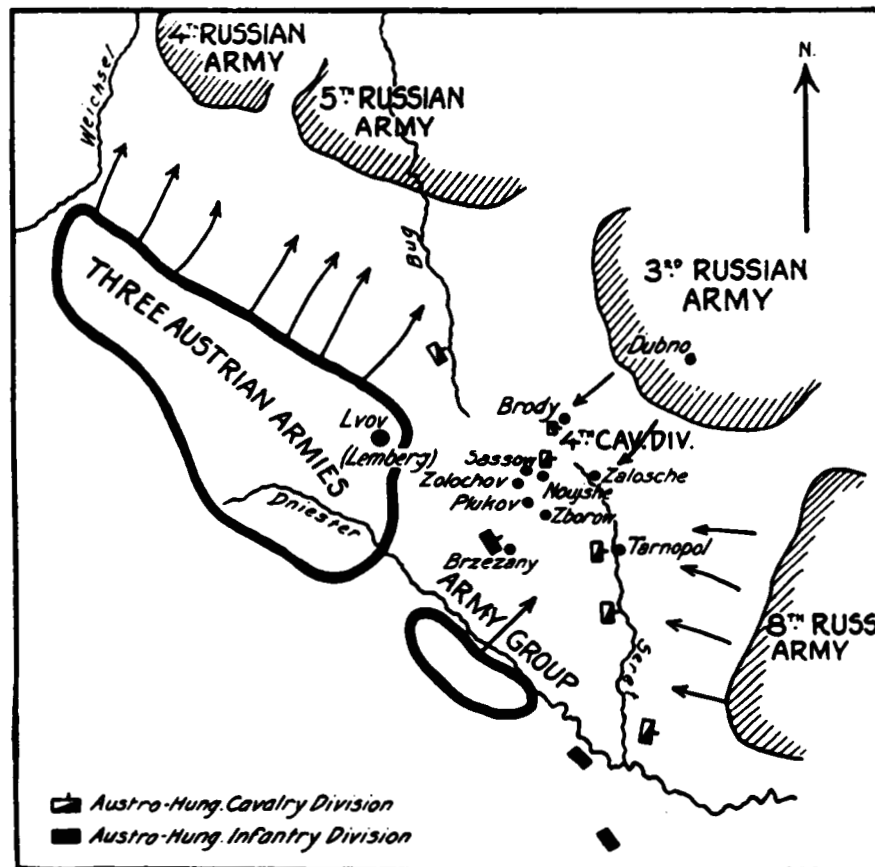
IN THE beginning of this article the author considers it his duty to express his deep gratitude to the officers of the Austro-Hungarian Imperial and Royal Army who were kind enough to furnish the author with information and letters. Of special value were data received from Colonel Baron Egon von Waldstätten and from the former chief of staff of the 4th Cavalry Division, General Oszkar de Rövid Maxon. The information received from the first gave the fundamental facts; the personal impressions of the second helped to re-establish the true picture of the attack.

At the outbreak of the war three Austro-Hungarian armies (see Sketch 1) deployed their front from the river Vistula (Weichsel) to the city of Lvov (Lemberg) with the object of delivering a decisive blow to two Russian armies concentrating between the rivers Vistula and Bug. To protect the right flank from two other Russian armies, concentrating in the regions of Dubno and Proskourov, a group of two army corps with four cavalry divisions was left in eastern Galicia. The cavalry divisions, backed by strong infantry units, had as their direct task to prevent the Russian cavalry from breaking through the curtain covering the right flank of the Austro-Hungarian main forces, deployed between the Vistula and Lvov. This curtain on the 20th of August was on the line of the river Seret.

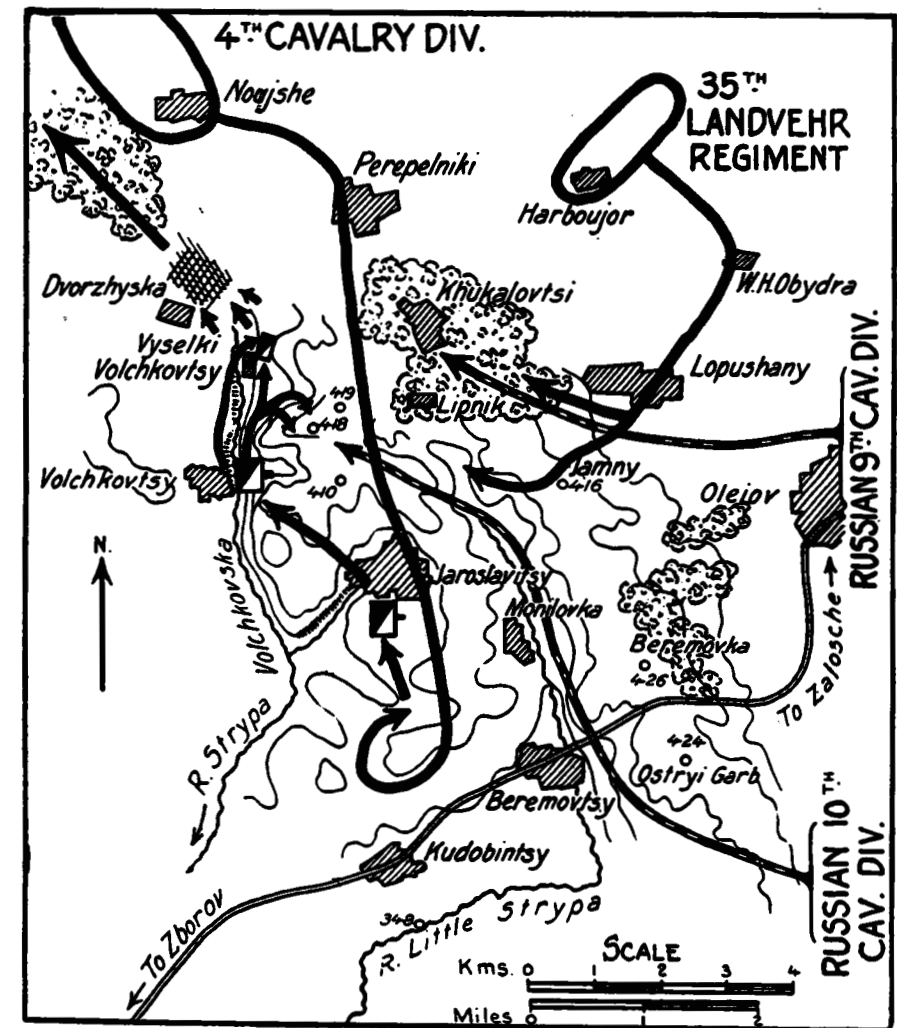
On the evening of the 20th of August, at the headquarters of the XI Austro-Hungarian Army Corps, information was received to the effect that strong Russian forces had occupied the crossing of the river Seret at Zalosche. The Army Corps commander sent to the 4th Cavalry Division the following telegram: "A strong mixed enemy detachment (*Gemischtes detachement*), with numerous cavalry and guns, is advancing through Oleiov on Zborov. The patrols of that detachment are two kilometers away from Zborov-Plukov. From Brzezany units (*fünf Teile*) of the 11th Infantry Division are directed to Zborov. They will arrive at that city tonight. From Tarnopol one cavalry division will be sent to Zborov. The 4th Cavalry Division will break up camp early in the morning and will advance on Zborov with the object of acting in the enemy's rear. Establishing liaison by telephone with Tarnopol, Zborov, and Plukov is desirable."

# THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

This telegram was received at the headquarters of the 4th Cavalry Division at 12:20 a. m. the night of August 20-21. The regiments and two horse batteries of the division were billeted that night in the neighborhood of the village Noujshe, and two battalions of the 35th Landwehr Regiment, attached to the division, in the neighborhood of the village Kharbouzov. Two squadrons with one horse battery, as well as one battalion of the 35th Landwehr Regiment, were detached and stationed in the neighborhood of Brody. Thus the total



# THE FOURTH AUSTRIAN CAVALRY DIVISION



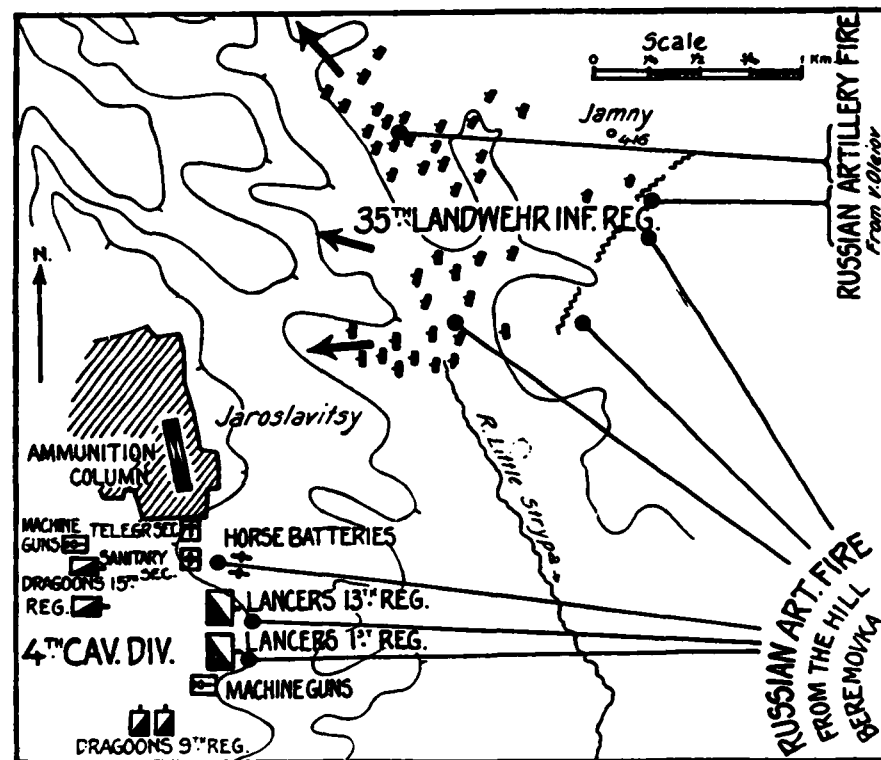
This sketch was kindly placed at the author's disposal by Colonel Baron Egon von Waldstätten, as were sketches 3 and 4 and material for sketch 5.



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

strength of the division on the morning of August 21 was: 22 squadrons, 8 guns, 8 machine-guns, and 2 battalions of infantry.\*

The commander of the division decided to start the movement of his cavalry units at 4 a. m. and to come up to the region of hills 418-419, which is



SKETCH No. 3

Position of the Units of the 4th Cavalry Division about 9 a. m.

* 1st brigade: 1st Lancer Regiment.....	6 squadrons.
15th Dragoon Regiment.....	6 squadrons.
Machine-gun Section.....	4 machine-guns.
2d brigade: 13th Lancer Regiment.....	6 squadrons.
9th Dragoon Regiment.....	4 squadrons.
Machine-gun Section.....	4 machine-guns.
Horse artillery: 11th Horse Artillery group: 1st and 3d Batteries..	8 guns.
Infantry: 35th Landwehr Regiment: 1st and 2d Battalions.....	2 battalions.

## THE FOURTH AUSTRIAN CAVALRY DIVISION

the nearest elevated watershed on the surrounding hilly ground, in order to wait there until the situation cleared up. He sent the 35th Landwehr Regiment to the village W. H. Obydra.

About 6 a. m. a report was received to the effect that the enemy had already occupied the city of Zborov. General Zarembo decided to move further to the south and to reach with his cavalry units the road Oleioy-Zborov and with the infantry units the hill Jamny (416). The village Kudobintsy was not yet reached, when the division commander received new information to the effect that the main body of the enemy were still in the region of Oleioy and the units of the 11th Infantry Division had not yet arrived at Zborov. General Zarembo turned the division back and the latter, formed in regimental columns, stood directly to the south of the village Jaroslavitsy, covered by the ridge which followed the western edge of that village. (See Sketch 3.) It was about 9 a. m.

At that time information was received from the infantry to the effect that fire had been opened on it by strong Russian forces, advancing from Oleioy, and that the battalions of the 35th Landwehr Regiment had suffered heavy losses and had been forced to fall back on Khukalovtsy. Artillery firing was heard in the direction of Oleioy. At the same time, from the hills near the village Jaroslavitsy, Russian batteries occupying a position somewhere in the region of the hill Beremovka could be seen firing on Austrian infantry units, advancing from the hill Jamny in a southern direction. But soon those units could be seen flowing back. Enemy patrols appeared in the direction of the hills Beremovka and Ostryi Garb and columns of dust were visible, rising behind them.

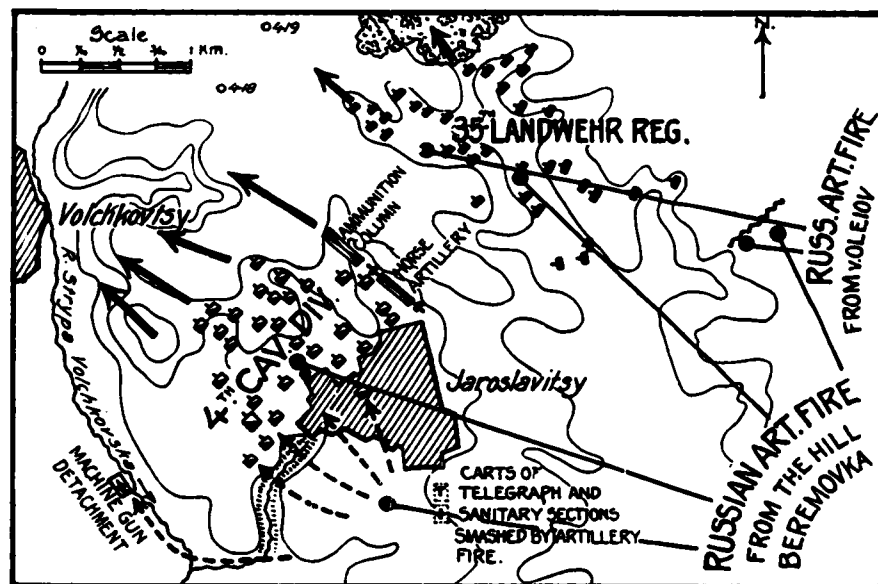
Pursuing the retreating infantry units, the Russian batteries fired in the direction where, hidden in a valley, stood the columns of the 4th Cavalry Division. A score of shrapnel charges sent by the Russian guns burst over the two Lancer regiments and over the horse artillery, which had just taken up a position. (See Sketch 4.) I will let one of the Lancer squadron commanders describe the effect made by this unexpected artillery firing:

"On the 21st of August the division stopped to the south of the village Jaroslavitsy. The regiments were in 'mass' formations, with their front toward the village Oleioy. About 9 a. m. the commander of the division, who was on the left flank of the division, near a big haystack, called out all the senior officers, including the squadron commanders. At that time the Russian artillery opened fire from the direction of Oleioy, shooting above our heads at an unknown target. The commander of the division ordered our horse artillery to open fire on the enemy batteries. The latter immediately transferred their fire against our division. The first shots fell behind or burst high, then a few shrapnel burst right above the division. A panic started and the division ran away. The banks of a stream flowing in the rear of the division were steep. Regiments and squadrons got mixed up. The



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

greater part of them turned to the right, through the village Jaroslavitsy. The whole mass galloped as far as the valley to the east of the village Volchkovtsy. The senior officers, who were near the haystack, came up in a group at a gallop, took the troops in hand, re-established order and drew them up. The losses from the artillery fire were not heavy. The men who ran straight ahead toward the stream suffered most."



SKETCH No. 4

Position of the Units of the 4th Cavalry Division about 9:15 a. m.

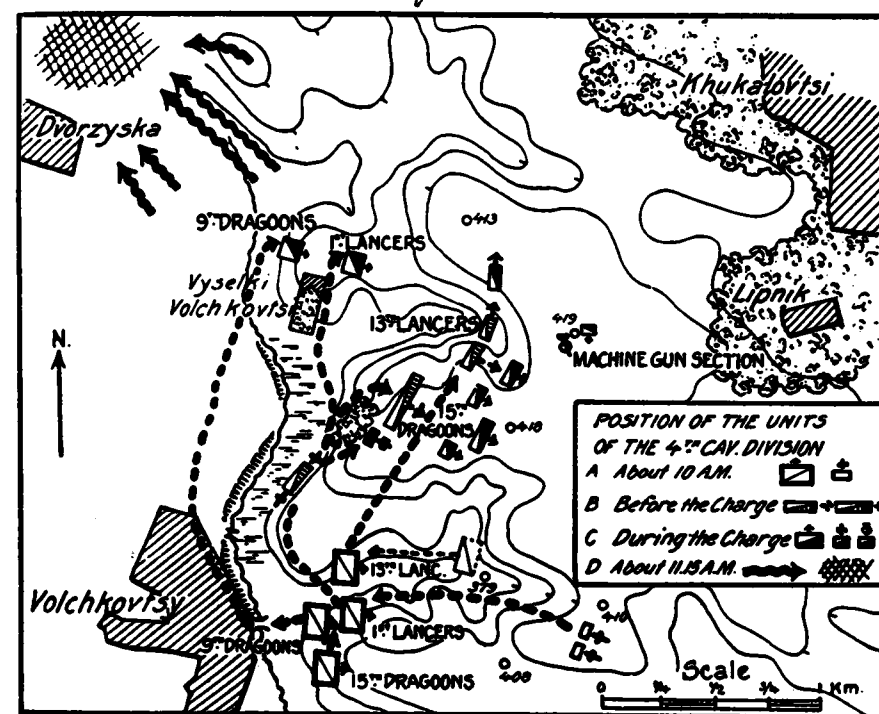
While the above-described incident was taking place the infantry continued to fall back (*Die Landwehr Infanterie setzt Rückzug unaufhaltsam fort*). The horse artillery batteries took up a position near hill 410 and a duel began between them and the Russian artillery firing from behind the hill Beremovka (426). In the meantime the division was assembling in regimental columns. (See Sketch 5.)

General Zarembo decided to move the division to the north, covering it from the enemy side by the ridge 418-419, with the purpose of acting later on against the enemy through Lipnik and the hill Jamny. That movement was carried out by the division, regiment after regiment taking cover in the folds of the ground. To the right and in front marched the 13th Lancer Regiment, with the object of getting over the hill 413; behind marched the 15th Dragoon Regiment and the horse batteries; to the left, along the valley of the river Strypa Volchkovska, marched the 1st Lancer Regiment, followed by the

## THE FOURTH AUSTRIAN CAVALRY DIVISION

9th Dragoons. In the course of that movement, quite unexpectedly, the Russian cavalry was discovered coming up in close formation along the eastern slopes of the ridge 410-418-419. The distance between it and the division was not over 1,000 to 1,500 paces.

General Zarembo, who was near the 15th Dragoon Regiment, decided to charge the Russian cavalry immediately. He placed himself, together with his staff, in front of the Dragoons and personally led them to the charge. Moving forward, the 15th Dragoon Regiment took the following formation: Three squadrons in the first line, one squadron in echelon behind the right flank, one and a half squadrons behind the left flank (the other half squadron was detached). Almost simultaneously the advancing Russians were noticed by the 13th Lancer Regiment. The group of squadrons under Major Vidale,



SKETCH No. 5

Position of the Units of the 4th Cavalry Division about 10 a. m.

forming the second half of the regimental column, deployed its front, on his command, to the right and, following the example of its commander, charged. As to the group of squadrons that marched ahead, it galloped further to the

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

north, because its commander had received an alarming report about the enemy's movement from the north. One of the machine-gun sections which had been marching with the 13th Lancer Regiment galloped, under the protection of half a squadron, to the hill 419 and opened a flanking fire against the charging Russian cavalry. Simultaneously with the charge of the 15th Lancers and 13th Dragoons, the 1st Horse Battery galloped and took up a position in front of a small wood, but was immediately shot to pieces by the Russian artillery. As to the 3d Battery, it did not succeed in taking up a position; the horses were killed, the limbers smashed, and it stuck, coming up, in a swampy valley.

The 9th Dragoon Regiment and the 1st Lancer Regiment did not take part in the attack. They were at that time in a valley to the north of Viselki Volchkovtsy and did not receive any orders. While they waited for an order, the fight of the 15th Dragoons and 13th Lancer Regiments ended in favor of the Russians. Seeing the general retreat, they fell back to the village Dvorzhyska, where the units of the division had been ordered by General Zarembo to assemble. But there again the gathering Austrian cavalry got under fire of the Russian horse artillery. The units of the 4th Cavalry Division continued their retreat farther to the northwest, in the direction of Kolotov, and finally gathered together near Sassov, about 20 kilometers away from the battlefield. (See Sketch 1.)

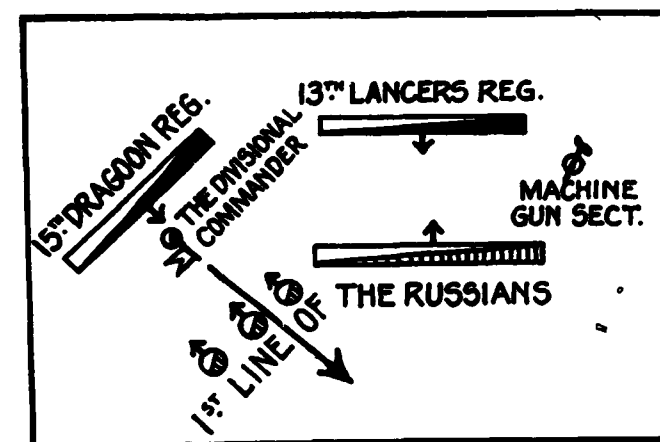
The above is a short statement of the events which took place in the 4th Cavalry Division during the fight of the 21st of August. Now let us take up the details of that cavalry encounter, which we gleaned from the statements of participants on the Austrian side.

Major, now General, Oskar de Rövid Maxon, who on August 21, 1914, was chief of staff of the division, was kind enough to answer some of the questions I put to him. His testimony is of a special value in view of the fact that he took part personally in the encounter of the 15th Dragoon Regiment, or, as they were called, "The White Dragoons." Together with his division commander, they were the first to clash with the enemy. In the shock Major Maxon received one saber and two lance wounds. Then his horse, galloping farther ahead, fell in a ditch, overgrown with grass, and Major Maxon was severely bruised. One of the dragoons picked him up and carried him away from the fight.

According to the impressions of Major Maxon, the 15th Dragoons charged in a southeasterly direction against the left flank of the first Russian line. On Sketch 6 is shown the position of the two sides during the charge, as it appeared to him. "First we met," writes he, "a swarm of cavalrymen, who had broken away from the Russian flank and lined up in front of us. (*Wir trafen daher zuerst auf einen Schwarm, der sich vom russischen Fluegel losgelöst hatte und gegen uns Front machte.*) We passed it through (*Diesen durchritten wir*) and were confronted by units in close formation, constituting evidently the second line or the reserves."

## THE FOURTH AUSTRIAN CAVALRY DIVISION

Let us remind the readers that the formation of the Russian 10th Cavalry Division consisted of one line, with two Hussar squadrons in echelon behind the left flank. Count Keller had no reserves, and in the critical moment, at the central section of the fight, threw in his escort (a troop of Cossacks) and the staff. Major Maxon in his letter emphasizes twice that his description is only what seemed to him. The more interesting it is to compare his words with what "seemed" to Count Keller and to his chief of staff. Re-establishing these pictures "as they seemed," we will draw closer to the truth of the fight, without the understanding of which a correct conception of a cavalry fight is impossible.



SKETCH No. 6

The Position of the Opposing Sides during the Charge, as it Appeared to the Chief of Staff of the 4th Cavalry Division.

Copy of this sketch was kindly furnished the author by the former chief of staff of the 4th Cavalry Division, Major-General Oskar de Rövid Maxon.

What took place in the 13th Lancer Regiment is recorded from the words of an officer of that regiment.

After order had been re-established among the units of the division, General Zarembo ordered the 13th Lancer Regiment to advance to the north (the object of the movement as well as the information about the enemy at the disposal of the divisional headquarters were not known to this officer). The regiment started marching, having sent ahead as its vanguard two squadrons. It passed the village Viselki Volchkovtsy on its eastern side and was moving up the western slope of the hill rising to the east of the village. All of a sudden a cavalryman on patrol appeared on the top of the hill. Above his head he showed the signal "Enemy in sight" and shouted "Enemy!" (*Der*

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

*Feind!*). The officer relating these facts, who was then in the rear of the vanguard, saw next how the two squadrons, marching behind, deployed their front to the right, and simultaneously he heard the bugler's signal, "Charge!" In the following moment he saw the Lancers going at a gallop and Russians coming up to meet the Lancers. The whole encounter lasted about two minutes. (Compare with Sketch 5 of the first installment.)

According to the officers of the 13th Lancers who were in the two rear squadrons, Major Vidale immediately, upon seeing the cavalryman on patrol, went at a gallop to the top of the hill and ordered the bugler to sound the signal "Charge!" The Lancers charged at a gallop. The Russians, charging down the hillside, moved at a trot or at a canter. The Lancers were surprised by the fact that the Russian cavalrymen were bent over their saddles and seemed very small.\* The Russians advanced in a close formation, the Austrians doing likewise. As far as it can be judged, the two sides encountered each other moving at a low speed. What happened at the time of the encounter no one can describe accurately. The Austrians affirm that both sides turned back soon. They do not remember about cavalrymen crushed by horses, although they specify in detail the casualties. The gallant Major Vidale was wounded by a saber in the face. Another officer was also wounded by a saber in the face, but he was saved by the metal part of the chin strap of his headgear. The Austrian machine-gun section opened fire from a position on the left flank of Major Vidale's squadrons. The Austrians were then of the opinion that the machine-gun fire inflicted heavy losses on the Russians. On the other hand, the Russian machine-guns opened fire somewhere in the rear, behind the Austrian left flank, which fact had a bad moral effect on the Austrians.

The losses suffered by the 4th Cavalry Division in the fight of August 21 are shown in the table below (drawn up according to the data communicated by Colonel Waldstätten):

Name of the unit.	Killed.		Wounded.		Prisoners.	
	Officers.	Men.	Officers.	Men.	Officers.	Men.
Divisional staff .....	1	1	3	..	1	1
15th Dragoon Regiment.....	1	40	6	6	2	74
13th Lancer Regiment.....	..	4	4	25	7	100
9th Dragoon Regiment.....	..	..	..	9	..	14
1st Lancer Regiment.....	?	?	?	?	?	?
1st and 3d Batteries of the 11th Horse Artillery group.....	1	22	One officer and 36 men.			

\* In accordance with the Russian regulations, the cavalrymen should hold their lances, when charging, in a horizontal position, and those armed with sabers hold the latter likewise, stretching out the right arm; they also bend forward, because the horses have to gallop at full speed. It could happen naturally, that the cavalrymen, unconsciously slowing down before the encounter, continued to bend forward, doing what they were assiduously taught to do in time of peace.

## THE FOURTH AUSTRIAN CAVALRY DIVISION

It could not be determined how many losses were occasioned by cold steel and how many by fire. It is difficult to ascertain exactly what part of the losses belongs to the moment of the encounter itself. Nevertheless, we will try to solve that question, even if in an approximate way. When we look at the table, our attention is first drawn by the losses of the divisional staff. Nearly all the officers of the staff were wounded, and we succeeded in finding out that they were wounded by cold steel. The gallant staff of the 4th Cavalry Division, as told above, took part in the charge in the first line of the fighters.

With regard to the data of the losses among the 15th Dragoons, the attention is drawn by the ratio of killed to wounded: the former are 41; the latter, 12. A correction, however, should be made regarding these figures, as the wounded who were made prisoners were not counted by the Austrian staff. This becomes clear when the wounded officers' name list is looked up. Let us recall the conditions under which the fight of the "White" Dragoons took place. First, when attacking the Russian Lancers, they were successful. Later on they became the object of a flanking attack of the Russian Hussars. The greater part of the wounded White Dragoons, therefore, could not be carried away from the battlefield. But should we even count one-half of the prisoners wounded, the total number of wounded will be only 50. Adding to that number the killed, we get the total number of casualties about 90.

We are not going to repeat here the remarks made in the first article, when the question of the losses of the Russian 10th Cavalry Division was taken up; but, basing ourselves on the same principles, we are in a position to insist that with the "White" Dragoons as well, the losses suffered by them in the first moment of the encounter were, beyond comparison, smaller than the number killed and wounded by the Russians during the pursuit. How much bigger must have been the number of losses occurring in that final act of the fight can be judged from that part of Colonel Slivinski's narrative where he tells about what happened near the crossing of the river Strypa Volchkovska, where the Orenbourgski Cossack sotnia appeared:

"Cut off from the bridge, the Austrians turned in all directions. Now they suffered severely. . . . Those who succeeded in escaping tried to ford the river, either on horseback or on foot. . . . Many corpses lay at the bridge itself, occupied by the Cossacks. Every Austrian who reached the bridge was felled by saber, killed by lance, or shot by bullet."

With great probability it can be concluded that in the course of the encounter itself the losses of the 15th Dragoon Regiment were not over a score of men.

Part of the losses of the 13th Lancers should be credited to the Russian batteries firing on the regiment during its halt to the east of the village Jaroslavitsy. When the losses of that regiment and the "White" Dragoon Regiment are compared, the difference in the numbers of killed can be clearly

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

seen. The fact that in the charge only two Lancer squadrons took part—that is, only a third of the strength of the Dragoons—does not give a satisfactory explanation. It seems to us the latter should be looked for in the difference of the battle conditions. The Dragoons, having turned their backs after the flanking attack of the Russian Hussars, galloped to the section of the Strypa Volchkovtska which it was difficult to cross, and were taken there under the blows of the pursuing Russian Hussars and the Cossacks, who appeared in the rear. On the other hand, the Lancers of the group of squadrons under Major Vidale, after they had turned back, galloped to the valley to the east of Viselki Volchkovtsy, across a country where there were no obstacles. Moreover, near that village two other regiments of the 4th Cavalry Division stood, and therefore the pursuit by the Russians could not develop as easily as their pursuit of the "White" Dragoons.

The larger number of prisoners can be explained by the fact that the spirits of the 13th Lancer Regiment were, in the moment of the encounter, lower than those of the "White" Dragoons. The Lancers, shortly before the charge, after the unexpected firing on them by the Russian artillery, were stricken by a panic. The lower spirits of the Lancers offer also an explanation of the fact that the group of squadrons marching ahead galloped to the north at a moment when its obvious duty was to support their regimental comrades going to charge under the command of Major Vidale.

Basing ourselves on the fact narrated above, we take leave to make the supposition that the number of the wounded Lancers among the prisoners was smaller than among the "White" Dragoons, as well as the number of casualties in the encounter.

Summing up for the whole division, we can come to the conclusion that the total number of the killed and wounded caused by the encounter was not more than 50 men and very probably less than 40.

Out of 22 squadrons of the 4th Cavalry Division, only 8 took part in the charge. This fact is very characteristic from the psychological point of view. Such phenomena are very frequent; they occur in every battle and in every army. They are the consequence of the fundamental psychic law of battle, to wit, every defeat has as its foundation the unwillingness of one of the sides to fight. It is difficult to study the manifestations of that law, old as mankind, because the participants prefer to hide phenomena of such nature. When such an instance becomes known, however, the readers, used to the language of official reports and to the heroes of the stories, can easily commit a grave error and pass a hard verdict. We warn against such critiques. The best army units have in their history lived through minutes of moral depression.

Under such moral circumstances the 4th Cavalry Division found itself at the village Volchkovtsy. Its units had just been subject to the fire of the Russian artillery near the village Iaroslavitsy. Moving from Volchkovtsy to the north, the 4th Cavalry Division was suddenly attacked by the Russian

## THE FOURTH AUSTRIAN CAVALRY DIVISION

cavalry, which had dived out of a valley. The attack was so unexpected that the division commander decided to place himself at the head of the nearest regiment. Such a step has its disadvantages. The management of the division comes to an end. The moral centrifugal forces of the fight do not meet in the uniting will of the leader, and only the units go to fight at the head of which are heroes like Major Vidale. The latter always and everywhere are immeasurably fewer than those wishing to dodge or to postpone the decisive moment. Despite that fact, the historian who fails to take into account the fact that General Zarembo had serious reasons for leading personally into the fight the unit nearest at hand will not be right. The reasons were psychological, and in order to understand them fully it is necessary to take into consideration what was going on in the 35th Landwehr Regiment. (See Sketches 2, 3, and 4.) Moving in the direction of the village Obydra, it turned, in accordance with the order of the commander of the division, toward Lopushany and Jamny. During this movement it was attacked by Russian units from the direction of Oleiov (dismounted units of the Russian 9th Cavalry Division, advancing from the city of Zalosche, where it had passed the night).

The enemy artillery, having taken up a position in the region to the north of Oleiov, began to batter the Austrian infantry, which had no guns at its disposal. The rear battalion started falling back very soon. At that time the vanguard of the 35th Landwehr Regiment was coming up to the hill Jamny, whence it began an offensive in the southerly direction. There it got under a cross-fire of the Russian artillery, firing from the direction of hill Beremovka. About 9 a. m. the vanguard and the companies of the head battalion, which had come up, began also falling back. The Russian artillery from the direction of Oleiov continued to pursue with its fire the infantry, which, split up in small groups, retreated toward the village Khukalovtsy. Simultaneously a part of the Landwehr Regiment that succeeded in keeping order was pressed on the front by the Russians advancing from the direction of Oleiov.

General Zarembo received information about the reverse of his infantry about 9 a. m., when he was to the south of the village Iaroslavitsy. At the same time he, together with the officers and men of the 4th Cavalry Division, could see with his own eyes the defeat of the Landwehr near the hill Jamny. It is quite natural that the attention of the commander and the entire personnel of the division was attracted by the Russians advancing from Oleiov. The losses\* suffered on that day by the 35th Landwehr Regiment could only make

\* The losses of the 1st and 2d battalions of the 35th Landwehr Regiment in the fight on August 21 were as follows:

	Killed.	Wounded.	Missing and prisoners.
Officers .....	5	3	11
Men .....	28	120	289
Total .....	33	123	300

that impression stronger. For that reason, although the Russian 9th Cavalry Division had no time to come up to take part directly in the cavalry fight at Volchkovtsy, its presence, like a heavy load, weighed on the actions of the Austrian 4th Cavalry Division. The part played by the Russian 9th Cavalry Division was similar to that brilliant object on which the hypnotist fixes the attention of the person he hypnotizes. Hardly a stronger impression could be made, therefore, than the one caused by the sudden appearing, at a distance of some 1,000 to 1,500 steps, of the Russian regiments coming up from a valley to charge on horseback. Under such conditions, General Zarembo evidently was of the opinion that personal example of the leader was necessary.

In conclusion of this article, we consider it our duty to emphasize that the fight at Volchkovtsy of the Russian 10th Cavalry and the Austrian 4th Cavalry Divisions serves as an example of the highest cavalry bravery. Whoever will study this cavalry duel, which stands alone in the chronicles of the World War, should remember that the units which come up on horseback to meet each other face to face have full right to be considered among the best. Another thing happens countless times: The cavalry leaders and their units turn away from it. The "flesh" raises its voice and the obliging mind finds in abundance pretexts to justify the evading of an encounter.

## Fiddlers' Green and Other Cavalry Songs

BY

J. H. S.

"FIDDLERS' GREEN" was inspired by a story told quite some time back by Captain "Sammy" Pearson at a camp-fire in the Medicine Bow Mountains of Wyoming.

Having mentioned Fiddlers' Green and found that no one appeared to have heard of it, Pearson indignantly asserted that every good cavalryman ought to know about Fiddlers' Green, and forthwith told the story.

He said that about halfway down the trail to Hell, there was a broad meadow, dotted with trees and crossed by many streams (comparable, I suppose, to the Elysian Fields), and here all dead cavalrymen were camped, with their tents, horses, picket lines, and camp-fires, around which latter the souls of the dead troopers gathered to exchange reminiscences and tell stories. There was also the old army canteen store (where liquor was sold), long since hounded from this mundane sphere by the zealous efforts of the W. C. T. U.

No other branches of the service might stop at Fiddlers' Green, but must continue the march straight through to Hell. Though it was true that some troopers, feeling the call to eternal damnation, had packed their equipment,

mounted, and set out to continue their journey, none had ever reached the gates of Hell, but having finished up their liquor had returned to Fiddlers' Green.

I have never heard any explanation of the name of this "bivouac of the dead," but I believe, as Captain "Sammy" Pearson said, that every good cavalryman ought to know about Fiddlers' Green.

### FIDDLERS' GREEN

Halfway down the trail to Hell,  
In a shady meadow, green,  
Are the souls of all dead troopers camped  
Near a good old-time canteen,  
And this eternal resting place  
Is known as Fiddlers' Green.

Marching past, straight through to Hell,  
The Infantry are seen,  
Accompanied by the Engineers,  
Artillery and Marine,  
For none but shades of Cavalrymen  
Dismount at Fiddlers' Green.

Though some go curving down the trail  
To seek a warmer scene,  
No trooper ever gets to Hell  
Ere he's emptied his canteen,  
And so rides back to drink again  
With friends at Fiddlers' Green.

And so when horse and man go down  
Beneath a saber keen,  
Or in roaring charge or fierce mêlée  
You stop a bullet clean,  
And the hostiles come to get your scalp,  
Just empty your canteen,  
And put your pistol to your head  
And go to Fiddlers' Green.

The doughboy is a farmer  
A-diggin' up the sod;  
Th' artillery man's a scientist,  
With sextant, chain, and rod;  
But the trooper, he's a cowboy,  
And he doesn't give a damn;  
So sound the "Boots and Saddles"  
And hooray for Uncle Sam.

They wake us in the morning  
Before the break o' day,  
And they sound the "Boots and Saddles,"  
Then we mount up and away;  
And ere the first red streaks of dawn  
Dye mesa, peak, and pass,  
The long line is a jingling  
Across the prairie grass.

### A MARCH IN THE DRY SEASON

(A Philippine Impression)

The tall bamboos o'erhang a dusty road  
That winds between two rows of nipa  
shacks;  
The heavy air is hot and motionless.

And through the barrio the squadrons  
pass,  
With clank of arms and creak of saddle  
leather;  
The dust-clouds rise and in the oppressive  
air  
Hang dense and choking o'er the narrow  
way,  
And through the haze the troopers loom  
like giants  
Beside the frail and toy-like native  
shacks;  
The horses, with lowered heads and black  
with sweat,  
March steadily through the never-ending  
cloud;  
The slouching troopers ride with tight-  
drawn lips  
And bodies swaying to the horses' tramp.

They pass and disappear; the settling dust  
Shows the deserted road and nipa shacks,  
The bamboos bending graceful overhead.

## Training of National Guard Cavalry

BY

Colonel G. C. THAYER, 103d Cavalry

**T**HE difference in conditions under which National Guard units are trained as compared with those applying to units of the regular establishment compel many variations in the methods of training, adopted from those laid down as essential in the many manuals issued on the subject.

The short time at the disposal of the commander of a National Guard unit, about 80 hours per year plus two weeks' time at the summer encampment, compels him to choose between two courses of action, (1) to concentrate on a few rudiments and to teach these thoroughly, letting all else go, or (2) to cover as much ground as possible, giving but a superficial instruction in each subject, trusting to the interest and enthusiasm of his men to perfect themselves as they go along.

Both these courses can be carried to excess. In the endeavor to reach perfection, drill in the rudiments may be continued until at the end of the year the men will have had little instruction beyond the steps—marchings and manual of arms and, in the cavalry, equitation. On the other hand, some commanding officers will be found attempting to give their men high-grade specialist training or squadron drill before they have learned fire discipline or to saddle and bridle properly.

"As troops are inspected, so will they be drilled," was one of the doctrines of one of the leading German military critics. It is, therefore, desirable that there should be a fixed basis upon which inspection should be made and a scale of relative importance attached to the various accomplishments that go to make up the theoretically perfect soldier.

If one inspector attaches high relative importance to smartness in the manual, to precision in the mechanics of the drill, and to the rigid movements of ceremonies, etc., it may be confidently expected that at the next inspection the unit concerned will be well prepared in these particulars. But if the succeeding inspector is interested in combat exercises, reconnaissance work, signaling, etc., he will be disappointed in finding the organization ill prepared in such matters.

The "Standards of Proficiency" set forth in Training Memorandum No. 3 from the office of the Chief of Cavalry gives every troop commander a definite idea of what constitutes the well-trained cavalry soldier and a clear notion of what to aim at.

For the National Guard cavalry there remains something else to be done, and that is to attach to each one of the accomplishments set forth in these

## TRAINING OF NATIONAL GUARD CAVALRY

"Standards" something in the nature of an index number to show its relative importance to the others, so that a troop commander may have some guide by which he will know what items to stress in his instruction and what to pass over when shortness of time or lack of facilities makes it imperative for him to neglect something.

For instance, in the cavalry, to teach a man to ride is imperative, but instruction in the training of remounts may safely be passed over until opportunity serves.

Again, in training a man to ride, instruction in the use of the aids must be given, but the suppling exercises can very well be omitted, especially for men who drill but once a week and for whom utility of such exercises is, therefore, doubtful.

In endeavoring to select these high points in the training schedule to which special attention is to be given a process of elimination can be followed. In bringing a man up to the "Standards of Proficiency" laid down there are certain steps that are direct and others that are indirect. Many of the movements of precision laid down in the drill regulation, while of undoubted disciplining value, have no direct influence on a man's abilities as a fighting man. Little time, therefore, should be put on such things and only enough instruction given in them as will give the individual man an idea of what is wanted, without spending valuable time in the endeavor to obtain mechanical precision.

Ceremonies of all kinds, parades, reviews, guard mounts, etc., are apt to consume an amount of time and energy out of all proportion to their value as helps in maintaining discipline and morale. Yet in the summer encampment, when every moment of time is precious, how often it has happened that instruction is cut short and men hurried away from partially completed instruction in order to "get ready for guard mount."

In addition to cutting out from the schedule all instruction of only indirect value, actual experience has shown that progress in much of the instruction can be expedited by passing rapidly through the preliminary steps, showing the men what they are expected to do and how to do it, and then passing on to the next step without spending too much time in exacting absolute precision in execution.

For instance, to know what the aids are and how to apply them is essential in controlling the horse, but, once they are explained to a man and he is shown how to apply them, he may safely be left to himself to attain proficiency in their application and the next drill can be devoted to a new subject. Of course, the man will make mistakes and will have to be corrected, but these corrections can be made coincident with other instruction.

During the greater part of the year training of National Guard cavalry must be carried on indoors. This is due not only to weather conditions, but also to the fact that the only time available is in the evening after working

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

hours, when artificial light is necessary. The restricted size of the areas available limit the instruction as a rule to squad drill only. Only in exceptionally large riding halls can platoon drill be carried on, and even then it is difficult to avoid the inculcation of bad habits of overcrowding, overriding, etc., due to restricted space. Yet persistent attempts are made by troop commanders to hold troop drills in a space where it can be mathematically demonstrated that the accurate movements prescribed in the Drill Regulations cannot be executed, and there have even been attempts made to hold squadron drills in such places. Time spent in such attempts is worse than wasted, as it can only result in giving men lessons in how to do things incorrectly, which they will have to unlearn at some future date.

Fortunately experience has shown that troops well grounded in squad drill during the winter will learn the platoon and troop movements in a surprisingly short time after they have gotten outdoors.

The amount of attention given of late years to equitation seems to me to be disproportionate to its importance. Equitation seems to be treated as an end in itself instead of a means to an end of producing good horsemen. No doubt extraordinary results in the way of horse training, etc., can be produced at the Fort Riley school, but any attempt to carry out such training in a National Guard outfit will take up so much time as to make it out of the question. In the regular service, with each man having his own individual horse and plenty of time to train it, some result may be accomplished, but even then the result appears disproportionate to the effort, and the time spent might be more profitably given to thorough training in scouting, map-making, and the more advanced training of a soldier, rather than in the mounted gymnastics of a riding master which will never be of use to him in active service. No doubt such training is part of cavalry officers' training, but to attempt to apply it to the enlisted personnel seems to be a waste of time.

This is especially true for the enlisted personnel of the National Guard branch of the service, not only on account of the limited time available, but due to the conditions under which the horses must be used. Where a horse has a different rider and sometimes two or three every drill period, and when these riders vary from the skilled horsemen to the raw recruits, it is hopeless to expect from such animals anything but the simplest obedience to the reins and legs. In most cases even this cannot be obtained. When after elaborate explanation and instruction in the use of the aids in executing, say, the turn on the forehand, the response to their application, no matter how correctly made, on the part of the horse, is a sullen grunt and a kick, the impression on the recruit cannot be particularly enlightening under such conditions. Time is too valuable to be spent on the refinements of equitation. Moreover, it may be borne in mind that there are many thousands of good riders and good horsemen who have never heard of the theory of equitation, but who are, however, none the less proficient in its practice.

## PRIZE ESSAY CONTEST

Lest I be misunderstood, I wish to explain that I am a thorough believer in the theory of equitation as taught at the Mounted Service School. I do, however, doubt the propriety of trying to teach this theory to the enlisted men. All that is possible in the time allowed is to teach the practice.

There is so much to teach and so little time to learn that every non-essential must be cut out. Unfortunately nobody seems to be agreed on what is essential and what is non-essential. If there could be issued to the Guard in some authoritative form a schedule of essentials in order of their importance, it would be of great assistance to the average troop commander and would tend to promote uniformity of instruction.

### Prize Essay Contest

THE Executive Council of the U. S. Cavalry Association announces a prize essay contest for which all members of the Cavalry Association are eligible. The subject may be chosen from the entire field of cavalry interest. It may be historical or original; it may deal with tactical employment of cavalry, training, cavalry weapons, the horse, or any matter closely connected with cavalry activities.

It must contain not less than 2,500 words nor more than 6,000 words. It may be accompanied by illustrations, which may be of any character. The essays will be judged by a committee of the Executive Council, which will consider interest, instructional value, original thought or research, and presentation (literary merit, readability, attractiveness).

All manuscripts submitted will be available for use if desired by the Editor and will be paid for in such case at the usual rates.

Prizes:

First, \$150; Second, \$75; Third, \$25

If, in the judgment of the committee of award, the manuscripts submitted do not have sufficient merit, it may withdraw any prizes from the competition.

Manuscripts should preferably be typed double space and in duplicate. They should be mailed so as to reach the Secretary not later than May 1, 1923. Each manuscript should be signed with a nom-de-plume; the nom-de-plume and writer's name and address should be submitted inclosed in a separate sealed envelope, without any superscription, attached to the manuscript. The author's name should not appear on the manuscript nor elsewhere, except in the sealed attached envelope.



## The Employment of Chemical Agents and The Cavalry Service

BY

Captain JOHN W. WEEKS, Second Cavalry

ON THE recent Limitation of Arms Conference held in Washington, D. C., a resolution was passed forbidding the employment of poisonous gases as a weapon of war between the signatory powers. It will, however, be noted that this resolution was passed as a rider to another very important resolution, with the remark by Mr. Balfour and other leading allied statesmen that it would in no way be considered as encroaching upon their field of experimentation for defense against chemical agents as a proper step in the direction of national safety. Thus, assuming that the recent treaty will be ratified and enforced, a minimum requirement for our safety demands that we not only prepare an adequate defense against agents used during the World War, but that an adequate defense be prepared against new developments whose use is at all possible or likely. It is of course obvious that such a plan must include real research for new and promising chemical agents, since defense against them is impossible without extensive knowledge of their existence and properties.

While the cavalry service need not be too much concerned with the subject of chemical agents, victories are achieved by the co-operation of all arms. A new weapon, like the employment of gases, which almost over night may leap into the foreground as a decisive means against unprepared or ill-prepared troops, calls for preparation on our part no less than on the part of other arms.

In the field of individual and collective protection for our personnel against chemical agents, the American gas mask and protective clothing are efficient and promising. However, the present design for the horse mask is practically the same as the one issued and used in 1915 on the western front and, considering the rapid strides made in the production of new agents and new forms of protection, is more or less obsolete. Cavalry troops may depend primarily upon mobility to escape gassed areas, but conditions are going to develop in battle, if chemical agents should be used, when the horse cannot be saved by mobility alone. Furthermore, the thousands of animals which were casualties of gas during the World War must keep us mindful that the slower, heavily loaded draft animals will need protection in modern warfare. Thus, while the need for protection of the horse may only indirectly touch the cavalry service, the question still remains as at the termination of the war: Would the development by the chemical warfare service of an efficient horse mask,

## CHEMICAL AGENTS AND THE CAVALRY

together with suitable protectors for the feet and legs against vesicants, be a valuable investment for the whole army? These need not be manufactured on a large scale, but the necessary experimental work, the design and plans for manufacture in case of necessity, would appear to be in keeping with a real policy of economy and adequate protection for our animals in the contingency of the employment of chemical agents in war.

While the information a cavalry officer should have in order to protect his soldiers and mounts against gas may be acquired in a short time, it should be attained so thoroughly and definitely as to be automatic. The essence of such training is not so much the mechanical knowledge necessary to employ individual and collective measures as it is the attainment of a full realization of the necessity for such employment. He should know the limitations of the gas mask, its adjustment, and the making of the proper inspections. He should be able to detect the different types of gases: persistent, represented by mustard type; nonpersistent, represented by phosgene. The lachrymators (tear gases) have no appreciable effect on the horse. Equally, if not more important, is the necessity of knowing how to destroy these agents, as well as their capacity and limitations in the production of casualties.

It will be noted that the casualties from chemical agents during the World War reached a total of 75,000, in spite of the fact that the means for adequate protection usually existed. This would seem to be a clear indication that while the principles of mechanical protection may be acquired in a short time, the necessity for their application, together with the proper respect for these agents, can be attained only after considerable training, and possibly limited experience in their employment. The offensive employment of chemical agents (assuming that the present treaty is not adhered to or that nations not in accord with the treaty are at war) is destined to play an important, if not revolutionary, rôle in the field of tactics, though possibly affecting the cavalry arm less than others. The utilization of the smoke screen to cover the mounted attack, withdrawal from action, river crossings, or as an element of strategy and tactics should prove to be a distinct asset. The employment of lachrymators on an enemy retreating into mountain defenses for safety will certainly force him out into the open again. On the other hand, we cannot but consider the uncomfortable mustard and its possibilities. In any war of great magnitude hard-pressed and retreating armies may cover strategic approaches to their rear and flanks with mustard. Certainly, it would take more than mustard to stay the progress of a cavalry command, and yet this is illustrative of the problems which the employment of chemical agents may present, and which we must consider.

## National Guard Jumping

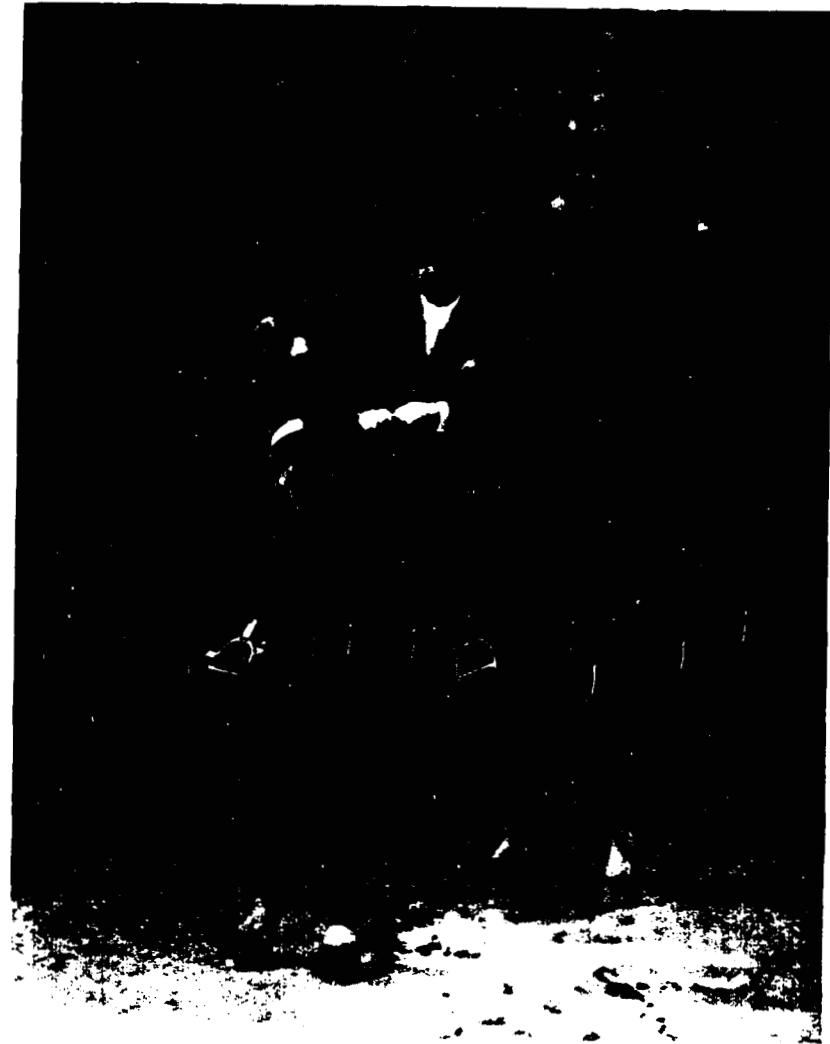
**C**OLONEL Paul L. Mitchell, commanding the 107th Cavalry, O. N. G., sends in the accompanying pictures with the following interesting information:

These three mounts were all entered by the 107th Cavalry in the Cincinnati Horse Show last November. Two of the horses, *Cyrus* and *Buddy*, are government mounts. *Jack of Spades* is owned by Lieutenant-Colonel Williard O. Lathrop, 107th Cavalry. All three horses were schooled in the Cavalry armory at Cincinnati by the officers and men of the Ohio Cavalry. As far as is known, none of these horses had any previous jumping experience.

The president of the Riding Club of Cincinnati, Coleman Avery, and the chairman of the Horse Show Committee, Herbert I. Channer, have certified to the CAVALRY JOURNAL that at the Cincinnati Riding Club Horse Show, held at the Riding Club of Cincinnati, November 23, 24, and 25, 1922, under the rules of the Association of American Horse Shows, *Jack of Spades*, owned by Lieutenant Colonel Willard O. Lathrop, 107th Cavalry, O. N. G., and ridden by Sergeant John Cassidy, 54th Brigade Headquarters Troop, Ohio Cavalry, tied for first place in the high jump with *Cyrus*, Troop Mount, Troop C, 107th Cavalry, ridden by Sergeant Louis P. Kolb, Troop C, both horses clearing the bars at six feet six inches. *Buddy*, Troop Mount, 54th Brigade Headquarters Troop, ridden by First Lieutenant John Frey, Headquarters, 107th Cavalry, took third prize in this event, clearing the bars at six feet three inches.

Colonel Mitchell writes:

"The performance at the Cincinnati Horse Show on the tan bark and under electric light I believe is very remarkable and may be of interest to your readers as an indication of what can be done with some of the government mounts if patiently schooled under the general system of training laid down by the Army Cavalry School. The government mounts were ridden without whips over these jumps."



"JACK OF SPADES"

Owned by Lieutenant-Colonel Willard O. Lathrop, 107th Cavalry, O. N. G.



"CYRUS"

Troop Mount, Troop C, 107th Cavalry. Ridden by Sergeant Louis P. Kolb, Troop C

"BUDDY"

Troop Mount, 54th Brigade Headquarters Troop. Ridden by First Lieutenant John Frey, Headquarters, 107th Cavalry

See page 204

## Editorial Comment

### A CAVALRY COMMUNITY CHEST

AT THE ANNUAL MEETING of the Association Major Wainwright presented an appeal for participation in the Annual Endurance Test Ride and urged that the Association become a sponsor for this annual event and share in the financial support. His proposition met with the approval of the meeting and \$500 was voted to be expended for this purpose. Whereupon it was proposed that the Association should extend its activities more generally. This proposal led to considerable discussion, in the course of which Major C. L. Scott addressed the meeting on the subject of the Remount Association, its objects, the character of its membership, and the work it was doing. The moment was opportune to furnish a lot of cavalymen with a clearer conception of what the sister association is aiming to do and actually accomplishing. One object of Major Scott's remarks was to point out that the Cavalry Association would not be acting wisely to try to encroach upon the proper field of the Remount Association, which was able, from its nature and the composition of its membership, to function more effectively in some respects than the Cavalry Association. Moreover, it should not be felt that the cavalry was taking any back seat in certain important affairs just because they did not come within the province of the Cavalry Association, since the Remount Association is officered by a number of former cavalry officers and that association counts many cavalry members and a number of active branches in cavalry posts.

One can hardly take exception to Major Scott's analysis of the situation, and it would evidently be an improper employment of Cavalry Association energy and funds to undertake activities which are already being satisfactorily prosecuted by its sister association.

Undoubtedly there are some activities that from time to time properly call for a measure of support from the Cavalry Branch as such. The Endurance Test Ride may be taken as a fair example. On the present horizon may be seen a need to render support to the Cavalry Rifle Team, to the Army Polo Team, to the movement to represent the army in the Olympic Games. Other occasions may arise which call for cavalry support. It is believed that the officers attending the annual meeting had some of these things in mind when they voted to extend the scope of the Cavalry Association's usefulness.

What are the ways and means?

The Cavalry Association funds have been accumulated through the publication of the CAVALRY JOURNAL and through its Book Department. They are not in excess of what is recognized as a safe capital to insure the continuance of the CAVALRY JOURNAL through any probable contingencies. It will be improper and unwise to draw largely upon this capital for exceptional purposes. Consequently, if exceptional activities are entered upon they should be separately financed. It has been proposed, and this suggestion comes from



"CYRUS"

Troop Mount, Troop C, 107th Cavalry. Ridden by Sergeant Louis P. Kolb, Troop C

"BUDDY"

Troop Mount, 54th Brigade Headquarters Troop. Ridden by First Lieutenant John Frey, Headquarters, 107th Cavalry

See page 204

## Editorial Comment

### A CAVALRY COMMUNITY CHEST

AT THE ANNUAL MEETING of the Association Major Wainwright presented an appeal for participation in the Annual Endurance Test Ride and urged that the Association become a sponsor for this annual event and share in the financial support. His proposition met with the approval of the meeting and \$500 was voted to be expended for this purpose. Whereupon it was proposed that the Association should extend its activities more generally. This proposal led to considerable discussion, in the course of which Major C. L. Scott addressed the meeting on the subject of the Remount Association, its objects, the character of its membership, and the work it was doing. The moment was opportune to furnish a lot of cavalymen with a clearer conception of what the sister association is aiming to do and actually accomplishing. One object of Major Scott's remarks was to point out that the Cavalry Association would not be acting wisely to try to encroach upon the proper field of the Remount Association, which was able, from its nature and the composition of its membership, to function more effectively in some respects than the Cavalry Association. Moreover, it should not be felt that the cavalry was taking any back seat in certain important affairs just because they did not come within the province of the Cavalry Association, since the Remount Association is officered by a number of former cavalry officers and that association counts many cavalry members and a number of active branches in cavalry posts.

One can hardly take exception to Major Scott's analysis of the situation, and it would evidently be an improper employment of Cavalry Association energy and funds to undertake activities which are already being satisfactorily prosecuted by its sister association.

Undoubtedly there are some activities that from time to time properly call for a measure of support from the Cavalry Branch as such. The Endurance Test Ride may be taken as a fair example. On the present horizon may be seen a need to render support to the Cavalry Rifle Team, to the Army Polo Team, to the movement to represent the army in the Olympic Games. Other occasions may arise which call for cavalry support. It is believed that the officers attending the annual meeting had some of these things in mind when they voted to extend the scope of the Cavalry Association's usefulness.

What are the ways and means?

The Cavalry Association funds have been accumulated through the publication of the CAVALRY JOURNAL and through its Book Department. They are not in excess of what is recognized as a safe capital to insure the continuance of the CAVALRY JOURNAL through any probable contingencies. It will be improper and unwise to draw largely upon this capital for exceptional purposes. Consequently, if exceptional activities are entered upon they should be separately financed. It has been proposed, and this suggestion comes from

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

several and various sources, that a Cavalry Fund be established for such purposes, such fund to be separate from the present Cavalry Association funds and to be under the administration of the Executive Council of the Association. This fund might be accumulated in various ways. It is probable that the most practicable is for regiments to make annual contributions, acquired so far as possible from the proceeds of athletic and social events, and that detached officers contribute annually. From the Regular and National Guard regiments and 3,700 Cavalry officers, including Regular officers, National Guard and Reserve officers, it should be possible to raise \$5,000 each year.

Any objection made to the adoption of such a program will be based principally upon two considerations, the first being the local needs of regiments, the second being the extent to which demands are already being made upon officers. Moreover, another factor is bound to be considered in connection with such a matter, viz.: the amount of the financial burden which may be borne by the adjacent civil community.

The local needs, manifestly of high importance, are fully appreciated. They comprise chiefly: Social events, field days for which prizes and trophies are provided, polo expenses (including often a trip for the team), the charitable organizations which have local branches, a small regimental fund for a few particular purposes. These things mostly have a very intimate connection with the life of the military community and in large part supply its entertainment and pleasure. They are, it is true, wherever possible, supported, at least in part, by the financial assistance of the adjacent civil community. Wherever this is possible and proper, the organization so situated is to be congratulated upon its fortunate station. Unfortunately, the belief seems to be developing that this is the *normal* source of support for such needs. Emphatically, it is not. These needs are normal to every community, whether civil or military. Let us give point to this statement by remarking that the officer on detached service meets these same needs from his own pocket. They are represented by his theater and concert tickets, his various contributions for social and charitable purposes, his country-club dues and expenses, etc. These needs, let it be repeated, are normal for every community and are customarily defrayed from the pocket. We all should expect to have to pay something for our entertainment and our sport, and if we do not, then we prize them less. And may we not forget to be charitable!

Incidentally, let it be noted that the amount of money poured monthly into the old Regimental Club by its members would have supported all these needs adequately. These present needs supplant that moribund institution and are entitled to the support that it formerly claimed.

The local needs can surely be satisfied, regardless of what outside assistance is available, and still leave it possible for every aggregation of officers and every individual officer to afford some support—relatively very small—to the furtherance of projects properly engaging the interest of their profession and branch of the service, whereby officers properly identify themselves with such

## EDITORIAL COMMENT

interests. Evidently such demands must be such as can be cheerfully accepted as primary obligations to be met as unquestioningly as other such obligations and not regarded in the light of accidental and regrettable encroachments and annoyances. To this end, the responsibility will be squarely upon the administrators of such a fund to judge nicely between what are legitimate and proper demands, the satisfaction of which will redound to the profit of the cavalry as a whole, and what are not.

In considering the establishing of such a fund it must be remembered that a reasonable measure of participation may confidently be looked for from the National Guard and Reserve components. The activities which such a fund will help to support are not for the profit of the Regular Army alone but for the Cavalry of the Army of the United States, and it is to be expected that as the National Guard and Reserve components become more effectively developed they will be able to participate more and more in such activities.

Now, this need for a general Cavalry Fund receives special emphasis at just this time from the fact that cavalry regiments are being approached—to our knowledge—for support to the Army Polo Team and for support toward an Olympic Team. Here is an example of two demands coming at the same time from different sources. Each regiment has to consider (from the best facts available) whether either merits a measure of support. It must determine the proportion in which the support is to be donated to each, and in so deciding it needs to know, not only what its resources are, but what will be the extent of the outside demand made upon it. This cannot be determined. Is it not apparent that it would be better to have these outside demands, made upon the cavalry as a branch, considered by a central agency which is in a position to estimate the resources available and the extent of the demands to come upon it?

It should not be thought that such a Cavalry Fund will create new demands to any great extent. Under the careful supervision of the Executive Council—a representative group of cavalymen—it will be much less likely to create new demands than to ascertain the wisest apportionment of the same old resources. This may be our salvation against the present tendency toward an ever-increasing variety of demands upon our pockets. Regiments receiving new calls upon their funds can properly refer them to the Executive Council for consideration and action.

In the main, then, the present proposal is not to create new burdens, but to administer the old burdens more sanely.

A short time ago the city of San Francisco, tired of continual "Tag days," decided to establish a Community Chest, from which all charitable and similar demands should be met. Other cities are now considering a similar project. Why not a Cavalry Community Chest?

"THE LIBRARIAN of the U. S. Military Academy, West Point, has consistently been endeavoring to obtain the writings of graduates for the library. This endeavor would be greatly facilitated if graduates would send copies of their writings to her."

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

### THE ART OF COMMAND

IT IS A GOOD OMEN for the army that command is becoming recognized as of first importance among the qualities of the successful soldier. A step in the right direction was taken when the name of the General Service Schools at Fort Leavenworth was changed to Command and General Staff School, thus giving the art of command its proper place. This recognition is bearing good fruit, for we find officers seeking duty with troops in order that they may acquire leadership—an essential quality of command, in the surest, best, and most practical manner, that is—by actually handling men. By the same token, it is becoming recognized that the highest type of officer should be placed in command of units, so that these units may become organs of instruction, capable of fitting officers to perform the various classes of detached service, such as duty with National Guard, Organized Reserves, R. O. T. C., C. M. T. C., etc., in an acceptable and satisfactory manner. In the same way that the Cavalry School and the Cavalry Division are recognized as schools of instruction in their respective spheres, it should also be recognized that every regiment, squadron, and troop are likewise potential schools of instruction, with definite missions to perform along similar lines, and that it therefore becomes of greatest importance that they be commanded by highly efficient officers. In these days of such varied duties, which may require officers to be detached from their organizations more than half of the time, it behooves them all to seek to qualify themselves in all respects for these duties, not only by following carefully the courses in the unit and service schools, but by perfecting themselves in the most practical manner while on duty with troops in that highest of all military functions—the art of command.

### FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS AVAILABLE

FOR THE BENEFIT of such military students who are able to make use of foreign journals, it is announced that the CAVALRY JOURNAL receives in exchange the cavalry reviews of several foreign countries and some other valuable foreign military periodicals. Some of these are kept in the Cavalry Association Library. Others are available upon call for the use of any member who may desire them. Those that it is felt desirable to preserve in the Cavalry Association Library will be loaned to members. In addition to those briefly reviewed from time to time in the CAVALRY JOURNAL, military journals from Spain, Czechoslovakia, Mexico, Argentine, Uruguay, the Netherlands, and Germany are available.

### REGIMENTAL COATS OF ARMS

ALL THE ACTIVE REGIMENTS have presented copies of their new coats of arms to the office of the Chief of Cavalry. Those executed and hung at this date are of the 1st, 4th, 5th, 6th, 7th, 10th, 11th, 12th, 13th, and 14th. In addition, the 11th has offered the coat of arms of its inactive associate, the 17th, and the 13th of its inactive associate, the 15th. These coats of arms, in their striking colors and designs, make a handsome exhibit.

## EDITORIAL COMMENT

### NEED FOR CO-ORDINATION IN NATIONAL GUARD TRAINING

SOME INTERESTING PHASES of National Guard cavalry training are presented in Colonel Thayer's paper published in this number. A thoughtful consideration of the matter will make it apparent that there is a need for co-ordination and standardization of such training, perhaps beyond the point to which the War Department has already gone in the matter. Colonel Thayer gives further point to this problem in the following remarks:

"An exact case in point has just arisen in this organization. The Headquarters Troop, as you know, is composed almost entirely of specialists. I ordered that their training be directed more toward lines of individual proficiency rather than to platoon and troop drills, as it is not likely that they will be maneuvered in such formations.

"The Federal inspector, however, on his recent inspection, criticised them very severely for not being proficient in just such matters.

"With the short time available for training, if we exclude the training of the specialists, of which this organization is almost entirely composed, for the benefit of close-order drill, the specialists' training is sure to be unsatisfactory.

"Now, next year we are likely to have an inspector who will say that specialists' training is by far the most important, and then the troop will be criticised again for not paying more attention to this and less to the close-order drill.

"It is all very well, in the regular service, to say that men should be proficient in everything, but with the short time available in the Guard, this simply cannot be done."

There is no disposition evident in the above comment to find trifling faults in present methods, which are particularly in a developing stage. The whole relation between the federalized militia and the War Department agencies which make it proper to refer now to a National Guard are born of yesterday and are the business of today. The methods and standards of an earlier period must inevitably give way to better. The matter here presented may be one instance in which the co-ordinating agencies in the War Department have not yet succeeded in improving an earlier functioning of more disconnected supervision. If this is the case, the free expression of opinion by experienced officers will soon make apparent the degree of the fault, and correction will probably follow.

### HUNT CLUBS AND RESERVE CAVALRY

AT THE ANNUAL MEETING of the American Foxhound Club it was the sense of the members present that the club should pledge its support to the provisions of the National Defense Act of June 4, 1920.

Furthermore, it was unanimously voted to urge upon all members of hunt clubs who may be eligible not only to lend their moral support to said act, but also to take an active part in the development of the Army of the United States by becoming members of units of the Organized Reserve Cavalry, thereby performing a patriotic citizen's duty to the Government of the United States.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

At the meeting of February 13, in New York City, the following resolution was passed:

WHEREAS, for the first time in its history, our country has adopted a definite military policy in the existing National Defense Act, we heartily approve of the underlying principles of this act, by which the Regular Army, National Guard, and Reserve Corps are co-ordinated into a harmonious defensive force; and

WHEREAS the National Defense Act provides for six reserve cavalry divisions; now, therefore, be it

*Resolved*, That the American Foxhound Club recommends and urges that every hunt club appoint a cavalry committee for liaison with the Reserve Cavalry Divisions; and be it further

*Resolved*, That the American Foxhound Club earnestly urges all members of the hunt clubs who may be eligible not only to lend their moral support to said act, but also to take an active part in the development of the Army of the United States and assist in every way possible the organization and proper training of the six Reserve Cavalry Divisions.

This action of the American Foxhound Club inaugurates a new movement to associate the horsemen and riders of the country with the Cavalry Reserve. The possible value of this movement is perceived when one appreciates the high caliber of the majority of the members of hunt clubs and considers further that *here are horses*. Cavalry without horses is about as conceivable as the Swiss marines. So every effort must be made to provide our reserve cavalry with an adequate number of horses for their instruction. But here are horses. It only needs to persuade the hunt clubs of the country of their duty and opportunity to participate in the National Defense program.

### SUBSCRIPTIONS TO THE "CAVALRY JOURNAL"

Every officer and Troop of the 3d Cavalry and 12th Cavalry is a paid-up subscriber to the CAVALRY JOURNAL. This is due to the faithful efforts of Captain Charles S. Miller, 12th Cavalry, and Captain Charles Wharton, 3d Cavalry. Several other regiments have only two or three checks to send in to have the same distinction. We hope they will do so at an early date, in order that the announcement may be made in the July number. It is pleasing to note that at this time, due to the unremitting labor of the regimental and other representatives in the field, the JOURNAL has a higher paid-up subscription list than at any other time in its history. Let us all strive to keep the figures where they are. With a little more co-operation from a few units, we can put them higher.

### "CAVALRY JOURNAL" MAILING SERVICE

DESPITE NUMEROUS AVOWALS of the desire on the part of the JOURNAL management to do everything possible to insure the prompt and proper delivery to subscribers, there are some failures of delivery and evidence of some doubt as to the attitude of the JOURNAL management with regard to the matter. It is desired to clear this up.

## EDITORIAL COMMENT

The attitude of the management can be stated very briefly. It is desirous of doing everything possible to insure prompt and proper delivery. In the case of Reserve and National Guard Officer subscribers, it has to rely principally upon notification of changes of address. In the case of regular officers, it is greatly assisted by the Army Directory and other lists, which are supposed to be kept posted up to date. Before the publication of each number of the JOURNAL the mailing list is carefully examined and checked up with all available information. Subscribers will assist in this respect if they will notify the JOURNAL promptly of changes of address.

The JOURNAL cannot be charged with failure of service in cases of subscribers who fail to renew their subscriptions; nor can it be properly charged with the responsibility of delivery when other possible causes of non-delivery are operative. Regardless of the cause of non-receipt of the JOURNAL, however, the management urges that subscribers who fail to receive their copies notify the JOURNAL office promptly. Such communications are always given careful attention. In the first place, if received within a few months of the date of mailing, before the edition is practically exhausted, another copy is sent gratis. Moreover, every such case is investigated, to determine if the mailing list or methods of mailing were at fault.

### SUBSCRIPTION RENEWALS THROUGH HEADQUARTERS SERVICE

ANOTHER COMMENT that interests us is to the effect that some dissatisfaction has been expressed with regard to the methods employed of obtaining subscription renewals through the service of a JOURNAL representative at regimental or other headquarters. It is desired to explain that this service is not resorted to in place of individual communication with subscribers, much as such a procedure would relieve the clerical burden upon the JOURNAL office. When a subscription is due to expire, the subscriber is sent a first notice *direct*, three months before the actual expiration. If that does not bring in a renewal, a second notice is sent *direct* one month later—still two months before the actual expiration. If necessary, a third notice may be sent. These notices go direct to the latest address given on the JOURNAL mailing list or in the Army Directory. If they are not delivered, they are returned by the postal service, so that a further attempt can be made to locate the subscriber. One month before the actual expiration (after the sending of two notices *direct*), the proper headquarters is notified, so that the JOURNAL representative in the field can assist in securing a continuance of the subscription. The solicitation of renewals through representatives in the field is only supplementary to the efforts of the management to reach its subscribers directly. Prompt response from subscribers will lighten the task of the several cavalry headquarters, which are all interested in the continued welfare of the Cavalry Association and in the CAVALRY JOURNAL. Members of the Association should not deliberately throw this burden upon their headquarters, and it is therefore urged that they send renewals promptly to the JOURNAL office direct.



## Topics of the Day

### THE ENDURANCE TEST RIDE

NOW THAT THE U. S. Cavalry Association has become a sponsor for this annual event, it will be in order to publish for the benefit of its members some pertinent information about this project.

The other sponsors are the American Remount Association, the Arabian Horse Club of America, the Horse Association of America, the Morgan Horse Club, the National Steeplechase and Hunt Association, the Thoroughbred Endurance Test Club of Kentucky, the U. S. Department of Agriculture, W. R. Brown, Berlin, N. H., and A. W. Harris, Chicago, Illinois. The officials are a chairman, Wayne Dinsmore, Union Stock Yards, Chicago, Ill., and a secretary and treasurer, C. C. Stillman, 3 East 44th Street, New York City. The officials of the ride include three judges, official recorder, weigher, veterinarian, farrier, watchman, route master, and assistant. The rides are held annually under the direction and management of a Board of Sponsors made up of one representative from each of the sponsors. Their object is to stimulate general interest in the breeding and use of good saddle horses of a general military type, possessed of stamina and hardiness and at the same time having the necessary quality to render them suitable for use in the mounted service of the United States. In particular, it is desired—

- (a) To demonstrate the value of type and soundness and the proper selection of horses for a long, difficult ride;
- (b) To learn and demonstrate the proper method of training and conditioning horses for a long, severe test;
- (c) To encourage horsemanship in long-distance rides;
- (d) To learn and demonstrate the best methods of caring for horses during and after long, severe work without the aid of artificial methods or stimulants.

### ELIGIBILITY

Entrance fee shall be \$10 for each horse entered, and must be sent, with entry blank duly filled out, to Mr. C. C. Stillman, Secretary of the Board of Sponsors, 3 East 44th Street, New York City, thirty days before the start of the ride. Post entries will be allowed, but the fee for post entries will be \$25. No rider will be allowed to start unless his entrance fee has been paid. Every horse entering the ride must fall within the following classes:

A. Pure-bred: A pure-bred is one which is either duly registered in a recognized studbook or concerning which evidence establishing his pure-breeding is furnished to the satisfaction of the judges.

B. Cross-bred: A cross-bred is one the sire of which is a pure-bred duly registered in a recognized studbook of one breed, whereas the dam is a pure-bred

### TOPICS OF THE DAY

duly registered in a recognized studbook of a different breed; or one concerning which evidence satisfactory to the judges is furnished establishing the fact that his sire and dam are of different pure breeds.

C. Grade: A grade is a horse of which either the sire or the dam is pure-bred, duly registered in a recognized studbook of some breed, or concerning which evidence satisfactory to the judges is furnished establishing the fact that said sire or dam is a pure-bred of such breed, whereas the other dam or sire is of unknown breeding or not registered, as the case may be.

Any horse entered must have attained at least five years of age—that is, show a five-year-old mouth. Entries are open to stallions, mares, or geldings. Entries must be made on blanks provided for that purpose for complete answers to all questions thereon. Entries must be filed with C. C. Stillman, secretary of the Board of Sponsors, 3 East 44th Street, New York City, thirty days before the start of the ride.

A horse or rider may be disqualified at any time by the judges, either for violation of one or more of the conditions or because, in the opinion of the judges, the contesting horse's condition is such as to render it cruel or inadvisable to permit him to proceed further. All fees are forfeited upon disqualification of horse or rider at any time after he is placed under the jurisdiction of the judges for the ride. Horses disqualified must fall out of the ride at the point of disqualification and may continue on the course only so far as is necessary for shipment.

The judges shall determine the relative standing of all horses by totaling their scores for condition and speed, and will announce the awards.

The services of a farrier may be secured by any contestant at any time and will be given free of charge. Contestants may have the shoes of their horses replaced or reset at their option. Bar shoes are permissible; also three-quarter shoes, clips, toe or heel calks, or both. Pads are not permissible. No weight limits are prescribed for shoes, nor is there any limitation as to nails. Contestants may do their own farriery. It is permissible for contestants to bring their own farriers or they may obtain the services of a resident farrier *en route*, in emergency.

Watchmen guard the stables between 8:00 p. m. and 5:00 a. m. and see that there is no interference with any contestant's horse during this time. All persons are excluded from the stables between 8:00 p. m. and 5:00 a. m., except as authorized by the judges.

### THE COURSE

The course will be laid out by the route master and his assistant. The total distance will be approximately 300 miles, to be covered at the rate of about 60 miles per day for five consecutive days, regardless of the weather. The distance for any day may be slightly more or less than 60 miles, depending on local conditions. The course will be plainly marked to include numbering the miles from one to sixty for each day. All contestants will follow the prescribed course.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Stabling, including facilities for feeding and watering, will be provided by the management.

Transportation will be provided for the baggage of riders and grooms between night stations. Grooming kits and other horse equipment used by riders and grooms must be carried on the horse.

Awards are made on a basis of 60 per cent for condition and 40 per cent for speed.

The minimum time permitted on any day is 9 hours. The maximum time allowed on any day is 11 hours. The maximum time allowed for the entire ride of five days is 50 hours.

Each rider may have one groom to assist in the care of his mount at night stations, and the rider is responsible for everything done by the grooms. On the road the rider is required to care for his own mount, except such small aid as holding his horse, assistance in saddling, etc., which he may receive. Between 8 p. m. and 5 a. m. riders and grooms are not allowed in the stables. The use of halters, saddle cloths, blankets, brushes, curry-combs, etc., is permitted, provided they have been carried on the horse. Hand-rubbing and the use of water at ordinary temperatures are permitted, but salves, liniments, cottons, bandages, etc., are forbidden.

### FORAGE AND FEEDING

Oats, bran, hay, and salt will be provided for all horses, and no other feed will be permitted except grazing. The maximum daily allowance of grain is 14 pounds; of hay, as desired. The judges will note the quantities of forage used and make official record of any abnormal consumption of feed as compared to weight of horse. Three feeds daily will be provided for each horse—one at the start, one at the midday halt, and one at the finish. Uneaten forage shall not be removed from the stall, except as authorized by the judges. Each contestant shall submit daily to the weigher his requisition for forage for the following day. Contestants are required to pay the treasurer before the start the estimated cost of forage and stabling for the whole ride.

### WEIGHT

Each horse shall carry a minimum of 225 pounds, made up of the stripped weight of the rider (live weight) and everything else that he carries (dead weight) except the bridle and the halter, if the latter is worn on the horse's head. If the stripped rider weighs 155 pounds or less, the horse carries a minimum of 225 pounds. If the stripped rider weighs more than 155 pounds, the horse carries a minimum of 225 pounds plus one pound dead weight for every 2 pounds live weight in excess of 155 pounds.

### PRIZES

Prizes will be awarded as follows:

First prize, \$600, the Mounted Service Cup, Blue Ribbon and Arabian Horse Club Medal.

## TOPICS OF THE DAY

Second prize, \$400, Red Ribbon.

Fourth prize, \$200, White Ribbon.

Third prize, \$300, Yellow Ribbon.

Fifth prize, \$150, Gray Ribbon.

Sixth prize, \$100, Black and White Ribbon.

The Mounted Service Cup may be held by any single first-prize winner for but one year, after which it must be surrendered by him to the judges of the ride for the ensuing year, to be again contested for; this process to continue until the cup shall have been won three times by a horse or horses which are the *bona fide* property of a contesting owner, after which it shall become the unconditional property of the owner.

The 1923 Endurance Ride will be held October 15-20 at Avon, N. Y.

### ARMY TEAM TO COMPETE AT FOREIGN HORSE SHOWS

In the January number mention was made of the steps taken up to that time to arrange for sending an Army Team to the International Horse Show, Olympia, London, and to the Olympic Games in 1924. The plans are now well along.

In order to set up a definite organization for handling this work, and in order also that a concrete plan might be submitted to the Secretary of War and the Chief of Staff for approval and acceptance, the chairman of the Sports and Competitions Committee of the American Remount Association designated Mr. R. H. Williams, Jr., New York City, and Mr. Pierre Lorillard, Jr., Tuxedo Park, N. Y., as a committee of two, with full powers to organize a horse-show committee and to secure the approval and co-operation of the War Department of a definite plan of action.

The two gentlemen named have received assurance from the Secretary of War and the Chief of Staff that the War Department will be glad to co-operate with the committee in every way possible, and at their request the department has authorized three officers to assist the committee in its work, as follows:

Major John A. Barry, as the Cavalry representative; Major C. P. George, as the Field Artillery representative; Major C. L. Scott, as the representative of the Remount Service, Q. M. C.

The Special Army Horse Show Committee met in Washington on January 3 and organized as follows: Chairman, R. H. Williams, Jr., 1 Broadway, New York City; Secretary-Treasurer, Pierre Lorillard, Jr., Tuxedo Park, N. Y.; Major John A. Barry, Major C. P. George, and Major C. L. Scott.

Major John A. Barry was selected by the committee as Captain of the Army Horse Show Team, to take active charge between June 1 and July 1, 1923. This action was approved by the Chief of Staff.

The committee further decided that the team would be trained at Fort Myer, Va., owing to superior facilities for training there. This action was also approved by the Chief of Staff.

The committee appointed the following committee for the purchase of horses, all of whom have accepted: Robert E. Strawbridge, J. Watson Webb, F. S. Von Stade, Major L. A. Beard, Major John A. Barry.

### THE NEW BOAT-TAIL BULLET

THE ORDNANCE DEPARTMENT is conducting experiments with a new rifle bullet, called the boat-tail bullet, which appears to have some remarkable properties. The tests of this new ammunition are not yet concluded and the bullet is, therefore, not to be regarded as in a perfected state. The indications afforded by the tests thus far, however, are so extraordinary as to make it already worth while to take tactical consideration of the possibilities of long-range fire far in excess of any heretofore conceived.

The maximum range of the present service ammunition is 3,450 yards. The new bullet has developed a range nearly half again greater. This increase is due to a better design of bullet and consequent increase in the ballistic coefficient. The latter factor may be popularly expressed as the relative ability of a bullet to "buck the wind." Moreover, a change in the jacket material has been made from cupronickel to gilding metal, which appears to eliminate the former difficulty with metal fouling. This new boat-tail bullet has itself been exceeded in range by at least 1,000 yards by the model 1919 boat-tail bullet, modeled after the Swiss. The model being experimented with at present is preferred, however, because of its very great accuracy, which appears to be about twice that of the present service ammunition. Its muzzle velocity and penetration are about the same as with the present bullet.

The increased value of the new boat-tail bullet over the present service ball ammunition is apparent when it is stated that not only is the maximum range increased from 3,450 to over 4,800 yards, but the trajectory is so flattened that the ordinate at 600 yards becomes 133 inches instead of 182 inches and the danger space is increased by 30 per cent.

When it is remembered that it is not the intention to adopt this bullet, but to develop a bullet which the present experiments tend to show will greatly exceed its properties, the significance of the Ordnance Department's progress in this direction must become of widespread military interest. It will be interesting to speculate upon the effect of longer range, flatter trajectory, and greater accuracy on machine-gun fire tactics and on cavalry tactics.

### THE ARMY IN GALLERY PRACTICE MATCHES

THE 17TH INFANTRY, stationed at Fort Crook, Nebraska, entered four teams in the Military Company Team Championship Matches conducted under the auspices of the National Rifle Association of America in connection with the annual gallery championship of the association.

Company B of the 17th entered two teams. Team No. 1 finished in first place, with a score of 3,665, and gets silver medals. Team No. 2 finished third, with a total of 3,552, and gets bronze medals. Company A finished between the two Company B teams, with a score of 3,555, and gets the other set of bronze medals. The Service Company of the 17th turned in a total of 3,405, which landed them easily in fourth place. Team No. 3, Company

B, also gets a set of bronze medals indicative of the regimental championship for the gallery season of 1923.

This is the first year that the army has actively taken a part in the annual gallery competitions, which have become an important part of the yearly program of the National Rifle Association. The interest displayed was very encouraging, in view of the short notice, which allowed only a short time for teams to be gotten together. Inasmuch as there has been no time for preliminary team practice with the gallery rifle, the showing made by all of the teams is excellent.

The 8th Infantry, on duty at Coblenz, had a team entered, but of course was unable to compete, while unforeseen difficulties in connection with the operation of their gallery prevented the seven teams entered by the 202d Artillery, Illinois National Guard, from firing.

Other regimental championships which were decided during the course of the matches go to Company C of the 13th Infantry, Company C of the 7th Infantry, and Troop B, 105th Cavalry, Wisconsin National Guard. Under the conditions of the matches, any regiment entering three or more teams was entitled to a set of regimental championship medals for the high team from that regiment.

It is to be expected that the official recognition of the .22 caliber Springfield as a splendid auxiliary for the training of rifle marksmen by the army will make the matches when they are held next year much more generously patronized.

There will be no military matches this year in connection with the outdoor small-bore program of the National Rifle Association, but men in the service desiring to compete may obtain complete details relative to the program and conditions by getting in touch with the secretary of the National Rifle Association, 1108 Woodward Building, Washington, D. C.

### THE NEW CAVALRY REGIMENT

The Organization of the 26th Cavalry (P. S.)

By Lieutenant Colonel Selwyn D. Smith, Cavalry, 26th Cavalry (P. S.)

ON OCTOBER 1, 1922, there was organized at Camp Stotsenburg, Pampanga, Philippine Islands, the first complete regiment of native cavalry in the history of our army. As the regiment is more or less of an experiment, the methods and results obtained in the first three months may be of interest.

In the spring of 1922, when the withdrawal of the 9th Cavalry was under consideration, the question of what regiment should replace it naturally brought the organization of a native cavalry regiment to the front. It was generally accepted that the Filipino did not like our big American horses, and the mounting of them on smaller Australian horses, or even native ponies, was considered. Some of us even thought that the men were not large enough to properly ride our horses or use our sabers.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

In the latter part of July word was received that the 9th Cavalry would return to the United States early in October, and that a new regiment, to be known as the 26th Cavalry, Philippine Scouts, would be formed from the enlisted personnel of the 25th Field Artillery (P. S.), a regiment which would, on that day, be one year old. A large number of the personnel had seen some service, mostly in the infantry, except for one year in the field artillery. As is well known, the scouts were always excellent soldiers in discipline, energy, aptitude, and interest.

On August 1 about 175 selected men of the 25th Field Artillery started on a recruit course of instruction, based on Cavalry Memorandum No. 4, War Department, 1921. Cavalry officers, with one 9th Cavalry non-commissioned officer for every eight scouts, were used as instructors. The same scouts were not always available, and the squad finally was reduced to about 100 men. Early in September instruction was stopped because the men were not available. Although the instruction was much interrupted, many of the essentials of the cavalry drill were taught the scouts at this time; so that when the Filipino non-commissioned officers were thrown on their own resources, shortly after October 1, they were able to function in a most satisfactory manner.

On October 1 the regiment was formally organized by Colonel Edward Anderson. Complete battery units were transferred to one troop. Minor adjustments were made afterwards. The training was begun with vigor. It was known that the annual Department Staff Problem would be held in January and tactical inspections and maneuvers in February; so a three months' course of training was planned with this in view.

In general, October was devoted to the mechanism of the drill, horsemanship, the use of the arms, mounted, and care of horses and equipment. The first part of November was devoted to troop training, and the latter part of the month to squadron training. Effort was made to perfect the October work, and, in addition, minor tactics and field-work were taken up. December work, until Christmas vacation, included individual, squadron, and regimental instruction, the same subjects being covered as in November. At all times the work of the Headquarters Troop, Squadron Headquarters Detachments, Service Troop, and Machine-Gun Troop was carried on in their specialties, but in a way so as not to interfere with the individual cavalry instruction. The interest taken by both officers and men was keen, and the progress made each week was most satisfactory.

On November 13 the regiment was reviewed and inspected by the Department Commander, and the showing made was most creditable.

Athletics and horse-show work was not neglected. Two combination field meets and transportation shows were held during the quarter. The regiment lost the first by a small margin and won the second, but also by a small margin, from their rival, an older regiment, the 24th Field Artillery (P. S.), showing that the regiment "can do" in all lines of work.

## TOPICS OF THE DAY

On December 18 the regiment gave a complimentary parade to the Archbishop of Manila. In passing in review at the trot and gallop, the lines were perfect.

It is a delight to see our small and alert little soldiers running at heads in perfect form, doing monkey drill on large horses, and taking jumps with reckless abandon and enjoyment. I actually saw one little fellow, who had a large horse and could not get his foot in the stirrup, grab the stirrup strap with his left hand and throw himself into the saddle with perfect ease, and then insert his foot, not according to C. D. R., but object accomplished.

The stables and horses are the special pride of the men, and it is indeed a pleasure to go along the picket lines and see well-groomed, clipped, and conditioned animals in every troop. Nothing is forgotten, not even to dragging the corrals daily.

The motto, "Duty First," has certainly been lived up to during the first three months, and there is no doubt but that the 26th Cavalry (P. S.) will soon be numbered among our best cavalry regiments; and, further, those who have the good fortune to serve with it will always remember those years as among the most satisfactory and pleasant of their army careers.

---

THE MAJOR at a certain recruit depot was approached one day by a man who had obviously been in the service only long enough to draw his uniform. The rookie failed to salute, but the major, a kindly man in spite of twenty years of army life, overlooked it.

The buck gazed with respectful awe at the string of campaign ribbons across the major's broad chest.

"Gosh!" he remarked, "you must be an old-timer."

"Yes," answered the major pleasantly, "I am."

"Say," began the buck cordially in a whisper, "do you ever drink anything?"

The major was truthful as well as kindly. He admitted that once in a while he took a small nip, and then turned away, as his new-found acquaintance was proving embarrassing.

"Wait," said the hospitable rookie, "I got some here."

This was too much for a kindly disposed major.

"Corporal of the guard!" he bawled.

"Aw," protested the buck, "don't call your friends; there's only enough for two."—*Enquirer-Sun*.

## New Books Reviewed

**HISTORY OF THE GREAT WAR. Based on Official Documents. France and Belgium, 1914.**  
Compiled by Brigadier General J. E. Edmonds. Macmillan & Co., 1922. 543 pages,  
8 sketches. (Price, \$8.00.)

This volume is the first book from British sources which has been published on the war which bears the stamp "official." It impresses one as being remarkably complete and accurate. This present volume covers only the first phase of the operations on the Western Front: the mobilization, the arrival of the British Expeditionary Force in France and the advance into Belgium, the Battle of Mons, the retreat to the Seine, the Battle of the Marne, the Aisne, and the Race to the Sea. It is presumed that the compilers will issue other volumes covering the subsequent operations. No subsequent volume, however, will afford such entertaining reading as this, nor, indeed, as instructive and useful. There is a dreadful monotony about much of the war of the trenches, whereas the first few months of movement and changing fortunes will constitute a rich chapter of military history.

This work is the result of the co-operative labors of the staff, past and present, of the Historical Section, Military Branch, of the Committee of Imperial Defense. It is based upon British official records and upon available French and German sources. The war diaries of every staff and unit engaged, with their voluminous appendices of orders, intelligence, telegrams, messages, etc., have been gone through, and this labor has been supplemented by examination of private diaries. Moreover, every chapter is followed by a digest of German Reports bearing on the operations described.

The history is told in such detail that the marches and actions of every unit, down to the squadron and battalion and battery, can be followed through from day to day; yet the salient features of the operations are made to stand out in sufficiently striking fashion. With a good map and some push-pins, one can reconstruct this period of the war.

Of course, this book is an invaluable historical source for cavalrymen. Here are to be found descriptions of the stout cavalry work and costly charges at Elonges, the affair at Cerisy, the explanation of the alleged tardiness of the British Army to join in the Marne Battle, and lots of other interesting features. But the peculiar merit of the work consists in the restored fabric of events, into which all these incidents fit in their true proportions and relative value. If a squadron is mentioned as holding a river crossing, the mind at the same time contains a true picture of the laborious retreat of long, mud-bespattered columns which this squadron is covering. The strategic value and employment of cavalry becomes more apparent, and the co-operation with other arms becomes a matter of earnest consideration to the reader.

The book is intensely interesting to the most casual reader, but its full value will only be perceived by one who sits down with book and maps and reconstructs the operations as they are described. The sketches in the book are hardly adequate for this purpose, and a case of maps specially prepared for this work may be obtained. (Price of map volume, \$10.50.) It is believed, however, that most readers and students of this book will be able to manage very well with such maps as they already have or can easily procure.

## NEW BOOKS REVIEWED

**TACTICAL PRINCIPLES AND DECISIONS. General Service Schools, 1923. Four volumes and maps, cloth. (Price, \$8.00.)**

This text-book, which appeared in 1920, is now issued in revised form, and an examination of the four volumes constituting the present edition discloses great improvement in many respects. The former text has evidently been used as a basis, and in some sections the old text is still recognizable, sentence for sentence and paragraph for paragraph, with certain improvements in phraseology. In most chapters, however, a fresh and more logical arrangement has been made and the text is considerably altered. One minor subject seems to be added to those treated in the earlier edition, viz, "Night Operations."

The publication of this edition in five volumes (the fifth volume, not yet published, devoted to cavalry), in addition to a volume of maps, is of questionable advantage. It could have been as well presented probably in a smaller number of volumes, which might have lowered a very little the cost of this rather expensive textbook. The map case contains a larger and better collection of maps than was furnished with the earlier edition.

The new work has a distinctly more positive and authoritative tone. This is evidently the natural consequence of the change in method of preparation of the problems and instructional matter at the Command and General Staff School. The several subjects, each of which was formerly presented under the name of the particular instructor who was its author, are now the result of the combined work of a group of instructors, and thus personal idiosyncrasies are avoided, inferior work has been discarded, and the finished product is a thoroughly considered text and problem that bears the authoritative stamp of approval of the combined instructional staff of the school.

It is doubted if the little personal flavor perceptible in some of the earlier product will be greatly missed; and, on the other hand, there will be less tendency for the student to quarrel unprofitably with the text, whether statement of principles, problem or solution, since he will have the weight of a considerable amount of experience, study, and debate against him.

The principal improvement is in the revision of substance, which is the result of the present method of preparation just alluded to. Further than this, however, and more apparent to a cursory examination, there is a marked improvement in arrangement, in presentation (simplified for the student by the use of appropriate paragraph headings), and in diction. As an example of the latter quality, it may be remarked that General A expired with this new edition. This worthy, who has won more battles than all the famous heroes of history put together, will not be greatly lamented. He was an impossible fellow, and, though the alleged author of so much military wisdom, is suspected not to have had wit enough really to come in out of the rain. In the present day of organized staff management, General A's opinions and conclusions are more than ever unappreciated; so it is with no sigh of regret that we see him strut off the stage, we hope, forever.

The text and problems cover the use of combined arms, and the division is the unit employed.

**THE MAILING LIST. The General Service Schools. (Subscription price, \$1.50.)**

Volume II of the Mailing List commences with the November, 1922, number. The character and quality of this initial number indicates that the Mailing List this year will be a valuable addition to any officer's military reading.

The Mailing List is specially useful for such officers as are preparing to attend the Command and General Staff School; but, beyond this special value, it is prepared with a view to keeping the bulk of the service informed as to the fundamental principles and doctrines which form the basis of instruction at Leavenworth.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

In this number is given first a presentation of the most important and fundamental subject—Military Organization of the United States. This is followed by a chapter embodying a review of tactical principles. The student will naturally meet with a lot of old friends here, yet the composition of the lessons of the World War with the earlier conceptions of tactical principles makes a careful presentation of this subject timely and useful.

Another chapter of general interest is entitled "Command in Combat," which, again, is an enunciation of principles generally accepted and appreciated. The question of the character of artillery fire to be developed, whether barrage or some other kind, is given an answer in "Forms of Artillery Fire Support."

**SADDLE SONGS AND OTHER VERSE.** By Henry Herbert Knibbs. Houghton-Mifflin Co. (Price, \$1.50.)

Only a true poet could do justice to this little collection of verse, but one who has known a little of the plains and the trail can possibly explain in drab language what "Saddle Songs" expresses in inimitable imagery. The style is often of that free-and-easy vernacular quality that suits so well the life of the bronco-buster, the ranger, and the hobo; yet there is a remarkable variety in the author's vehicle that marks his craftsmanship as surely as the wonderful beauty of his word pictures mark his poetic insight.

With but few exceptions, these poems are of the Southwest and the borderland that our cavalry knows so well. A great number of them are little terrible tales in rhyme; some are merely prairie visions; but all ring true. They are not the clever jingle of a passer through the land. This poet knows his plains and his people. His songs, with an alkali flavor in them, with the romantic mesa twilight in them, make one think long of the land of the mesquite and cayuse.

**INSTRUCTIONS IN LEARNING ACCURATE PISTOL SHOOTING.** By Gunnery Sergeant John M. Thomas, U. S. Marine Corps. Samuel Usher, The Fort Hill Press, Boston, 1922. (Price, 50 cents; special prices on lots.) Reviewed by Colonel C. E. Stodter, Cavalry, Director of Civilian Marksmanship.

The author of this little book of 42 pages is well known among pistol shooters on account of his success in numerous competitions in the last three or four years. While the book is intended as a guide to shooting the .45-caliber automatic pistol, there is much that applies to shooting any pistol or revolver.

The author makes the assertion that any one can become a fine pistol shot who is willing to take infinite pains in acquiring the fundamentals of pistol shooting which are: (a) Getting in the proper shooting position; (b) gripping the gun properly; (c) aiming the gun correctly; (d) developing a good trigger squeeze. These four fundamentals are clearly described and illustrated by photographs. Not only are they described in detail, but reasons for them are given, and also cautions are given against the errors that are frequently made. Particular attention is given to the subject of trigger-squeeze, as this is the most important of the fundamentals.

There are chapters on instruction and record practice, coaching, table of percentages, description of the .45-caliber automatic pistol, instructions for dismounting and assembling the pistol, operations, penetration and trajectory of the bullet.

The book is of great value to the beginner, and it is also useful to the old-timer in reminding him of the many errors which he should avoid.

Colonel Rice, commanding the 12th Cavalry, writes about this book:

After looking over this book, I turned it over to Captain Oron A. Palmer, who had just joined from McAllen and who was assigned to the command of the Headquarters Troop, with instructions to use the book during the course of pistol firing on which the

## NEW BOOKS REVIEWED

troop was just entering, and to submit a report on its merits at the completion of the course.

Captain Palmer is an excellent instructor as well as a fine shot, and was for this reason selected to make the test. While the results obtained throughout the regiment in the pistol firing were very satisfactory and showed a marked improvement on any previous record, all organizations qualifying from 95 per cent to 100 per cent, Captain Palmer's troop was the only one that qualified 100 per cent.

We believe that this book is the best guide we have seen on this subject, and that it will be a great aid in developing good shots in the regiment.

**WITH THE CAVALRY IN THE WEST.** By "Aquila." The Bodley Head, Ltd., London. 246 pp., 8 illustrations, 2 maps. (Price, \$1.60.)

An easily readable story of the experiences of a British cavalry officer who was through much of the war. Life in camp, billet, trench, and on the march is pleasantly described. The many actions of the cavalry, although mostly dismounted, are interestingly told by a participant. The heartaches of the cavalryman who was longing to get in mounted and who was forever and always being dismounted occupy lines of each chapter. On the other hand, the value of cavalry is shown by the fact that the cavalry, always ready for mounted work, a great potentiality in this respect whose place no other arm could take when needed, gave so freely of its service in dismounted work when danger called. For a running tale of what a cavalry outfit did in France during the World War, told by a member of the command, the book is recommended.

**SIR DOUGLAS HAIG'S COMMAND, 1915-1918.** By George A. B. Dewar, assisted by Lieutenant-Colonel J. H. Boraston, C. B. Houghton Mifflin Co. Two volumes. (Price, \$10.00.)

This book is written with the purpose of vindicating the leadership of Sir Douglas Haig as commander-in-chief of the British forces in France. It is frankly resentful of the alleged studied effort made during and since the war to belittle the work of the British commander-in-chief, whether this effort be by his own people or by others. The effort is so intense as to detract from its otherwise praiseworthy purpose.

The beginning is most refreshing, in these days of detracting from the work of all military men, and one reads with pleasure an appreciation of the work of the soldierman during this tremendous struggle. The thought is stressed that the commanders of the British forces were at all time cognizant of the fact that they were servants of the public through Parliament. This is, of course, the underlying principle of the existence of our own army. Nothing of the "Alone I did it" spirit was found in the make-up of the British commander-in-chief, according to the authors, so far as his relation with his subordinates is concerned. It is to be regretted that the authors did not adopt that same attitude for their hero with reference to the Allied commanders.

There are many places wherein the authors present a viewpoint rather different from that taken by most writers up to the present time. One notable example is the very pronounced stand as regards the action of the French in the aid given in stopping the German drive of March, 1918. The authors very properly emphasize the result of the British attack upon the 17th German Army, but unfortunately give the reader the impression that they are not willing to accord to the French that same credit for action which they demand for the British commander-in-chief in other actions of the war.

The criticisms of the civil authorities as regards their actions toward and in relation to the military authorities are severe, and one is bound to agree that these criticisms are many times well merited. While it is fundamental in our own and in the British system of government that the civil is the controlling factor, it should be a governing principle that the military man placed in charge must receive the support of his government or be relieved. The action of our own government in supporting its commander-



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

in-chief, General Pershing, is in marked contrast with the picture painted by our authors and may well serve as an example for future governments. The British commander-in-chief did not receive at all time the support that he was justified in expecting.

The question of the supreme command is presented in a pleasing and, to the general reading public, new manner. While the average reader may not understand it, the military student must realize that, subject to protecting his own army, the British commander-in-chief carried out that co-operation which is the next best thing to unity of command. The weakness of all real alliances is the fact that each ally will always protect his own interests. That this is the case is illustrated in the agreement making Marshal Foch the Allied commander, wherein the several signers reserved the right to appeal to their respective governments.

The book is a splendid tribute by the authors to Earl Haig. It is to be regretted that in their effort to praise him they found it necessary to animadvert upon other commanders. The authors do not, perhaps, remember that Grant, the butcher of Cold Harbor, is the military hero of the Union Army. They take too seriously the snappings of those who will be forgotten when Haig's name is still fresh in history's memory. The fact that Earl Haig did for three years carry the load of responsibility for the action of the British Army, and that to a successful issue, is a complete answer to any carping adverse critics.

Had the authors in praising Earl Haig adopted a less aggressive attitude toward some others, the result would have been more pleasing to the reader and student of military history.

It will be of special interest to cavalrymen to note the remark which Colonel Boraston includes in the chapter dealing with the final operations in France. He states: "The German Army had broken, and the Allied advance went forward at a rate dictated more by the deficiencies of their own communications than by any resistance that the German machine-gunners and special services could offer. Our three cavalry divisions had a task that was really beyond them, though they strove to the limits of the powers of horse and man to do the work that four times their numbers might have done effectively. It was the fate of the cavalry on the Western Front to be cut down, during times when cavalry work was impossible, to numbers which made it equally impossible for them to do their legitimate work effectively when their opportunity came. Even so, the three cavalry divisions we still possessed were of great utility, and with their aid we had pushed forward from 25 to 30 miles on the battle front when, on November 11, the Armistice put an end to hostilities."

LIFE AND LETTERS OF WALTER H. PAGE. By Burton J. Hendrick. Doubleday, Page & Co. (Price, \$10.00.)

REVIEWED BY MAJOR W. W. EDWARDS, CAVALRY

This story of a life brimful of achievement is told largely by personal letters. They were not dictated. They were penned in a most careful, painstaking manner and preserve an inimitable style.

The letters fairly scintillate with wit, irony, philosophy, invective, and common sense—all expressed with great originality and frankness, in the most faultless English. This is a book, besides, which is of lasting historical importance and significance, as a chapter in the diplomatic relations between the two greatest nations in the greatest war the world has ever seen.

During the formative period of his life, while he was a roving journalist, Page got the human contact, which he subsequently never lost. He grew from provincialism to patriotism. He also became imbued with the needs of democracy and he boldly attacked whomsoever he thought stood in the way.

## NEW BOOKS REVIEWED

In one editorial, for example, he referred to a public officer in the South, who was distinguished for his dignity and family tree, but not for any animated administration of duties, as Thothmes II. When this bewildered functionary searched the Encyclopedia he found Thothmes II was a mummy. "It's awfully discouraging business," wrote Page, "to prove to a mummy that it is a mummy; you can't go up and say, 'The Egyptian dynasty crumbled several thousand years ago.'"

During his editorial career he revived the *Forum* magazine and was its guiding spirit for eight years. He was editor of the *Atlantic Monthly* and finally ended as a member of the firm Doubleday, Page & Company with a magazine of his own, *The World's Work*.

When the Wilson administration began, Page was a successful editor and publisher, well past middle age, living at Garden City, Long Island; but he had been preparing quite unconsciously for one of the greatest diplomatic missions a man of this era ever attempted. Thirty years before, he became acquainted with a struggling young lawyer in Atlanta, Ga., and they grew to be good friends. They had both been fighting for the cause of democracy. This young lawyer was Woodrow Wilson, who was now elected President.

The appointment of Page to the Court of Saint James came as a complete surprise, in a telephone message one morning from Colonel House. "Good morning, Your Excellency," said Colonel House. "What the devil are you talking about?" said Page. Then Colonel House explained.

Soon Page was writing a letter on board the *Baltic*, en route from New York to Liverpool. "There are three titled Englishmen who sit at the table with me on this ship—one a former Lord Mayor of London, another a peer, and the third an M. P. Damn their self-sufficiencies. They do excite my envy. They don't shoulder the work of the world. They shoulder the world and leave the work to be done by somebody else."

Page tried from the time he reached England and took up his ambassadorial duties to work out a plan for a better understanding between the two English-speaking nations. He started to do this before Europe was plunged into war, and met with many discouragements, but found it, of course, a much more difficult task after he represented a neutral nation at the capital of a belligerent one.

After the European war had been in progress for some time, Page became convinced that the United States should take the part of the Allies. He wrote the President to this effect, repeatedly deploring our policy of isolation, stating his belief that the reason was the "hayseed spokesmen, the shirtsleeve statesmen, and the fellows from Jonesville. They have been the chief hindrances of our country. It is they, in fact, who have kept our people ignorant of the Germans, ignorant of the English, ignorant of our own history, ignorant of ourselves. We've been in the world, right in the middle of the world, the whole time."

Page knew that Germany, which was playing the Napoleonic game, must be rid of predatory feudalism, which was the cause of the war; that she was a predatory wild beast of a nation—a highwayman; that all the Hohenzollern monarchs, with one exception, had acquired land, and the present Kaiser was only carrying out a family tradition, and there was no making peace with this robber nation except by force.

Page knew, furthermore, that England realized that the United States was the only country capable of winning the war. "Does U. S. commercialism and does the 'peace at any price' dominate America? I'm for war," he says, "to 'save our honor and to save democracy.'" This was the doctrine he was preaching during the days of the many notes following the sinking of that line of ships headed by the *Lusitania* and the German overtures for peace made by Bernstorff before his dismissal.

This was the darkest period of Page's ambassadorship. The happiest day for Page was when the United States finally declared war with Germany. Before this he had



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

occupied a "listening post" of diplomacy. He could hear what the enemy was about, but could not tell what was transpiring in his own lines. But now all was changed. He was no longer kept in the dark as to what the United States was going to do, for she commenced doing it at once. He now felt that his country was exonerated from all her mistakes. The tone of his letters changes suddenly. He writes to a friend, "Come over and see how big our country looks from this island." From this time on, though his work was increased tenfold, the dreadful uncertainty was at an end.

The one ringing note in the message Page has left us is: The need of organized and prepared leadership on the part of our nation in the service of the world.

In a letter to the President he says: "The future of the world belongs to us. A man needs to live here with two economic eyes in his head a very little time to become very sure of this. Everybody will see it presently. These English are spending their capital, and it is their capital that continues to give them their vast power. Now, what are we going to do with the leadership of the world presently, when it falls clearly into our hands? And how can we use the English for the highest uses of democracy?" Does it not sound like the voice of prophecy?

**MODERN POLO.** By Lieutenant-Colonel E. D. Miller, C. B. E., D. S. O. (late 17th Lancers). Fourth edition. Hurst and Blackett, Ltd. (Price, \$10.00.)

An interval of eleven years has elapsed since the third edition of *Modern Polo* made its appearance. So many sweeping changes have occurred during that time that Lieutenant-Colonel E. D. Miller has found it necessary to make considerable revisions, and to write a great deal of fresh matter for the fourth edition, which is now before us. The broad result is the same as before. The book is, as it always was, a particularly authoritative work, and it retains its place as the standard volume on polo. Regarding age in polo the author writes:

A great advantage which polo has over all other outdoor games is that one can begin it comparatively late in life, and that one will continue to improve with age and experience. The reason for this is that coolness, command of temper, horsemanship, knowledge of the game, and "head," all of which come with age, are more important factors in making a first-class polo player than activity, which is an attribute of youth. At football a man is, as a rule, at his best from twenty to twenty-five; and at cricket, from twenty to thirty years of age; yet there are few really first-class polo players in England under thirty-five. Men of mature years are in no way barred from polo, the average age of the team which represented England in 1921 being forty-one years. Although I have never heard of a first-class cricketer who did not learn to play as a boy, many good polo players have begun comparatively late in life.

To a large extent, the general make-up of the book follows that of the previous editions. The first chapter deals with the development of modern polo and tells how to become a polo player. The theory and practice of the game are expounded in the second chapter, and the great influence which its development in America has had.

America has had a great influence on the evolution of modern polo. Pace, pace, and always pace is what is aimed at. This was very noticeable in 1900, and it was just the same in 1921. Young Americans play with more dash, as a rule, than young Englishmen; this is partly due to temperament, partly because where they play the grounds are better, owing to the fact that they do not get the same wear, and partly because they do not consider their ponies so much.

Everything is done in the American game to quicken it up, and their plan of meeting the ball, instead of turning for a back-hander, has, of course, this effect to a very great extent; and another stroke that makes the game quicker is that of hitting under the neck instead of a back-hander. No first-class American player ever hits a back-hander if he can get the ball to the same position by hitting it under his pony's neck. This must be right, because he is able to pass the ball out to the center without the shadow of a pause, whereas if he turns for a back-hander he must, however slightly, slacken his pace.

## FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS

Colonel Miller thinks that the average American player is not nearly as strong in defense as the average Englishman; but then, on the other hand, owing to his constant practice in getting clean away with the ball, he is a far better shot at goal.

A valuable chapter is devoted to "polo appliances," including polo grounds, goal posts, sticks, and polo dress. The section upon choosing a polo pony is full of the soundest possible advice, and many instructive pages are given to the subject of polo pony training, upon which there is no higher authority than the author. Polo pony gear, such as bits and bridles, saddles, whip, spurs, bandages, and boots, receive due attention, as does the question of polo pony management. Polo in the Army also has its interesting chapter. It is *par excellence* the soldier's game, and few will quarrel with Colonel Miller's contention that it is the most suitable form of amusement for regimental officers. The following, he claims, are a few of its advantages:

1. No better riding school exists than the polo ground.
2. To be a successful polo player, a man must be to some extent a horsemaster; for he must know a good deal about horses in order to be able to buy his ponies and to keep them sound and fit.
3. The qualities which make a soldier succeed in his profession bring him to the front at polo, particularly if he has to organize and arrange the regimental polo.
4. Polo is a game where discipline and combination are essential, and one plays for the honor of the regiment.

*Modern Polo* is profusely illustrated, the plates numbering no fewer than 172. It also possesses a good index. The new edition is entitled to a cordial welcome from everybody interested in the galloping game. (Extracts from *The Polo Monthly*.)

**AN OUTLINE OF THE EGYPTIAN AND PALESTINE CAMPAIGNS, 1914-1918.** By General Sir M. G. E. Bowman-Manifold. 17 maps and sketches. (Price, \$1.50.)

This account of the Egyptian and Palestine operations, which has been running in serial form in the *Journal of the Institution of the Royal Engineers*, is now available in pamphlet form.

## Foreign Military Journals

*Revue de Cavalerie*, September-October, 1922.

In *La Cavalerie et des Feux* Colonel Cambuzat, artillery, takes issue with the idea (which is less and less in evidence) that cavalry is relatively unimportant in modern war, and bases his contention on solid argument as well as upon the incidents of the World War. In this first installment he particularizes in the qualities of cavalry, first discussing the manners in which the individual cavalry soldier is made a superior fighting unit by reason of his mount. These are mentioned at some length in their physical, intellectual, and moral aspects. He then deals with the disadvantages that encumber the cavalry, among them particularly the difficulty of keeping up the cavalry effective strength in the course of operations and the difficulty of foraging the horses.

The second installment of the study of a maneuver of skeletonized large cavalry units held in 1921 appears in this number. The general situation is that in which the German Crown Prince's group of armies found themselves on the eve of the offensive of the 27th of May, 1918, and the exercise was worked out over the identical ground. Only the German Army was supposed (in this exercise) to include a body of cavalry—which it did not actually possess—which in the exercise works out a problem in the exploitation of a success. The enemy forces are considered to be exactly those which the French actually opposed to the Germans on this sector in 1918. The problem is recorded in great detail, with all the orders, messages, etc., given, so that it is possible to follow it through with profit on the map.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

The operations of the 2d Cavalry Division on the Ourcq, 30 May-7 June, 1918, are recounted in detail by Captain Oudin. His article, which is concluded in the next number, is well illustrated by maps and supported by the actual operation and battle orders. This, too, should make an excellent map study of the employment of a large unit of cavalry.

*Faits de Cavalerie*, as usual, is an interesting section. In this number it comprises three patrol episodes, an episode involving the cavalry of an advance guard and an exploit of a cavalry squadron on a special mission. These authentic experiences are instructive for the leader of a small unit.

A French translation of General Gratiot's study of Modern Cavalry and Fast-moving Composite Units, which is translated from the original in this number of the *CAVALRY JOURNAL* (see page 137) appears in this *Revue*.

Some space is devoted to a review of polo in the French Army.

*Revue de Cavalerie*, November-December, 1922.

### ARMY WINGS SHOULD BE COMPOSED OF CAVALRY

In the second installment of *La Cavalerie et les Fears* Colonel Cambuzat discusses the characteristics of the communications of an army, of which they are the vital organs. He then concludes that generally the army can best protect its communications by the employment of "wings." Incident to a discussion of the attack and defense of such wings, he goes into the essential matter of reconnaissance, and his remarks on this head are of quite general application. Of particular interest is his analysis of the powers of aviation in this direction.

Aviation can only report information that the enemy has not been able to conceal during the short period of an opportune flight. It cannot define the changing contour of moving lines. Especially it cannot usually report positively in the field of negative intelligence, which is of great importance. Night, fog, unfavorable weather, cover, camouflage, etc., are frequently prohibitive factors. It cannot take prisoners, the source of much important and reliable intelligence. It cannot easily render opinions as to the difficult or penetrable parts of a front which is about to be attacked. Its maneuvering mobility is limited and it may suspend function at a critical moment. Lack of continuity in its action may be fatal. It is very difficult to pick up the enemy's contour again, once it is lost. Finally, air observation requires a mastery of air, which is always a matter of great uncertainty.

The writer concludes that cavalry will be the proper agent to effect the reconnaissance, but suggests that liaisons and transmissions must be perfected.

He then discusses the characteristics of combat in an army wing, and concludes that these are such as demand just the qualities that are inherent in the cavalry arm. He adds, however, that the cavalry must perfect not only its capacities of liaison and transmission, but also its fire power. Then follows an interesting study of the use of the carbine (which the writer prefers over the rifle) and of the machine-gun by the cavalry. He is enthusiastic over the possibilities of the rifle in the hands of the cavalry; not so strongly impressed by the value of the machine-gun as by its obvious disadvantages. Needless to say, there is little in the latter part of this study of concern to American cavalrymen, to whom the value of the rifle has been long known.

The description in detail of an exercise of skeletonized large units of cavalry in 1921 is continued in this number. The conclusions as to the employment of large cavalry forces as a mounted reserve which are based upon this exercise are of considerable significance. Their summary will not be attempted here, however, as it is thought that whoever would profit by them should study carefully through the details of the exercise itself.

The account of the 2d Cavalry Division on the Ourcq is concluded in this number. This is a typical example of the employment of cavalry as a mounted reserve. The

## FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS

division made a forced march of 200 kilometers and was thrown into the breach being made by the Germans in the vicinity of La Ferté-Milon. It successfully checked the German advance. This account in two successive numbers of the *Revue* enables the military student to follow through the operation in all its details. The author's observations and comments are interesting. He finds fault with the efficacy of heavy machine-guns because of the difficulty of their carriage along with fast-moving troops off the roads.

### EMPLOYMENT OF CAVALRY IN THE SPRING OFFENSIVES, 1918

*Bulletin Belge des Sciences Militaires*, November, 1922.

The article by Captain-Commandant Jacquet is of special interest and is digested as follows:

The rôle of cavalry became of highest importance in the course of the Allied retreat. The necessity for it was felt from the first hour of the operation over the whole field of battle to the point that the British yeomanry regiments which had just been dismounted were again mounted.

In his official report General Sir Douglas Haig emphasizes the influence of the cavalry in these eloquent terms:

"Without the support of the mounted troops, well led, valiantly maintained, it would have been difficult to prevent the enemy, in the covered broken terrain, from piercing the extended front, feebly held."

The evacuation from Cugny to the southeast of Ham was rendered possible by the mounted attack of a squadron of the 6th Brigade, which overwhelmed the German line and took a hundred or so prisoners. (See Fight at Collezay, *CAVALRY JOURNAL*, January, 1922.)

The retreat of the divisions behind the bridgehead of Peronne was carried out with order, thanks to the 1st Cavalry Division. The withdrawal of the British and French divisions west of the Canal du Nord was effected under the cover of dismounted units of the Canadian cavalry brigade, assisted by some French armored cars.

The cavalry made use of combat formations similar to those of the infantry. They consisted of two platoon waves in deployed lines; the third platoon was divided into sections covering the flanks of the two front lines. This was especially the case in the support given to the 9th French Division at Gelancourt, south of Ham, on the 24th. (See Collezay, *ibid.*)

The Canadian cavalry was engaged in a similar fashion at Moreuil on March 30.

The power of present armament forbids the employment of cavalry except in small units attached to infantry divisions or regiments. On the other hand, the imperative need of obtaining information requires a great number of patrols as well as reconnaissance by officers.

The large units of cavalry used in small fractions mounted, or in mass dismounted, assist the higher command effectively and facilitate its task.

We see a heroic example of this to the north of Tergier, where the 9th Cuirassiers supported the left of the 125th French Division with a spirit of self-sacrifice beyond all praise in the counter-attack directed against the advance forces of the enemy that had forced the Crozat Canal.

On the enemy (German) side the cavalry participated only to a very limited extent. It intervened to some purpose at Vert Chasseur before the front of the 18th British Division, as well as before Montdidier. It was their cavalry that took the village of Valley. It should also be noted that an attack of 3,000 German cavalry launched from the heights of Sailly-Sailisel was halted north of the Somme, in the woods of Troies, by the 1st British Cavalry Division with horse batteries and tanks and reinforced by hastily collected odd units of troops. In fine, the German squadrons played only a minor part in this offensive.

To the south of Villers Bretonneux a raid of cavalry was thrown back by the armored cars of the Canadian Corps.

# Polo

## REPORT OF OPERATIONS OF THE ARMY POLO TEAM OF 1922

By Major George S. Patton, Jr.

Trusting in the truth of the old saying as to brevity and wit, and impelled further from long duty with troops to avoid lengthy reports, which are never read, I am tempted to make my report as follows:

### Final Game of Junior Polo Championship, 1922

Score: Army, 8; Meadowbrook, 7.

Truly, that is enough; but to comply with tradition and to cater to the few who may be curious, I shall add the following:

### The Three Campaigns

In 1920 a United States Military Academy team entered the contest for the Junior Championship. Using only horses from West Point, they made a very excellent but unsuccessful attempt to lift the cup.

In 1921 the Army Central Polo Committee took the matter in charge. Horses and players were assembled from Fort Riley, West Point, and Washington. These contingents gathered at Camp Alfred Vall, New Jersey. After a series of tryouts, two teams were selected and entered in the Junior. Both teams were eliminated in the first round, although the team which put the Army out finally won the event.

There were several reasons for this second failure.

### Horses

More than half the horses assembled were not of the caliber for such a contest. At the normal speed of army polo they were fast and tractable, but at the speed of such a contest they were useless. The methods of training and caring for them were not scientific and were more or less haphazard, resulting in loss of condition and speed.

Further, the players, through a mistaken idea, used too many horses. Any horse worthy of the name and in proper condition should do two periods in a match, the first four horses in a string of eight necessarily being better than the second four. This was not realized, and the second four horses were frequently used.

### Want of Fast Practice

Camp Vall was selected because there were two good fields on the post and two more at a near-by club; hence, the horses and men could be cheaply cared for. The fields were good, but the competition was not. The army teams could easily beat anything in the vicinity; hence, most of their practice came in playing each other. Having no standard of comparison, they did not practice at sufficient speed. It was faster than garrison polo, but it was not fast enough; also, they had no means of learning new methods; hence, they practiced according to ancient ideas at moderate speed.

With the notable exception of Brown and Wilson, all the army players were poor mallet men. Here again, due to lack of higher standards, they did not realize and so correct their defects.

## POLO

The Central Polo Committee digested these facts in sorrow and decided to correct them in the offensive of 1922.

By the kind offices of Messrs. Stoddard, Millbourn, Von Stade, and many others, permission was secured to send an army team to Meadowbrook for practice. This at once insured practice in the highest type of polo.

In order to centralize the effort, it was at once decided to enter but one team. Seven players and forty-seven horses were assembled from the same sources as in 1921. Through the courtesy of the Air Service and with the warm co-operation of Major Walter Weaver, commanding officer at Mitchel Field, the players were lodged at that post, next door to Meadowbrook. Stables for the horses were rented at the Mineola Driving Club track, three miles distant. The men camped here and were messed at Mitchel Field.

These arrangements were most excellent, as, besides the four fields at Meadowbrook, there are six other private fields within a radius of five miles, and the sporting owners of these latter generously placed them at the disposal of the army.

The several contingents began to assemble at Mitchel Field on June 18th, and by June 22d all were present. As soon as this happened, Lieutenant T. H. McCreery, assistant manager, was placed in absolute charge of the horses, both public and private. His authority was complete and no one could play or exercise a horse except as he directed. The good effect of this plan became manifest almost at once. The horses improved in condition and appearance from day to day, until, on the great day, General Pershing himself was good enough to say that he had never seen a finer looking or better conditioned lot of horses in or out of the army.

While at Meadowbrook the army entered two tournaments: The Hempstead Cups, a handicap event for teams up to twelve goals and players up to five; this event was won by the army. The Meadowbrook Cups, a handicap for teams up to twenty goals with no limit on the handicap of players; in this event the army was eliminated in the semi-finals.

Besides the regular tournament events, there was constant opportunity for practice in "cut in games" and games on private fields.

Due to bad weather, the tournaments lasted two weeks beyond schedule, but at the close of this period the final team, with one substitute, had practiced against the best players in America.

The result of all this was that when the team left for Narragansett it had selected the best men under tournament conditions, had eliminated the poorest horses, and had experienced the fastest kind of polo as demonstrated by the greatest masters of the game.

Such an experience naturally gave to Colonel Brown and his team confidence that there was nothing in store for them which they had not experienced, and a knowledge that, though victory was not certain, it would take a good team to beat them. The event proved that no such team existed.

At Narragansett the horses and men were accommodated at Lake View farm, two miles from the fields; here there were excellent stables and good camp grounds for the men. Some of the officers also camped, while others lived in town.

Before passing to purely personal remarks and conclusions of perhaps dubious value, pause must be made to remark on the wonderful treatment accorded the army team by all the civilians with whom they came in contact. In every match the army was the favorite of the crowd, every assistance and courtesy was accorded them, and the officers were showered with invitations to dinners and dances. While many of these invitations were accepted, it is pertinent to remark that the members of the team never let pleasure in liquid or other form blind them to the object of their presence. They trained hard at all times, both in the things they did, such as constant riding and mallet work, and also—this was the more difficult—in the things they did not do.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

### Conclusions

Since the best school for war is war, so with polo the best school for polo is fast tournament polo. Polo as played at local clubs, civilian or military, will never make a winning team for a big event. The speed cannot be stimulated; it must be experienced. This applies equally to men and horses. Hitting at a fast gallop is utterly different from hitting at a run. Horses which go well on the local field become crazy pullers in a wide-open game. They are like the five-foot jumpers of the back yard who knock down at three six in Madison Square.

If the army wants to continue high-class polo, it must repeat this year's performance as to preparation.

But aside from the speed and the hitting, the whole character of high-class polo is different.

There are three classes of polo, at least as I have observed it, and I have had great chances to observe—greater than to perform.

First, there is a type of polo which may be called "Hit and be Damned," dependent on a complete lack of trust in either the intelligence or stick-work of one's team-mates or on the actions of one's mount and requiring profound trust in God. Perhaps I have been unfortunate, but this is the only kind I ever saw in the army up to 1916. It still flourishes in many places and among all beginners.

Second, up-and-down polo, dependent on 50 per cent confidence in the hitting and intelligence of one's team-mates and on the actions of one's mount. In good examples of this sort of game, most players are paired; team-mates follow each other looking for misses; no one ever turns on a stroke until the stroke is made; there is much pulling up; the game is sticky, and 75 per cent of goals made are straight up and down the field. A good sort of this type game will win in a twelve-goal tournament.

Third, the open or cross-field game, dependent on 90 per cent hitting and confidence in the intelligence of one's team-mates and actions of one's horse. It is hard to describe, for, as Mr. Stoddard says, it is so simple: "All that is necessary to remember is that there are only two places to hit a ball—first to a team-mate, second between the posts."

In this style of game no player ever follows another, waiting for a miss. He goes to the end of the shot the other man is about to make. If a player has 55 per cent chance for a ball, the other players turn for his shot. There are many shots under the neck. This is particularly true in defense. Seventy-five per cent of goals are made from angles; there is much less pulling up, and hence more speed.

But it is hard to describe—far beyond my ability. It must be seen to be appreciated and can only be played on perfect ponies and perfect fields. But it is the game. The army team which won the Junior used it to a degree.

### Stick-work

It was the general criticism of the army players that they hit too late on forward shots and too soon on back shots. Speaking generally, we usually hit the ball in forward strokes just forward of the stirrup. It should be hit about opposite the bit. There are two reasons for this: First, when so hit, the ball has a greater tendency to "loft"; second, the angle at which the ball may be directed is increased many degrees, thus giving the player more choice of direction and command of the ball.

In the actual making of the stroke we were said to move the hand too much. In the forward strokes the hand should not rise above the elbow. The stroke should be made with increasing momentum—that is, starting slow and gaining speed just before it hits the ball. We usually start just as fast and as hard as possible. As a rule, our back strokes were less faulty. Going fast, we had to hit late—the correct way—because we misjudged the speed.

## POLO

### Beginners

It seems to me that in the army we are too helpful to beginners. By letting them play when they are utterly useless, we get many bad players and slow games. In giving them public horses to play, we ruin the horses to no purpose. It would be better if they were forced to make or buy a pony and be not allowed to play at all until they could at least hit the ball once in a while. By this system some would be discouraged and quit, but such are so lazy that they would never be any good, anyway; we would get fewer and better players.

### Private Horses

The virtue of polo as a military accomplishment rests on the following: It makes a man think fast while he is excited; it reduces his natural respect for his own safety—that is, makes him bold; it should teach restraint under exciting circumstances. For the cavalryman, it is the nearest approach to mounted combat; it makes riding worth while; it keeps a man hard. Finally, it should teach better horse management.

Now, it is a sad but true fact that a man will work just a little harder on his own horse than on a public one. A private horse stands a better chance of becoming a good polo horse than does a public one, as he is ridden by fewer people. A polo horse is the best type of charger for service and combat.

For these reasons it seems that all officers who want to play polo should own at least one private horse. They will learn more, help polo more, and be better mounted for war. Horses capable of making fine animals can be bought green from the remount or privately at remount prices. We will never amount to a great deal in polo until we get more good private mounts.

McCreery has covered in the attached report the question of horses in all its forms. I shall close by quoting a famous dealer, whose personal horses are of that race, on the subject of thoroughbreds. When I asked him why he trained and sold western mongrels, he replied: "If I sell thoroughbreds, I not only have to make the horse, but the rider." Riley has made us riders—buy thoroughbreds.

### ARMY POLO

By Lieutenant-Colonel Lewis Brown, Jr., Cavalry, Captain Army Team, 1922

The history of army team polo for this year has been very well covered by Major Patton in his report. Exception is taken to his statement that in former years the methods of training and caring for these horses were not scientific and more or less haphazard, resulting in a loss of condition and speed. In former years the same method of training was employed as is still used by the great majority of the polo world. McCreery's method substitutes a fifteen-minute gallop under weight for the former daily exercise of one and one-half to two hours' walk and trot. He feeds four times per day instead of three. His methods were accompanied by success, and great credit is due him for his excellent work. Such a man is necessary in keeping a string of forty to sixty horses in condition. With the care of injuries, supervising feeding, care of equipment, etc., he has a "he-man's job," and these horses have personal equations as well as men, and the successful trainer is one who knows the condition, temperament, and past daily work of all his horses and can each day successfully decide the question, "What does this horse need today?"

From a team captain's standpoint, the general policy was to play them all in preliminary matches and practice games, being especially careful not to overwork the best ones, but to save them for the Junior Championship. When the important games were played in the Junior, the team started the game with the idea of each player playing the

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

four best available two periods each. This policy can be deviated from after half time if the team is well in the lead.

### Must Not Play in Expectation of Misses

The success of the team this year was surprisingly well received by the civilian polo world and much is expected of future army teams. The ideal organization would have an army team in low goal, in the Junior and the Senior events (three teams). Three teams, or even two, cannot be suitably mounted at present, but in from five to ten years, if the present policy of encouraging polo is continued and the breeding activities of the Remount Association and Remount Service begin to show results, I see no reason why there should not be army teams competing in both Open and Junior Championships. When the army develops players of ability and experience, their success will be largely determined by their mounts. Players cannot be developed by confining army polo to army posts. No individual or team in any branch of sport can attain his or its greatest proficiency by always playing against somebody they can defeat with comparative ease. A lot can be learned by playing against and observing players of the first rank. The handicaps in army post polo are poor fields, resulting in poor mallet-work and consequent lack of team-work. Fifty per cent of army players play for their opponents and team-mates to miss because it has been their general experience on poor fields. Team play depends on confidence in the hitting of your team-mates, and if one expects good players to miss he is generally wrong.

Meadowbrook is probably the best place to assemble the army teams on account of the many fields and the opportunity for practice against good teams. A stable to accommodate sixty horses should be constructed at Mitchel Field. It will save money in the end. Until the policy of having suitably mounted teams for 12 goal, 20 goal, and open polo is adopted, I recommend a continuance of this year's policy in regard to assembling and managing the army team. Before a player is sent it must be determined that he has, first, the potential ability; second, that he can be suitably mounted.

Each player should have seven or eight horses and one of his attendants should be capable of assisting him in the daily exercise of his string. There are days when through injury or falling off in physical condition it is inadvisable for a player to ride seven or eight horses as a morning's work.

In conclusion, the army team this year was stronger than it was generally considered. It played its best game in the semi-finals of the Junior when a 17-goal team was defeated 16 to 2. In the finals the "luck-breaks" of the game were against the army, but after being on the low end of a 4 to 0 score at the end of the third period, the team won in the ninth period what was apparently a very popular victory.

### NOTES ON THE TRAINING AND CONDITIONING OF THE ARMY POLO PONIES THAT PARTICIPATED IN THE JUNIOR CHAMPIONSHIP, 1922

By Lieutenant T. H. McCreery, Q. M. C. (Remount Service)

The training of any lot of horses can scarcely be called a system. To properly train them, each individual must be handled more or less differently. In parts of the training they can be handled alike; therefore, I will not dwell on any so-called system, but will give an outline of the care and training of ponies in general; also some impressions noted with regard to the civilian-owned ponies that I have observed. These impressions will comprehend breeding, type, and sex.

The thoroughbred blood undoubtedly dominates on the polo field. I first noticed this among the better ponies at Meadowbrook owned by civilians. Each time they showed a

## POLO

good one or one that had played in one or two international matches, it always was a thoroughbred or at least three-fourths thoroughbred. Then I noted as the army ponies trained on that the thoroughbred ponies were the ones that always came back much sooner than the other breeds. When they were injured, they responded to treatment so quickly that it was remarkable how soon they were again in condition to play. If they were tired at the end of a game, they were not the ones to turn their tails to the feed box and look gaunt and dejected the next morning, but always came out with their heads up and looking for more polo.

When we came to the fast, horse-killing, heart-breaking games of the finals, it was the thoroughbred that had the stamina, endurance, and determination to go on the field for three of the hardest periods on horseflesh ever seen on a polo field. It is not surprising to me that the public and the press commented on the wonderful showing of the army ponies, as these ponies had more thoroughbred blood in them than any collection of army horses ever accumulated together in this country. This fact only again proves that the Remount Service is progressing in the right lines in using the thoroughbred horse in its horse-breeding activities. Of course, the skeptic will say, "Why breed all polo ponies?" But it must be remembered that this same breed, same type horse and size horse is the wonderful little Waler which accomplished so many remarkable tests of endurance in the British Army in Palestine during the late war.

The average size of the army ponies was about 15.2 hands high; average weight about 975 pounds, when in playing condition. The average conformation was the big-barreled, short-legged, stocky kind, with good fronts, short backs, and strong, straight legs. No crooked-hocked, splay-footed, or calf-kneed horse can stand this game. As to sex, it is noted that the temperament of mares is more adapted to this game. Of course, this is not always the case, but the higher average of good ones is mares.

About the training—it has been noted that the army and civilian ponies in former years have been trained by having the grooms walk and trot them from one to three hours per day. This system may be all right for an endurance test or some of the old-style polo, but the game has changed to a hit-and-run game, and if you want to be in the game at all it is necessary to have fast horses. So, in order to have speed in a pony, he must have strength, health, good wind, and some flesh on him. These things cannot be developed by slow, dragging exercise, so I have in mind two cardinal principles in training a polo pony. They are: Give him just as much work as he needs, but save his strength. Therefore, my general average of a day's work when the pony was not to play in a game was, first, to put a man on him, preferably the officer who was to play him, then walk him five to ten minutes, trot five to ten minutes, and canter from fifteen to twenty minutes. If it is the day before a game or if the pony has not played for some time, he should be galloped along at top speed for a few short stretches during this gallop in order to develop his wind. My reason for having the pony ridden and not led alongside of another horse is that he has got to carry weight in a polo game and must become accustomed to it. My reason for keeping the pony under the saddle for not more than twenty-five or thirty minutes is to save flesh, as flesh means strength and strength means speed. If the pony has played a hard game the previous day, I would have him led out at a walk, then have him trotted up and down to see if he is sound, then carefully examine him for any cuts, bruises, or injuries, examine his feet for soundness and shoeing, then let him eat grass for one-half to one hour and put him back in the stable to rest for the next game.

On the morning of each game all ponies were walked and trotted under saddle for twenty to thirty minutes. Only one pony out of the forty-seven head did I find it necessary to train according to the old method. This one was a big, hardy but extremely nervous mare. As to feeding, each horse while in training was given all he would eat.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Some would eat only seven or eight pounds of grain, while others would eat as much as fifteen to sixteen pounds. So it averaged about twelve pounds of grain, one pound of bran, and about fourteen pounds of hay. A lump of rock-salt was kept in front of the horses at all times. The horses were fed four times each day—at 5 o'clock a. m., 11.30 o'clock a. m., 4.30 o'clock p. m., and 9.30 o'clock p. m. A handful of bran was used in each feed. After a hard game they were fed steamed oats and bran. My reason for doing this is that when the horse is tired it is better to give him something easy to digest. Fresh water was kept in front of the horses at all times. A good way to be sure that your horses have plenty of water at night is to instruct the men to give them all they will drink at the 9.30 feeding time, then fill the pail and leave it outside the stall, then when you inspect your horses before retiring for the night place the pail before the horse yourself. By doing this you can see whether he has been properly watered and that he is tied at the proper length. At the same time have a look at his feed-box and hay-rack. Watching the hay and feed rack and condition of the horse in general is what gives one an idea of how much work to give each horse.

The ponies should not have any hay on the morning of the game. This will keep them from blowing too much.

After considerable experimenting I found the following style of shoe the best: In front I used a hand-made steel-rim shoe set in well at the heels and not too long. The hind shoes were hard to get right, but I think I have finally settled on the proper kind. This was done with the advice of Mr. Joe Ellison, of Fox and Ellison, horseshoers, at Westbury, L. I. First, the shoe is a No. 1 light Phoenix shoe, sold by Messrs. Vought and Williams, New York City. The outside heel calk is round and blunt, about one-fourth inch high, while the inside calk is tapered thin and runs sloping toward the toe. The reason for this is that when the horse puts his feet down and stops straight on his haunches the foot will not slip back, as it has the bearing of both calks. It will not slip forward, as it has full bearing on the outside calk, while the sharp inside calk cuts in enough to hold it. Then when the horse turns on his haunches the outside calk will hold the foot in place while the inside heel slips over the grass and prevents the horse from twisting on his ankle or hock.

About the care of ponies during the game: It has been noted that the grooms are inclined to use cold water on the ponies when they are hot. This should not be done, as it causes the pony to cool out too fast, which produces stiffness, removes the elastic condition of the skin and the color of the horse's coat. If you must use water, have it warm, or a body wash is better. Any veterinarian will recommend a good body wash.

The pony should be blanketed and walked slowly between periods and not be allowed to cool out too fast. All ponies should be inspected carefully between periods in order to doctor small cuts and to see that the shoes are all right. All ponies should be kept moving before they go on the field. It keeps the blood in circulation and prevents that general shock to the system that necessarily follows when a horse goes from a cold standstill to a run at top speed.

In conclusion, I will say that I probably made a number of mistakes in training and handling the ponies, but they won the Junior Championship, and there is no doubt that their condition was better than it had formerly been, and, as we always have something to learn about horses, there is no doubt I would change some things another time.

### ENCOURAGEMENT OF ARMY POLO

Not the least satisfactory feature in American polo at the present time is the great strides which the game is making in the army. It is predicted that the time is at hand when the army will become in the United States, as in England, the backbone of polo. This advance is solely due to the great encouragement given to the game by the War

## POLO

Department, which now considers polo a necessary part of the training of officers. Remounts of polo type are practically recognized as the official mounts, inasmuch as any mounted unit may have issued to it on request remounts of polo type. At present, it is stated, remounts of polo type are not being purchased, owing to the number of horses left over from the war, but as soon as that supply is exhausted a proportion of ponies will be bought and issued as remounts. As a further example of the interest in polo taken by the American General Staff, it may be added that about sixty polo ponies are kept at the United States Military Academy, West Point, for the purpose of instructing cadets of the senior class how to play polo. The success of an army team in the Junior Championship at Narragansett during the past summer has given a further fillip to military polo, and in due course, no doubt, the troops will be able to place a formidable team in the field for the Senior and Open events.—*The Polo Monthly*.

### TOURNAMENT SCHEDULE FOR 1923 ADOPTED BY POLO ASSOCIATION

Tournament dates for 1923 have been adopted by the Polo Association as follows:

February 2-28—Flamingo Polo Club, Miami, Fla.  
March 3-17—Aiken Polo Club, Aiken, S. C.  
March 24-April 2—Camden Polo Club, Camden, S. C.  
April 1-15—San Antonio Polo Club, San Antonio, Texas.  
April 15-30—Sandhills Polo Club, Pinehurst, N. C.  
May 19-June 2—Bryn Mawr Polo Club, Bryn Mawr, Pa.  
May 26-June 2—Whippany River Club, Morristown, N. J.  
June 2-16—Philadelphia Country Club, Bala, Pa.  
June 23-30—Cheyenne Mountain Country Club, Colorado Springs, Colo.  
June 16-July 7—Meadowbrook Club, Westbury, L. I.  
July 2-14—Rockaway Hunting Club, Cedarhurst, L. I.  
July 16-28—Rumson Country Club, Rumson, N. J.  
July 28-August 25—Point Judith Polo Club, Narragansett Pier, R. I.  
August 8-25—Thousand Islands Polo Club, Wellesley Island, Alexandria Bay, N. Y.  
August 18-September 1—Myopia Hunt Club, Hamilton, Mass., and Dedham County and Polo Club, Dedham, Mass.  
September 1-18—Miami Valley Hunt and Polo Club, Dayton, Ohio.  
September 15-22—Onwentsia Club, Lake Forest, Ill.

At the annual meeting of the Polo Association Mr. Harry Payne Whitney, the foremost patron of the game in the world, was chosen honorary chairman. It is expected that Mr. Whitney's large spirit of sportsmanship will imbue the management with more enthusiasm and enterprise than it has enjoyed in several years. Almost anticipatory of the incident was the announcement of a large number of new players, principally from officers of the army, the total players now being 1,926, as against 1,151 in 1921, or an addition of 475 players, the army increase being from 379 to 697, an increase of 318.

It was decided to send no team to the Olympic games in 1924, principally because English and other foreign teams are expected to challenge for the American Cup and play here that year. Individual teams may go to the Olympic games of their own accord and under association approval.

Louis E. Stoddard was re-elected chairman and J. Ford Johnson, Jr., was named as treasurer to succeed W. R. Grace, resigned. J. Cheever Cowdin was chosen secretary and the executive committee elected was as follows:

Carleton F. Burke, A. M. Collins, Prentiss L. Coonley, J. Cheever Cowdin, W. Cameron Forbes, J. Ford Johnson, Jr., Colonel John C. Groome, Colonel Julian R. Lindsay,

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

U. S. A.; Devereux Milburn, Dudley P. Rogers, Robert E. Strawbridge, Sr., H. E. Talbot, Jr., J. Watson Webb, and W. Averell Harriman.

The Senior Championship will not be played for during 1923. The open championship, awarded to the Meadowbrook Club, Westbury, L. I., will be played on dates in the fall to be selected later. The Junior Championship, won by the army at Narragansett Pier last summer, may go to the Bryn Mawr Polo Club of Bryn Mawr, Pa.

A new championship tournament was established for teams whose aggregate handicaps is not more than twelve goals. This was arranged at the request of western players, and will serve to encourage younger and less experienced players. No date was assigned. The Pacific Coast Championship will be contested for in April.

### DANGEROUS PLAY

We have received an expression of opinion that more danger attaches to the player in America than it does in England. It is stated that of the twenty-eight players composing seven teams at least twenty had an accident or fall during the series of four tournaments. Five of these, namely, one sprained ankle, one sprained knee, one sprained shoulder, one broken rib, and one concussion, entailed a rest of a week or more to the players concerned. This series of mishaps may have formed merely a coincidence of an unfortunate description, and it is only fair to add that in London last season the number of accidents to players was inordinately large. Nobody on that account complained that London polo was becoming more perilous. One player with experience of polo in the United States declares, however, that 50 per cent of the accidents just referred to were attributable to dangerous riding. He does not suggest that the Americans are deliberately foul players, which is certainly not the case. "But," he continues, "when they go into a game they mean to win and ride all out all the time. The accidents are due to excitement and keenness to win, a well-known American characteristic. Even a severe umpire seems unable to check it, and the best and most experienced players are just as prone to commit breaches of the rules as their less experienced confreres."—*The Polo Monthly*.

### SIXTH CAVALRY

Were it not for the exceptionally heavy rainfall during the winter months, one certainly would find it difficult to discover a place more admirably suited for polo than Fort Oglethorpe, but so far rain has prevented only four of our weekly games. The team which established the championship of the Corps Area and the post team participated each Sunday in very spirited contests in which the people of Chattanooga and vicinity are showing much interest and are lending us a great deal of support. As the weather becomes warmer we find it difficult to accommodate the tremendous crowds. Already there has been formed a committee of leading citizens of Chattanooga to look into the matter of sending a suitably mounted officer of the Sixth Cavalry or of Chattanooga's host of Reserves to Washington this year to compete for a place on the Junior Championship team.

We have two fairly good fields now; one turf, which can be used only occasionally during the winter and never in damp weather, and one skimmed field which is available almost always, except when it is very wet. However, the Park Commissioner has granted permission to build a new field, which promises to be most excellent, just in rear of the Officers' Club in Chickamunga Park. Here the drainage is excellent and there is ample space to take care of the crowds.

At present our pony string is depleted somewhat, but to overcome this difficulty each officer, all being active polo players, is assigned a promising mount to train, and in this way we hope soon to be able suitably to mount all four of our teams.

## POLO

On Washington's Birthday, the American Legion Team, consisting of Mr. Stanley Snyder, Mr. Frank Herron, Captain A. H. Truxes, Capt. W. V. Ochs, First Lieutenant F. O. Dewey, and Colonel D. D. Tompkins, went down to defeat, 10 to 4, at the hands of the Sixth Cavalry Team, consisting of Major C. W. Foster, Captain Renn Lawrence, First Lieutenant A. E. Forsyth, Captain W. C. Burt, and Colonel Kimball.

We have had very urgent invitations recently, in which our teams were promised all expenses except railroad fare to visit Pinehurst and Camden for the spring tournaments, but owing to the close proximity of the time for our departure for Camp McClellan for the summer training activities it has been impossible to accept.

A scheme is well under way now to have a tournament at home before the departure for Camp McClellan, in which the city of Chattanooga will enter a team and the regiment two teams.

The training period at Camp McClellan is being looked forward to with much anticipation; especially is this so because of the exceptional promise of good polo there. We are sending the same team back this season that won two Corps Area championships last season, and are expecting it to come home with even more trophies than are now piled up to its credit.

### TWELFTH CAVALRY

The 12th Cavalry is taking great interest in polo this year. Squads of Twelfth officers at Fort Brown and of seven officers at Fort Ringgold have been conducting daily practices for the past three months.

The first match game between the two squadrons was played on February 22, at Fort Ringgold on a heavy field, with a score of 5 to 4 in favor of the 2d Squadron.

The schedule of the full tournament called for games between the 2d Squadron, 12th Cavalry, and the 1st Squadron, 4th Cavalry, and also between the 1st Squadron, 12th Cavalry, and the 1st Squadron, 4th Cavalry, but heavy rains prevented the other two games.

A regimental team composed of Captains Houghton and Wall and Lieutenants Barriger and Maddox, with Captain Dukes and Lieutenant Thomas as substitutes, will go to Fort McIntosh March 16 to compete in the polo tournament at that station.

### THIRTEENTH CAVALRY

The regiment recently won the Indoor Polo Tournament, held in connection with the Western National Stock Show, by defeating the Denver Reds 2 to 0 and the Denver Whites 5 to 0.

Nineteen officers of the regiment are devoting one hour a day to the training of new prospects for the coming season. So far, all work has been done in the riding hall, due to weather and ground conditions, but it is expected that the middle of March will bring suitable conditions for outside work.

The coming year will see the regiment represented by approximately the same team as last year, with the exception of No. 1. Captain Bruce M. McDill played No. 1 last year, but was discharged upon his own request December 15, 1922.





## Cavalry School Notes

THE CAVALRY SCHOOL—Fort Riley, Kansas  
Brigadier General Malin Craig, Commandant

The National Guard and Reserve Officers' Class, consisting of twenty-four officers from almost as many States, completed their three months' course and received diplomas on December 15. If this class carried away with them as favorable an impression of Riley as Riley retains of them, they will be valuable agents in "selling" the cavalry to the people. At the completion of their course an exhibition ride was given indoors, which included suppling exercises and jumping, and which reflected great credit upon themselves and their instructors. A scheduled pistol and saber exhibition outdoors was called off, due to bad weather.

The Field Officers' Class, now known as the Advanced Class, arrived on January 10, and consists of thirty-six officers of the grade of colonel, lieutenant-colonel, and major. They are quartered in Ward Hall, formerly known as Building 300, and have become an integral part of the school and post activities.

The instructors of the Department of Horsemanship gave an exhibition ride in honor of the Advanced Class shortly after their arrival. The horses used in the ride were equipped with white bridles, reins, halter shanks, and saddle pads and their legs were bandaged, one diagonal in red, the other in white, in order that spectators might more easily follow the legs in movements, such as two-track work and gallop departs. Later, the instructors gave an exhibition ride in McClellan saddles, which included school-work and jumping. The seat taught on flat saddles was adhered to and gave every appearance of being equally as applicable to McClellan saddles as to flat saddles.

The Troop Officers' Class has given several exhibition rides during the winter, each half of the class giving first a ride on the jumpers, consisting of suppling exercises and jumping, with and without stirrups, and later a ride on schooled horses. The different platoons and each half of the class are now engaged in platoon and half-class competitions on remounts, preparatory to giving exhibitions of the work accomplished on these horses during the year.

The Second Year Class gave a demonstration of jumping, using six of the twelve most difficult jumpers in the school, selected as such by members of the Troop Officers' Class. The ease with which these officers handled the horses and their perfect seats and hands were a revelation to members of the Troop Officers' Class, many of whom retain impressions of none too pleasant rides on *Günt*, *Lorah*, *O'Keane*, *Funston*, *Ysleta*, and *Chamberlain*.

Indoor polo has been played in the hall on Sunday afternoons preparatory to later work outdoors. The mild winter has furnished enjoyable hunting weather. A recent innovation are the hunt breakfasts, held at the conclusion of each Sunday morning hunt, at the polo bungalow. The pack has been augmented by the addition of fourteen hounds presented to the Fort Riley Hunt by the Coblenz Hunt Club.

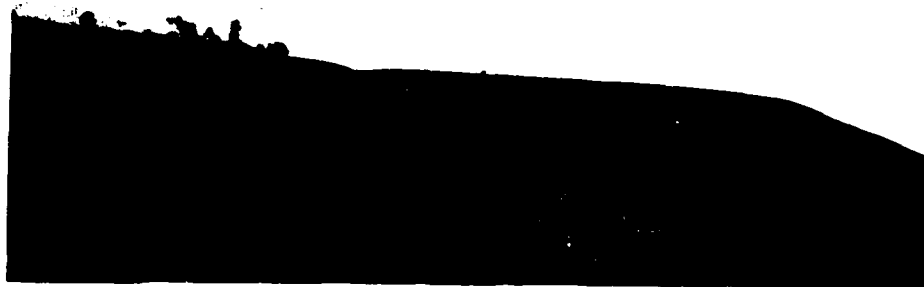
The Officers' Bowling League has completed its season, with five teams tied for first place, namely, Headquarters, 2d Cavalry, Junior Instructors, and Troop Officers, No. 1 and No. 2 Teams. The tie is now being played off.

On February 3 there was a Black and White Ball for the benefit of the Army Relief Society. All guests were requested to attend in black and white costumes and six very enjoyable cabaret acts were presented by local talent. These included "Dance of the Wooden Soldiers," "Pony Ballet," "Black Face Singing and Dancing Act," "Ball Room Dance," and "Hawaiian Singing and Dancing." Over \$800 was cleared for the Army Relief.



POLO

Sculpture in Bronze by Herbert Haseltine



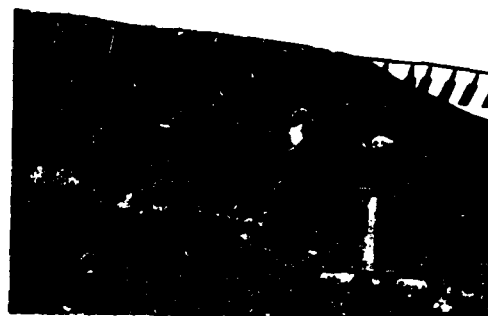
THE DEWEY TROPHY COMPETITION AT THE CAVALRY SCHOOL 1922

**MOPPING UP.**—In a demonstration for Major-General Hines, a platoon of student officers with the saber attacking a demoralized enemy.

**DISCUSSING THE DEWEY TROPHY COMPETITION.**—Major-General John L. Hines (right), Brigadier-General Malin Craig, Commandant of the Cavalry School (center), and Major Sloan Doak.

**HOW WOULD YOU LIKE TO SEE THIS COMING AT YOU?**—The saber moving at sixteen miles an hour is far more deadly than the bayonet.

**CAVALRY CHARGE.**—A picked platoon of student officers giving a demonstration for Major-General John L. Hines, using ball ammunition. The targets under which the platoon charges can be seen at the left of the picture.



## MARQUIS' FAMOUS SADDLE EQUIPMENT

(Successor to RAOUL DUVAL, Saumur, France)

By special arrangement with M. Marquis, the U. S. Cavalry Association is prepared to accept orders for and deliver the following articles. Prices will closely approximate those given here; there may be small variations, due to rates of exchange, stamp taxes, transportation, consul's certificates in cases of large orders, etc. The duty of 35 per cent is included in these prices. The Association has been unable to get this equipment entered free of duty, since there is no provision in law for doing so. Due to the narrow margin of capital on which the Association operates, a deposit will be welcome upon ordering, and full payment will be required upon notification that equipment is in the possession of the Association and is ready for shipment to the customer.

### FRENCH OFFICER'S FIELD SET

Military Saddle, Leather Panels.....	\$83.00
Pommel Pouches, pair.....	18.50
Straps for Package.....	3.00
Grain Bag.....	3.00
Side Bag, each.....	8.75
Saber Carrier.....	2.75
Stirrup Straps, pair.....	5.00
French Regulation Military Girth.....	4.00
French Regulation Military Bridle with Halter.....	18.50
French Regulation Military Bit.....	3.00
French Regulation Military Snaffle.....	1.50
French Regulation Military Stirrups, pair.....	3.00
Name Plate, brass.....	.75

### SAUMUR TRAINING EQUIPMENT

Saumur Saddle.....	60.00
Dee Ring, each.....	.25
Stirrup Straps, pair.....	5.00
Leather Girth.....	12.00
Ring Martingale.....	5.00
Breastplate.....	6.50
Standing Martingale for Polo.....	7.75
Saumur Bridle.....	11.50
Saumur Noseband.....	2.25
Snaffle Headpiece.....	4.50
Plain Rein, each.....	3.75
Plaited or Twisted Rein, each.....	5.75
Saumur Bit.....	3.00
Snaffle.....	1.25
Chantilly or Verdun Big Snaffle.....	3.75
Knife-edge Stirrups, pair.....	5.00
Saumur Whip.....	5.00
Solid Nickel Spurs.....	2.00
Spur Straps, set.....	.50
Head Stable Collar.....	5.25
Stable Rope.....	.50
Watering Bridle.....	5.25
Breaking Cavesson.....	4.50 to 5.25
Lounge, Rope.....	2.25 to 2.75
Lounge, Web.....	5.25
Sam Browne Belt.....	6.50
Map Case.....	5.25
Dubbin (grease for saddle), tin.....	.75
Brecknell's Saddle Soap, can.....	.50

Address: UNITED STATES CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

1624 H Street Northwest

Washington, D. C.

## First National Bank

Junction City, Kansas

The only United States Depository for Disbursing Officers' Accounts adjacent to Fort Riley.

Over Thirty Years' Experience  
with Army Accounts

*The Bank of Courtesy and Service*

### OFFICERS

Thomas B. Kennedy, *President.*  
James V. Humphrey, *Vice-President.*  
O. O. Clark, *Vice-President.*  
W. F. Miller, *Vice-Pres. and Cashier.*  
E. J. Denver, *Assistant Cashier.*

## The B. Rockwell Merchandise & Grain Co.

JUNCTION CITY, KANSAS

Established 1865.

Incorporated 1892.

### WHOLESALE GROCERS RETAIL GROCERS

Fresh Meats  
Dry Goods  
Women's Wear  
Shoes  
Luggage  
Bargain Basement  
Grain

57 YEARS' CONTINUOUS SERVICE  
TO THE ARMY

## EISENHOWER'S

622 North Washington St.  
JUNCTION CITY, KANSAS

*Drugs*

*Eastman Kodaks*

*Developing and Finishing*

*Fountain Service*

*Fine Candies*

*Perfumes*

(Will always cash a check for a Cavalry Officer)

*V. W. Faber*

## CAVALRY BREECHES

JUNCTION CITY, KANSAS

## Good Eats Cafe

607 N. Washington St.

Junction City, Kansas

The Junction Cafe which caters to  
Army trade

## Regimental Notes

As this number of the JOURNAL goes to press a few of our regiments have not been heard from. It is believed that this department is of special interest to our regular officer personnel and of no little value in enabling all our regiments to keep advised of the activities of regiments in other stations. Its maximum value is only attained when all our regiments report on the specially interesting developments of the past few months. Any gaps in the roll such as exist in this number are consequently very regrettable.

### SECOND CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas Colonel Charles A. Romeyn, Commanding

During December the regiment, less Troop E, at Camp Funston, completed mounted and dismounted pistol firing with very satisfactory results. Due to the unusually mild weather during the past quarter, the troops were able to work out of doors a great deal of the time and were able to have mounted drills and outside horse exercise frequently. The weather permitted equitation periods scheduled for the riding hall to be held in the sand rings, allowing both men and horses the benefit of open-air exercise.

An event of particular note during December was the participation of the entire regiment in a hunt for the lost child of a farmer living about fifteen miles east of Fort Riley. The regiment, mounted, left the post at 1:00 p. m., December 11, and returned at 11:00 p. m., having covered about fifty miles. On December 13 the search was renewed. The regiment left the post at 8:30 a. m. and returned at 3:00 p. m., covering a distance of about thirty miles. During the entire time the troops were on this duty the weather was very cold and they were exposed continually for as long as ten hours at a stretch. The participation of the regiment was of great assistance to the neighboring civilians and was very much appreciated.

January 17 a platoon of Troop A gave an exhibition ride in the East Riding Hall. It was witnessed by a number of post people, including a number of instructors of the department of horsemanship. February 14 a platoon of Troop C gave an exhibition ride in the West Riding Hall. The men rode with blankets and surcingles and snaffle bits.

February 7 the communication platoon of Headquarters Troop gave a demonstration in the West Riding Hall of radio signaling, which included removing the apparatus from pack-horse, setting it up, and sending a message in three minutes and twenty seconds. January 17 Headquarters Troop made a practice march of 24 miles, during which the platoon established communication by radio with airplanes and with regimental headquarters. Practice marches of 20 to 25 miles were made by Troops C and G.

The routine work for the quarter ending February 28 included mounted drill, horse exercise and equitation in the forenoon and dismounted drill and non-commissioned officers' school in the afternoon. A regular schedule is maintained for the use of the sand rings and great interest is being taken in equitation and jumping by both officers and men. A feature of horse exercise is the leading of the troop over varied ground, down slides, through canyons, and over rim rock.

March 1 Troop E, which had been on duty at Camp Funston since September 1, 1922, was relieved by Troop F, and joined the regiment at Fort Riley.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

### THIRD CAVALRY

#### Headquarters and Second Squadron, Fort Myer, Virginia

On March 1 Colonel William C. Rivers relinquished the command of the 3d Cavalry and the Post of Fort Myer, which he had held since March, 1920. The squadron and post have been commanded since March 1 by Major J. M. Wainwright.

Colonel Rivers' departure is greatly regretted by the officers and men of the regiment and their best wishes follow him to his new station at Governors Island, N. Y., where he becomes Inspector General for the 2d Corps Area.

On February 22 the 2d Squadron paraded at Alexandria, Va., in honor of Washington's Birthday. This celebration, by what may quite properly be called General Washington's "home town," is held annually, and this year was participated in by the Army, Navy, and Marine Corps and a large number of civic and fraternal organizations.

February 23 a special exhibition drill was given in the post riding hall for the members of Congress and their families and friends. The retiring Assistant Secretary of War, Honorable J. Mayhew Wainwright, received the salutes of the organizations participating and paid them a high compliment.

On March 10 the Assistant Secretary of War, Honorable Dwight F. Davis, visited the post officially and met the officers of the regiment. March 22 a post hop was given as a farewell party in honor of Colonel and Mrs. Rivers.

Prior to Colonel Rivers' departure a garrison review was tendered him, and the officers of the 3d Cavalry presented him with a silver water pitcher engraved with the coat of arms of the regiment.

March 23 the last of the public exhibition drills took place and was attended by the Assistant Secretary of War and Major General Henry T. Allen.

#### First Squadron—Fort Ethan Allen, Vermont

##### Major H. E. Mann, Commanding

December 15, 1922, an exhibition was given in the riding hall for the residents of Burlington and the garrison. The 1st Battalion, 7th Field Artillery, participated with the squadron. Troop A exhibited mounted pyramids and fancy riding. Troop B furnished a mounted drill and exhibition ride. C Troop's part of the program was an attractive musical drill. The use of the squadron radio pack outfit was ably demonstrated by the Squadron Headquarters Detachment.

There have been daily classes in equitation for the ladies of the Post, officers, and non-commissioned officers.

The schools have made very satisfactory progress, especially in demolition and radio work.

The weather has been severe, but has not prevented outdoor activities and sports.

The Post Basket-ball League furnished many exciting nights for the garrison. Troop A, 3d Cavalry, defeated the Service Battery, 7th Field Artillery, in the play-off for the post championship after a thrilling game.

The squadron is devoting all energies to proper preparation for the instruction work next summer.

#### FOURTH CAVALRY (Less First Squadron)—Fort McIntosh, Texas

##### Colonel Howard R. Hickok, Commanding

Fourth Cavalry officers were the guests of the officers of the Mexican forces stationed at Nuevo Laredo during a fiesta which was held January 14-17, inclusive, to celebrate the opening of a new military maneuver and athletic field. Exhibition drills, athletic

## REGIMENTAL NOTES

contests, horse-racing and jumping were the features of the first three days. The drills were well executed and the athletic events were keenly contested. On the fourth day a banquet was given by General Amaro to his officers and we were invited to attend. After the banquet a polo team, captained by General Amaro, played the 4th Cavalry team. We got away to a good start and won 7 to 2.

A bal masque was held on the eve of St. Valentine's Day.

An air maneuver, with firing machine-guns and dropping aerial bombs, was held here February 9, under the direction of the Assistant Chief of Air Service, 26 planes from Kelly Field participating. After the maneuver General Mitchell and all officers with him were the garrison's guests at luncheon.

The 12th Cavalry invited us to participate in a Horse Show and Polo Tournament at Fort Ringgold, Texas, on February 20, 21, and 22, 7 officers and 17 enlisted men attending. Rain interfering and an indefinite stay being impracticable, our team had to return home without playing a single game.

March 3 was Organization Day and a memorial ceremony was held on Sunday evening to celebrate our 68th birthday. An interesting program was rendered. The regimental commander spoke on the History of the Regiment, the famous officers who had served with it, our coat of arms and its significance.

A horse show will be held here March 17 and a polo tournament on the 16th and 18th. The 5th and 12th Cavalry were both invited to attend, but only the 12th has accepted, the proximity of target season, etc., preventing the 5th Cavalry from accepting.

A "Musical Movie" will be held here on March 16 for the benefit of the Army Relief.

#### First Squadron—Fort Sam Houston, Texas

##### Major R. M. Cheney, Commanding

On Christmas morning the officers and ladies of the First Squadron held a paper chase. All officers and ladies at Fort Sam Houston and in this vicinity were invited; also all civilian friends from San Antonio.

The hunt assembled at the Mounted Service Club at 10:00 a. m. A fine run was had through the eastern part of the reservation and down the Salado Creek. The riders then returned to the club for a hunt breakfast, where a silver loving cup was presented by Brigadier-General William R. Smith, post commander, to the winner, Mrs. George C. Charlton, wife of Major George C. Charlton, post executive officer.

January 29 and 30 the squadron held the annual saber test. The squadron has played polo during the past two months with the 15th Field Artillery and 12th Field Artillery teams. During December, January, and February the squadron has played in the Fort Sam Houston Basket-ball League.

January 6 the squadron participated, at Pershing Field, in a review of all Fort Sam Houston troops by Brigadier-General Dennis E. Nolan, Commanding General of the Second Division and Fort Sam Houston.

On January 20 the squadron formed part of the escort for the new Corps Area Commander, Major-General E. M. Lewis, and on the same date participated in a review of the 4th Infantry Brigade by Brigadier-General Benjamin Poore.

#### FIFTH CAVALRY—Fort Clark, Texas

##### Colonel William D. Forsyth, Commanding

On February 3d the regiment became a part of the First Cavalry Division, having replaced the 10th Cavalry as a component of the First Cavalry Brigade. On the same date the Headquarters and Headquarters Troop, First Cavalry Brigade, and the First

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Machine Gun Squadron arrived at Fort Clark for station. Their arrival has stimulated activities at the Post and insures local competition in baseball, football, polo, and boxing as well as things purely military.

Troop E was the high point winner in the January mounted field meet, thereby obtaining permanent possession of the Regimental Commander's Cup, having won it at three different meets during the past year.

Lieutenant George, the Athletic Officer, has called for candidates for the regimental baseball team, and judging by the number responding and the interest displayed by the candidates we should experience little difficulty in developing a winning team this year.

On March 3d the regiment celebrated its 68th birthday in a manner befitting the occasion. At 9:00 A. M. the regiment was assembled and engaged in appropriate exercises, including an address by Lieutenant Colonel J. T. Sayles, 5th Cavalry, on the achievements of the regiment. The remainder of the morning was devoted to a mounted field meet. In the afternoon a polo game was played between two officers' teams. In the evening the officers held the regimental dinner dance and the enlisted men a hop.

### SIXTH CAVALRY—Fort Oglethorpe, Ga.

Colonel R. J. Fleming, Commanding

With the return of the last troops from the target range in December, 1922, the winter program of training assumed full sway, each officer and soldier being on duty each day until 4:00 P. M. The old regiment has changed; the whole post has changed. One rarely passes a man these days without a marksmanship badge on, or a troop which is not "qualified" in musketry, cavalry drill, mounted and dismounted, scouting and patrolling, use of saber, ceremonies; in short, in everything a real cavalry regiment should be able to do. And in addition almost every troop has a polo squad, one of which finds time to cross mallets with another about once a week.

Not only did the regiment win two first places in the corps area boxing tournament, but also it has been able to furnish bowling teams which have whitewashed everything in this vicinity. The officers' bowling team succeeded in downing the enlisted mens' team by 42 pins and was in turn trimmed by a picked team from Troop F by 42 pins.

On February 8th, the officers of the post were the host to the reserve officers of Chattanooga and near-by towns at an informal smoker. During the course of the evening speeches were made by Colonel R. J. Fleming, Colonel D. D. Tompkins, Colonel Ochs, Mayor A. W. Chambliss, of Chattanooga, Major Dy Vergy, of Monteagle, and other men prominent in the military and civil life of the community. Refreshments and smokes were served.

The regular bi-weekly hops have been resumed and are largely attended by both the officers and their ladies and people of Chattanooga.

On Wednesday night of each week the gymnasium is turned over to the officers and ladies for their use. It is always a much enjoyed evening, during which basketball, indoor baseball, bowling and gymnasium classes are thoroughly and energetically participated in. Here again, some of the younger set of Chattanooga spend their evening and enjoy the spirit of the "Rampant Unicorn," after which tea is served by one of the post ladies.

On Washington's Birthday, Judge Kenesaw M. Landis was the guest of Colonel and Mrs. Fleming. The Judge threw in the first ball of the game between American Legion and Sixth Cavalry Polo Teams.

Opportunity is taken here to say that in justice to Captain W. C. Steiger, he was not in command of the Service Troop while that organization was on the rifle range in November as stated in our notes in the January issue.

On February 24th, the regiment was paraded for the regimental commander, who took occasion to congratulate the winners of trophies for excellence in marksmanship and to award prizes to organizations and individuals.

## REGIMENTAL NOTES

### SEVENTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel Walter C. Short, Commanding

The First Squadron, under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel Frank T. McNarney, left Marfa, Texas, January 21, returning to Fort Bliss, Texas, by marching, arriving January 30. All animals arrived in excellent condition, and although this march was made during rainy winter weather, there were no sore backs during the entire march. All animals were fed and watered and the men given hot meals three times daily. One truck was assigned to each troop to haul the kitchen equipment, ten days' rations, picket line, and water trough. These trucks were sent ahead and the camp established long before the arrival of the troops, picket lines being up and a hot meal ready for the men. This added greatly to the comfort of the command and contributed largely to its health and contentment. There was no sickness and the march was enjoyed by all. Total distance marched was 200 miles. This squadron had been stationed at Marfa, Texas, since September, 1921, and in addition to performing the usual duties sent patrols to various places each month, marching a total distance of about 450 miles monthly. Upon departure of the squadron from Marfa it was presented with a handsome silver cup by the Chamber of Commerce and citizens of Marfa as a token of friendship and co-operation.

The entire regiment is now stationed in the post proper of Fort Bliss and many old members of pre-war times are rejoining.

Captains H. R. Gay and R. E. Craig were selected as members of a polo team of five officers to participate in a polo tournament in California. They left last week, with three enlisted men and some of the best polo ponies of the regimental string, and will be absent for a period of some two months.

The Remount Association of America has presented a \$700 Thompson Bronze Trophy to the regiment, the only one in the service given to a regiment, to be contested for within the regiment. This trophy is to be awarded in November to the organization receiving the highest score during the period from March to November, 1923, the points to be considered being enumerated in Bulletin 17, War Department, 1920. This contest is resulting in a friendly rivalry between organizations and gives promise of keen competition before the close of the period.

The Regimental Basket-ball Team won the Fort Bliss Basket-ball Tournament, defeating the fast team of the Air Service in the final game by a score of 20 to 15. When the final whistle sounded the score was tied—15 to 15. An additional period of five minutes was necessary to break the tie, with the result as stated above. The finals consisted of series of three games between the two teams having the highest score after each team had played every other team one game. The Air Service won the first game of the series, 15 to 7. The 7th Cavalry won the second game, 19 to 16. The third and final game was a nip-and-tuck affair and one of the fastest games ever played at this station, being a fine exhibition of fast playing and good teamwork. During the tournament the 7th Cavalry won 9 out of 10 games played, the only one lost being the first game of the final series.

### EIGHTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel James H. Reeves, Commanding

The past quarter opened with the annual 8th Cavalry New Year's parade. This formation was planned and looked forward to by the enlisted men for weeks in advance. It took the nature of a Mardi Gras festival. Singular, comic, and gruesome costumes and unique equipment were used in the "take-offs" on organizations and individuals of

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

the post. The column was headed by the regimental band; next followed characters representing the Old Year and the child of the New Year, 1923. Each troop then presented its stunt. Every unit of the parade was a surprise. In its movement about the post thousands witnessed the spectacle, there being parked about the camp hundreds of cars from El Paso filled with persons who saw this much-talked-of specialty of the 8th Horse for the first time.

The regular course of training for a regiment of cavalry has been followed through the quarter, with all available men attending the drills and formations. The addition of about 200 recruits heightened the morale of the organization. These newcomers were trained in special units and then added to the troops, where they were quickly assimilated into the spirit of the regiment.

Moving into the present camp area just before Christmas, the regiment has had much additional work to do in construction and replacement of camp equipment. Barracks, stables, and corrals have been renovated, improved, and painted. While the fatigue has been exceptionally heavy because of these duties, the morale of the organization has continued excellent.

Among the improvements to the camp is an excellent outdoor riding hall, equipped with jumps, tan-bark course, and a gallery for observers. Near the riding hall is a more extended riding and jumping course, with all the regulation jumps and several additional ones and the saber course. With this additional equipment the courses and materials for equitation and the training of mounts are compactly located.

The most interesting athletic activities for the winter have been of the massed variety and boxing. The "Boots and Spurs Club," our own regimental organization, is well known throughout the camp and in El Paso as the center for the promotion of soldier fights. Its boxing exhibitions are always an attraction. For a nominal admission, the soldier or the civilian may see good bouts, with no stalling, at the Boots and Spurs Club.

Among the special activities of the regiment which might be mentioned are the weekly meetings of the Board of Governors, which plans the recreational life for the enlisted personnel; the weekly sessions of the Women's Club for wives of soldiers, which contributes to the social life and cultural development of the women of the command, and the semi-monthly enlisted men's dances at the Post Hostess House. All these activities are enthusiastically and helpfully supported by the command at large.

For the officers and their families there is a monthly regimental dinner at the Post Officers' Club. This has come to be one of the largest social affairs of the post. After-dinner speeches on subjects interesting to the officer personnel and dancing make up the program.

General religious services and programs are conducted by the regimental chaplain on Sunday evenings. These are interesting and varied. The attendance to these formations has been on the increase for some months. Sunday School for children is held Sunday mornings, and Wednesday afternoons a songfest formation is assembled. At the latter, in addition to the singing of popular and standard soldier songs, there is a short speech by some noted visitor. These items are mentioned as a part of the community life of the regiment.

### NINTH CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas

Major J. F. Richmond, Commanding

The regiment arrived at Fort Riley, Kansas, from the Philippine Islands on November 16, 1922, with one officer, 1 master sergeant, 6 first sergeants, 4 staff sergeants, 27 sergeants, 25 corporals, and 145 privates and privates first class, and immediately

## REGIMENTAL NOTES

absorbed the Cavalry School Detachment, consisting of 2 officers, 3 first sergeants, 18 sergeants, 23 corporals, and 267 privates and privates first class. The property and funds of the two commands were consolidated and the reorganization of the regiment in accordance with the tables of organization for the 9th Cavalry was at once completed, with Headquarters and Service Troop combined as one troop, 1st and 2d Squadron detachments, and two squadrons of three troops each.

A regimental consolidated mess was instituted at once, utilizing the mess equipment of the old Cavalry School Detachment, adding every modern device for conservation of labor and improvement of the mess, and installing in the basement an up-to-date modern bakery for pastry, rolls, and bread.

The problem of housing the families of the married men was solved with the help of Company A, 9th Engineers, and the Quartermaster, and new quarters were built for them out of salvage lumber from Camp Funston. Rileyville, as the soldiers call it, formerly known as "The Colony," now has a thriving population of fifty families.

The regiment then attacked the problem of providing a suitable Service Club. Higher authority granted the use of the old receiving ward of the temporary war hospital, which had not been sold, and, under the enthusiastic direction of Chaplain James L. McBride, in five weeks a beautiful Club House, with an auditorium seating five hundred, with a stage, moving-picture booth and machines, a polished dance floor, a well-equipped gymnasium, with boxing ring, lockers, and shower bath, a reading-room, a pool-room, a refreshment bar, check-room, chaplain's office, ladies' dressing-room, and four guest-rooms, had been completed.

Movies, dances, "stunts," band concerts, and boxing tournaments are the weekly programs, with something doing every night.

On January 26 a big 'possum hunt was held, with teams from each troop competing. Six 'possums were caught, A and B Troops being the winners. A pair of thoroughbred coon dogs is on the way from Tennessee to join the next hunt.

The regiment entertained the officers and enlisted personnel of Company A, 9th Engineers, at dinner February 22, 1923. Music was furnished by the 9th Cavalry Band. A regimental field meet was the feature of the afternoon. Headquarters and Service Troop, 9th Cavalry, won the meet.

The 9th Cavalry farm is now in successful operation, with four cows, 65 hogs, and 14 acres of tilled soil plowed and ready for planting. A new modern hog-house and a "coon-dog" kennel are now in process of construction.

Plans are now being made and equipment drawn for the preparatory exercises and gallery practice preceding the regular season range practice for 1923. Considerable interest is shown in this program, as the regiment did not fire in 1922, and a large number of men from the old Cavalry School Detachment have not fired for many years.

Lieutenant Kirk Broadus, 26th Cavalry, writes from the Philippines:

It is with deep regret that we have learned of the death at Fort Riley, Kansas, on November 17, 1922, of First Sergeant William Hipsber, Service Troop, 9th Cavalry. With the death of Sergeant Hipsber there passes one of those men of the army that will be remembered by every one who knew him, a man who was a jewel in a thousand. I had the pleasure of having Sergeant Hipsber under my command for more than a year of the last years of his service, and I unhesitatingly say that I have never met a truer soldier in every word than Sergeant Hipsber. In his troop he was his troop commander's right hand—a man who could be relied upon at any and all times. No matter what the task was or what time the call for duty came, Sergeant Hipsber was ready to answer the call. He was firm in his orders, considerate of every man in the troop, and a father to all. He was the only man, with one exception (Corporal Peters, Troop E, 9th Cavalry),

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

who was left of those of the 9th Cavalry who stormed the heights of San Juan Hill. He was a gentleman and was loved and respected by both officers and men. He was a leader of his race and one who was always striving for its betterment. He leaves a link that can never be filled. He was to be retired on the day that he died.

### ELEVENTH CAVALRY—Presidio of Monterey, California

Colonel John M. Jenkins, Commanding

Gloom prevailed because of our prolonged and distasteful experience with glanders, during which several private and a good many Government mounts were destroyed. However, about February 1 the situation cleared and the quarantine was lifted, much to every one's relief.

Troop G, which in the meantime had returned from San Francisco, was not permitted to enter the post, but was compelled to camp at Del Monte for about a month. This troop then hurriedly re-equipped for the field and left February 6 for a six-months' tour at Camp Hearn, Imperial Beach. The trip of 514 miles was made comfortably in 22 days. Troop F, which has been at Camp Hearn for two years, was relieved by G and is at present en route to this station by marching.

The regiment has received many recruits since December 1 and is now lacking only about 60 men of its full quota. They have all been undergoing intensive recruit instruction under the guidance of Lieutenants Noel and Sand.

Tryouts for the cavalry pistol and rifle teams have been in progress for several weeks. The pistol tryouts are about completed and an elimination rifle course is being fired at present. There were 10 men on the pistol squad and 14 are firing the rifle. Weather conditions for both have been very favorable.

While our polo team was south in February several of the younger polo hopefuls got busy and constructed a practice polo field on the post. The need for such a thing has been felt for a long time, as it is often impracticable to use the Del Monte fields. While the field is small and not absolutely level, it serves its purpose admirably.

In February the polo team, consisting of Major Chandler, Captain J. T. Pierce, Captain Wilkinson, Captain Rogers, and Lieutenant Lipman, journeyed to the south for the tourneys at Pasadena and Riverside. They left here without having had any stick-and-ball practice this year and the horses were scarcely in condition to play. Considering these facts, the showing made against these teams was very creditable.

Two games were played at Midwick with following results:

11th Cavalry, 10; Midwick, 19.

11th Cavalry, 13; Midwick, 14 1 extra period.

Three games at Riverside with following results:

11th Cavalry, 5; Riverside Seniors, 7 4 periods, no handicap.

11th Cavalry, 5; Riverside Juniors, 2 4 periods, no handicap.

11th Cavalry, 8; Riverside Juniors, 4.

11th Cavalry, 9; Denver, 5.

There was much horse trading—selling, buying, and loaning—between our players and civilians on this trip with the result that the horseflesh of our string was materially benefited and increased, both in quality and quantity.

Our new practice field is nearly in constant use. Slow games are played on it three times a week, and at present the first team lines up against some fast team at Del Monte about once a week.

All are looking forward expectantly to the big Del Monte Tournament, which takes place March 23 to April 15. Teams from all over the Pacific coast will be represented, as well as Fort Bliss and the team from Honolulu. Competition between the three army teams will be especially keen.

## REGIMENTAL NOTES

### TWELFTH CAVALRY—Fort Brown, Fort Ringgold, and Sam Fordyce, Texas Colonel Sedgwick Rice, Commanding

A successful and interesting horse show was conducted at Fort Ringgold February 22, the 2d Squadron, Headquarters, and Service Troops of the 4th Cavalry, stationed at Fort McIntosh, participating with all units of the 12th Cavalry. The original program contemplated three polo games, but rains restricted the events to the horse show proper and one polo game, this being between the 1st and 2d Squadrons of the 12th Cavalry, resulting in a score of 5 to 4 in favor of the 2d Squadron.

Winners of all events were given silver cups, while the first four places were awarded ribbons. The results were:

Class 1—Enlisted Men's Mounts: First, Private Cornde, Troop C, 12th; second, Sergeant Wright, Troop A, 12th; third, Corporal McKowen, Headquarters Troop, 4th; fourth, Sergeant Cole, Troop E, 12th.

Class 2—Officers' Chargers: First, Captain John J. Bohn, 12th; second, Captain Charles S. Miller, 12th; third, First Lieutenant Garnett H. Wilson, 12th; fourth, Captain Lester A. Sprinkle, 12th.

Class 3—Enlisted Men's Jumping: First, Private Cornde, Troop C, 12th; second, Sergeant Brock, Troop C, 12th; third, Corporal McGuire, Troop G, 12th; fourth, Sergeant Yezerski, Troop A, 12th.

Class 4—Officers' Jumping: First, Chaplain Ralph W. Rogers, Fort Ringgold; second, Captain Oran A. Palmer, 12th; third, First Lieutenant W. L. Barriger, 12th; fourth, Captain W. E. Barot, 4th.

Class 5—Enlisted Men's Jumping in Pairs: First, Sergeant Ystenic and Private Ducker, Troop E, 12th; second, Sergeants Wright and Yezerski, Troop A, 12th; third, Sergeant Brock and Private Cornde, Troop C, 12th; fourth, Staff Sergeant Gustaves, 2d Squadron detachment, and Corporal Newton, Troop F, 12th.

Class 6—Officers' Jumping in Pairs: First, Captain C. G. Wall and First Lieutenant W. L. Barriger, 12th; second, Captain W. E. Barott and Second Lieutenant Clovis E. Byers, 4th; third, Captain John J. Bohn and First Lieutenant G. H. Wilson, 12th; fourth, Chaplain R. W. Rogers, Fort Ringgold, and Second Lieutenant A. J. Hart, 12th.

Class 7—High Jump: First, Private Lovern, 2d Squadron Detachment, 12th; second, Sergeant Merritt, Troop F, 12th; third, Sergeant Yezerski, Troop A, 12th; fourth, Corporal McGuire, Troop G, 12th.

Class 8—Ladies' Mounts: First, Mrs. Raymond C. Blatt, Fort Ringgold; second, Mrs. John P. Scott, Fort Brown; third, Mrs. John J. Bohn, Fort Brown; fourth, Mrs. W. E. Barott, Fort McIntosh.

The officials of the show were: Colonel Sedgwick Rice, 12th Cavalry, honorary president; Lieutenant-Colonel O. W. Rethorst, 12th Cavalry, president; Captains R. C. Blatt, C. G. Wall, First Lieutenant B. A. Thomas, 12th Cavalry, and Chaplain R. W. Rogers. Judges: Captains W. E. Barott and R. E. Willoughby, 4th Cavalry; Captains Lester A. Sprinkle, S. A. Townsend, E. F. Dukes, 12th Cavalry, and First Lieutenant Joseph F. Crosby, Veterinary Corps.

Major-General Edward M. Lewis, the Corps Area Commander, conducted informal inspections of the Fort Ringgold and Fort Brown commands January 22 to 26, being accompanied by his aide, Captain C. S. Kilburn, on the first visit as Corps Area Commander.

The regiment is at present engaged in saber practice with prospects of a splendid showing when the final tests are run.

A ladies' equitation class, commenced at Fort Brown the first of the year, has proved very popular. Fourteen ladies have joined the class, and the interest has not waned since the start.



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

### THIRTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming

Colonel Roy B. Harper, Commanding

December 27, 1922, an exhibition horse show was held in the post riding hall to demonstrate the progress that had been made by the Officers' equitation class and to exhibit to the garrison the horses that had been selected to represent the regiment at the Western National Stock Show at Denver, Colo., January 15 to 20. The following classes were shown:

Officers' class on the jumpers, horses selected to go to, Denver shown over a four-foot course, officers' chargers, officers' class on schooled horses, selected horses over the four-foot triple bars. This was the first of the shows to be given at the post this winter, and a large turnout from the garrison, with friends from Cheyenne, were present.

The regiment repeated its success of last year at the Western National Stock Show, winning twenty-two ribbons in the various classes.

A team consisting of Captains Frank L. Whittaker and Herbert E. Watkins, and Lieutenants Theodore E. Voigt and Escher C. Burkhart, all of the 13th Cavalry, took seven jumpers, five polo ponies, and three chargers to Denver to accomplish this successful trip. *Diamond*, a government horse, ridden by Captain Herbert E. Watkins, came into fame by winning the free-for-all high jump, with the remarkable jump of six feet six inches, against a field of fifteen high-class civilian hunters that had been shown successfully at New York, Chicago, and Kansas City earlier this winter. *Diamond's* jump is all the more remarkable when his size is considered; he is fifteen hands two inches and weighs nine hundred pounds. Captain Watkins, with his equipment, weighed one hundred and eighty pounds. *Diamond* also won the five-foot performance class and placed in two other classes.

*Miss Royal*, a government horse, ridden by Captain Frank L. Whittaker, was the most consistent jumper of the show. This horse was entered in ten events and captured nine ribbons, among them being first place in the triple bar, third place in the free-for-all at six feet, third in the five-foot class, and second in the heavy-weight hunter class.

*Boise*, a government horse, ridden by Lieutenant Theodore E. Voigt, took the blue ribbon in the Officers' Charger Class, with *Norfolk Star*, owned and ridden by Captain Herbert E. Watkins, third. *Norfolk Star* is the thoroughbred that Captain Watkins rode in winning the Endurance Race for the Broadmoor Cup, held at Colorado Springs, Colo., last summer. The competition in this year's show was especially keen, there being twenty-eight hunters and jumpers entered in the various events, many of them high-class civilian horses from the stables of Mrs. Loula Long Combs, Mr. Fred Veysey, Mr. Holger Rasmussen, and others.

January 30, 1923, an exhibition ride was held in the post riding hall complimentary to the Governor of the State of Wyoming and the members of the State Legislature.

The following events were held: Riding exhibition by the members of the non-commissioned-officers' equitation class. Parade of horses that represented the regiment at the Western National Horse Show. Each horse wore his ribbons and a short talk was given, telling what each horse accomplished at the show. In order to show the remarkable performance of *Diamond* in winning the high jump at six feet six inches, standards were placed in the hall at six feet six inches and at six feet, and *Diamond* and *Miss Royal* were led under the bars. Those present could hardly believe that the respective horses had cleared the bars at these heights, some distance above their heads. This was followed by an exhibition by the bare-back squad of the non-commissioned officers' equitation class and an indoor polo game.

## THE NATIONAL GUARD

A ladies' equitation class has been recently organized and should be a great success, judging from the amount of enthusiasm now in evidence.

The Post Bowling Tournament was brought to a successful close January 30, with the team from the First Squadron the popular winner. The individual trophy for highest score in a single game during the tournament was won by Sergeant Ferdinand Bucholz, Troop A, with a score of 237. The nearest score to this was 236, rolled by First Sergeant Ira W. Smith, Troop A.

At this date the regiment has won the first two games of basket-ball against the 76th Field Artillery for the post championship. A series of five games has been arranged, the winner to take the best three out of five.

## The National Guard

### NATIONAL GUARD STRENGTH

The committee which was called for the purpose of studying the question of National Guard strength has reported the following conclusions:

That the present approved plan for the organization of the National Guard is sound in principle, and that the development of the National Guard under this plan and the approved policies of the War Department by the Militia Bureau is proceeding in a satisfactory manner, subject to the limitations imposed by funds appropriated by the Congress and by the States.

That, taking into account the financial and economic situation now confronting the States and the United States, the maintenance cost of various strengths, and the amounts heretofore appropriated and that may be appropriated in the near future by the States and by the United States, it is necessary and in the best interests of all concerned that the further development of the National Guard within the United States should be predicated upon a minimum peace strength of 250,000.

That the strength above indicated is the minimum that should be considered or that will permit the National Guard to accomplish its mission in the national defense as contemplated by law and in War Department policies and plans. The strength indicated should be reached as soon as practicable and certainly not later than June 30, 1926.

That sound principles of organization and plans for the employment of the National Guard on mobilization in the event of a national emergency demand that whatever strength is maintained that it be organized and developed into a homogeneous, well-balanced and effective force, to the end that upon mobilization it may be employed as such without reorganization or changes in character of units. The strength above indicated, 250,000 men, will permit of the maintenance of the following organizations within the United States, which should be developed in the order of priority stated:

(a) *At peace strength*, subject to modifications as shown below: 18 infantry divisions, 4 cavalry divisions, 130 companies harbor defense troops, and 12 infantry regiments, special allotments.

(b) *At maintenance strength*, subject to modifications specified in the report: the combat elements of corps, army and G. H. Q. reserve troops now organized or in the process of organization, special allotments to States, and certain units necessary to complete a balanced force.

Included in the 250,000 strength are 4 cavalry division headquarters, 4 cavalry division headquarters troops, 4 cavalry division signal troops, 4 cavalry division ordnance maintenance troops, 4 cavalry division veterinary troops, 4 battalions horsed artillery, 4 battalions combat engineers (horse), 4 ambulance companies (horse-drawn), 4 cavalry division trains, 8 cavalry brigade headquarters, 8 cavalry brigade troops, 16 cavalry regiments, and 8 cavalry machine-gun squadrons.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

The following State allotments of cavalry are noted: Alabama, 579; Colorado, 309; Connecticut, 309; Georgia, 309; Idaho, 509; Illinois, 509; Indiana, 88; Iowa, 1,494; Kansas, 309; Kentucky, 892; Louisiana, 509; Massachusetts, 928; Michigan, 309; Minnesota, 336; New Jersey, 956; New Mexico, 850; New York, 1,886; North Carolina, 405; North Dakota, 528; Ohio, 953; Pennsylvania, 2,521; Rhode Island, 309; South Carolina, 96; South Dakota, 994; Tennessee, 392; Texas, 1,274; Utah, 300; Virginia, 309; Washington, 346; West Virginia, 336; Wisconsin, 2,335; Wyoming, 928. This makes a total of 22,916 cavalry in the National Guard.

The committee concluded further:

That the execution of the above program, including the necessary correspondence and adjustments with the States concerned, is the function of the Militia Bureau. In carrying out the program the Militia Bureau should be guided by the following:

(a) The above strength (250,000) to be apportioned among the States, so far as practicable, in proportion to the number of members of the House of Representatives, provided that provision shall be made for the maintenance of National Guard troops in the District of Columbia as now contemplated by law and provided for in approved policies.

(b) In apportioning the strength indicated above, provision shall be made for the maintenance of all organizations heretofore recognized and for the completion of all organizations in the process of organization on this date and for making effective the program indicated in paragraph 4 above.

(c) The organization of the National Guard, as indicated above, shall be made effective with the minimum number of changes possible in the present approved plan and in the allotments heretofore made.

(d) Under no conditions should any organization now federally recognized, in whole or in part, be changed or converted to another arm or branch of the service, except with the consent of the State concerned, provided that this instruction shall not be construed to prevent the transfer or assignment of any unit of a given arm or branch now assigned to corps, army or G. H. Q. reserve troops to a division which is located in the same corps area.

(e) The organization of all other units called for in the basic plan dated December 30, 1921, and heretofore allotted to the National Guard shall be held in abeyance until the organization stated in paragraph (b) above has been completed.

The above are the essential features of the committee report so far as it will effect the National Guard cavalry. The committee was composed of six officers of the National Guard, who also are commissioned in the Organized Reserve Corps, and five officers of the Regular Army. The report has been approved by the Secretary of War.

In connection with this report it is to be observed that on January 1, 1923, there were 186 cavalry divisional units in the Guard, representing a total strength of 12,135.

### DRILL AND SCHOOL SCHEDULE

Attention is invited to a very completely worked out set of drill schedules for cavalry organizations which has been adopted for the Idaho National Guard. It is too long to publish here, and it may not meet absolutely the requirements of the Guard in other sections. But it may be very useful as a guide and for purposes of comparison. Separate schedules of 45 or more drills are published in the Idaho Military Regulations for 1922 for squadron headquarters detachment, headquarters troop, service troop, and the several platoons of the lettered troops.

These are followed by a lay-out of work for the cavalry N. G. O.'s school and officers' school. Included in the latter is a useful compilation of test questions.

Copies of this useful little pamphlet may probably be obtained by application to the Adjutant General of the State of Idaho.

## The Organized Reserves

### SIXTY-FIRST CAVALRY DIVISION

The organization of the officer personnel within the division has progressed rapidly during the past few weeks. At the present time there are 279 officers assigned and attached to the division, and applications are on file to make a total of over 300. The 301st and 304th Cavalry, the 151st Machine-Gun Squadron, and Division Headquarters and Trains, to which Regular Army executive officers are assigned, have progressed to a point where they are practically complete in personnel. Even the units within the division which have no regular executive officers have been making every effort to complete the total number of officers assigned and have started assignments within the organization itself.

In view of this situation and under instructions from the XII Army Corps, it is believed that this organization has progressed to a point where it is now possible and advisable to begin enlisting non-commissioned officers and specialists for the various units within the division corresponding to the troop. Next to the organization of the officers of the Reserve, the most important duty is to procure suitable non-commissioned officers.

The growth and development of this division has been highly satisfactory. In January, 1922, there were only about fifteen reserve officer members. Riding instruction has progressed in a gratifying manner. Supervised instruction in riding was started during the past year in Buffalo, Rochester, Albany, and New York City. It is believed that at least a third of the officers of the division are consistently engaged in riding at the present time. In this activity the division has had some assistance from outside civilian sources and from National Guard units. At the commencements of the last school year 157 officers signed up for the correspondence course, and the work of the correspondence course has been supplemented by a series of conferences held in New York City and elsewhere. Firing instruction is still another activity which this division has had to its credit during the past year. Officers at both Albany and Rochester have been carrying on this work.

### GENERAL SHANKS COMMENTS ON THE CORRESPONDENCE SCHOOL COURSES

(Letter to the Students in the Fourth Corps Area)

I wish to take this occasion to express my gratitude for your interest in national defense, which led you to enroll in the Corps Area Correspondence School, and to invite your attention to certain phases of the correspondence courses which may have escaped your notice.

Of the approximately 5,000 Reserve officers in this corps area, nearly 1,500 have enrolled. A statement from the War Department indicates that this enrollment compares favorably with that of other corps areas. This was to be expected, for the patriotic people of this section have always responded loyally to every effort to assure our national security. Voluntary efforts by civilians to prepare themselves in time of peace for possible military need is particularly to be commended; for such effort is not attended by the universal praise and enthusiasm so prevalent in time of war, when patriotic fervor is at its zenith, but the only reward is a consciousness of duty well performed.

The methods employed by the War Department for the conduct of the courses were adopted as the result of the recommendation of experts, familiar with correspondence

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

school work in civil life, who made a particular study of its adaptation to the conditions and needs of the army. The subject-matter of the courses is taken from the courses of the Special and General Service Schools of the Army and is prepared by their faculties, and it represents the highest development of scholarship in the art and science of war. Such an opportunity has never before been given to citizen soldiers to prepare themselves in peace to defend their country in war. Instructors are ready and anxious to give every assistance within their power.

The total number of hours work (including that spent in study and solving tests) considered necessary is stated to you for each course, subcourse, and lesson assignment sheet. It is not expected that each course in which a student enrolls will be completed within a single school year of nine months. This would require, in the case of Course "A" for the Infantry, for example, 222 hours of work, or about 6 hours per week. It is fully realized that the usual active man engaged in business or the professions is not able to devote so much time to this work. However, the War Department requires the completion of only 39 hours work in a school year, or about 1 hour per week, to entitle the student to continue his enrollment. The completion of this much should not be a burden upon any one. In many cases the pursuit of the courses at this rate is fast enough. If engaged in year after year, and in many respects it is better to take some work every year, and thus keep fresh, than to complete all the courses in a few years and then grow stale.

Except for active service for long periods, no better means could be found for qualifying officers for promotion to various grades than the completion of the appropriate correspondence courses. Members of examining boards are authorized to give credit accordingly.

### CAVALRY ACTIVITIES AT BUFFALO, NEW YORK

The last week of February was an exceptionally good military week in Buffalo, with Major-General Willard A. Holbrook, Chief of Cavalry, and Lieutenant-Colonel Edward Davis, cavalry, as guests of the 301st Cavalry. A joint luncheon was given by the Greater Buffalo Advertising Club and the 301st Cavalry, at the Hotel Lafayette, on February 27. There were over 400 persons at the luncheon, the greater part of whom were leading citizens of Buffalo and vicinity. The great ball-room of the Hotel Lafayette presented a brilliant scene. The decorations were elaborate and in cavalry colors. The banner of the 301st Cavalry, with a yellow field and blue letters and numerals, was hung behind the speaker. The 28th Infantry orchestra, from Fort Niagara, presented a program of splendid music. General Holbrook proved a most interesting speaker, telling of "The Needs of National Defense" in a very able way. His appearance and speech were magnetic in effect and his words will long be remembered by those who were fortunate enough to be present. The General's visit to Buffalo, following the completion of the organization of the 301st Cavalry, has surely aided it. The General also spoke before a large audience at the Army and Navy Club of Buffalo on the evening of February 28.

At the Saturn Club, on the evening of February 27, Lieutenant-Colonel Edward Davis, cavalry, gave an illustrated lecture of his observations with the British cavalry in Palestine under General Allenby, which was listened to with intense interest. His audience consisted of all the military officers of various branches of the service in and about Buffalo and the members of the Saturn Club. The annual Buffalo Spring Horse Show will be held at the Saddle and Bridle Club, Buffalo, N. Y., May 10, 11, 12, 1923, when \$2,000 in cash prizes will be awarded the winners of the different events. Major Thomas F. Cooke, Cav-ORC., executive, 151st Cavalry Brigade, has been appointed general chairman of the Horse Show Committee, First Lieutenant Walter A. Yates, 301st Cavalry.

## THE ORGANIZED RESERVES

treasurer, and Major Welton M. Modisette, cavalry, secretary. Colonel William J. Donovan and First Lieutenant Edgar B. Jewett, 2d, 301st Cavalry, are members of the Executive Committee.

### SUMMER TRAINING FOR ORGANIZED RESERVES (COMBAT BRANCHES)

Available funds should permit the following to be trained in each corps area:

Between 800 and 950 officers for 15 days.

Approximately nine officers at the special service schools for three months.

Instructors at C. M. T. camps in subordinate grades for 30 days (about 40 in each corps area).

Approximately 25 enlisted reservists for 15 days.

The training at the Organized Reserve camps will be based on a series of seven tactical exercises involving tactical command and staff functions of the combined arms of the division. Additional training will supplement these exercises in such matters as map-reading and technique of the various arms.

The summer camps for reserve officers will open about the middle of June and will continue for six weeks.

### OFFERED FOR SALE

One Saumur training saddle and bridle complete. Brand new. \$30.00. Write to Lieut.-Col. T. H. Cunningham, Rtd., Carnegie Institute of Technology, Schenley Park, Pittsburgh, Pa. One French Officer's Field Saddle (Duval, Saumur) complete with pouches, bridle equipment, box, and other field service accessories. Property of late Col. Tyree R. Rivers. New in 1917, excellent condition. Write to Col. J. T. Conrad, Hq., 2d Corps Area, Governors Island, N. Y.

### Instructions in Learning Accurate Pistol Shooting

By Gy. Sgt. JOHN M. THOMAS,  
Rifle Range,

M. B., Paris Island, S. C.

Less than 10 copies, 50c. each; 10 and less than 25 copies, 45c. each; 25 and less than 50, 40c. each; 50 and more copies, 35c. each.

### The Swavely School

PREPARES BOYS FOR ANY  
COLLEGE

For particulars, address

4101 Connecticut Avenue N. W.  
Washington, D. C.

HENRY SCHICK FRANK J. KRUPP

### Henry Schick & Co.


FORMERLY WITH JOHN G. HAAS

Army and Navy  
Uniforms

1421 F STREET NORTHWEST

Washington, D. C.

CIVILIAN DRESS A SPECIALTY



**POLO GOODS**  
**MALLETS—BALLS—SADDLES**  
 (1921 CATALOG WITH BOOK OF RULES ON REQUEST)  
**CHAS. MEURISSE & CO.**  
 4638 Cottage Grove Ave.  
 CHICAGO  
**MEURISSE**

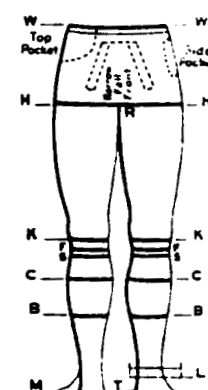
**J. SHIRLEY KINES** **P. C. KINES**

**RIDING BREECHES**  
 CORRECT SMART DURABLE

**J. SHIRLEY KINES & BRO.**  
 UPPERVILLE, VIRGINIA

WE build only the best breeches and aim to please the most particular officer.  
 WE carry a full line of materials. Bedford cord, domestic or imported; Serge, heavy, medium or light Whipcord, Elastique, Gabardine, Khaki; Polo Breeches. Special—Ladies' Riding Breeches.

PRICES, \$22 to \$40. According to quality and weight of material



Buttoned or laced under knee, outside, in front or inside.... Top or side pockets.... Narrow fall or fly front.... Cut small, medium or large.... Height.... Weight.... Around waist over trousers W.... Around largest part of seat (measurement snug).... Outside seam W to heel seam of shoe M (not including waist-band).... Inseam B to T.... Next four measures to be taken tight over drawers or bare leg: Around largest part of knee K.... Around smallest place below knee S.... Around largest part of calf C.... Around bottom B (should be about 4 inches below C).... From W (not including waist-band) to hollow just under kneecap P.... From W to S smallest place below knee, about 2 inches below P.... From W to C largest part of calf.... From W to B.... In case Jockpores are desired give measure W to L length, which is finished with cuff.

If these measurements are taken carefully the breeches will fit. In case they should need any alteration we will make the changes desired, purchaser to pay transportation charges. Make no allowance in taking measure. State any departure from regulation desired.

VOLUME XXXII

JULY, 1923

NUMBER 132

# THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Devoted to the Interests of the Cavalry,  
 to the Professional Improvement of Its  
 Officers and Men, and to the Advance-  
 ment of the Mounted Service Generally

EDITED BY  
**JEROME W. HOWE**  
 MAJOR OF CAVALRY

COPYRIGHT, 1923, BY  
 THE UNITED STATES CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

Published quarterly by the United States Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street, Washington, D. C. Editor, Major Jerome W. Howe, Cavalry. Managing Editor, Captain George A. Moore, Cavalry. Entered as second-class matter March 22, 1920, at the post-office at Washington, D. C., under the Act of March 3, 1879. Acceptance for mailing at special rate of postage provided for in section 1103, Act of October 3, 1917, authorized May 29, 1920.

\$2.50 per year; single copy, 65 cents. Canadian and foreign postage 25 cents, additional.

# A HISTORY of CAVALRY

From the Earliest Times, with Lessons for the Future

By

COLONEL GEORGE T. DENISON,

Late Commanding the Governor-General's Bodyguard, Canada

## Periods

## CONTENTS

1. To the Fall of the Western Roman Empire.
2. From the Fall of the Western Roman Empire to the Invention of Firearms.
3. From the Introduction of Firearms to Frederick the Great.
4. From Frederick the Great until the Introduction of Rifled Firearms.
5. From the Introduction of Rifled Firearms to the Present Time.
6. Organization, Armament, and Employment of Cavalry in Modern Warfare.

¶ Exhaustive Treatise on the Development of Cavalry.

¶ Rigid Maneuvers of Ancients.

¶ Individual Combats of Chivalry.

¶ Effect of Introduction of Firearms on Tactics and Armament.

¶ Most Significant Battles—Cannae, Blenheim, Marengo, and many others, illustrated by maps.

¶ American Civil War Cavalry Operations Well Discussed.

¶ Principal Cavalry Leaders—Hannibal, Cæsar, Vercingetorix, Gustavus Adolphus, Marlborough, Seidlitz, Ziethen, Prince Rupert, Kellerman, and Murat, as well as Jackson, Morgan, and Sheridan—are depicted.

¶ Characteristics of General-in-Chief of Cavalry.

¶ A Real Scholar's Work, with References to Original Sources for Facts.

¶ Shows Interplay of Infantry, Artillery, and Cavalry, one on the other, so Book is Really a History of Warfare.

¶ Won Prize Offered by Emperor of Russia for Best History of Cavalry.

467 Pages—Index—11 Maps—2d Edition—Price, \$4.20

U. S. Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street N. W., Washington, D. C.

Please send me a copy of "A History of Cavalry."

Signature.....

Address.....

## CONTENTS FOR JULY, 1923

VOL. XXXII, No. 132

	Page
CAVALRY MARCHES (PRIZE ESSAY).....	261
Captain Benjamin F. Hoge, Cavalry.	
ESSENTIALS OF MILITARY CONDUCT.....	269
Being a letter from an old dragoon to his son, recently commissioned.	
GASOLINE, WAIST LINES, AND WHAT NOT.....	276
Major J. A. Barry, Cavalry.	
THE ROAD TO SOISSONS, JULY, 1919 (POEM).....	277
Ralph B. Evans.	
THE CAVALRY FIGHT.....	278
Lessons from the fight at Volchkovtsy, on August 21, 1914.	
General N. N. Golovine (translated by Colonel A. M. Nikolaleff).	
THE BRITISH CAVALRY IN PALESTINE AND SYRIA.....	286
Lieutenant-Colonel Edward Davis, Cavalry (observer with the British Army).	
SUGGESTIONS TO EXECUTIVE OFFICERS ON DUTY WITH ORGANIZED RESERVES .....	296
Captain George H. Shea, Cavalry.	
A RUT IN THE ROAD.....	297
Major E. P. Pierson, Cavalry.	
THE CAVALRY BOARD.....	299
Major K. S. Bradford, Cavalry.	
"COME ON! BE QUICK! BRING PACKS!" (CUSTER'S BATTLE PLAN).....	308
The story of his last message, as told by the man who carried it.	
Lieutenant-Colonel W. A. Graham, J. A. (with commentary by Brigadier-General Edward S. Godfrey, U. S. Army, Retired).	
A CAVALRY COMMANDER IN THE SADDLE.....	318
A reminiscence of General von Poseck.	
Colonel Henry C. Whitehead, U. S. A., Chief of the Remount Service.	
GERMAN CAVALRYMEN AS PRISONERS OF WAR IN FRANCE.....	319
A SOUTH AMERICAN CAVALRY CHARGE.....	324
TRAINING MACHINE-GUN ORGANIZATIONS AT OBSTACLES.....	325
First Lieutenant Paul M. Robinett, Cavalry.	
HORSESHOES AND MILITARY EQUIPMENTS OF DURALUMIN.....	326
Colonel W. C. Brown, U. S. Army, Retired.	
EDITORIAL COMMENT:	
OUTLAWING WAR—CAVALRY ROAD SPACE—PRIZE ESSAY CONTEST WON BY CAPTAIN HOGG—THE FIFTH CAVALRY AT GAINES' MILL—THE CAVALRY FUND—A SERVICE THE CAVALRY JOURNAL CAN RENDER—APPRECIATION OF THE JOURNAL—U. S. M. A. 1884 CLASS BULLETIN—SUBSCRIPTIONS—CAVALRY JOURNAL REACHES THE R. O. T. C.....	328
TOPICS OF THE DAY:	
ARMY OLYMPIC TEAM PREPARATIONS—CHIEF OF CAVALRY HONOR RIFLE TEAM—NATIONAL MATCHES—HORSESHOEING IN ORGANIZATIONS—COLORADO ENDURANCE RIDE—NEW CAVALRY DISTINGUISHED MARKSMEN AND PISTOL SHOTS—THE ARMY AND THE BOY SCOUTS—SCREW WORMS IN FISTULOUS WITHERS—A TEXAS ENDURANCE RIDE PROPOSED—CAVALRY R. O. T. C. ACTIVITIES.....	337
NEW BOOKS REVIEWED.....	345
FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS.....	348
POLO .....	354
THE CAVALRY SCHOOL.....	358
REGIMENTAL NOTES.....	360
NATIONAL GUARD.....	371
THE ORGANIZED RESERVES.....	376

# The United States Cavalry Association

## DESIGN

1. The aim and purpose of the Association shall be to disseminate knowledge of the military art and science, to promote the professional improvement of its members, and to preserve and foster the spirit, the traditions, and the solidarity of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States.

—ARTICLE III of the Constitution.

Organized November 9, 1885

## OFFICERS

### *President:*

Major-General WILLARD A. HOLBROOK, Chief of Cavalry.

### *Vice-President:*

Brigadier-General STUART HEINTZELMAN, A. C. of S., G-4.

### *Secretary and Treasurer:*

Major JEROME W. HOWE, Cavalry.

## EXECUTIVE COUNCIL

Brigadier-General JOHN P. WOOD, National Guard of Pennsylvania.

Colonel GEORGE C. BARNHART (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Colonel WILLIAM R. SMEDBERG, JR. (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Colonel HERBERT B. CROSBY, Cavalry.

Colonel LEON B. KROMER (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Lieutenant-Colonel EDWARD DAVIS, Cavalry.

Lieutenant-Colonel JOHN PHILIP HILL, Cavalry, Reserve Corps.

Major JOHN C. MONTGOMERY (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Major JONATHAN M. WAINWRIGHT, 3d Cavalry.

## MEMBERSHIP AND SUBSCRIPTION FOR THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Membership shall be of three classes, which, together with the conditions of eligibility therefor, are as follows:

- (1) Active, for which all general officers of the Army of the United States and all commissioned officers of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States shall be eligible.
- (2) Associate, for which all present and former commissioned, warrant, and non-commissioned officers of honorable record of the military or naval services of the United States not included in class 1 shall be eligible.
- (3) Honorary.

Any person desiring to become an active or associate member shall make application to the Secretary, which application shall set forth facts establishing his eligibility and be accompanied by payment for at least one year's subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL; and, the applicant's eligibility appearing, the Secretary shall award him membership from the date at which his subscription to the JOURNAL is commenced.

Active and associate members of the Association shall subscribe annually for the JOURNAL and make payment therefor in advance.

Application for membership should be addressed to the Secretary, U. S. Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street N. W., Washington, D. C., showing present or former military status and accompanied by remittance to the order of the Association for \$2.50, first year's subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL. Membership is continued after the first year by renewal of subscription to the JOURNAL.

Any person or organization not eligible for membership may subscribe for the JOURNAL at the regular subscription rates of \$2.50 per year. Canadian and foreign postage, 25 cents additional.

Members and subscribers are requested to give prompt notice in advance of change of address.



THE FIFTH CAVALRY AT GAINES' MILL  
See Editorial Comment

# THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Vol. XXXII

JULY, 1923

No. 132

## Cavalry Marches

BY

Captain BENJAMIN F. HOGE, Cavalry

PRIZE ESSAY

ALL authorities and writers on the subject of cavalry training are agreed that there are two essential elements which good cavalry must now possess. These two vital elements are fire-power and mobility. Colonel Henry, in his article on mobility, which appeared in the April, 1920, CAVALRY JOURNAL, states: "The war has demonstrated that American theories for the training and use of cavalry are thoroughly sound. It has shown that cavalry, to be successful in modern war, must have heavy fire-power and great mobility, the most essential of these two being the latter, for without this the arm cannot fulfill its rôle when the supreme test comes."

An essential of mobility is the possession of good horses. The American Remount Association is the agency in whose hands rests our hope of ultimately possessing an ample supply of horses suitable for cavalry service. It is unnecessary, I hope, to urge that each one of us should do all in his power to further the objects of this patriotic organization.

Another essential to mobility is conservation of horseflesh. If, after the first few days of a campaign, the horses are worn out, lame, and covered with saddle sores, then we have lost our most powerful characteristic—mobility. We are then, at best, worse than the poorest infantry, because we have no mobility and are burdened with a host of invalids, which we must nurse, feed, groom, water, and assist along the road from one camp to the next. Then it is that the cavalryman finds himself impotent and practically useless to himself and every one else. His only hope is for a lull in the operations, which may allow him to restore his wasted horseflesh. He has learned his lesson—but perhaps too late!

How to prevent such a condition is the question that naturally arises. I think the answer lies primarily in knowing how to march properly, because it



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

is marching that kills horses. Most of our theories on the subject are correct, but we cannot, or rather do not, apply them in practice.

The first regiment I had the honor and pleasure of serving with was stationed in Arizona. For several years my duties were those which usually fall to the lot of a second lieutenant. Among them was the conduct of the troop non-commissioned officers' school and the pursuit of the old garrison school course. In carrying out these duties I was struck with the frequent allusions made in text-books to the necessity in campaign of conserving horses and improving in every possible way their condition. Frequent mention was made of saddle sores; but I never saw one and wondered if they ever existed with veteran cavalry such as we had. The horses were fat and sleek, and although we averaged four or five hours each day in the saddle, their condition remained the same. Occasionally we made a march of thirty or forty miles, but I could observe no effects from such marches. It appeared to me that with good food and sufficient water the horse could probably go on marching such distances day after day with no ill effects. Was all this talk, then, an exaggeration or merely imagination? Fortunately I received the answer when my regiment was ordered into Mexico as part of the punitive expedition. This answer was as startling as though a pitcher of ice water had been poured down my unsuspecting back while enjoying the luxury of a warm tub. I feel that if every one of our cavalymen could have been with me to share some of my experiences, there would be little or no call for writing this article.

A study of the instructions contained in the Cavalry Drill Regulations of 1916 on the subject of marches reveals sound fundamentals. Much stress was placed on the proper gaits; hourly halts were advised, at which time saddles and equipment were to be inspected and adjusted; it was stated that good cavalry should be able to march twenty-five miles per day and keep it up indefinitely without injury to the horses; the normal rate of march was given as five miles per hour, including halts; it was recommended that sufficient distance be allowed between organizations, so that each unit could maintain a steady gait and not be annoyed or injured by any unsteadiness of gait at the tail of a preceding unit; when conditions permitted, it was considered advisable to allow sufficient distance between units of the marching column, so that each unit could trot or walk on the same ground that the leading unit used; the practice of maintaining any one gait too long or of changing the gait too frequently was condemned. In brief, these instructions were very similar in character to those we now have. Their most serious deficiency was in the treatment of leading, to which only a brief reference was made.

The application of these instructions to the conditions and necessities that confronted us was another story. I marched about two thousand miles while on this expedition, with all-sized units, from patrols to brigades. My troop

## CAVALRY MARCHES

changed commanders three times, my squadron twice, the regiment three times, and the brigade twice. Each commander had his own style and regulations, and nearly all violated in their entirety the simple rules stated above. One brigade commander set a trot of twelve miles per hour, which resulted in one-third of the horses galloping; a squadron commander used a six-mile trot, which few of the horses could take without great constraint and which caused the rear of each troop column to alternate about once a minute between the trot and walk; another brigade commander, in marching sixty miles daily for two days, did no trotting or leading and halted rarely. At the beginning our weight and that of the equipment was on the animals' backs for fifteen hours at a stretch, and the effect was killing on them. At this time the horses were in the pink of condition and the country ideal for trotting or leading. The practice of making hourly halts was not observed, and when a halt was made notice was seldom given as to its length. Leading was so rare that you would not have supposed that it had any value for man or horse. At times it was so cold that to lead would have been considered a boon by the laziest trooper. Incidentally, I do know that General Howze (then a major in command of a picked body of men from the 11th Cavalry) walked the shoes off his men, but conserved his horses, and got closer to Villa than any one else. The condition of his horses was much superior to that of other units which I observed at Parral, the southern limit reached by our troops.

The results of the above-mentioned methods of marching were not only discouraging and heartrending, but criminal. After my brigade had marched 120 miles in 44 hours, a report was asked of troop commanders as to the number of horses still fit for service. My troop, which was reputed to be one of the best mounted in the regiment, showed a loss of 20 per cent, and the condition of many which we included as fit was far from satisfactory. And this was the result of only two days of severe marching! From day to day the condition of the horses grew more serious. The lack of good forage and the bad start seemed to combine their effects in telling blows, so that we were not able thereafter to march over fifteen or eighteen miles in a day. Frequently, when we should have been hot on the trail, it was necessary to lay off for a day and rest. Trotting was almost out of the question, as the animals were too jaded and weak. Upon reaching the vicinity of Parral, we were practically unhorsed and at half strength.

After a few days rest near Parral, the troops were ordered to withdraw. This retirement north was a most unhappy affair. My troop was detailed to take charge of the wounded and proceed by a longer but more level route than the main column. My instructions were to march in rear of the troop with a small detail and protect and assist into camp any horses that could not keep up with the troop. The daily marches were short, usually twelve or fifteen

miles, and from necessity were made at a walk. Many of the poor animals had to be shot and some were barely saved. Frequently it was necessary to put a shoulder behind a poor animal and shove him up a hill, hoping that it would be the last one for the day, and that he might be able to drag himself into camp by dark.

Some of these horses were so game that they excited our highest admiration. They seemed to understand that it meant death not to keep up. One I recall quite well. My guard came upon him lying in the road, completely exhausted. As we approached, he turned his head and looked at us with an almost human expression of grief. We waited a time for him to rest, and then, by surrounding him and all lifting together, we placed him on his feet. He was able to proceed a few hundred yards at a time, and then his legs would crumple and he would go down in a heap. Fortunately, it was past the middle of the afternoon and camp not far distant, so we succeeded in getting him in some time after dark. We found that here the column which had taken the shorter route was waiting for us. We remained in the camp for a day, and this brave horse was saved by the slight rest afforded him.

The region we were in, south of Chihuahua City, had formerly been the great horse-producing country of Mexico. Our guide, an American, who had lived many years in this section, informed me that the owners of the Tres Hermanas, near Satevo, had once held a big pageant at which several hundred of the ranch employees had been mounted on gray horses. Now it was impossible to purchase any mounts from the Mexicans, as the country had been stripped of all its horses by the various military leaders who succeeded the Diaz Government. Due to this fact, our men who lost their horses had to foot it.

A rather amusing incident occurred with reference to these dismounted men. It was customary for them to start ahead of us in the morning in a group, and generally it was an hour or more after we reached camp before they arrived. One day, while the troops were grooming, shortly after arrival in camp, we were surprised to see one of our dismounted men riding in, proudly on a fine Mexican pony. Upon questioning him as to the source of his mount, he stated that he had met a "Carranza Captain" down the road, who had traded him the pony for a box of hard bread. The trade excited considerable amusement and speculation among the men, but the proud possessor was heartily congratulated. Late that night I was aroused by quite a commotion, consisting mainly of much Spanish. An inquiry next morning revealed that the real owner of the pony had come to claim his property. The "Carranza Captain" had turned out to be a horse thief with a keen sense of humor.

As our long and tedious withdrawal was completed, a marked change in the weather conditions had taken place. In March, when we entered Mexico, it was bitterly cold, especially in the mountains and at night. But now, the middle of May, it began to be very warm. Up to this point we had had scarcely

any trouble with saddle sores. Nearly all the backs had had puffs or swellings at one time or another, but by bathing them with cold water and cutting holes in the saddle blankets to remove pressure from the affected part, these tender spots had disappeared. But now, with the heat upon us, they all reappeared and rapidly developed into terrible-looking sores, which attracted swarms of flies and maggots. The worst of these sores would suppurate in all directions, sometimes as far as from the withers to a point on the fore legs or shoulder. Fully half the remaining horses were now out of commission for months from the effect of these sores. At this stage had the situation demanded activity on our part we could not have met it unless half our horse strength had been replaced by new mounts.

The above account is one which surely reflects no credit upon our marching ability. As I have pointed out, the instructions contained in the "Drill Regulations" were sound, but they were not carried out or understood. Why? If I may be allowed to quote Colonel Henry's article again, I believe the question can be answered thus: "Officers do not receive any systematic education in these matters and simply grow up in the service, absorbing such information and ideas as may come their way."

Before seeking a remedy for this condition of affairs, it is desirable to consider what the present has to offer in the way of new theories, instructions, and thought. The Cavalry School, Department of Horsemanship, has issued a pamphlet on marches, dated October 17, 1921, which is the best and most complete treatment of this vital subject which I have yet encountered. A comparison of this pamphlet with what was contained in the 1916 Cavalry Drill Regulations shows that our theoretical knowledge has advanced tremendously. The following are outstanding new features:

(1) Cavalry will probably have to make longer and more rapid marches in the future than in the past, due to the fact that railways and motor vehicles have increased the mobility of the enemy's infantry.

(2) Night marches will probably be very frequent in future wars, due to the necessity of avoiding air observation. These marches, to be successful, will require the mastery of many new details.

(3) Leading is now recognized as of vital importance. No successful march can be made without much leading.

(4) Hourly halts must be the rule.

(5) In case of checks due to obstacles, troopers and units should be trained to overlap when there is room, thus avoiding the shock throughout the column. (Upon one occasion I recall receiving a severe reprimand for doing this very thing.)

(6) Rate tables are considered necessary for all well-conducted marches.

(7) Dismounting frequently on the right side is considered valuable as a precaution against sore backs.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

(8) Every command should have a non-commissioned officer with a well-gaited horse to set the gaits, for the reason that the man who sets the gaits should have nothing else to do. An officer generally has many other things on his mind, especially in campaign.

(9) The use of a time and rate sheet and the detail of another non-commissioned officer to keep it is considered valuable as a means of locating yourself, when traveling by a poor map or at night. It is necessary also for reference when you have decided to march at a certain rate per hour.

(10) A careful study is made of the distances which should separate units on the march, when it is possible to allow considerable distance between units.

These points are only a few of the more important considered in this pamphlet, which is deserving of the most careful reading and study by every officer of our cavalry.

I have discussed the subject of marches with a great many cavalry officers, and have noticed that whenever the officer has had real experience with it he is invariably intensely interested. Frequently they have valuable ideas on the subject that are worth trial and consideration. I have observed that whenever the officer is a polo man he is in favor of rapid marching. One officer believes that the column should always lead at the beginning and end of each hour's march; another, that in hot weather the cinches should be loosened at every halt and the backs allowed to cool by turning the blanket corners under the saddle bars, thus creating a slight air space under the blanket.

Perhaps at this point it would be well to note some of the opinions of the British cavalry. Colonel George E. Mitchell's account of the Palestine Campaign states that the cavalry forces under General Allenby were divided into two schools on the question of rate and gait of marching. The Australian and New Zealand troops favored the four-mile walk for a cavalry column. Their reasons were that a faster gait detached the cavalry from its artillery, ambulances, and other essential combat transportation. They also claimed that the trot used up the horses. They believed it essential to always have the brigade or division complete, including auxiliary troops, until contact with the enemy was gained. Then, they say, is the time to use the trot or gallop to gain the position you want or to get around the enemy's flank. On the other hand, the Yeomanry troops favored the frequent use of the trot, on the ground that the condition of the horse is bettered and his strength conserved if you reduce the time of marching. They also claim that if you march too slowly you do not preserve the spirit of dash and aggression essential for cavalry, and, further, that you lose many valuable chances to inflict losses upon the enemy.

Colonel Mitchell also states that the Australian and New Zealand troops had fewer sore backs than the Yeomanry. However, the former carried the rifle on their back and the latter on the saddle. It is possible that the difference in sore backs was the result of this one feature; also the reluctance of the former

## CAVALRY MARCHES

to trot may have really been due to the way they carried the rifle. Even a brief test of trotting with the rifle slung over your back will convince you that it is exceedingly uncomfortable. Certainly there is much logic on both sides of the question. For marches not in the presence of the enemy there would be no necessity for slowing down the rate of march for the wheel transport. Again, where the situation is reversed and the enemy close, it might be vital to have all combat elements present. Thus it is evident that tactical considerations must frequently affect the rate of a march.

The question as to whether the trot is good or bad could be definitely settled by a test between two squadrons. The test would have to be over a considerable distance, say five hundred miles, and carefully conducted. The daily marches should average about thirty miles, and each squadron should cover the same route on the same day. One would use only walking and leading and the other would trot from twenty to thirty minutes each hour, and do the balance at a walk or by leading. Care would have to be taken to insure that the horses were of equal quality and condition at the start. A close examination of the horses of these two squadrons at the end of such a test would certainly disclose many interesting and valuable facts. The truth or fallacy of many ideas would thus be settled beyond dispute.

Possibly the chief value to us of the above opinions and theories is to point out unmistakably that the field for progress and development in cavalry marches is almost unlimited. We are just at the threshold of a new era of development along this line. The old wasteful methods must be relegated to the dump heap. It is a subject as broad as the entire field of cavalry training itself. If we hope to justify our existence in the next emergency, we must know how to retain our mobility under the most difficult conditions of terrain, of forage supply, and of tactics. As poorly conducted marches are the chief cause of loss of mobility, we must know how to make them in a manner calculated to insure a maximum conservation of horseflesh. Our methods of marching must be standardized throughout the service. Even though we have many new doctrines and principles to guide us, will we be able to apply the new any more successfully than we did the old? Without doubt, the conditions that confront us will be infinitely more difficult to meet than were those that faced us in 1916. We shall certainly never be blessed with better officer material than we then had. I feel that Colonel Fleming has placed his finger on the trouble when in the July, 1920, *CAVALRY JOURNAL* he states: "With the exception of one or two minor lapses, our theories have always been sound. Emphasis should, however, be placed on the word 'theories.' The trouble has been that while our theories have been sound, our training for the past twenty-five or thirty years has been the reverse of sound."

It is, then, to proper training that we must look for the cure. Theories, regulations, and doctrines are of little value unless they are tested and practiced,

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

so that all become familiar with their practical application. To draw an analogy, suppose that, instead of our present system of training in rifle marksmanship, we had only a set of rules and regulations to teach us how to shoot. Suppose we had no preliminary training in positions, use of sling, adjustment of sights, sighting drill, trigger-squeeze exercises, and rapid-fire practice. Suppose we had no gallery practice or preliminary or record firing on the range, or competition for ratings, honors, or medals. Do you think that if we followed such a system we would be able to use the rifle effectively in war? Would not an organization which depended on such a method (or lack of method) for the development of its marksmanship find that when the acid test came it had as many theories of how to shoot the rifle as there were men on the firing line? I think the point is beyond dispute. What we need is proper training, and to get it we must follow the lines indicated by our training for the development of rifle marksmanship.

In order to secure the highest possible standard of march efficiency, the field training period for all regiments should have a definite time allotted for training in marching, which should culminate in a march of at least three hundred miles. The length of daily marches should average about thirty miles, so that the test will be fairly severe and bring out any faults that might exist. The rules and regulations for the proper conduct of a march should be rigidly enforced. Careful data should be kept as to the way the men and horses stand this test. Prior to the march the commanding officer should be required to submit his plan of march to the Chief of Cavalry, showing route, total distance, proposed length of daily marches, rate of march, and any new ideas on marching which he desires to test. Upon approval of the plan, it should be strictly adhered to. At its conclusion a comprehensive report should be submitted to the Chief of Cavalry showing: (1) photographs of horses prior to the march and at its conclusion; (2) a table of average weights of horses before and at the end of the march; (3) a report on the number and character of sore backs. If possible, the troops and squadrons should be rated on their marching efficiency by the colonel and the results published in orders. When regiments are stationed close together, there should be a competition arranged, and suitable trophies offered to stimulate the competitive spirit. Units located where the heat is extreme could make their marches entirely by night, with the result that we would soon be able to conduct them efficiently. In this connection air observation could be arranged and the column be required to elude it. Based on his reports from the various regiments, the Chief of Cavalry could determine which regiments excelled in this field of training. Observers from his office could witness these tests and assist him in making his ratings, which would be published to the service.

With some such system of training, our cavalry would soon be in a class by itself as regards marching. Then the next war will not find us wanting in cavalry's chief asset—**MOBILITY**. Let's have it!

## Essentials of Military Conduct

BEING A LETTER FROM AN OLD DRAGOON TO HIS SON,  
RECENTLY COMMISSIONED

FORT EXPERIENCE, June 1, 1923.

**M**Y DEAR SON:

There are a few matters which for some time I have had in mind to discuss with you, and now that my sand-glass is fast running low the thought is strengthened to action. As I watch in the glass the operation of the eternal law, each grain of sand brings up a memory. Looking backward, it is easy to see how the precious grains of achievement could have been increased in number and size, how the black grains of failure and disappointment could be reduced or eradicated, and the general drab effect of the whole materially brightened. In the hope that my reflections may benefit you, they are here set down, naught in malice.

You have just graduated from West Point. In your youthful exuberance of enthusiasm, innocence, and energy, life is spread out before you like a beautiful green valley. You have come forth imbued with that time-honored ideal which we all love—"DUTY, HONOR, COUNTRY"—which is a firm foundation for citizenship, whether the bearer be a civilian or soldier. You feel that your ideal is not only the highest, but that it should also be the ideal of all men. High as is this ideal and the honor which, in its observance, you will be to the country, that alone will not bring you personal advancement, nor even keep you out of Class B. To attain the one and avoid the other, a careful course must be laid and steered, avoiding alike the rocks, shoals, stormy weather, and uncharted seas.

The career of a strong and forceful officer should be like the meanderings of a great river. It has one fixed general direction. It turns here and there at times, as obstacles to its direct march are encountered, doubling back and almost reversing its direction, but always finally coming back to the fixed course to its goal. For the officer, these obstacles may be: ignorance, which is overcome by study; lack of skill, which is met by practice; traits of character to be formed, reformed, or eradicated; the natural jealousy, hostility, and opposition of others, which must be countered in all the proper methods and against which the greatest skill, judgment, tact, self-control, and perseverance are necessary; and indifference, inertia, and mental and physical lassitude, which will frequently oppose an almost immovable resistance—a resistance which can be overcome only by the determined will to do. This determined will power must be present throughout your life. If persisted in sufficiently long,

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

it will become fixed and, like other fixed correct characteristics, will then give little concern.

First of all, strive to perfect yourself in your profession. Find out what is the best literature and read it with serious intent. Make it a rule of life that each day, come what may, you will devote at least one hour to personal improvement.

Cultivate the habit of reflection. "Think twice before you speak" is an adage the observance of which will lead naturally to the formation of sound judgment. Be conscientious, but an ingrowing conscience will land you in Class B just as quickly as will the absence of one.

With your youth and inexperience it can hardly be expected that you will know instinctively which is that line of work or activity for which you have particular aptitude. With the various tasks that will naturally fall to you, sooner or later you will be able to determine in what particular work you most excel. Every true soldier prefers, of course, active service with troops. Besides your duty as a combatant officer, select and, whenever practicable, work in the specialty wherein you have particular talent. Wherever your preferences and aptitude do not coincide, elect your aptitude, for there you will attain the greater success and your preferences will, as a matter of course, follow your successes.

The term "bootlick" is, righteously enough, odious to you. However much you loathe the term, you, in common with others, frequently envy the apparent success that follow the efforts of this class. Tact in some form is usually one of the means employed. Remember that seniors are attracted by efficiency and performance and frequently are apt apparently to overlook those methods and traits that render a man odious in the eyes of his associates and coequals.

Tact is a quality which by far will do more for your advancement than any other. By all proper means seek to gain the good will of every one—your superiors, equals, and juniors. Mediocrity plus the good will of others will accomplish hundreds of times more in your personal interests than will real genius without such good will. Your tact will prevent adverse efficiency reports, and these efficiency reports will then always be commendatory. Tact may not and probably is not natural to you, but study it and cultivate it. Make frequent introspections of each and every one of your personal characteristics and freely analyze your successes and failures in contrast with the personal characteristics and actions of successful men. In this matter the seed sown as a young man will in your advancing years bring forth fruit many fold.

In my day courtesy, deference, and politeness were cardinal soldier virtues, though this latter-day generation does not appreciate their real value, and they are suffering a decline; yet you will find that the punctilious observance of these qualities will cause you to be sought out as a desirable member for many an occasion, social and official. By such courtesies you will frequently gain unofficial friends who, even unsought by you, will be your advocates and

## ESSENTIALS OF MILITARY CONDUCT

champions with your commanders. Many an aide or adjutant owes his first appointment to such friendship and gratitude.

Be careful of your manners and of the details of your habits and personal appearance. The incorrect and apparently inconsequential use of a particular piece of tableware may bar you from exclusive homes, and clean and neatly pressed clothing may gain you an invitation to choice entertainments. If you do not know the correct social forms or customs, seek the advice of an older, kindly disposed, and polished comrade.

It should be unnecessary to say that your language and conversation should be pure. Occasionally one meets some picturesquely profane conspicuous poser. They are amusing for the moment, and then become great bores. Such language is prohibited and cannot be used toward the men. You will, of course, select as your personal friends and associates only those who are gentlemen.

You have always been temperate and need no caution thereon. You probably do not recall that years ago one of our articles of war, inherited from the British Mutiny Act, prohibited courts-martial from sitting between 3:00 p. m. and the following 8:00 a. m. This was because of a former custom, long since discarded, that no gentleman was supposed to be sober after 3:00 p. m. Now, however, drunkenness is properly taboo at all times and has been the cause of enough Class B notices to serve as warnings and bitter repentances.

In your career you will have many disappointments and heart-burnings. To others will go honors and preferments which you may have thought were more deserved by yourself. If you were to consult your comrades, you would find that practically all of them entertain similar sensations in their own regards. Disappointment is one of the most common personal emotions of the soldier. The antidote is hope, optimism, cheerfulness, and an acceptance that all is for the best. Preferment, appointments, and commendation, not being bound by hard and fast rules, are matters of prerogative and are not necessarily based on merit, but upon personal acquaintanceship. Therefore, the more pleasing your personality and the greater your circle of friends, the greater are your chances for preferment.

Besides the satisfaction of correct living, the object of this line of conduct is to secure advancement by personal efficiency and by the creation of a sentiment favorable to yourself. Paraphrasing a well-known military maxim, it may properly be said that "one enemy in the dark can overthrow the good done you by ten friends in the open." Although your efficiency record may be replete with encomiums, one adverse report will frequently offset them all. In your seeking or being sought by others for important details, no matter how many friends may be working for you, one unknown enemy in the chain of action can, unseen, stab the approval to its death. Many men today are heart-broken from just such causes. Make it a rule of conduct that each enemy made is one more spadeful dug in the grave of your military career.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Practice serenity of disposition. While always making your best efforts, do not worry because you have not secured maximum success. You will find that, after all, the consciousness of duty honestly done to the best of your ability—in other words, the approval of your own conscience—is your greatest and most usual reward in any undertaking.

It has been said:

"Opportunity, master of human destiny am I. . . .  
I knock once unbidden at every gate."

This statement is hardly correct. Opportunity is always knocking, but the trouble is we do not always recognize the knock. We are surrounded by opportunities, but either fail to recognize them or, even frequently recognizing them, we lack those qualities necessary to take advantage of them. By your friends and acquaintances your reputation is passed on to others. Your name is on various rosters. In selecting from an available list, the authorities will look at your listed qualifications and will consider the general reputation which you bear. Any such selection you should regard with satisfaction. It will bring you into contact with higher-ups, where you may further add to your reputation and be still further passed up to a higher level of preferment. Thus your character and reputation will create opportunities.

Study to eliminate from your make-up all peculiarities or idiosyncrasies—personal, physical, and mental—that are objectionable to others. While never deprecating nor disparaging your own qualifications, eradicate egotism or boasting. Be properly modest. Cultivate a pleasant manner.

Always be zealous. Make the fullest use of each of your abilities. Excel or endeavor to excel in each duty, however trivial. Whatever be the duty, you should be the example of correct performance. Although, according to the parable of the talents, no two men are endowed with equal ability, each should make of himself the best man he is capable of becoming. Endeavor to find out what is your "max" and always seek to raise it.

With whatever duty or matter you may be connected, not only perform your whole duty, but even more, if necessary to demonstrate that you have discharged your whole duty. With any matter with which you may be connected, let your actions be clean cut and such as to show clearly that no fault nor shortcoming may be charged to you.

Loyalty is an indispensable quality to success. In whatever subordinate capacity you serve, always be loyal to your commander. Seek to carry out faithfully his every idea. Make it, for the time being at least, your own. Develop it in every way to the fullest extent. You may not inwardly agree with the idea, principle, or duty, but the responsibility is not yours. It is his and he reaps the rewards of failures as well as success and will be ever grateful to you for your loyalty.

## ESSENTIALS OF MILITARY CONDUCT

Commend publicly your subordinates for their good qualities, efforts, and showings made. Make corrections no more publicly than is necessary. In general, a reproof or correction privately made will carry greater weight with the person reproved and will make him more favorably disposed to you. Admonitions properly made will create a friend where otherwise you would have made an enemy.

Enter into all proper activities around you—athletics, society, or whatever it may be; enter fully and sincerely into the spirit thereof. Play polo and own good ponies. Be an enthusiastic horseman. Organize entertainments, or, if that be not your aptitude, at least enter into the spirit of those that others organize. Be an optimist, never a crepe-hanger.

Let your spirit be whole-hearted. Above all, be full of human sympathy. Publicly, at least, and irrespective of your private opinion, respect the other fellow's personality, position, ability, and attainments. It is remarkable how this is contagious and reciprocal. Avoid developing temperament. Besides being an objectionable quality in itself, it will sooner or later bring disaster to its possessor. When some one, whether your superior, commander, or junior, loses his temper and commits himself to an unjust remark or act, return it not in kind. He hurts himself, not you, and your restraint will be a victory and will grow into a laudable and confirmed trait of character.

Irrespective of the action of others, pursue an even manner and high principle of doing kind and thoughtful things for your associates. Casting bread upon the waters as a principle dates from the dawn of history. It is related that when President Roosevelt appointed to a major-generalship that genial veteran, Commissary General John F. Weston, the latter called upon the President to thank him, and conversation to the following effect took place:

The PRESIDENT: "I pleasantly remember your efficiency at Santiago and your kindness to me in seeing that my men received their rations."

The GENERAL: "I assure you, Mr. President, that such kindnesses were nothing compared to those I would have shown had I known you were to be President."

Live a strong, active physical life. A sound body and a sound mind go together. You will observe that those branches of the service wherein the daily life is one of physical activity produce more men of greater than average vitality, mentality, length of life and number of years of distinguished service than do the services of less daily physical activity.

You may at times be called upon to handle troops in various cases of civil disorders. Those situations are full of shoals and rocks, and by them military reputations are easily wrecked. In general, the political authorities desire that you use your force merely as a bluff and to intimidate. Openly you are generally given latitude to use your judgment, but the unexpressed hope is that by cajolery, persuasion, and covert threat you can succeed in quieting the dis-



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

turbance. Such action is really political tact. Any actual use of force is such a strong lever for the enemies of the government to use in political arguments as infringement and abuse of liberties, with the broad avenues of invective against the military, that the authorities all dread any actual use of force. Your success in such undertakings, then, is measured by accomplishment through peaceful means, and the amount of force you actually employ measures your failure.

One of the most universal traits of American character is to resent domination by others—the authority which one man exercises over another and the orders which he issues. You will undoubtedly frequently feel this resentment. It is necessary that you give your special attention to curbing any such tendencies and to restrain your passion. This resentment—this tendency to object to the control by others—is the basis of indiscipline and disobedience, and these are among the greatest of military crimes. It is absolutely necessary to your success that such resentment of authority be killed at its very inception.

Keep out of army fights. Owing to causes too numerous to mention here, controversies, magnifying unimportant details and multiplying personal animosities, are apt frequently to arise. In general and where possible, the authorities will, in the interests of discipline, decide all controversies in favor of the senior. But neither side to a controversy adds any honor or dignity to his reputation. In general, the reputation of each controversialist is soiled by the controversy, if not absolutely blackened. Many an officer has had his conduct justified by a court-martial and at the same time has received from his comrades an unenviable reputation. Learn to sense the causes of army fights. Avoid them as you would poison. You may frequently imagine that affronts and discourtesies are directed at you when in reality there was no such intention. Pass these unnoticed, and also even those real slights which are minor and really immaterial. Should any slight or affront be actually damaging to such an extent as to affect your honor, standing, and usefulness in the service, then, by taking the matter up in the proper official way, justice will be done you. Let your own hands be always clean, and your straightforward manliness, integrity, and singleness of purpose will win you friends and cause the decisions to be made in your favor.

A favorite pastime with many is "knocking"—a destructive criticism of everything and all authority, *animo furandi*. This tendency is easy to start, grows rapidly, like all noxious weeds, and, once started, spreads quickly and is hard to stop. Basically, all laws and orders are founded on right and justice, though frequently perverted. The junior never sees with the eyes of the higher-up, charged with responsibility and whose issued orders must be framed to produce the desired results. You yourself will some day be placed as your commander now is and will have the same right to expect the cheerful compliance by your juniors.

## ESSENTIALS OF MILITARY CONDUCT

When put in positions where you are responsible for enforcing discipline, let such action, as far as possible, be automatic, in the manner of cause and effect. Just as every man knows that a hand put in the fire is immediately burned, so should the administration of discipline proceed promptly and automatically, as a natural law. It is thus impersonal, and you will not be charged by your subordinates as being the author of their misfortunes.

Be punctilious in money matters. "Short reckonings, long friends" is particularly true in the army. Tradesmen know that an officer is sure pay and are frequently eager to extend credit. Many of them, when payment is slow, seek redress through the War Department, and then trouble begins. Every such complaint is one step toward Class B. Live within your income. Do not try to emulate others whose income being greater may spend more. Scrupulous honesty is essential, and your word once given must be absolutely inviolable.

Each positive trait of character has its negative counter trait to be avoided. Personal polish must not degenerate into effeminacy, nor tact into obsequiousness, nor render you a spineless jelly-fish; strength of character and determination must not become unyielding stubbornness; zeal and loyalty should not make you a prejudiced partisan; knowledge should avoid pedantry; success must not develop egotism nor overconfidence; a careful selection of friends and associates should avoid snobbishness; be conservative, but not unprogressive; progressive, but not radical; be willing and obliging, but always sincere and dependable; be kind and sympathetic, but never officious; proficient and skilful in your work, but not obnoxiously spectacular in performance; prudence should not be overcautious, nor should forceful resolution become rashness; intense interest in your work should not produce worry nor nervousness, nor should cheerfulness, serenity, and acceptance of results cause indifference and lack of interest. There is thus ever a fight. Success is surrounded by self-produced dangers.

It is impossible in the short space of this letter to touch on all the essentials of personal conduct, but by following those herein laid down you will not go astray. In their observance you will take increasing pleasure, and your satisfaction, self-approval, and the respect of your comrades will increase with your successes and perfection of character.

AN OLD DRAGON.

## SUPPLYING A SEAT

WHEN A DISTINGUISHED visitor arrived at Jodhpur to be initiated to pig-sticking whose equitation was not quite as it might have been, Sir Pertab, in his whimsical way of relating events, said: "I hunting all over Jodhpur for fast running man putting each side of sahib. If he falling this side other man pulling other leg."—*From (British) Cavalry Journal.*



# Gasoline, Waist Lines, and What Not

BY

Major J. A. BARRY, Cavalry

Decorations by Capt. W. T. BAUSKETT, Cavalry



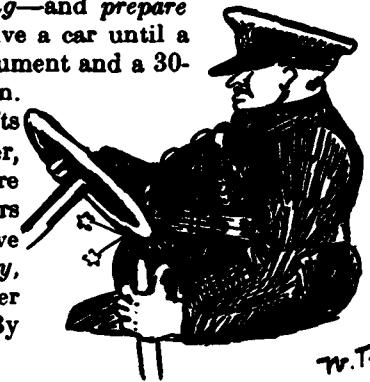
**A**N army medical bulletin recently carried an article on *calories* and their tendency to produce or eradicate *waist lines*—a production metrically, an eradication artistically. The issuance of such article is evidence, if such were needed, that waist lines are getting too long or, as the ladies say, are disappearing. The article tells how to reduce waist lines by avoiding or cutting down on many of the good things we like to eat. Nearly all of them carry too many calories to be eaten with safety—if we let the calory rest after eating him. The War Department most properly insists on physical activity; the Medical Department deplores obesity, and the Horse Department of the Cavalry School comes to the assistance of both and most modestly, but quite confidently, recommends the little appreciated sport of *horseback riding*.

It is admitted by all that one little calory can and does grow bigger and bigger, day by day and in every way, on the seat of an automobile than in any other place or under any other conditions. It's sad but true: you can't motor your calories away. It's equally true that you can ride them away, painlessly (more or less, according to patient). Moreover, writers who make money from their books about "How to Defeat Old Age," all agree that *horseback riding* is the best bet. It is also agreed that most cavalrymen in time of war (only) have got to ride a horse. (The colonel is the only man in a regiment allowed a car by the Tables of Organization.) Neither the heart nor hindpart of a cavalryman is or can be developed on the seat of a motor car.

# GASOLINE, WAIST LINES, AND WHAT NOT

Let's all get busy—and *thin*—and *young*—and *prepare for war*: Let's ride a horse. Let's don't drive a car until a 4-foot jump looks like the Washington Monument and a 30-degree slope like the walls of the Grand Canyon.

Let's teach our youngsters the gear shifts of a horse—his care, his flexibility, his power, his speeds, his makes, his utility, the pleasure to be got out of him—before our youngsters learn the same of a car, and then we'll have cheaper gasoline, less *obesity*, more *activity*, shorter and more artistic *waist lines*, lighter and better Cavalry. How can we do it? By *riding a horse*



## THE ROAD TO SOISSONS, JULY, 1919

By Ralph B. Evans, in "Foreign Service"

How well do I remember  
Those Lancers, brave and gay,  
Riding along the forest road  
That pleasant summer day.  
They laughed and seemed so happy,  
And as they rode away,  
Those brave and happy soldiers  
Feared not the hosts in Gray.

How well they rode their horses,  
Those fighting men of France;  
How bright the morning sun shown on  
Each saber and each lance.  
The clinking of their scabbards  
Was music to our ears,  
They seemed to us like knights of old,  
Who rode down through the years.

How well France must have loved them;  
How well they fought and fell.  
I think of them so often,  
As they rode to battle's hell.  
True sons of France, we hail you!  
So brave through all your fears,  
Your memory will go with us  
Through all the passing years.

## The Cavalry Fight

Lessons from the Fight at Volchkovtsy,\* on August 21, 1914

BY

General N. N. GOLOVINE

(Translated by Colonel A. M. Nikolaieff)

THE cavalry of the European States entered the World War believing in the theory of the "shock." Some believed in it to a greater, others to a smaller, degree. The Russo-Japanese and the Anglo-Boer wars made many cavalymen critical. Changes were adopted, the greatest part of them by Germany. Nevertheless, the belief in the "shock" as a decisive means of cavalry struggle continued. It is in this respect that the fight at Volchkovtsy is highly instructive. In it two cavalry masses clashed in close formations.

The first thing that should attract the attention of a student of that fight is the small number of losses.

Indeed, imagine two big masses encountering each other at full speed. What a great number of killed and injured should remain on the battlefield as the result of the law of mechanics, according to which the power of impact

is measured by the formula  $\frac{mv^2}{2}$ ! In this connection an accident comes to my mind which took place at a cavalry maneuver near Krasnoe Selo, when two horsemen, riding on the flanks of two squadrons attacking each other, clashed at full speed: one lay on the spot with his skull broken, the other died from serious injuries.

In the Volchkovtsy fight the losses caused by cold steel during the encounter itself were on each side 40 to 50 men only! Yet in that fight clashed and fought 10 squadrons on the Russian side and 8 on the Austrian side—that is, no fewer than 1,800 horsemen. Thus the percentage of the losses in the encounter was only 5.

This result strikes one at first glance; it is in contradiction to the very theory of the "shock," and proves that the theory is wrong. Battle experience is the only and incontestable judge for all "military theories."

The erroneousness of the "shock" theory consisted in the fact that it arrived at its conclusions in too theoretical a way; it put to the forefront the "mechanical principle," forgetting that the psychological side of the events on the battlefield is paramount. In time of danger, "flesh" speaks so loudly that it silences the arguments of the mind; this is the case with the greatest

\* See CAVALRY JOURNAL, January and April, 1923.

## THE CAVALRY FIGHT

part of the men. Two cavalry groups galloping to meet each other do not present two lifeless masses governed only by the laws of matter. In these masses, made up of men with their complicated spiritual structure, a process of a psychological nature develops before the mechanical impact takes place. This process dissolves the masses and very often forces them to turn their backs.

I will illustrate this by an example which I observed from a few hundred paces. Two squadrons—one Russian and the other Austrian—having emerged from the folds of the ground, unexpectedly found themselves facing each other on horseback at a distance not greater than 1,000 paces. Both at once deployed and moved forward at a gallop to meet each other. The picture immediately following the first movements made a distinct impression upon me. In the smoke enveloping the Austrian squadron I saw that the latter began to spread in depth (I was watching from the side); every moment the spreading increased. I could not see an encounter, because it coincided, in the literal meaning of this word, with the moment when I saw clearly horsemen—Russian and Austrian—galloping in the same direction—toward the wood from which the Austrians had come. Then I understood that the transformation of the deployed line into an "egg" had for its reason the fact that the more timid Austrian horsemen of the second file began from the start to hold their horses. Subsequently their example was followed by others, and a general turning back ensued; so that, at the moment of the final approach, the Austrians became mixed up with our horsemen and all were galloping toward the wood.

A similar process takes place and formerly took place in all cavalry encounters. For this reason the clash often did not occur; one side or both used to turn before it. In the Volchkovtsy fight the two sides were so brave that they actually met, but their speed was slowed down and the hand-to-hand fight was entered into by the bravest, who are called "heroes," and who are followed by the crowd. *Turning back* began from the very outset, on every section of the fight area. Such was the case with the Russians in the center, apparently with both sides in the northern section, and with the Austrians in the southern section. With the crowds on horseback tossing about on the battlefield, incidents occur in the nature of the one in the center described by Colonel Slivinski—the appearing of units in good order coming up from the rear. Now with them rests the fate of the fight; around them foams the mob element formed by the disorganized units which had clashed. In this element the emotional inspirations rule supreme.

Right here I should like to mention a detail from the reminiscences of Colonel Slivinski with reference to that moment when Count Keller ordered the troop of his escort to charge the Austrian squadron, which was galloping in good order. The staff and the escort, as if they had waited for this order,

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

went at a gallop from the spot against the flank of the passing squadron. "The chief of the escort, Lieutenant Penzin, drew his revolver, took aim, and fired near my ear. The commander of the Austrian squadron, galloping in front, fell from his horse, hit by the bullet. The squadron did not withstand our charge. It veered to the left and cleared off the battlefield. It was followed by disorderly groups and single horsemen." Please note that here also there was no "shock"; the squadron turned back under the influence of a flanking attack by much smaller forces.

Studying the letters of the participants of the fight, I can only see the steady confirmation of the fact that, although the cavalry forces rode up to each other, the fate of the fight on all sections was morally decided before the moment of the mechanical encounter. This explains observations like the one made by General Barbovich: "I noticed that the Austrians did not attack; \* \* \* they did only defend themselves, turning around." This was taking place on the Russian left flank (at the southern part of the battlefield), where two squadrons of the Ingbermanlandski Hussars unexpectedly attacked the flank and rear of the Austrian White Dragoons.

In the letters of the Austrians, participants of the fight, you will come across similar observations with regard to the centre, where the fight in the beginning was to their advantage: "First, we met a swarm of cavalrymen (*Wir trafen . . . zuerst auf einen Schwarm*) . . . We passed through it (*diesen durchritten wir*) and were confronted by units in close formation, constituting evidently the second line or the reserves." In this way the first encounter is described by the chief of staff of the 4th Austrian Cavalry Division, Oszkar de Rovid Maxon, who, together with his division chief, led the attack. These were his impressions. In reality it was the close formation of our Lancers, which had already begun to "dissolve." We also know that Count Keller had neither second line nor reserves, and what the Austrians in the thickest of the fight took for them was the escort troop, with a small group of dispatch riders, which, like the last grain of sand, were thrown by Count Keller on the scale of victory.

*The turning back of the horsemen* is one of the outward manifestations of the psychological process by which every fight is ended—a cavalry fight as well as any other—and which can be formulated as follows: *unwillingness to fight*.

This psychological law finds its expression in various forms. It is seen in a most conspicuous way when it takes the form of the refusal to fight on the part of the leader ordering a retreat or stopping the attack, or in its frequent manifestation—lacking the courage to charge on horseback.

The Volchkovtsy fight is of a special interest because both leaders proved to be brave and energetic in the highest degree. General Count Keller, as well as General Zarembo, looked for an opportunity to charge, threw their cavalry

## THE CAVALRY FIGHT

into the fight, and, if such expression may be used, "played the game" to the end. General Zarembo showed it when he placed himself at the head of the White Dragoons. Count Keller did not lead his troops personally into the fight; he was in more favorable conditions; his personal example was not necessary for the units of the 10th Cavalry Division, and to the last moment he could remain the leader controlling the fight.

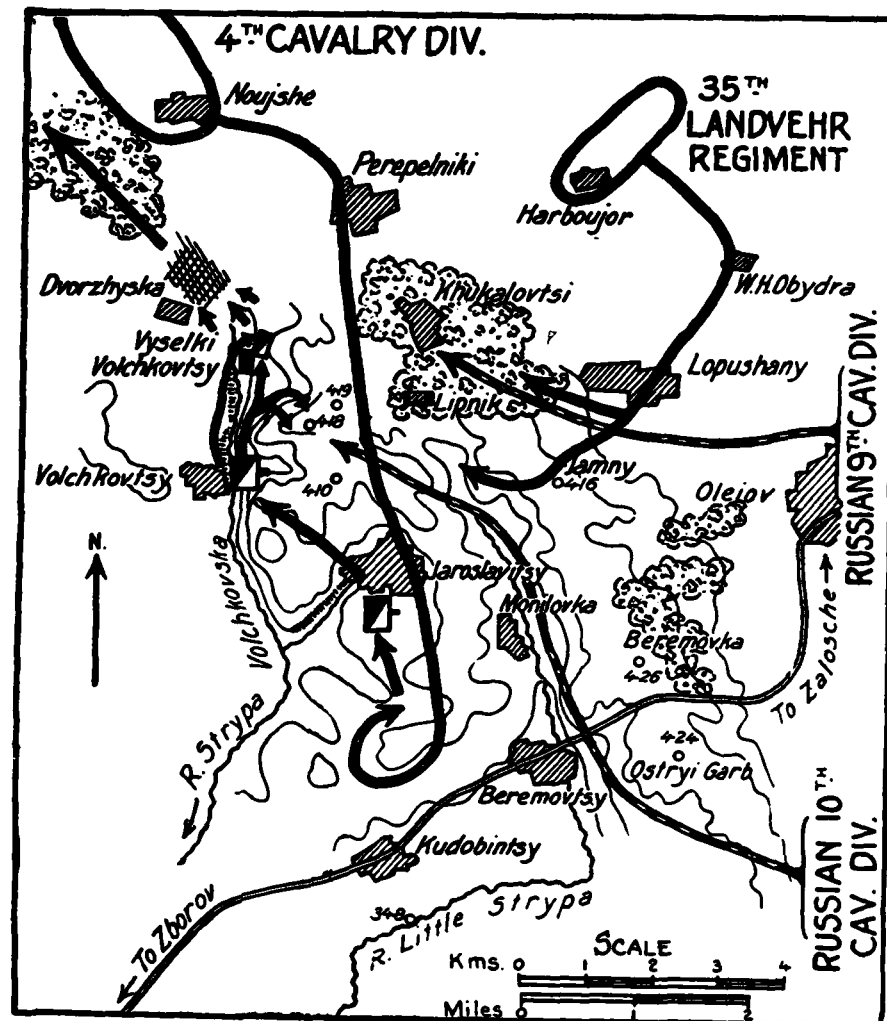
But his determination and valor are characterized by his own words, pronounced after the fight to Captain (now General) Barbovich, the commander of the two squadrons of the Ingbermanlandski Hussars: "When I threw in my last reserve, the escort, I drew my revolver (my heart nearly jumped out) and decided that if they should run I would send a bullet through my head." One should have known Count Keller to understand the whole dramatic force of his words; his personal bravery amazed everybody, and he met his death in 1919, at Kieff, like a hero, having refused to don a German military coat and by this change of cloth to escape being shot by Petlura's Ukrainian troops.

Both leaders, Count Keller and General Zarembo, showed themselves battle leaders of the kind of whose bravery every army can be proud. "The unwillingness to fight" was not on their part.

In such cases the psychological process finds its sphere of application among the junior leaders. This we see on the Austrian side. Indeed, just put to yourself the question: Why, out of 22 squadrons of the 4th Austrian Cavalry Division, only 3 took part?

Three squadrons of the 13th Lancer Regiment, as we know, galloped northward. The Austrian source explains that this was owing to the erroneous reports about the presence of the enemy there. We also know that these reports were not as wrong as the Austrian author thinks they were: The advanced units of the 9th Russian Cavalry Division had begun to appear there. Notwithstanding, in the moment when Major Vidale (the commander of the rear squadrons of the 13th Lancer Regiment) began to deploy his group of squadrons in order to charge the Russian Dragoons, who suddenly dived out of the folds of the ground, there could be no other decision for the commander of the 13th Lancer Regiment, as well as for the commander of the group marching ahead, but to support their brave comrades by an immediate charge. Only such a decision can be considered to exhibit true cavalry nature. Is not that which took place with the 13th Lancer Regiment one of the manifestations of the "unwillingness to fight" one of the stages of moral dissolution? Here is another fact: Two regiments, the 9th Dragoons and the 1st Lancers, stood during the cavalry fight waiting near Viselki Volchkovtsy, one-third of a mile from the place of the encounter. They waited for the order of the division commander!

All great leaders of troops have shown a superior talent for judging the hearts of their men. In this lies the characteristic difference between them and



PRINCIPAL MOVEMENTS OF TROOPS DURING FIGHT AT VOLCHKOVTSY, AUGUST 21, 1914.

the theorists of the military art, who themselves have not endured a serious battle experience.

Napoleon as well as Frederick II of Prussia ordered that their cavalry when charging should be in close formation and keep the line. Napoleon and Frederick had in mind least of all the laws of mechanics. Their motives were of another nature.

## THE CAVALRY FIGHT

The first reason was the necessity for the man, fighting with cold steel, to be sure of immediate support from his neighbors, protecting his flanks and rear. Without this, his participation in a fight requires of him a very high morale and degree of preparedness.

The second reason was the impossibility for individual horsemen, when in close formation, to turn back. Frederick insisted especially on this, because he was not sure of the quality of his troops, drafted by recruiting (not on the principle of military service based on citizen's duty). In this respect he went very far. There were instances, according to his contemporaries, when the horsemen, galloping in the midst of the masses moving against each other, were lifted in the air. The most reliable men, non-commissioned officers, were placed on the flanks, so that the rank and file were as if immured in the deployed formations of the striking lines. Those compact masses, for which the only direction open was ahead, had, in the full meaning of the word, to be "led" by their leaders. Thus Napoleon's and Frederick's tactics were no more than methods of bringing up the cavalry to the encounter.

Let us consider now, in the example of the Volchkovtsy fight, to what extent was it possible to put such methods into practice. We should also remember that this is the only example available for our study, because all other efforts invariably ended in such a way that the close formations of cavalry appearing in the sphere of artillery fire were shot to pieces without having the honor of seeing the enemy's face. Once such case I told about in the article describing the action at Yanoff.\*

The Austrian cavalry leaders believed in the doctrine of the "shock" even more than we. This accounts for the fact that throughout all the morning of August 21st General Zarembo was dragging his division in close formations in his trail. When taking up a waiting position, he assembled his regiments in columns. From the point of view of the "shock" doctrine, he was right.

About 9 a. m. he was severely punished for the faultiness of his doctrine. The 4th Austrian Cavalry Division got under the quick fire of the Russian horse batteries standing in position near the hill "Beremovka." We use the word "severely," although we know that in reality the losses of the Austrian cavalry division from this fire were not heavy; but the result in the moral respect was heavy. This was the result: the disorganized division fell back and was afterward taken unawares by the Russian cavalry in the region of the hills 418 and 419. The division commander was obliged to lead the first regiment to charge personally, and the remaining regiments, with the exception of the squadrons of Major Vidale, refused to fight.

The fundamental cause of the Austrian failure lies in General Zarembo's tendency to drag his division in his trail in compact formations. Thus we see that in modern war, even in such an exceptional case as the fight at

\* CAVALRY JOURNAL, April, 1921.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Volchkovtsy, the old method of bringing up the cavalry to the encounter does not give good results.

It was somewhat different with Count Keller. The fight was started by the vanguard regiment, the Cossacks. They attacked the retreating infantry in lava formation. The Orenburgaki Cossacks were followed, behind their right flank, by Count Keller's 10 squadrons. To the Cossacks' left two more squadrons protected the region of his maneuver. Fate was extremely favorable to Count Keller. These 10 squadrons unexpectedly found themselves 1,000 steps away from mounted enemy masses. General Count Keller showed himself a true cavalry leader when he decided without hesitation to take advantage of this accidental meeting; he threw his squadrons into a charge, despite the fact that he had every reason to consider himself only half as strong numerically as his enemy. He was right, because the "mechanical shock" does not exist, and very little weight, therefore, is to be attributed, under such conditions, to the law of mechanics or the number of troops. In this sphere the spirit of boldness reigns supreme.

But how to come up, under the conditions of modern war, to 100-200 paces from the enemy—to this effective distance in a cavalry fight? The old method is of no use. Another is to be looked for. The finding of the other method will be greatly facilitated if we consider the evolution of infantry tactics in connection with the increasing efficiency of fire-arms. Already, in the beginning of the XIXth century, its battle formations began to extend, growing wide along the front and deep from front to rear. Cavalry's battle formations should also extend along the front and to the rear.

Let us imagine that General Zarembo, having decided to outflank the hills 418-419, should have occupied hill 410 by dismounted units with machine-guns, and at the same time should have sent a regiment to occupy hills 418-419, giving the latter the remaining machine-guns and a battery. This regiment would have taken up a waiting position, having part of its troops dismounted and the machine-guns and battery ready to take under fire the approaches leading to those hills. Under the cover of this immobile shield, General Zarembo might have carried out with the other regiments the maneuver planned. We think that the result of Count Keller's charge in this case would be different. If we consider modern cavalry's armament—the French cavalry, for instance, provides every squadron with 6 light machine-guns and the cavalry division with 24 guns, 48 regimental machine-guns, 8 machine-guns with the cyclists, and 36 armored cars with 37 millimeter gun and machine-guns—it will be clear that the stability and fire power of the regiment in the region of hills 418-419 would be such as to make the issue of the charge of Count Keller's 10 squadrons in close formation beyond any doubt.

We have the right, in this connection, to put to ourselves the question: Will the leader be right if, under the conditions of future war, finding himself in a tactical situation analogous to the one in which Count Keller found

## THE CAVALRY FIGHT

himself when he came up to the hill "Ostryi Garb," he carries out the decision (the movement of the main body) by the same methods? Undoubtedly not.

What, then, is the right solution of the problem for a cavalry leader in a position similar to that of Count Keller on the Ostryi Garb? Having decided, after the Cossacks were sent out, to move north-westward with the 10 squadrons, he should first direct another regiment with part of the machine-guns to occupy the hills 418-419, and then with the remaining 6 squadrons, forming his reserve, move along the valley.

Now the reader might object that this regiment runs the risk of being attacked by the Austrian cavalry, if the latter, despite all that was said above, should stand in compact masses behind the hills. Here we come to the fundamental difference between the former three-line battle formation, characteristic of the "shock" tactics, and the one articulated and dismembered along the front and to the rear. The latter does not have for its object the mechanical unity of the mounted shock. It builds the cavalry fight on a combination of the dismounted (fire) and mounted fights. Therefore, taking into consideration the power of modern fire-arms, it is not afraid of the defeat of one of its separate parts. But, on the other hand, it makes possible the utilization of the full power of modern fire for creating on the battlefield a whole net of fire zones in which the enemy cavalry, trying to revive the picture of former mass attacks, will unavoidably get entangled as in a spider web. Let us even suppose that this enemy cavalry will have a partial success over one of the parts of the dismembered formation, thanks to the dash and force of its first impulse. What will be the result? According to the unalterable psychological law, a cavalry unit, once thrown into a charge, becomes like a bullet which left the rifle barrel. It pursues the part of the enemy which it succeeds in hitting and with it turns into a mob. The bullet has spent its force. In this situation, even our small reserves, appearing on the battlefield, will have an influence like that of Count Keller's escort on the Austrian squadron and the mass of Austrian horsemen round it, galloping after the Russian Lancers; and, further, those waves of galloping horsemen will get entangled in the fire zones created by our dismounted elements.

Modern cavalry doctrine demands now, not the old boot-to-boot formation, but the "lava" of small units. As, in a cross-country ride, groups of horsemen part and come together in order to take the obstacles, so in a modern fight the groups of the troop lava gallop forward, not only getting over the obstacles on the ground, but also over the obstacles created by fire.

It is not a paradox to say that the cavalry of today must be composed of horsemen who have the *cavalry spirit* to a greater degree than they of an earlier type. Every atom of a cavalry force, every individual horseman, is a self-urged unit looking forward toward a bold, quick maneuver.

# The British Cavalry in Palestine and Syria

BY

Lieutenant-Colonel EDWARD DAVIS, Cavalry

(Observer with the British Army)

## THE CONQUEST OF SYRIA

THE admirable strategy, the sound tactics, and the fine fighting which featured the Jerusalem Campaign were to be surpassed by the 1918 advance into Syria. The brilliancy of these two campaigns need not be accounted for by mystery, by good luck, or by attempts to belittle the quality of the opposition. The simple explanation is the presence of superior ability in the person of the Commander-in-Chief and those whose close support blended in his assertions of command. A bold spirit dared to do, a superior military mind calculated correctly the capacity of troops of all branches, genius stamped the resulting combinations, and real leadership imbued an entire army with matchless confidence.

Sir Philip Chetwode, commanding the XXth Corps, one of the real strategists of the World War; Guy Dawnay, Bartholoman, and others at G. H. Q., under the skillful direction of Major-General Bols, Chief of Staff, gave the Commander-in-Chief a composite mind distinguished for its grasp, its acuteness, and its flexibility in determining situations and achieving solutions. This was a group endowed with unique genius for movement warfare. They would have done as well in the highest places on other fields. In fact, as far back as 1914 several of this general group had contributed much toward saving the day in France. We are liable to forget the words of the British Commander-in-Chief, Lord French, who said in those critical days: "The greatest threat of disaster with which we were faced in 1914 was staved off by the devoted bravery and endurance displayed by the Cavalry Corps, under a commander (General Allenby) who handled them throughout with consummate skill." The same genius for movement warfare, the same appreciation of mobility, and the same aptitude for measuring the power of men which had held back overwhelming forces in the unready days of 1914 brought forth perfect campaigns when this group appeared in complete control of the situation in Palestine. Here and in Syria they produced the classic of all recent warfare.

Like any other work of art, this Syrian campaign produces pleasure and enthusiasm even when viewed quite superficially, after the manner of the layman, but to the aspiring professional it presents so much evidence of surpassing technique that a close examination is a necessity as well as a pleasure.

To picture the situation as the Commander-in-Chief saw it, and then follow his mental processes as he made his estimate, we must turn to the map shown

## THE BRITISH CAVALRY IN PALESTINE AND SYRIA

on page 289. The dotted line represents the British positions in mid-September, 1918—a line about 50 miles long, with its right flank resting on the Dead Sea, its left on the Mediterranean, with the enemy confronting them along its entire length. The Turks' total strength was believed to be about 104,000 men. Considerably more than two-thirds of the force was west of the Jordan River, occupying the area indicated by green on the map—a parallelogram about 45 miles in length and 12 miles in depth. It will be observed that the Turkish lines of communication ran northward from the eastern half of this parallelogram, converging on El Afule and Beisan, about 25 miles to the north. From those two points the main communications ran eastward to Deraa, the junction where the Palestine Railway and the Hedjaz Railway unite with the main line running down from Damascus. Obviously, if El Afule, Beisan, and Deraa could be seized, the Turkish retreat would be cut off. The problem, then, was to concentrate a sufficient striking force to penetrate the green parallelogram at its most vulnerable point, and then to send through the break a force possessing sufficient speed to reach objectives in the rear quickly and of sufficient strength to hold them securely. The density of the troops in the parallelogram and the nature of the terrain within that area had to be considered.

Early in 1918 the density had, perhaps, been quite uniform throughout the parallelogram. There followed a succession of events which caused a considerable change. First came a great raid against the Turks east of the Jordan, in March, 1918, resulting in a shift of Turkish troops to the east. A second raid in the same direction, in April, caused the Turks to take more troops from their right flank to strengthen the center and left. During the summer months, still impressed by the probability of a great attack against his eastern positions, the Turk stripped his coastal region of more troops. Thus, as a result of Turkish-German misinterpretation of circumstances, the western end of the green parallelogram, from the standpoint of lack of density, presented to the British the most favorable point for penetration.

As to terrain, everything favored an attack near the coast. Here the plain, though only about 10 miles wide, offered space for deployment and smoothness for advance, while everywhere to the east tangled hills and mountains made difficult obstacles. Moreover, if the Turkish lines could be broken in the coast plain, the extension of this latter feature to the north was in effect a great, wide corridor along the Turkish right flank, up which could sweep the fast-moving columns seeking to cut off the Turkish army. The Jordan River, to the east, difficult of crossing except at Jisr El Damie, which the Anzac Division was ordered to seize, presented a barrier against the escape to the east of the two Turkish armies which lay west of the Jordan. The crippling of the railway at Deraa Junction would prevent the escape of the Turkish army which occupied the region east of the Jordan.

And so it was decided to concentrate in the coast plain north of Jaffa

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

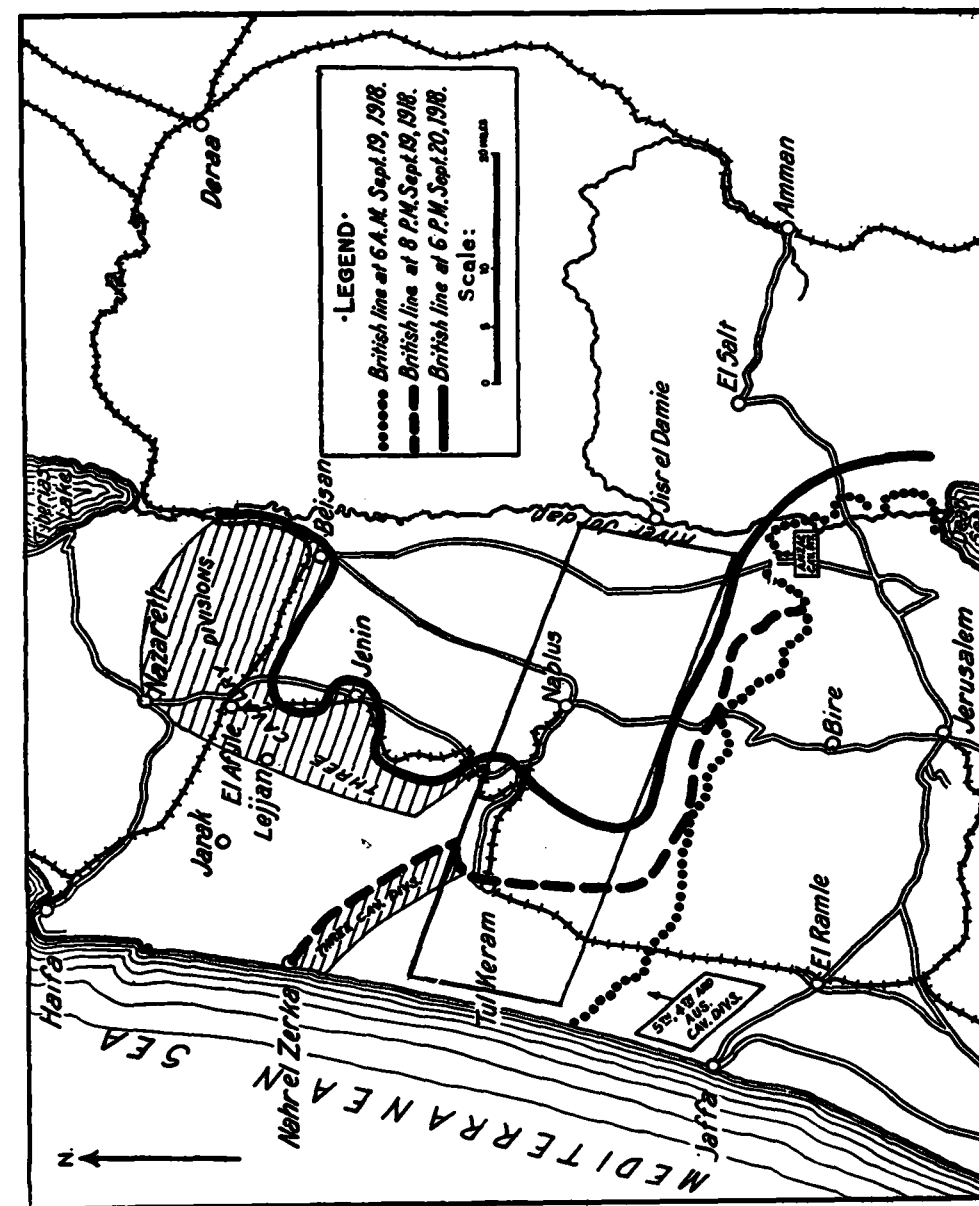
a mass of infantry capable of opening a gate or door in the Turkish lines next to the sea—a gate ten miles long—which, pushed open clear back to the hills east of the railway and there held fast, would present a passageway for a mass of 20,000 cavalry and horse artillery, destined within a few hours to establish behind the Turkish army a great barrier of brigades and batteries controlling the exits from the hills. This was to be the first phase—a combined effort of horse, foot, and guns, each assembled in strength exactly calculated for the task, each assigned a rôle in keeping with its special qualities. Other phases were to follow, but it will be appropriate now to consider the preparations which were made for this first phase.

During the half year preceding this attack, General Allenby had sent to France the equivalent of about three divisions of British infantry. Those had been partially replaced by troops which included a large component of Indian infantry. He gained one additional division of cavalry, making his total four divisions of cavalry. The various changes reduced his front-line strength to about 70,000, whereas in the Palestine campaign he had had about 100,000. Moreover, in the latter campaign his fighting force had included more than 75 per cent British troops, most of whom had fought in France, Gallipoli, and Macedonia, while in this Syrian campaign perhaps 75 per cent of his troops were of the Indian Army, including battalions which had not yet seen service in the World War. These circumstances naturally demanded greatly increased care in organizing, planning, and training for the 1918 offensive.

As the four mounted divisions now included two divisions of Indian cavalry, it is not too much to say that there was a gain in speed, dash, and the quality of pure cavalry offensive, because those Indian troopers tend toward a special cultivation of these characteristics. A change in the armament of the Australian Division made a further contribution to the spirit of swift offensive. This division had been armed with the rifle and bayonet only, during the Palestine campaign. It now appeared armed with the saber, or sword, as they correctly call it. It would be entirely superfluous to dwell upon the offensive spirit of the Australians. A British general officer of exceptional war experience once said to me that, in his opinion, the Australians were probably "the élite attack troops of the Empire." It was altogether fitting, therefore, that they should be given the sword, and subsequent events proved that they knew how to use it. Only a few weeks' training under old British cavalrymen were available for the Australians' instruction; but natural aptitude made up for lack of time. As an added element of spice, there now appeared in the 5th Australian Brigade a regiment of French cavalry, half regulars, half Algerian Spahis. In a general atmosphere of real cavalry leadership characterized by great daring, rare judgment, and swift decision, these French cavalrymen were able to display their individual capabilities to great advantage.

The most difficult undertaking of the preparatory phase was the transfer

## THE BRITISH CAVALRY IN PALESTINE AND SYRIA





## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

of divisions from the eastern to the western end of the line without arousing the suspicions of the Turk. Where one infantry division had been, four were now to be concentrated, and one of these came from a point 40 miles distant. Where some 70 guns had stood, over 350 had now to be emplaced. Of the four cavalry divisions on the right, three were moved some 45 miles to the west. To appreciate the difficulty of secret troop movements in Palestine, one should keep in mind the lack of cover along the roads and the dearth of villages or other artificial features. The east and west roads in the Jerusalem-Jaffa belt are singularly open throughout their winding courses, and the roughness of the country permits marching troops but little dispersion laterally. I know of few hill roads where troops, or even a single horseman, are so conspicuous to airplane observation as the road from Jerusalem as far west as Latron—the main artery to the coast.

However, the German air force was to have few opportunities to observe troops on any road, for they were driven from the air, in this particular area, three weeks before the attack began. The Turk was thus left in a position which many military enthusiasts thoughtlessly build up for themselves when they confidently plan to accomplish all their reconnaissance by airplane. They overlook the fact that on the eve of operations "the other fellow" may suddenly acquire the command of the air. It was part of General Allenby's technique in both campaigns to withhold his real air strength for many months, and then suddenly unloose overwhelming combinations at just the right time. The Turk, having only a small force of cavalry, and not very good cavalry at that, eventually found himself in each campaign almost as blind as the proverbial bat.

But the troops themselves contributed greatly to the secrecy of their movements by the stealth of their night marching and their skillfully camouflaged bivouacs by day. In Macedonia, when Sarrail made his big offensive in 1916, I had seen some excellent camouflage of this variety, but the British troops in Palestine were especially thorough at such work. The "heavies" particularly, despite their long treks and ungainly bulk, were so marvelously inconspicuous by day that one sometimes thought they had disappeared entirely. Once across to the Jaffa area, the troops found good hiding places for their bivouacs. Here, in the coast plain around Ramleh, Ludd, Saron, and Jaffa, there are really extensive orange, olive, and almond groves. The orange groves are especially fine for concealment purposes, the trees being very close together and the foliage thick. The olive and almond groves, while not such perfect cover, offer a little more room for horses.

One bit of deception had its humorous side as well as its undoubted effect on the Turk. In Jerusalem, outside the walls, there stands the Hotel Fast, which was kept by an old German named Fast prior to the British capture of the city and in fact for some time afterwards. Herr Fast's well-ordered tavern seemed a godsend in those days, because it had, among other things,

## THE BRITISH CAVALRY IN PALESTINE AND SYRIA

at least one bathtub and several small stoves. The stoves, stoked with stubborn olive wood, and the bathtub, full of hot water, restored more than one officer to a condition of real warmth, when despair had seemed to whisper that the cold, clammy chill of the Judean hills would remain always in the very marrow of his bones. Here, also, tea, Scotch, and many other comforts pertaining to the human side of war were found. But the heavy hand of Mars fell on this haven of rest as the autumn of 1918 approached and busy artificers began fitting it up for occupancy by G. H. Q. Swiftly to the bazaars this significant item of news was carried, and, of course, from there to the Turks, whose apprehension of a British attack east of Jerusalem seemed now confirmed. Back near Ramleh, thirty miles away, the Commander-in-Chief smiled a grim smile. Fast's Hotel was destined to be only a dummy G. H. Q., not his kind.

Another instance of the painstaking attention which marked the details of preparation was the maintenance of dummy camps in the Jordan Valley. In this area the cavalry had been active throughout the year and it was important to conceal the fact of their departure. Their camps were, therefore, left standing and appearances of activity were kept up by a few men left behind. Imitation horses were made by setting up four sticks in the ground and draping an old blanket over them. Standing along dummy picket lines, these dummy horses did their duty for the benefit of the enemy air observers so completely that one document taken from the German Commander-in-Chief's captured files read as follows, under date of September 17, two days before the attack: "Far from there being any diminution in the cavalry in the Jordan Valley, there were evidences of twenty-three more squadrons."

Over in the zone of attack, next to the sea, it was necessary to build many miles of new roads for the impending operations. As fast as built, these roads were carefully covered with refuse, grass, and other material. Four new bridges over the River Auja north of Jaffa were necessary. To conceal the preparation of these structures, two "Schools for bridging instructions" were established and a curriculum of building and removing bridges was carried out most nonchalantly, but just on the eve of operations the "faculty" very carelessly left the bridges in position where they would be most useful. Enemy barrages were systematically provoked and their positions carefully noted; the utmost caution was observed in the opening of new wire or wireless stations; selected bodies of troops were marched eastward by day and westward by night. In short, every artifice which would contribute to the enemy's deception was employed with marked thoroughness and "finesse."

A study of the methods of really great commanders throughout history reveals in each a consummate craftiness or super-sagacity in the art of misleading the enemy. It is a fact that this quality was rather conspicuous by its absence during the World War. One who knows the German people, their psychology and the spirit of the old military machine, understands why

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

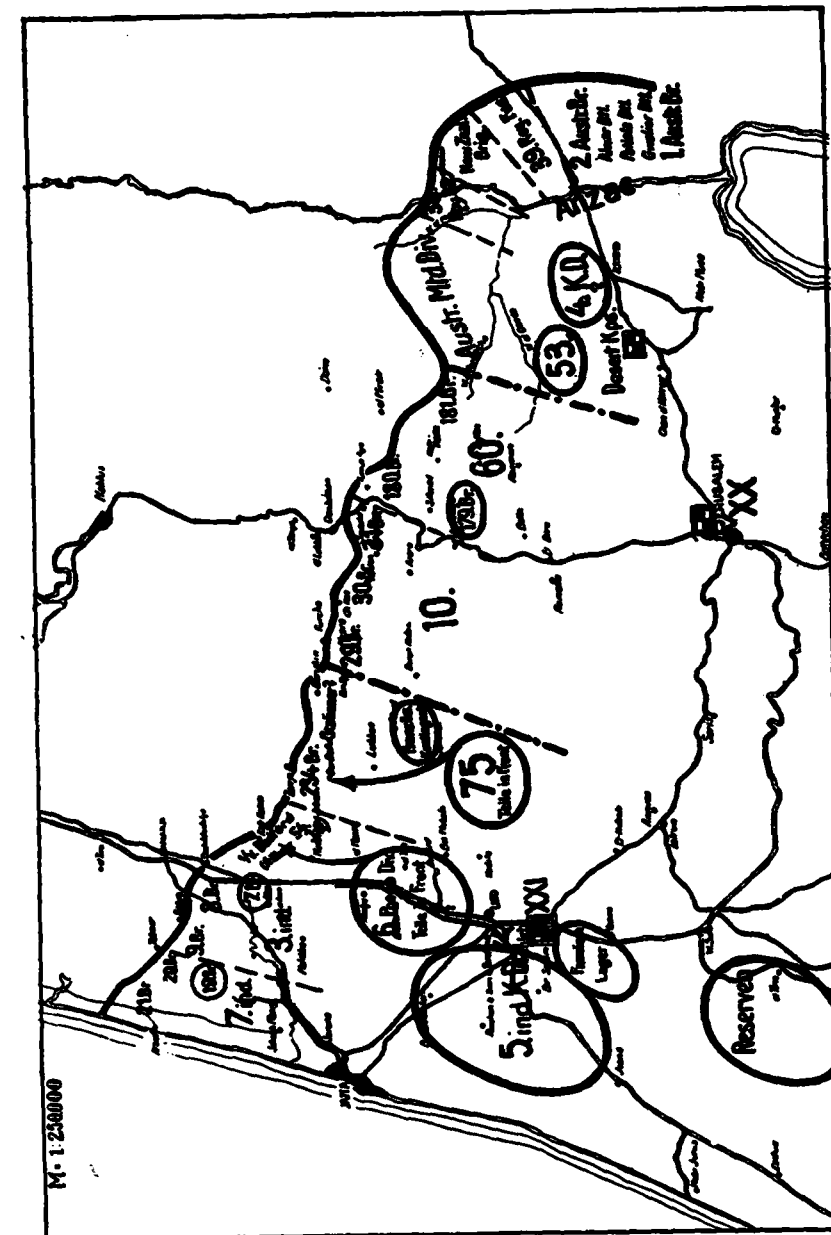
this quality was lacking in their otherwise remarkably perfect composite. In other armies anxiety, temperamental barriers, or inexperience prevented or dwarfed the development of this subtle and most formidable quality. But it was a very prominent agency in the operations of General Allenby, and was never more convincingly shown than in the preparations for the Syrian campaign. Turkish "intelligence" was directed by German officers, whose thoroughness and industry need no comment. The Turk himself is famous for his adroitness, and, as to "combat intelligence," his craftiness is noteworthy. That spies were present within the British lines in considerable numbers is obvious to all who know the kind of people who dwell in that part of the world.

It is impressive, therefore, to examine the map shown opposite, which was captured by the British in the victorious attacks of September, 1918. This is the "Enemy Order of Battle" map prepared by the intelligence officer (German) at Turkish G. H. Q., and purports to give the locations of British troops on September 17, 1918, about 36 hours before the attack of September 19. The mistakes in it show how skillfully the British had effected and concealed all the changes in the line preparatory to the attack. For example, the Australian Mounted Division was not in the Jordan Valley, as shown, but was 40 miles away to the west, near Jaffa; the 4th Cavalry Division was also near Jaffa, over 43 miles west of its location on the map; the 60th Division was not on the east of the Jerusalem road, but was 30 miles away, on the left of the line at the coast; the 75th Division, shown on this map northeast of Ludd, was actually some ten miles to the west. The 3th Poona Division of the Indian Army, shown here as in the Ludd sector, was actually on the Mesopotamian front, 400 miles away.

At half-past 4 on the morning of September 19, 1918, just as dawn broke, the five infantry divisions next the coast leaped forward to the attack, under cover of an intense artillery bombardment. The Turk was completely surprised and his first position, 14,000 yards in length and 3,000 yards in depth, was swept through even before the sun, with all his eastern swiftness, could bring the full light of day. Pressing on, the infantry completed their penetration and began to change direction to the east within an hour and a quarter after beginning the attack. With great skill in maintaining direction, this mass of five infantry divisions, with a cavalry brigade on their left, emerged from the labyrinth of conquered trench and wire, wheeled to the right, and drove the enemy before them. Not only had they this task, but in their eastward sweep all elements had to clear the roads leading north by a certain time in order to free them for the cavalry. Thus the great gate, ten miles long, was pushed open by the infantry and jammed back against the hills east of the railway.

As early as half-past 7 the 5th Cavalry Division was crossing the old Turkish trench system, marching right along the beach. The Mediterranean coast

## THE BRITISH CAVALRY IN PALESTINE AND SYRIA



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

throughout much of the length of the Holy Land is featured by a belt of sand and gravel lying under a coastal cliff averaging, perhaps, 40 feet in elevation. Down below Gaza in 1917 this sheltering cliff had served many purposes, and now the 5th Cavalry Division rode forward under its cover.

By 9 o'clock the 4th Cavalry Division was crossing the enemy's trench lines, following a road about five miles distant from the coast. Once free of the enemy's former works, they rode forward in line of brigade columns.

The Australian Division advanced on the same road, following the 4th Division. Advanced Corps Headquarters marched with the Australians. Each of the three divisions picked up its horse batteries as the old Turkish line was approached, these batteries having taken up forward positions for participation in the preliminary bombardment.

The Australian official correspondent described that day's ride in the lines below, giving a picture as vivid as it is accurate: "They rode away in the sunrise, the advanced squadrons trotting out after the ground scouts, the flank patrols galloping wide, brigade after brigade, over the rolling sand hills. The men were eager, the horses fought for their heads. The swords of the Yeomanry flashed and Indian lances glinted from each successive sky-line. It was the war scene of the picture galleries. Quickening the pace, the regiments raced on past our guns, most of which were already limbered up for the pursuit. The infantry, busy with their prisoners, cheered them as they passed, and soon they were speeding down on Turks who had fled from the onslaught of the infantry. But their sport with sword and lance was brief."

The perfection of our organization was revealed very early. The cavalry was scarcely clear of the trench system before scores of field guns were rumbling in their wake; and, pressing on after the artillery by many tracks, good and bad, went mile after mile of camels and wheeled transport. Where the cavalry went the supplies must follow; and the cavalry rode from 40 to 50 miles between sunrise and midnight. With nothing to check them, their pace was controlled only by the endurance of their horses. The men rode light; they carried only one blanket, and that as a saddle-cloth. Tent sheets and waterproof were forbidden. It was a wild ride against time. But horses were loaded with three days' rations, and few carried less than 250 pounds and many more than 280 pounds.

By 10 o'clock that night the two leading divisions were 35 miles north of the Turks' former trench lines. During the night they crossed the hills of Samaria—the 5th Division by Jarak, on the left; the 4th by Musmus, on the right. By 2 o'clock in the morning the two brigades leading the 5th Division had reached Abu Shusheh, down the eastern slopes, and by 5 o'clock in the morning all the 4th Division were at Lejjun, in the Musmus Pass. From these points the divisions marched directly on Nazareth and El Afule, their respective objectives.

## THE BRITISH CAVALRY IN PALESTINE AND SYRIA

In the last hours of moonlight on the morning of September 20, after a march of 55 miles in 22 hours, the leading brigade of the 5th Division galloped into Nazareth, the Turkish G. H. Q., and began an attack against the headquarters building. The garrison, taken completely by surprise, effected, nevertheless, a desperate resistance. The Commander-in-Chief, Liman von Sanders, was reported to have escaped in his pajamas. Be that as it may, his headquarters guard, including a large component of German troops, not only lingered, but demonstrated that the town could not be entirely taken by one brigade. In the meantime, however, specially designated troops of the 13th Brigade had raided the Turkish Army Headquarters and captured its most important documents. With these and some 2,000 prisoners, the brigade withdrew in the direction of El Afule.

In the meantime the 4th Division, just as day broke, debouched from the Lejjun defile into the Plain of Esdraelon, the 2d Lancers leading, accompanied by armored cars. A dramatic combat ensued as the head of the column discovered a Turkish battalion advancing toward the pass, engaged it with the armored cars' machine-guns in front and charged through it with cavalry from left to right, killing 46 with the lance, capturing the 470 survivors, and eliminating the force in about five minutes. The division as such, despite several unexpected developments, had, by reason of its commander's quick, definite decisions, just seized the pass in time. Then, upon entering the plain, the commander of the leading regiment had by similar quick action, as above described, eliminated a new danger. Impelled by such typical cavalry decisions, the whole enveloping movement surged forward that day. Seizing the railroad station of El Afule at 8 o'clock that morning, the 4th Division had made good its great first objective by covering 65 miles in 24 hours. Beisan, down the valley to the southeast, was seized that afternoon and the second main outlet closed, after marching 85 miles in 34 hours. Later in the day a regiment closed the passage across the Jordan River—100 miles in 36 hours.

The Australian Division in the meantime crossed the crest of the hills of Samaria in daylight, reached Lejjun at about 11 o'clock, rode hard to the southeast, and drove in the last big wedge by seizing Jenin at half-past 5 in the afternoon. Thus the Cavalry Corps had in 36 hours projected its self-sustaining groups of fire and shock power all along the vital points of a 100-mile arc inclosing the entire Turkish Army west of the Jordan River. Four or five short, sharp engagements had been fought and about 12,000 prisoners taken, in laying down the net which was to gather in so many additional thousands. The sweep of the corps to the north and its swing then to the southeast had placed just inside the arc of its own communications the old Turkish telegraph system; and so, by quick repairs, the enemy's former wires were now used for signal communications back to G. H. Q., at Ramleh. Thus the first, or cavalry, phase was complete, even as to the continuity of communications.

## Suggestions to Executive Officers on Duty with Organized Reserves

BY

Captain GEORGE H. SHEA, Cavalry

**T**HE Corps Area Commander is the commander of all reserve divisions within his corps area. To assist him, there have been formed, with an appropriate commissioned personnel, a staff for each division and one army corps headquarters within the corps area, whose duty it is to weld together the units accredited to their divisions, so that, if necessity should arise, the division may be mobilized without delay, and training started.

Executive officers have, as far as practicable, been assigned, and to a great extent the ultimate success of the Reserve Corps rests with the executive officers. Conditions vary greatly within corps areas, as to the amount of personal contact that executive officers may have with the commissioned personnel of their units. In most cases the companies of regiments are scattered and, due to lack of funds for travel, the executive officer rarely will meet all the officers of his regiment, his one chance being to get them to attend the 15-day encampment and to be there himself.

The correspondence course should be encouraged and every effort made to get all reserve officers of the organization to pursue it. Every assistance should be given reserve officers taking the course, and visits to the offices of students to assist them or the conducting of night classes will materially aid in the submission of problems to the instructor for correction and in a higher average in the number who will endeavor to complete the course.

An executive officer should not consider his sphere of activities as confined to the unit of which he is executive officer, but should extend his help, as far as practicable, to all units within his immediate vicinity which do not happen to have an executive officer assigned to them.

The organization of a chapter of the Association of the Army of the United States, or Reserve Officers' Association, is most essential. Weekly or monthly lectures should be given, at which time a talk on some military subject not only proves of interest, but, it will be found, will increase the attendance and membership.

Mounted officers on duty as executive officers should make an effort to start a riding club and to get all reserve officers of the mounted branches in as members; also as many civilians as may care to become members. The writer of this article assisted in the organization of a riding club within six weeks after his reporting for duty as executive officer. This club now has

## SUGGESTIONS TO EXECUTIVE OFFICER

about one hundred members, seventy-five of whom own their own mounts, and through members of the club their estates have been opened and rides for some miles through private grounds permitted. Paper chases are held, and one member is preparing a polo field at his own expense for the use of reserve officers. Advantage is also taken of these rides to conduct minor tactical problems and terrain exercises. It is true that the whole club cannot be gotten together, but flock rides of from 10 to 25 are most common three or four times a week in good weather.

Officers of the staff departments and dismounted branches who do not care to participate in equitation should be encouraged to participate in trap shooting, golf, hikes, or any amusement that will bring them together and which will require them to exercise. It is exceedingly important that reserve officers be kept physically fit. Executive officers should assist them to do so. It is as much their duty to do this as to keep the records of their office correctly. Not more than half a day is necessary for an executive officer to complete the requirements of his office work; the other half should be devoted to development of the reserve personnel, professionally and physically. Visits to places of employment, rides, lectures given at luncheons, lectures at night, etc., assist in accomplishing this result.

No set formula can be prescribed; each executive officer will have to solve his own problem in his particular sector. Some sectors can, due to local conditions, procure better results than others, which is no reflection on the executive officer whose locality is not quite so productive of results.

The third component of the army has come to stay, and, that the development of this component may be accomplished as desired by the War Department, executive officers should lend every effort that success may be achieved.

## A Rut in the Road\*

BY

Major E. P. PIERSON, Cavalry

**A** RUTLESS road is the aspiration of every road-builder, but a good-looking road may yet be impassable because rutless. Such a road may be ideal in good weather, but let the rain and the storm come and the vehicles slide off for lack of a rut to guide them straight ahead, even against their will.

Apply the simile. A business can measure its progress better by compari-

\* A thought occasioned by an editorial, *Brass Polish and Elbow Grease*, in the *CAVALRY JOURNAL* for October, 1922.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

son with the so-called stagnant elements of the trade. Beautifully colored get-rich-quick schemes usually land their victims in the ditch. The conservative business man makes use of both the "ruts" and the slick places.

An army without "ruts" would be a perfect mechanism indeed. One with nothing but "ruts" would be a good argument for its abolishment. However, any well-traveled road will in time become more or less "rutty"; sometimes from sheer wear, sometimes from weakness. Unless ruts get too bad from weakness, they are repaired in the normal upkeep processes—*e. g.*, by dragging and grading—and by entire removal and renewal of the road bed only when this becomes unavoidable.

In the evolution of the modern soldier, especially if his casual public remarks are observed, it is feared there is a pharisaical tendency of aversion to the old army. Stories are told in derision about the old-type colonel, with unkempt beard and untrimmed hair, when a razor was an unheard-of luxury, while the modern defender is a perfect advertisement of the tonsorial art. In those days the cut and style of uniform did not change, as now, with the season's fashions. Then comforts were appreciated because obtained in response to personal efforts, while now welfare is bestowed so freely that it has become a veritable burden. Then a soldier learned his duty in the school of experience, while now duty has to compete with numerous schools. The aims were, of course, the same; no soldier should neglect his duty, violate his honor, nor fail to defend his country.

The fair-weather soldier is hardly worth emulating. He seems to look upon the mere routine of a soldier as a hardship. We hear little of his duty, too much about his personal honor, but what about his country? He thinks soldiering should consist only of parades on sunshiny days, always playing to the gallery. He recounts frequently his personal sacrifices. This usually includes the position he "might have had" had he not accepted the low pay for service to his country. When ordered for duty beyond the bright lights, he begins to talk of leaving the service. In short, he looks upon his engagement to serve as a job, with no other obligation than that it should please him.

It is fortunate that this is not a picture of the real army. We have occasional so-called ruts left, but they are better than a lot of rolling stones. We need men who join the service for better or for worse. They can be depended upon in emergency to leaven the whole with loyalty and devotion to duty, such as to tide over any temporary slippery and boggy stretch. All that glitters is not gold; equally, all that wear the neatest uniform are not genuine clear through. Therefore, let us be slow to condemn every conservative soldier as a rut or obstruction. Some shiny boots would look better if a little bespattered from true service.

So, here's to the useful rut. He is the backbone on which to build in time of emergency. May he ever inspire our newly acquired citizen soldiery with the clear-ringing motto, *Duty, honor, country* before self.

## The Cavalry Board

BY

Major K. S. BRADFORD, Cavalry, Recorder

THE Cavalry Board is permanently stationed at Fort Riley, Kans., and consists of the Commandant and Assistant Commandant of the Cavalry School and not less than three nor more than five other officers designated by the Chief of Cavalry, the junior among whom is the recorder. The board operates under direction of the Chief of Cavalry, with whom correspondence is direct. The purpose of the board is to consider subjects pertaining to cavalry, which are referred to it by the Chief of Cavalry, and to originate and submit to him recommendations looking to the improvement of the cavalry arm.

The home of the board is the Cavalry Board Building, an old band barracks in rear of the headquarters building, at Fort Riley. It contains the board room, where meetings are held, offices for the recorder and other members of the board for whom offices are not provided elsewhere, store-rooms and two museum rooms. One of the latter contains exhibits of foreign cavalry equipment, including British, French, Italian, Spanish, Belgian, Japanese, Dutch, and Danish, and the other contains samples of every article tested by the board, each article properly tagged to indicate the recommendation of the board. This collection of tested articles serves as a physical record of the work of the board, to which its members can refer when considering new or similar changes in equipment.

The function of the board is advisory only, as it can recommend, but cannot carry its own recommendations into effect. In practice, however, every contemplated change affecting cavalry is submitted to the board by the Chief of Cavalry, thus making it a sort of clearing-house for new ideas on every phase of cavalry activity, including organization, training, armament, clothing, equipment, and even administration. The questions to come before the board, which have at times included as many as fifty different subjects in a single month, are discussed and decided at its regular meetings.

In the long run, improvement is obtained only as a result of individual interest and initiative in submitting new proposals. It is impossible for any single officer or group of officers to be familiar constantly with all the varied forms of cavalry activity, to the extent of being able to suggest all the needed improvements. For example, an officer instructing his men in pistol or saber work is impressed on the spot with needed improvements, which would not be called to his attention at other times, and which if not submitted immediately are apt to slip his mind entirely, until the next period of instruction in this work. The board, therefore, desires every cavalryman to submit his constructive ideas to the board.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Many new ideas, which are otherwise practical, have to be abandoned because they adversely affect economy, the mobility of cavalry, or some other important consideration. A large part of the work of the board is thus never brought to the notice of the service, because four or five ideas are usually considered for every one which is recommended for adoption. All such ideas, however, are carefully preserved in the records of the board for possible future use.

There are two possible methods for the board to use in arriving at its decisions: One is to organize the board itself to handle its own research and experimental work; the other is to have this work done for it by the various activities concentrated at Fort Riley, and have the board act on the work submitted, either by rejecting it entirely or by adopting it as submitted or with modifications. Both methods have been tried. The first necessitates a cumbersome organization, with a large overhead, and results in each part of the organization being idle at least a part of the time. The second is now in operation and seems to be satisfactory.

In practice, it works as follows: A new weapon, or a modified one, for example, is submitted to the board for recommendation. The board submits it to the Director of the Department of Cavalry Weapons in the Cavalry School for test and comment of a technical nature affecting cavalry, to the Director of the Department of Tactics in the Cavalry School for test and comment as to its suitability and possible tactical employment with cavalry, and to the Commanding Officer of the Second Cavalry (School Troops) for a practical try-out with a cavalry organization. From the data thus collected the board is able to arrive at a fairly accurate conclusion as to the value of the weapon for cavalry purposes. As a factor of safety in the case of very important modifications in armament or equipment, the board usually recommends a more extensive test in other organizations before final adoption.

In reality, then, the Cavalry Board includes the whole post of Fort Riley, with the officers actually detailed as members sitting as a board of review and decision on every question considered. As practically every officer now stationed at Fort Riley is a graduate of the Cavalry School and the board works in close conjunction with the school, good progress is being made in the solution of cavalry questions with which all are familiar. In questions involving the cavalry brigade and the cavalry division, the assistance of the Commanding General of the First Cavalry Division, at Fort Bliss, Texas, is solicited.

To show the completeness with which the subject of arms, clothing, and equipment is covered, the board is required to submit each year a complete list of those articles used by cavalry officers, non-commissioned officers, and privates which are considered in any way unsatisfactory, with a report of the steps being taken to improve them. This list includes articles which for economic reasons cannot be replaced in the immediate future, due to quantities

## THE CAVALRY BOARD

already on hand, but which can and should be changed when the supply is exhausted or an emergency requiring an additional supply arises. In such cases changes, with full data as to specifications, are recommended, and if approved are kept on file, to be put into effect when the supply is exhausted or an emergency arises.

The most important subjects covered by the board divide themselves naturally into two main classes: First, organization and training; and, second, armament, clothing, and equipment. In addition, there are many subjects of such a varying nature that they can only be classed as miscellaneous.

Immediately following the war, the board submitted its recommendations on cavalry organization. The recommendations were materially altered in adopting the present organization, due to various considerations, chief among which were the reduction in the authorized strength of the cavalry and the desire to retain at least fourteen active regiments at or near authorized strength. The present organization, however, embodies many of the basic principles deemed by the board to be essential to modern cavalry.

In training, the principal work of the board has been in the preparation of the new training regulations now being published under the direction of the Chief of Cavalry. Forty-five pamphlets have been prepared by the board, which constitute in their entirety a complete revision, based on the lessons of the war, of all drill regulations, manuals, and other publications pertaining to the training of cavalry, as well as certain additional subjects which have never before been adequately covered. Among the most important of these latter are the "Employment of Cavalry" and the "Employment of Cavalry Machine-guns," which together enunciate for the first time a complete doctrine for the employment of the arm.

The procedure used in the preparation of these pamphlets was to have the original draft prepared by a specially qualified officer, or group of officers, sometimes members of the board, sometimes instructors in the school, and for the board, acting as a body, to then review, revise, edit, and approve the original draft. In addition, a great number of pamphlets, prepared by other branches, have been reviewed and commented on. The board is now engaged in the preparation of a Cavalry R. O. T. C. Manual, or text-book, and has had a considerable part in the preparation of the Cavalry Correspondence Courses.

On the subject of armament, the board has tested and recommended for adoption the Browning machine rifle, which is now being issued to the service, together with a receiver sight. It is now testing a stock rest for the machine rifle which it is believed will add greatly to the stability of the weapon. It has recommended a pistol grip form of rifle stock and range dummy cartridges for both rifle and pistol. It has recommended several modifications in the parts of the automatic pistol, the adoption of which will add materially to the comfort and ease of holding the weapon, especially for a man with a small

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

hand, and reduces the natural tendency to point the pistol low. It is experimenting with a sub-caliber pistol and an expendable pistol ammunition clip, neither of which are as yet satisfactory. It has developed a cavalry carbine which is in effect a modified Springfield rifle, and recommended that it be issued to troops in sufficient quantities to insure a conclusive report. It is interested in several types of auto-loading rifles, the .50 caliber machine-gun and the Thompson submachine-gun.

It has recommended an all-leather leggin and a campaign hat strap for mounted enlisted men and is testing and experimenting with a uniform field boot for officers, a uniform raincoat, and a new type of waterproof clothing.

The board is vitally interested in the cavalry pack animal, which, with the new organization, has become an integral part of every cavalry unit down to and including the troop. The cumbersome aparejo is destined to be replaced by a pack saddle whose development is now nearing completion and whose adoption will render unnecessary the search for men skilled in the almost lost art of packing. It is developing a pack cooking outfit, a picket-line pack, and a cavalry demolition pack, all to be attached to the saddle, as the machine rifle will also be attached, by means of metal hangers, similar to machine-gun hangers, which will settle forever the fate of that bugaboo, the diamond hitch.

A modified McClellan saddle, with a girth similar to that used on a flat saddle, replacing quarter straps, rings and cincha and removing the great objection to the McClellan saddle, which is that the trooper cannot get his legs around his horse, has been recommended for issue in reasonable quantity to troops for final test. A lighter, simpler stirrup strap has been recommended for the McClellan saddle. A web bridle has been recommended for use in emergencies when leather is scarce, and an officers' saber-carrier, which holds snugly either the officers' saber or the cavalry saber, has been developed.

Other equipment which has been recommended by the board includes a steel helmet and a gas mask, to be issued to cavalry only when required; a web rifle sling similar to the web bridle, an aluminum tent pin, a stable sergeant's veterinary set, a cavalry bandoleer, which can be carried either on the trooper's shoulder or around the horse's neck; a soldier's kit bag to replace the present barrack bag, a mechanical cipher device for encoding and decoding messages, and a message center equipment case.

This description indicates only a small part of what has actually been accomplished by the board in research, experiment, test and development of arms, clothing and equipment. It is clear that not even a small fraction of the work that has been done, not only on these subjects but on others as well, could ever be accomplished without a permanent board with a permanent home and permanent records.



NEW MODELS OF EQUIPMENT PROPOSED BY THE CAVALRY BOARD

March Cooking Pack Set, contents of one side load

Modified McClellan Saddle

Proposed Carbine compared with Springfield





Sergeant John Martin in 1879, when he appeared as a witness before the Reno Court of Inquiry in Chicago



Sergeant Martin at retirement—  
1904

#### THE MAN WHO CARRIED CUSTER'S LAST MESSAGE

## "Come On! Be Quick! Bring Packs!"

### CUSTER'S BATTLE PLAN

The Story of His Last Message, as Told by the Man Who Carried It  
BY

Lieutenant-Colonel W. A. GRAHAM, J. A.

With Commentary by Brigadier-General EDWARD S. GODFREY, U. S. Army, Retired\*

**F**ORTY-SEVEN years have passed since Custer, the Yellow Hair, the dashing, impetuous, and fearless, rode to his death at the battle of the Little Big Horn. And because, out of that greatest of Indian fights, not one of his immediate command escaped alive; because the utter annihilation of nearly half a regiment of cavalry by Indians was a thing unheard of, undreamed of; because it was at once spectacular and terrifying; because of the prominence of the man who led his followers to destruction; because he was a man who, not only in the regiment itself, but in the service generally, had both blindly faithful friends and as blindly bitter enemies, there have been, ever since that day, hardly waiting for the body of Custer to grow cold, and but little abating now after half a century, acrimony and dispute over the whole campaign of 1876 against the hostile Sioux.

One never-failing source of discussion, which engages student, critic, and partisan alike, is the tactics of the combat—the plan of battle, if you will. Volumes have been written upon the subject, but when one has read them all he is still left to conjecture and hypothesis.

Did Custer have a plan of battle? And, if he had, what was it? When did he resolve upon it; and when and how, if at all, did he communicate it to his detached subordinate commanders. Was it carried out? And, if not, why? Or was the whole fight a hit-and-miss affair, which depended upon luck and chance?

Was the battle of the Little Big Horn only a startling example of fatal division of forces in the face of the enemy, with consequent defeat in detail? Was it a blind, impetuous, dashing attack without thought of the consequence, or even of the possibility of defeat? Or was it a well-planned fight, which failed for lack of co-operation and communication? These are some of the problems which inevitably occur to the student of this extraordinary battle.

Partisan dispute will never clear them up. It seldom clears up anything,

\* This story of the battle of the Little Big Horn has been prepared with care, from the most authentic available sources, and after much study and research. I thank you for letting me see General Godfrey's comments. The General has been more kind than I deserve, and if I have produced anything worth while out of all my digging, it has been largely due to his kindly interest.—THE AUTHOR.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

though I suppose it is heresy for a lawyer to say so. It is only by delving into authentic records and contemporary statements and accounts, by marshaling all the testimony available, and by searching for new evidence that one gets at the facts. And in presenting the story of Sergeant John Martin, who was General Custer's orderly trumpeter on that fatal day in June of 1876, I am confident that, upon some phases at least of the many disputed questions pertaining to the fight, it is the testimony of the only competent witness who survived the battle, the last man to see Custer alive, except those who rode on and died with him upon the ridge.

Martin is the man who carried Custer's famous last message: "Benteen, come on—big village—be quick—bring packs. P. S.—Bring packs."\* He was then a young man of twenty-five, who was already the veteran of one war. Born at Rome in 1851, he had enlisted with Garibaldi, as a drummer boy of fourteen, in the Army of Liberation, and had seen the backs of the Austrians at Villa Franca in '66. After the restoration of Venice to her rightful allegiance, he left his home in sunny Italy in 1873 and almost immediately upon his arrival in America enlisted in the United States Army. His right name, I should tell you, is Giovanni Martini, and he is still hale and hearty, seventy-one years of age, a resident of Brooklyn, N. Y. He served continuously from 1874 to 1904, when he was retired as a sergeant.

He is rather a remarkable old soldier, who never misses an occasion to honor the Stars and Stripes, and who turns out in the old blue, his left arm literally covered to the elbow with service stripes, every time the call of patriotism sounds, whether it be to honor the dead or to greet the living. His form still erect and soldierly, his salute just as snappy as it was when he marched with Garibaldi and rode with Custer, he is well worthy your respectful attention. A fine old soldier, who has deserved well both of his own and of his adopted country; for, beside his long and honorable service, Martin has given two stalwart sons to the American Army.

His 7th Cavalry discharge, which he exhibits with pardonable pride, bears the signature of F. W. Benteen, his old troop commander, the man to whom Custer's last message was sent. And Benteen has described Sergeant Martin in that discharge as "the only surviving witness of the Custer massacre."†

### SERGEANT MARTIN'S STORY

A little before 8 o'clock, on the morning of June 25, my captain, Benteen, called me to him and ordered me to report to General Custer as orderly trumpeter. The regiment was then several miles from the Divide between

\* The message was signed by his adjutant, Lieutenant Cook.—THE AUTHOR.

† Since the story was written, Sergeant Martin has passed on. He died at his home in Brooklyn, on Christmas Eve, 1922. I know that the readers of the CAVALRY JOURNAL will be sorry to learn that another of the old guard is gone.—AUTHOR.

## "COME ON! BE QUICK! BRING PACKS!"

the Rosebud and the Little Big Horn. We had halted there to make coffee after a night march.

We knew, of course, that plenty of Indians were somewhere near, because we had been going through deserted villages for two days and following a heavy trail from the Rosebud, and on the 24th we had found carcasses of dead buffalo that had been killed and skinned only a short time before.

I reported to the General personally, and he just looked at me and nodded. He was talking to an Indian scout, called Bloody Knife, when I reported, and Bloody Knife was telling him about a big village in the valley, several hundred tepees and about five thousand Sioux. I sat down a little way off and heard the talk. I couldn't understand what the Indian said, but from what the General said in asking questions and his conversation with the interpreter I understood what it was about.

The General was dressed that morning in a blue-gray flannel shirt, buckskin trousers, and long boots. He wore a regular company hat. His yellow hair was cut short—not very short; but it was not long and curly on his shoulders like it used to be.

Very soon the General jumped on his horse and rode bareback around the camp, talking to the officers in low tones and telling them what he wanted them to do. By 8:30 the command was ready to march and the scouts went on ahead. We followed slowly, about fifteen minutes later. I rode about two yards back of the General. We moved on, at a walk, until about two hours later we came to a deep ravine, where we halted. The General left us there and went away with the scouts. I didn't go with him, but stayed with the Adjutant. This was when he went up to the "Crow's-nest" on the Divide, to look for the Sioux village that Bloody Knife had told him about. He was gone a long time, and when he came back they told him about finding fresh pony tracks close by, and that the Sioux had discovered us in the ravine. At once he ordered me to sound officers' call, and I did so. This showed that he realized now that we could not surprise the Sioux, and so there was no use to keep quiet any longer. For two days before this there had been no trumpet calls, and every precaution had been taken to conceal our march. But now all was changed.

The officers came quickly, and they had an earnest conference with the General. None of the men were allowed to come near them, but soon they separated and went back to their companies.

Then we moved on again, and after a while, about noon, crossed the Divide. Pretty soon the General said something to the Adjutant that I could not hear, and pointed off to the left. In a few minutes Captain Benteen, with three troops, left the column and rode off in the direction that the General had been pointing. I wondered where they were going, because my troop was one of them.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

The rest of the regiment rode on, in two columns—Colonel Reno, with three troops, on the left, and the other five troops, under General Custer, on the right. I was riding right behind the General. We followed the course of a little stream that led in the direction of the Little Big Horn River. Reno was on the left bank and we on the right.

All the time, as we rode, scouts were riding in and out, and the General would listen to them and sometimes gallop away a short distance to look around. Sometimes Reno's column was several hundred yards away and sometimes it was close to us, and then the General motioned with his hat and they crossed over to where we were.

Soon we came to an old tepee that had a dead warrior in it. It was burning. The Indian scouts had set it afire. Just a little off from that there was a little hill, from which Girard, one of the scouts, saw some Indians between us and the river. He called to the General and pointed them out. He said they were running away. The General ordered the Indian scouts to follow them, but they refused to go. Then the General motioned to Colonel Reno, and when he rode up\* the General told the Adjutant to order him to go down and cross the river and attack the Indian village, and that he would support him with the whole regiment. He said he would go down to the other end and drive them, and that he would have Benteen hurry up and attack them in the center.

Reno, with his three troops, left at once, on a trot, going toward the river, and we followed for a few hundred yards, and then swung to the right, down the river.

We went at a gallop, too. (Just stopped once to water the horses). The General seemed to be in a big hurry. After we had gone about a mile or two we came to a big hill that overlooked the valley, and we rode around the base of it and halted. Then the General took me with him, and we rode to the top of the hill, where we could see the village in the valley on the other side of the river. It was a big village, but we couldn't see it all from there, though we didn't know it then; but several hundred tepees were in plain sight.

There were no bucks to be seen; all we could see was some squaws and children playing and a few dogs and ponies. The General seemed both surprised and glad, and said the Indians must be in their tents, asleep.

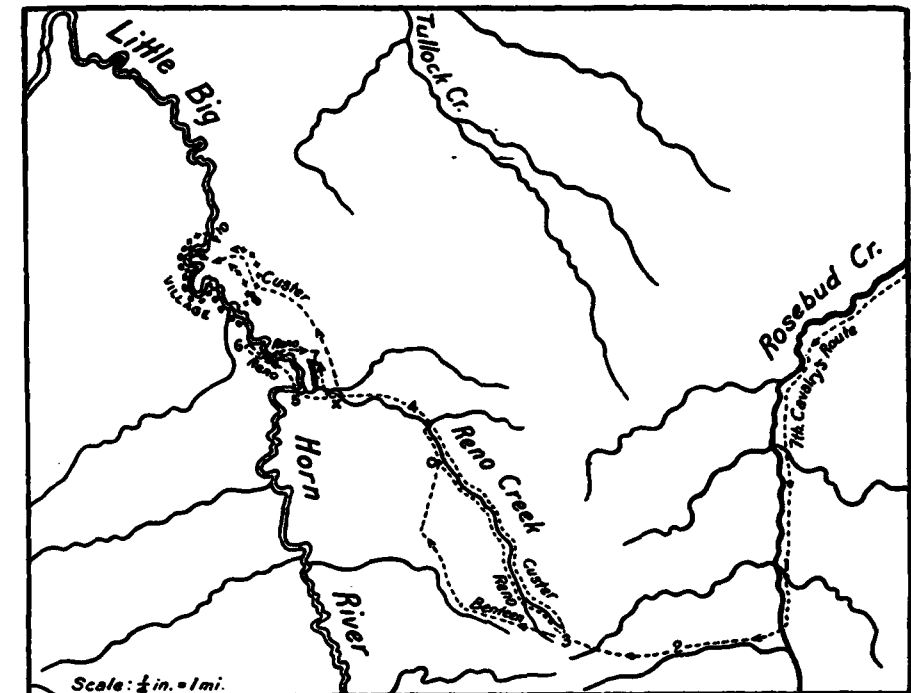
We did not see anything of Reno's column when we were up on the hill. I am sure the General did not see them at all, because he looked all around with his glasses, and all he said was that we had "got them this time."

He turned in the saddle and took off his hat and waved it so the men of the command, who were halted at the base of the hill, could see him, and he shouted to them, "Hurrah, boys, we've got them! We'll finish them up and then go home to our station."

\* "While he was riding up" would better express Sergeant Martin's meaning. Evidently Custer did not speak directly to Reno, and the latter never was informed of the General's intention to bring Benteen up to attack in the center.—THE AUTHOR.

## "COME ON! BE QUICK! BRING PACKS!"

Then the General and I rode back down to where the troops were, and he talked a minute with the Adjutant, telling him what he had seen. We rode on, pretty fast, until we came to a big ravine that led in the direction of the river, and the General pointed down there and then called me. This was about a mile down the river from where we went up on the hill, and we had been going at a trot and gallop all the way. It must have been about three miles from where we left Reno's trail.



- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Bivouac, June 24.                           | 5-6. Reno's Advance, 3:15 p. m.             |
| 2. 10 a. m., June 25. Custer at "Crow's Nest." | 6-7. Reno's Retreat, 4 p. m.                |
| 3. Across the Divide, 12:05 p. m.              | 7. Reno Besieged, 7 p. m.                   |
| 3-a. Benteen's March, 12:15 p. m. to 4 p. m.   | 8. Where Custer swung to the right, 3 p. m. |
| 4. "Dead Warrior Tepees," 2 p. m.              | 9. Gall's Attack, 4 p. m.                   |
| 4-a. Reno's March to the River, 2:30 p. m.     | 10. Crazy Horse's Attack.                   |
| 5. Reno's Crossing, 2:45 p. m.                 |   |

The General said to me, "Orderly, I want you to take a message to Colonel Benteen. Ride as fast as you can and tell him to hurry. Tell him it's a big village and I want him to be quick, and to bring the ammunition packs." He didn't stop at all when he was telling me this, and I just said, "Yes, sir," and checked my horse, when the Adjutant said, "Wait, orderly, I'll give you a

message," and he stopped and wrote it in a big hurry, in a little book, and then tore out the leaf and gave it to me.

And then he told me, "Now, orderly, ride as fast as you can to Colonel Benteen. Take the same trail we came down. If you have time, and there is no danger, come back; but otherwise stay with your company."

My horse was pretty tired, but I started back as fast as I could go. The last I saw of the command they were going down into the ravine. The gray horse troop was in the center and they were galloping.

The Adjutant had told me to follow our trail back, and so in a few minutes I was back on the same hill again where the General and I had looked at the village; but before I got there I heard firing back of me, and I looked around and saw Indians, some waving buffalo robes and some shooting. They had been in ambush. /

Just before I got to the hill I met Boston Custer.\* He was riding at a run, but when he saw me he checked his horse and shouted, "Where's the General?" and I answered, pointing back of me, "Right behind that next ridge you'll find him." And he dashed on. That was the last time he was ever seen alive.

When I got up on the hill, I looked down and there I saw Reno's battalion in action. It had been not more than ten or fifteen minutes since the General and I were on the hill, and then we had seen no Indians. But now there were lots of them, riding around and shooting at Reno's men, who were dismounted and in skirmish line. I don't know how many Indians there were—a lot of them. I did not have time to stop and watch the fight; I had to get on to Colonel Benteen; but the last I saw of Reno's men they were fighting in the valley and the line was falling back.

Some Indians saw me, because right away they commenced shooting at me. Several shots were fired at me—four or five, I think—but I was lucky and did not get hit. My horse was struck in the hip, though I did not know it until later.

It was a very warm day and my horse was hot, and I kept on as fast as I could go. I didn't know where Colonel Benteen was, nor where to look for him, but I knew I had to find him.

I followed our trail back to the place we had watered our horses, and looked all around for Colonel Benteen. Pretty soon I saw his command coming. I was riding at a jog trot then. My horse was all in and I was looking everywhere for Colonel Benteen.

As soon as I saw them coming I waved my hat to them and spurred my horse, but he couldn't go any faster. But it was only a few hundred yards before I met Colonel Benteen. He was riding quite a distance in front of his

"COME ON! BE QUICK! BRING PACKS!"

troops, with his orderly trumpeter, at a fast trot. The nearest officer to him was Captain Weir, who was at the head of his troop, about two or three hundred yards back. /

I saluted and handed the message to Colonel Benteen, and then I told him what the General said—that it was a big village and to hurry. He said, "Where's the General now?" and I answered that the Indians we saw were running, and I supposed that by this time he had charged through the village. I was going to tell him about Major Reno being in action, too, but he didn't give me the chance. He said, "What's the matter with your horse?" and I said, "He's just tired out, I guess." The Colonel said, "Tired out? Look at his hip," and then I saw the blood from the wound. Colonel Benteen said, "You're lucky it was the horse and not you." By this time Captain Weir had come up to us, and Colonel Benteen handed the message to him to read and told me to join my company.

He didn't give me any order to Captain McDougall, who was in command of the rear guard, or to Lieutenant Mathey, who had the packs. I told them so at Chicago in 1879, when they had the court of inquiry, but I didn't speak English so good then, and they misunderstood me and made the report of my testimony show that I took an order to Captain McDougall. But that is a mistake.

They gave me another horse and I joined my troop and rode on with them. The pack-train was not very far behind then. It was in sight, maybe a mile away, and the mules were coming along, some of them walking, some trotting, and others running. We moved on faster than the packs could go, and soon they were out of sight, except that we could see their dust.

We followed General Custer's trail until we got near the ridge where the General and I had first seen the village. We could see the fight going on in the valley, and Reno's command was retreating to the side of the river we were on. As we approached them, Colonel Reno came out to meet us. He was dismounted, his hat was gone, and he had a handkerchief tied around his forehead. He was out of breath and excited, and raised his hand and called to Colonel Benteen. We all heard him. He said, "For God's sake, Benteen, halt your command and help me. I've lost half my men." Part of his men were still coming up the hill, some mounted and some dismounted, and the Indians were firing at them from the hills and ravines near by. They were pretty much excited and disorganized when we got there.

Colonel Benteen said, "Where's Custer?" and Colonel Reno answered, "I don't know. He went off downstream and I haven't seen or heard anything of him since."

We heard a lot of firing down the river; it kept up for a half hour or maybe more. It sounded like a big fight was going on, and the men thought it was General Custer, and that he was whipping the Indians, and we all wanted to

\* Boston Custer was a brother of General Custer and went with the column in a civilian capacity, as pack-master.—THE AUTHOR.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

hurry on and join him, but they wouldn't let us go. Captain Weir had some words with Colonel Reno, and I could tell by the way he was acting that he was excited and angry. He waved his arms and gestured and pointed down the river. Then we heard some volleys, and Captain Weir jumped on his horse and started down the river all alone. But his troop followed him right away.

The rest of us stayed there until the packs all arrived. The ammunition mules came first, in about fifteen minutes; but it was more than an hour before the last pack-mule was up.

Then we started down the river; but by the time we got as far as where Captain Weir had gone with his company, we had to stop, because the Indians had seen us and were coming up the river toward us by the thousand. The firing down below had all stopped by that time, except for an occasional shot, and we thought that they had stood off the General and that he had gone to join General Terry. We did not suspect then that he and all his men had been killed.

We got down about a mile, or maybe a little more, from the hill where we had found Colonel Reno, and then the Indians came on so thick and fast we had to fall back to the hill again.

By that time they were all around us, and more coming all the time, and we had a hot fight until it was dark.

The next morning it started again before daylight, and they kept it up until the middle of the afternoon. They killed a great many of our horses and mules, and a lot of men were killed and wounded, but we stood them off.

I was in America only two years then, and this was my first Indian fight. I had been in the Black Hills with General Custer in 1875, and we had seen plenty of Indians there, but did not fight them.

I admired General Custer very much; all the men did. He was a fighter and not afraid of anything. But he tried to do more than he could that day. They were too many for us, and good fighters, too. They had better weapons than we had and they knew the ground. It is lucky that any of us escaped alive. I don't think we would but for the fact that they heard that General Terry was coming.

I am an old man now and have served the United States a long time since I came from Italy in 1873. I enlisted in 1874 and was in the army for thirty years. My memory isn't as good as it used to be, but I can never forget the battle of the Little Big Horn and General Custer.

I have two sons in the army, and one of them is named for the General. I want them both to be as good soldiers as their father was.

It's a long time since I rode with Custer to his last fight—forty-six years—but I still have the old trumpet that I blew officers' call with the morning of that fatal day, and still have a lively recollection of, as I have a deep affection for, my old General.—JOHN MARTIN, *Sergeant, U. S. Army, Retired.*

## "COME ON! BE QUICK! BRING PACKS!"

It is interesting, while reading Sergeant Martin's story, to review what transpired immediately before and after the time he was ordered back with the "Hurry-up" to Benteen and his battalion. Before daylight, the morning of the 25th, the 7th Cavalry, after a night march, had halted to make coffee. They remained where they then were until 8:45, when the march was resumed, until at 10.07 they arrived at a point about three miles from the top of the Divide between the Rosebud and the Little Big Horn, and from which the Indian scouts had reported, just after daylight, the Sioux village was visible.

Here Custer concealed his command in a deep and wooded ravine and went forward himself to the "Crow's-nest" to look at the Indian Camp, then intending to remain in concealment during the day and make his attack the next morning at daybreak, should the report of the scouts be verified. He returned in about an hour and a half, or about 11:30 a. m. George Herendeen, the scout who had been furnished him for the purpose of communicating with Terry, and Benteen and Reno also, says that when Custer returned to the command he said he "could not see any village, though the scouts and Mitch Bouyer (the half-breed Crow guide) all said they could see it, about fifteen miles off." Benteen and Reno further say that Custer expressed disbelief in the near proximity of any village whatever, at that time.

But during his absence events had transpired which forced him to change his plan to attack at daybreak.

Herendeen states (*New York Herald*, July 8, 1876) that while Custer was gone scouts had come in and reported that the command had been discovered by the hostiles; that two war parties of Sioux had stolen up and seen them and the news was even then on the way to the village. Hasty examination being made in a near-by ravine, fresh pony tracks were discovered. It was necessary to follow the trail at once or the Sioux would be on the move.

Custer thereupon had officers' call blown, as related by Sergeant Martin, and gave his orders.\* The scouts were ordered forward, the regiment following at a walk, at 11:45. Upon crossing the Divide, Custer, apparently still skeptical about the location of the village, again halted at 12:05 p. m., divided the regiment, and ordered Benteen off to the left to a line of bluffs to scour the country and pitch into anything he might find. He was to go on into the next valley, and if he found nothing, then to the next. Benteen departed at once and was soon out of sight.

The rest of the command, at 12:12 p. m., followed the trail for about six

\* It was during this halt that a sergeant of Yate's troop who had been sent back several miles on the trail to recover some articles which had been lost from a pack-mule the night before, returned to the command. He had discovered three Sioux, one sitting on a box of hard bread and examining the contents of a bag. Returning immediately, he reported the incident, which was at once related to Custer, then at the "Crow's-nest." It was now plain that the Sioux knew of the presence of the troops, and there was no longer any use of secrecy nor hope of surprise.

miles, evidently still at a walk, until shortly after 2:00 o'clock an Indian lodge was sighted; whereupon Custer bore down upon it at a trot. It proved to be the remains of a freshly abandoned Indian camp, all the lodges of which had been struck except this one, which contained the body of a warrior who had died from wounds received in Crook's fight on the Rosebud the week before. No Indians in any number had as yet been seen.

Near this dead-warrior lodge was a little knoll, from which one could look down the valley of the Little Big Horn, and there heavy clouds of dust were observed, apparently some five miles distant.

Girard, the interpreter, rode up on this knoll, and while looking at the receding clouds of dust in the valley discovered a good-sized party of Indians in flight between the troops and the river. He turned in his saddle and shouted to Custer, "Here are your Indians, running like devils." This was about 2.15 p. m., two hours after Benteen had left the column, and who was then probably some eight or ten miles away, to the left and rear.

Immediately Custer ordered the scouts to pursue. They refused; whereupon the Adjutant, at his direction, gave the order to Reno to "take as fast a gait as you think prudent and charge afterward, and you will be supported by the entire outfit," adding, as Reno moved out, "Take the scouts with you."\*

Up to that moment it is fairly clear that Custer had formed no plan of battle. His information of the enemy was insufficient for him to have done so. He gave Reno no other instructions, and no further word was ever received from him by Reno,† who went in apparently expecting Custer to follow and support him from the rear.

It is quite possible, even probable, that this was Custer's intention at that moment, for he did follow Reno for a considerable distance.

The Adjutant, Lieutenant Cook, and Captain Keogh, both of whom were killed with Custer, rode to the river with Reno's command. At the river bank (about 2:30) the scouts saw the Sioux coming up the valley to meet Reno, and

\* The order was oral and its exact language cannot be reproduced. The witnesses before the Reno Court of Inquiry in 1879 could only repeat its substance. Some said it was to "charge the Indians wherever you find them"; others, "charge the village." I think the first probably the more accurate, as the village was not yet visible. Another version of it was "to make for the dust." All agree, however, that the latter part of the order assured Reno that he "would be supported by the entire outfit." Reno's earlier statements indicate his belief that he was sent in to bring on an advance-guard action.—THE AUTHOR.

† I am aware that it has been claimed that an orderly carried a message from Custer to Reno, who received it while on the skirmish line in the valley. The claim is most improbable, for by the time Reno's skirmish line was formed no messenger could have gotten through. The Sioux were already on Reno's flank and rear, and Jackson, the half-breed scout whom Wallace wanted to send back to Custer to tell him of the situation while the skirmish line was fighting, refused to go, saying, "No man could get through alive." Wallace and Reno both testified at Chicago in 1879 that no word of any sort was received from Custer after the order to attack was given.—THE AUTHOR.

Girard, who had not yet crossed over, rode back, overtook Cook, then on his way back to Custer (who was still following), and reported to him that the Sioux were coming in large numbers to meet Reno. Cook said he would report the fact at once to Custer. This happened about 2:45.

It was at this moment, or very soon after, as it seems to me, that Custer's plan took form. The Indians were coming toward Reno, who would meet them on the plain. By dashing down the river, he would cut in behind them, and hit them from the rear, and he would send for Benteen and put him into action in the center, between Reno and himself.

It is impossible to believe, when he rode to the top of the ridge with Martin, as he did shortly after leaving Reno's trail and starting down the river at a gallop, that Custer thought the Indians were "asleep in their tents," for Cook must already have told him that they were streaming up the valley to meet Reno. He probably said, "We've caught them napping" or "asleep"—an expression which Martin, then a green Italian, unused to American colloquialisms, interpreted literally. But from the ridge evidently he did not see either the Indians or Reno's command. I assume that the timber below hid them from view. But he did see the village, and this, I think, was his first view of it. It was, apparently, deserted by its fighting men. What more natural, then, that he should cheer and shout to his men, "We've got 'em this time!" and dash for a ford, that he might cross and attack in the rear, and on the way send the "hurry-up" message to Benteen. He probably believed that *all* the Sioux were speeding to attack Reno in the valley, and did not know nor had any suspicion of what was in store for his own detachment. The greater part of the Sioux had *not* gone to meet Reno; but, before Martin was out of sight or hearing, attacked him in the ravine which led to the ford; and, as subsequent events show, in such numbers as to force him further down the river than he had intended to go. And there, still driven back by the hordes which cut him off from Reno, he was struck again by the crafty Crazy Horse, who crossed the river below him and attacked his rear. In the meantime Reno, finding the odds too great against him, routed, had fled back across the river. Hundreds of the Sioux under Gall had already left Reno, and dashing down the valley to the point where Custer, already hemmed in, was fighting for his life, they fell upon him like a thunderbolt, and in a short time the fight was over.

Benteen, after receiving the message carried by Martin, and misled, perhaps, by what Martin told him, had hurried on to join Custer, but instead he found Reno—broken, disorganized, routed. He did not know where Custer was. But Custer had five troops and could, presumably, take care of himself, while Reno was in *extremis*. He heeded the desperate plea for help—and halted.

Not even then, I think, had either detachment of the fated regiment at all realized the strength of the Sioux; and now it was too late. By the time Benteen reached Reno, Custer was hemmed in and doomed to destruction if not already done for.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Reno's ammunition was almost gone. His men had used it wildly, prodigally, and uselessly during the fight in the valley below. Benteen had one hundred rounds to the man—only enough to give his own and Reno's men fifty rounds apiece, when divided between them.

What to do? Did Reno not reason thus?

Custer was five troops strong; he, Reno, now had six, but had lost almost the strength of a troop in killed and wounded; therefore their forces were equal. Custer had all his ammunition, while he had little more than fifty rounds to the man.

If he pushed down the river at once, he must leave the pack-train in the air, at the mercy of the Sioux. And the packs carried all the extra ammunition, 24,000 rounds. He was burdened with wounded; to leave whom was out of the question, and whose presence made fast progress impossible. Surely Custer, with his five troops, could hold his own until the packs were up and the extra ammunition available. It was inconceivable that he was in distress. The thought that Custer could be in danger of destruction never crossed his mind.

So, Hare, on the freshest horse at hand, is sent on the run for the packs; and he, finding them still a mile and a half away, cuts out the ammunition mules and lashes them forward, the rest of the packs coming on as fast as possible, guarded by McDougall's troop.

Reno had attacked about 3:15 p. m. He fought in the valley about a half hour, perhaps forty minutes, and then fled the field, reaching the hills about 4 p. m. About 4:10 Benteen joined him. It must have been at least 5 o'clock, or later before the ammunition mules arrived. What was Custer's situation then?

He had left Reno's trail about 3 o'clock; he started Martin back about 3:15; he had been first attacked, according to Martin, about 3:20. It was now after 5 p. m., more than an hour and a half since the Indians had first fallen upon him.

Gall had left Reno's front about the time Reno withdrew his line into the timber, or 3:30. He had not more than a twenty-minute ride to Custer, which allows more than an hour of his participation in the attack on Custer before Reno had the extra ammunition.

While Hare was gone for the ammunition mules, Weir and his troop moved down the river in an attempt to communicate with or to join Custer. He succeeded in getting about a mile before he was compelled to stop because of the ever-increasing number of Sioux in his front. In the meantime Reno was on the way to join him. Before Reno reached Weir the struggle below was over and the Sioux were coming back. Weir had moved down the river about 4:30 to 4:45 p. m.; Reno followed about 5:30. The Indians checked Weir about the time Reno started, and the retreat up the river to his first position began about 6:00. By 6:30 most of the command was back on the hill; by 7:00

## "COME ON! BE QUICK! BRING PACKS!"

p. m., all of it, and as the covering company (Godfrey's) made its last dash to safety, Reno was surrounded by thousands of yelling Sioux.

At what time was Custer's fight over? Could it have continued long after 5:00 p. m.? I doubt it very much.

Had Reno moved down the river *at once* when Benteen joined him, at 4:10, he might have covered the four intervening miles before Custer was completely wiped out. But whether, encumbered as he was with wounded and possessing insufficient ammunition, such a move would have resulted in anything but greater disaster is a question which will bear thinking about. By the time the extra ammunition was available, was it not too late?

The fighting strength of the Sioux that day was at least six to one; better armed, better prepared, and as well, if not better, led. Was it possible, think you, for Custer to have won?

The tactics of the Indians on that day resulted in their doing to Custer exactly what Custer had planned tactically to do to them. And they were able to do it because they had the leaders, the arms, and the overwhelming forces, none of which facts were known or appreciated by the 7th Cavalry.

Their numbers had been underestimated; their leadership and fighting capacity undervalued; their superiority in arms not even suspected. The 7th Cavalry paid the penalty for national stupidity.

NOTE.—The time of the various movements is fixed, in so far as is possible, by the official itinerary kept by Lieutenant Wallace, which recorded the halts and marches up to the time of the division into battalions at 12:05. Wallace looked at his watch about the time Custer called Reno across to the right bank of the little tributary they were following. It was then 2:00 p. m. The dead-warrior tepee was sighted immediately after. The others are estimates based upon testimony, map distances, and all available evidence. They are necessarily approximate, but, I believe, very nearly correct. /

## COMMENTS BY GENERAL E. S. GODFREY

Colonel Graham's contribution to the history of "Custer's last battle" will be greatly appreciated by contemporary and future historians, as well as by writers of stories of that many-sided event, an event that was epochal in the history of the great Northwest, the beginning of the end of the century-old frontier life of the army.

The mystery of the passing of the spirit of the noted and brilliant cavalry leader of the Civil War, of the indefatigable and hitherto-successful Indian campaigner, viewed from all sides and any angle, ends just where it began—in conjecture. There were probably only two men in Custer's entire command who, had they escaped, could have cleared up the mystery of his intentions and his plans—Captain Tom Custer, his brother, and Lieutenant Cooke, his adjutant; but they and their gallant comrades passed on to the Great Beyond with



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

their hitherto-indomitable leader. The commanders of the detached battalions were his irreconcilable, bitter enemies and critics; but he trusted to their regimental *esprit* and soldier honor for loyal and efficient support.

One orderly alluded to by Colonel Graham states that he carried and delivered a written message from Custer to Reno. While this testimony may be of doubtful value, who knows but that this message contained important instructions, hastily glanced at, that were pocketed, ignored, destroyed, and never revealed?

Colonel Graham, when seeking in the dusty archives of the War Department, came across the proceedings of the Reno Court of Inquiry held at Chicago in 1879, became interested, and has sought and brought to light much information from newspapers of that period and elsewhere—from wherever he could get a lead; from original official documents and from survivors of the expeditionary forces. I have reason to believe that his investigations have been made with an impartial, judicial frame of mind, not only deserving praise, but helpful assistance. It is to be hoped that we may have further contributions on this and kindred subjects from him.

Colonel Graham's time periods of events and movements, his deductions or conjectures, for they can only be conjectures, as to the plans and intentions of General Custer, are about the best that have been suggested.

I confess to considerable surprise that Reno and Benteen had testified at the Court of Inquiry "That Custer expressed a disbelief in the near proximity of any village whatever at that time." A number of us were already grouped when Keogh came up and told of the incident of Sergeant Curtis and the lost pack. Tom Custer jumped up and said that he was going to report that to the General. He and the General soon returned and officers' call was sounded. At the conclusion of his talk the General ordered us to return to our troops, inspect them, and report when we were ready for the march; and he said that the troops would take their places in the column of march in the order of reports. As we dispersed, Benteen and I walked toward our troops together. We had proceeded not more than fifty yards when, to my surprise, Benteen faced about and reported his troop ready. Benteen was beside me at the officers' call. I relate this to show that what one could hear the other could hear. I feel perfectly sure that such an expression of disbelief from the General would have made an unforgettable impression on my mind.

The difference in vision from the "Crow's-nest" on the Divide may be accounted for. The scouts saw the smoke at the village and the pony herds moving in the bottom when the vision was at the best, through a clear, calm atmosphere, with the early morning sun at their backs; General Custer's observations at the same place were made at near midday, with a high overhead sun; he had a hazy atmosphere from the heated earth. At all events, the General must have accepted the scouts' point of view, because he made their location of the village his objective. /

## "COME ON! BE QUICK! BRING PACKS!"

Our observations in locations of large Indian villages had shown that, for grazing their pony herds and perhaps for sanitary reasons, the village would consist of a series of groups or bands, separated by considerable distances. It is quite probable that General Custer had this in mind when he ordered Benteen's battalion to the left front to scout as far as the valley of the Little Big Horn, to pitch into anything he found, and to report. The fatigue of crossing ridges and valleys heavily distressed our horses, many falling behind. Lieutenant Gibson, with a detail, was sent on to the ridge, where he had a view of the valley of the Little Big Horn. He signaled, "No enemy in sight," and Benteen resumed the march, heading toward the trail of the main command, which we struck just ahead of the pack-train. On our march to the left I had glimpses of General Custer's command moving at a trot.

In recent years some newspapers have given space to self-styled "Last Survivors of the Custer Massacre" to proclaim their trashy, unbelievable tales of adventures and heroisms. I think there are now about twenty of these frauds, fakers, and impostors on the rolls.

As to many of the so-called Indian versions of the battle of the Little Big Horn, it must be remembered that the Indian in battle is an individualist; he is not anchored to a unit; he rides furiously in a circle or back and forth, as the spirit moves him, hoping for a chance to make a *coup* or get a scalp. Only the commanding personality of the war chief can hold him to a fixed or set purpose. In this battle, Gall, the noted Huncpapa Sioux war chief, when he learned that Custer's troops were approaching the village on the flank, called his warriors from the attack on Reno and assembled them in a deep ravine on the flank held by Keogh and Calhoun. He sent a detachment to attack and stampede the led horses; others he posted under cover, awaiting the opportunity for the rush and charge. Apparently there was no guard left with the led horses and the stampede was soon accomplished; that seemed to be the opportune moment and Gall gave his war whoop; the charge was made, overwhelming first Calhoun and then Keogh (troop commanders with Custer).

Crazy Horse, another noted war chief, when he learned that Custer was approaching, left Reno's front and rushed down the valley through the approaching warriors and through the village, calling, "All who want to fight, follow me." He assembled his warriors on Custer's flank, under the cover of a ridge. He sent a detachment to Custer's rear, and at the opportune moment he gave the war whoop for the charge that destroyed Custer's command.

EDITOR'S NOTE.—General Godfrey wrote a full account of "Custer's last battle," which was published in the *Century Magazine* in 1892. A reprint of this article was made and published in 1908, and still another reprint was done in 1921. We are informed that this is no longer obtainable, although General Godfrey has kindly given a copy to the U. S. Cavalry Association.

## A Cavalry Commander in the Saddle

A REMINISCENCE OF GENERAL VON POSECK

BY

Colonel HENRY C. WHITEHEAD, U. S. A., Chief of the Remount Service

THE author of *The German Cavalry in Belgium and France* is not only one of Germany's distinguished cavalry leaders, but he is also an outstanding horseman. For the three or four years immediately preceding the World War he commanded the 2d Regiment of Dragoons, stationed at Schwedt, on the Oder, just 100 kilometers north of Berlin, where only a few months before the war the 225th anniversary of the regiment was celebrated in a series of ceremonies, pageants, sports, and social events, which pictured the organization, traditions, war and peace records, the loyalty and patriotic devotion of the grand old regiment in the beautiful setting of the capital of old Brandenburg, which had been its home station for 225 years.

A host of former officers and dragoons returned to honor the regiment in which they had served with pride and devotion and many with distinction. Von Poseck, on his Hungarian thoroughbred charger, was a commanding figure in the parades and mounted ceremonies of reunion week. But he was not merely a parade rider; like any good horsemaster, he rode hard and straight in proper season. He was well and suitably mounted. In pink coat, following the regimental hounds, one day on a big chestnut Hanover mare and the next on an iron-gray Irish hunter, he rode with ease and assurance in any kind of country. Three times a week, all through the season, he rode behind the M. F. H. and led a large field of officers, reserve officers, non-commissioned officers, and ladies and gentlemen of the neighborhood over as good courses as one expects to find on a well-laid drag. The fourth horse in his stable was a handsome old charger of good quality, beautifully trained, which was Frau von Poseck's mount.

Von Poseck found time to ride the other three horses daily. He was able to do that because during working hours he was on the exercise field with the troops. He was a hard student and a well-qualified staff officer, who had served a number of years on the staff; but he was not a desk soldier and could not abide a swivel chair.

The regimental headquarters office consisted of two rooms—one for the adjutant and one for the sergeant major and two or three clerks. In the adjutant's office were one desk and one chair, used by the adjutant, and a plain board table top against the wall, where the regimental commander stood to sign the papers prepared for his daily visit of half an hour. Papers not ready

## GERMAN CAVALRYMEN AS PRISONERS OF WAR IN FRANCE

at that time were signed with a fountain pen on the drill field or in the riding hall, where he was sure to be found. His own office was in his house and his hours were long and dark. Papers that required his personal attention were carried to his quarters every evening and returned to the adjutant the following morning.

Von Poseck was almost in a class by himself, in that he was the riding instructor for his regimental officers. From October 1 till March 31 he had his officers in the riding hall from 11 to 1 daily, while the troops were caring for their horses and getting their dinners. Each officer rode daily in the class the two chargers that he was required to keep, one hour to each horse.

Not infrequently the regimental commander took the backward young horse of some inexperienced lieutenant in one of the riding halls before 7 in the morning to keep it up to the class-work. During the winter months he worked his own mounts in the hall before 7 or after 5 o'clock, because the riding halls were fully occupied between those hours.

To one who has had the pleasure of knowing General von Poseck, it is particularly gratifying to note that the first published account of the work of the German cavalry in the World War is the result of his labors. There is probably no man living who is better qualified to expound the lessons taught by the cavalry operations in Belgium and France.

## German Cavalrymen as Prisoners of War in France

IN THE work by General von Poseck, "German Cavalry in Belgium and France in 1914," which has just been published in English by the U. S. Cavalry Association, in his description of the operations of the 1st Cavalry Corps on September 6, 1914, the following passage occurs:

"The 1st Cavalry Corps, in the course of the night, had received orders to undertake, with separate detachments, the reconnaissance toward Paris, and to advance with the main body and cross the Seine further toward the south and cut the railways there.

"In consequence, Lieutenant General Baron von Richthofen, at 6 o'clock in the morning, held the Guard Cavalry Division at Chartranges ready to advance by Provins and the 5th Cavalry Division at Montceaux ready to move on Villers St. Georges.

"Further changing orders at first kept the Cavalry Corps from moving until mid-day, when fresh orders arrived to continue the pursuit with all energy up to the Seine and to destroy the railways there. With this object in view, five patrols of the Guard Cavalry Division, provided with explosives, were sent against the Melun-Les Ormes railway line."

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

In a footnote General von Poseck adds:

"Among these were Lieutenants von Wedemeyer (3d Uhlans of the Guard), von Schierstaedt (Gardes du Corps), and Count Strachwitz (Cuirassiers of the Guard), of whom the two last were captured by the French and, against all the laws of war, were sentenced to severe terms of imprisonment."

As this seemed a very serious accusation against the French Army, the editor of the CAVALRY JOURNAL thought the matter worthy of further investigation. He accordingly addressed himself to Colonel Dumont, the Military Attaché of the French Embassy in Washington, who kindly undertook to send the statement of General von Poseck to the Minister of War in Paris.

The result of this step has been the following official communication from the Department of Military Justice of the French Army, giving the true story of the capture and trial of the German officers in question. It not only disproves General von Poseck's charge of unjust and arbitrary treatment of those German officers, but proves how admirably the archives of the Department of Military Justice were kept, even under the stress of a war such as that of 1914. The extreme care exercised in the case of Lieutenant Baron Detloff von Schierstaedt is a proof that no inhumanity or injustice was shown. His case, as will be seen, even received the special consideration of a Council of the French Ministry at its sitting of September 7, 1915. It would be difficult to imagine a Council of the Ministers of the Kaiser taking the trouble to pass on the case of a simple lieutenant of the French Army if a prisoner of war in Germany.

REPUBLIQUE FRANCAISE, MINISTRY OF WAR,  
DIRECTION OF MILITARY JUSTICE,  
PARIS, October 23, 1922.

### NOTE

By a judgment dated October 1, 1914, the special court-martial of the 9th Army sentenced the following German subjects:

1. VON SCHIERSTAEDT, lieutenant of the Cuirassiers of the Guard, to five years' penal servitude, to military degradation, for plundering in a band and under arms and for instigation to plundering.

2. VON STRACHWITZ, lieutenant of the Gardes du Corps; MAUER, non-commissioned officer of the Gardes du Corps; PETZ, non-commissioned officer of the Cuirassiers of the Guard; JENKIES, trooper of the Cuirassiers of the Guard; BOTTGER, trooper of the Gardes du Corps, each of them to five years' imprisonment and to military degradation, for plundering in a band and under arms.

These sentences have been pronounced by application of Articles 250 and 189 of the Code of Military Justice.

All the legal forms were observed in this judgment, and the facts which were the grounds for these sentences are the following:

## GERMAN CAVALRYMEN AS PRISONERS OF WAR IN FRANCE

On September 6, 1914, two cavalry patrols, commanded by the Lieutenants VON SCHIERSTAEDT and VON STRACHWITZ, in the forest of Fontainebleau. The two officers saw that they had lost themselves. Leaving a part of their men and horses to rest, they went off with the two non-commissioned officers, MAUER and PETZ, and two troopers, JENKIES and BOTTGER. They lost themselves once more and could not find the men they had left, and as they heard rifle shots they decided to leave the forest. They wandered over the country, hiding by day and marching by night, in the hope of rejoining the German troops.

For their food they first consumed the rations they carried with them; then gathered fruits, pulled up potatoes in the fields, seized food they found in deserted houses, or entered farms still inhabited and procured food, always (they declared) offering to pay for it, but nearly always obtaining for nothing what they demanded.

It must, however, be noted that they took care to represent themselves as belonging to the English Army. One day they stole some loaves of bread. They kept their arms and cartridges up to the day when a precipitate flight before a French patrol forced them to abandon part of them.

Their presence was reported on several occasions. On September 26 they were discovered by another patrol at the extremity of a wood near Bury, and, called upon to surrender, they succeeded in escaping, leaving in the hands of the French detachment three revolvers with cartridges, three pairs of boots, an officer's uniform, two maps, a field-glass in its case, and other parts of equipment.

The officer's uniform belonged to Lieutenant VON SCHIERSTAEDT, who succeeded soon afterwards in procuring, from a peasant, civilian clothes, which he was still wearing when he was obliged to surrender.

By this time all were in a state of great fatigue. VON SCHIERSTAEDT was wounded in the thigh. They could no longer hope to escape if they should not succeed in procuring a carriage.

Accordingly, in the night of 26-27 September, they did not hesitate at Vouzy to enter a stable and take possession of a small furniture wagon and a horse. All of them were mounted in this wagon when, on September 27, they were arrested at Bussy-Lettrée by a military post guarding the lines of communication.

Lieutenants VON SCHIERSTAEDT and VON STRACHWITZ, the non-commissioned officers MAUER and PETZ, and the troopers JENKIES and BOTTGER were sent, for plundering in a band and under arms, before the court-martial of the 9th Army and sentenced, on October 1, 1914, to the penalties above indicated.

Their guilt was proved by the evidence, notably by their own declarations and by notes made by Lieutenant VON SCHIERSTAEDT in a notebook found in his possession.

The court-martial, taking into account the conditions under which they had been led to commit the offenses laid to their charge, admitted the existence of extenuating circumstances in their favor. Lieutenant VON SCHIERSTAEDT, who in his quality of head of the troop could have incurred a capital sentence, as laid down by Article 250 of the Code of Military Justice, was sentenced to the minimum penalty applicable—

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

that is to say, five years of penal servitude—while the other prisoners were sentenced to imprisonment.

It should be added that in taking off his military uniform and putting on civilian clothes Lieutenant VON SCHIERSTAEDT could have been considered, not as a combatant but as a spy, and punished as such. According to the principles laid down in the German Manual on the Laws of Land War (*Kriegsbrauch in Landkriege*, page 71), information obtained by the acts of a combatant wearing his distinctive outward insignia and acting openly constitutes a perfectly regular action, but if, on the contrary, the act is committed by him "in a clandestine manner, by hidden means, it becomes espionage and as such is liable to particularly severe means of repression and intimidation and mostly punished by the penalty of death."

Further, in terms of the Convention of The Hague, only soldiers in uniform can be regarded as belligerents.

Though it is true that Lieutenant VON SCHIERSTAEDT was justly sentenced, it must also be admitted that as a prisoner under sentence he was treated with all possible consideration.

As prisoner under sentence to penal servitude, he should have served his sentence at the prison of Saint Martin de Re. Nevertheless, as a measure of humanity, it seemed possible to impose upon him a penitentiary régime less rigorous than that of the ordinary convicts and to authorize him, as a measure of exception, to undergo his punishment in a military establishment. He was, therefore, after having been successively kept in the Prison of Montpellier, in the Central Prison at Riom, and at the depot of Saint Martin de Re, imprisoned, on March 31, 1915, in the Military Penitentiary at Avignon.

The same favor was accorded to Lieutenant VON STRACHWITZ, who was transferred to the same military establishment on March 30, as well as the two non-commissioned officers and the two troopers, who were transferred there on May 3 following.

This measure of grace was spontaneously taken by the French Government. At the Penitentiary of Avignon, these prisoners of war were treated as prisoners condemned to an ordinary prison sentence and not as convicts or men condemned to solitary confinement. They benefited by a special régime; they ate the usual military rations, but separately; they had the right to smoke; they wore the clothes they wore on arriving and not the ordinary prison dress; they were excused from all work and all fatigue duties; they were authorized to correspond more frequently with their families than the other prisoners, and they slept in separate rooms and not in the prison dormitory.

VON SCHIERSTAEDT, after being reported as having been attacked by mental troubles or of simulating these, was placed under observation in the Departmental Lunatic Asylum at Montdevergues (Vaucluse). He entered this establishment on April 11, 1915, and was treated there as an officer. At first he was very calm, but toward the 24th of April he commenced to show signs of delirium. The doctor in charge of the Asylum of Montdevergues, in a certificate dated May 8, 1915, declared: "VON SCHIERSTAEDT is a mystic and his temperament is paranoiac, as they call it in Germany, and places him on the border-line of madness." He added that "without being able to say whether VON SCHIER-

## GERMAN CAVALRYMEN AS PRISONERS OF WAR IN FRANCE

STAEDT was mad or not when he indulged in the acts of violence reported by the commandant of the penitentiary, he has certainly ceased to be so and his only desire is to leave here and obtain the revision of his trial."

In conclusion, the doctor certified that "VON SCHIERSTAEDT could leave the asylum in the special conditions of a prisoner of war." On May 15, 1915, this officer was retransferred to the Penitentiary of Avignon.

VON SCHIERSTAEDT was, however, transferred on July 18, 1915, to the Val de Grace Hospital at Paris, to be submitted to the examination of Doctors Ballet, Dupré, and Roubinovitch, who, on September 2, 1915, made a report of which the conclusions were as follows:

"1. On different occasions, in the early months of 1915, the German Lieutenant Baron Detloff VON SCHIERSTAEDT, prisoner of war, suffered from delirious crises, characterized by excitement, illusions, erroneous interpretations, mystical tendencies, and ideas of persecution.

"2. At present one cannot observe veritable psychic troubles in Detloff VON SCHIERSTAEDT, or at least troubles which would be incompatible with ordinary life, and, in particular, with military life.

"3. On the other hand, one can observe mystical tendencies, probably due to family, social, and ethnical conditions in the education of VON SCHIERSTAEDT. The mystical interpretation which he gives to certain facts of a common-place or accidental nature denotes, on the other hand, a certain debility of judgment.

"4. If Detloff VON SCHIERSTAEDT should be replaced in the conditions in which his crises of delirium have already manifested themselves on several occasions, one could look for a return of the same psychic troubles in this officer."

At the Cabinet Council held on September 7, 1915, it was decided to exchange VON SCHIERSTAEDT on the first exchange of wounded prisoners. This German officer was accordingly repatriated on September 20, 1915.

It should be added that in letters taken on him, some in ordinary German script, others in German stenographic script, VON SCHIERSTAEDT avowed the thefts with which he was accused. He admitted that he had taken off his uniform and dressed himself in civilian clothes; that he had passed himself off as English; that he was armed at the moment of his arrest, and, finally, that he had simulated madness only to escape the consequences of his condemnation. In these letters he boasted of having played the comedy of madness in masterly fashion and of having "taken in" the French authorities.

In case the General Staff of the Army should be desirous of knowing the fashion in which the other prisoners were treated, the Direction of Military Justice has the honor to request it to address itself to the General Service of Prisoners of War.

The Direction of the Section of Military Justice,  
(Signed) FILIPINI.

## A South American Cavalry Charge

VENEZUELA'S history pivots upon the exploits of Simon Bolivar; so it is natural that Tito Salas, the now world-famous Venezuelan painter, should have taken an episode from the career of his country's patriot hero as the subject of his latest canvas. *The Battle of Araure*, reproduced herewith through the courtesy of the Bulletin of the Pan American Union, is described in the following passages, taken partly from F. Loraine Petre's *Simon Bolivar* and partly from a translated excerpt from the historian Vicente Lecuna, as given in the *Pan American Bulletin*:

On the 28th November, 1813, Bolivar marched for San Carlos, where, on the 1st December, he found himself in command of 3,000 men. He could get no information in a country which was now once more entirely royalist, and, believing Ceballos to be at Barquisemeto, he made for that place. On the way, he heard that Yanez had seized Araure, on his left rear, and Ceballos also had moved thither. He at once turned back in that direction after them, leaving some cavalry to protect his communications with San Carlos against raids by the royalist guerrillas, who swarmed in the country. Passing the river Coyede on the 3d of December, he was before Araure on the 4th, in sight of the 3,500 men of Yanez and Ceballos. On the morning of the 5th they were gone, and Bolivar sent Manrique to regain contact with them with the advance guard and 400 cavalry. Manrique, who had orders not to hazard an attack, discovered Ceballos drawn up at the foot of some wooded heights, his front covered by a lake and his flanks protected by woods. Disregarding his orders, Manrique attacked, with the result that he was utterly defeated before Bolivar arrived with the main body. When Bolivar came up he renewed the battle.

The battle rages along the whole front, and two platoons of cavalry, supported by part of the infantry, wrest from the enemy some of its guns, using only the spear and the bayonet. The left Spanish wing, composed of cavalry of the plains, goes forward to envelop the first republican line on the right, which has advanced, firing. Bolivar sends the second line of horsemen against the royalist plainsmen and, seeing our men are losing, he puts himself at the head of the reserves and charges with them against the front of the powerful enemy army, while the second line attacks again the flank of the foes. The latter yield and disappear from the field. At that moment the enemy infantry, in the center of the line, seeing itself without support, retreats in demoralization. Bolivar orders a general charge of bayonet, and the royalist infantry is dislodged from its position. . . . The pursuit is made with the characteristic vigor of Bolivar's pursuits, to the point where the Liberator himself outsped the fleeing enemies, and in the night of the same day took as prisoners, 30 kilometers from the field of battle, those who were left. The Spanish chiefs had to escape alone.



"THE BATTLE OF ARAURE"

The most recent work of Tito Salas, representing a historical charge of cavalry led by General Bolivar



TRAINING A MACHINE-GUN UNIT OVER OBSTACLES

## Training Machine-Gun Organizations at Obstacles

BY

First Lieutenant PAUL M. ROBINETT, Cavalry

**M**ACHINE-GUN organizations are generally conceded to be a great hindrance to the mobility of a cavalry command, even on favorable ground. On unfavorable ground their mobility is thought to be practically lost, the only resource left such an organization being a long detour around the obstacle. If such opinions continue to prevail, the present cavalry organization will fail when brought face to face with actual conditions in the field.

If proper methods of instruction are employed, the machine-gun organization can be trained to pass all ordinary obstacles that a rifle organization can reasonably be expected to pass in the field. These obstacles which a rifle organization should be able to pass in the field are assumed to be the equivalent of a three-foot jump, a four-foot ditch, or ordinary slides. It is not at all too much for one to expect the machine-gun organization, with the present equipment, to successfully pass all such obstacles, and this holds good even if the organization has pack-mules instead of pack-horses.

Training methods should be progressive; the training of the pack-horse should go along with the training of the trooper and his mount. The trooper's mount and his led horse should be schooled in the same manner through the chute, the Hitchcock pen, or on the longe. After the horses have made suitable progress, the training of the trooper himself begins. At the same time, the training of the pack-horse in the chute continues, first with the aparejo alone and then with the entire load. When the trooper has acquired a reasonable degree of proficiency at the jumps, he is required to lead the pack-horse over the jumps, at first without aparejo, later with aparejo, and finally with aparejo and load. The trooper is instructed to conduct the pack-horse at the jump with rather a short rein, which is allowed to lengthen out as the horse gets within five to ten yards of the jump. As a general rule, the tendency is for the pack-horses to go too slowly at the jumps rather than too fast. In this respect the pack-horse behaves very much like the horse at liberty; for, according to Major H. D. Chamberlin, cavalry (page 170, *The Rasp*, 1922), "the horse at liberty is inclined to go too slowly rather than too fast, as a general rule."

The training at the slides is also made progressive. The trooper and his mount are first trained, and then the training of the pack-horse begins. The pack-horse, without aparejo, is at first led down gentle slopes, then down steeper

slopes, and finally down the slides. This training is continued with the pack-horse equipped with the aparejo alone and eventually with the entire load. The trooper is instructed to lead the pack-horse up to the slide with a short rein, and as his own horse goes over the slide, gradually allow the reins of the pack-horse to slip through his hand, while at the same time maintaining sufficient pressure to cause the pack-horse to follow. In case the led horse pulls back or his own horse goes forward at the run, the trooper is instructed to drop the reins of the pack-horse, so as to allow the latter to come down the slide at liberty. After a little practice the entire troop can be taken down the steepest slopes quietly and without excessive loss of time.

The troopers themselves take a great deal of interest in this work and soon become very expert in handling their pack-horses. A good machine-gun driver takes pride in his ability to conduct the pack-horse over obstacles and would rather hit the ground than lose one.

Instruction in passing obstacles should form a regular part of the training of all machine-gun organizations, and all troops should be expected to pass all ordinary obstacles likely to be encountered in the field.

## Horseshoes and Military Equipments of Duralumin

BY

Colonel W. C. BROWN, U. S. Army, Retired

**T**ESTS have recently been made by the 3d Cavalry at Fort Myer, Va., the Cavalry Board at Fort Riley, Kans., and by the 1st Cavalry Division in Texas, of duralumin horseshoes. These tests were made with a view to ascertaining the advisability of using them as the spare shoes carried by the trooper.

Due to the cost (about \$1.25 each) and difficulty experienced in some of the tests in fitting these shoes cold, it was decided not to adopt them as spare shoes.

The tests, however, demonstrate the value of these shoes on race-horses, for horse-show purposes, in endurance rides, on gentlemen's riding horses, and generally under conditions where a very light shoe is desired.

The duralumin (17 S alloy) used has one-third the weight of steel, yet has approximately the same strength characteristics; so that while a No. 3 steel front shoe weighs twenty ounces, when made of duralumin it weighs but seven ounces.

## HORSESHOES AND MILITARY EQUIPMENTS OF DURALUMIN

As to *durability*, the results were decidedly more favorable than was anticipated. Fort Myer reported the durability to be about two-thirds that of the regulation shoe; Fort Riley reported that about half of the shoes showed the same amount of wear as the issue steel shoe, the remainder showing more wear than the regulation, while the Cavalry Division reported the durability as "satisfactory," the wear being about the same or slightly less than with steel shoes.

The reports showed that they had been worn generally for periods varying from twenty to thirty days or more, on garrison duty, and on practice marches over distances of from 86 to 300 miles.

It is interesting to note that the report from Fort Myer shows that the duralumin shoe does not slip on a smooth or wet pavement to the same extent as does the steel shoe.

Duralumin (17 S alloy) very much resembles aluminum in appearance and takes a high polish, which in ordinary atmospheres is permanent. In this copper-aluminum alloy the copper runs about 4 per cent. It contains some magnesium and is heat-treated.

The tests above mentioned have been made possible through the generous co-operation of the Aluminum Company of America, Pittsburgh, and the U. S. Horse-shoe Company of Erie, Pa., in supplying the necessary material and manufactured articles for this purpose.

The function of the horseshoe is to protect the hoof when the horse is at work, as occurs on the march, where the wear is much greater than when the horse is on the range. In order to accomplish this without unnecessary expenditure of effort, the shoe should be sufficiently strong and rigid to answer this purpose and no more.

To form an approximate idea of the saving in effort by the use of a duralumin (17 S alloy) shoe, let us take the following data, using the regulation No. 3 shoe (which comprises 44 per cent of all issued). The No. 3 front, with the heels cut off ready for shoeing, will weigh 20 ounces. The duralumin shoe weighs 7 ounces.

The hind shoes weigh a trifle less, but we are well on the safe side in assuming an average *saving* in using the 17 S alloy to be 12 ounces per shoe. In other words, if a 7-ounce duralumin shoe will answer all the requirements of hoof protection, the 12 ounces in excess now carried is *unnecessary weight*.

In this connection the manager of the *Horseshoers' Journal* (Detroit) has called the writer's attention to certain calculations made by Bouley, a celebrated French veterinarian and horse expert, whose method of demonstrating the waste of energy where an unnecessarily heavy shoe is used is set forth in Russell's *Scientific Horseshoeing*, from which we quote freely. We also adapt to our purpose Bouley's method of calculating the wasted energy.

"Light shoes proportioned to the weight of the animal and the nature of his work are infinitely preferable to heavy ones, for these latter are a burden



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

at best and a constant tax on the energies of the horse as is implied by the familiar saying: *'an ounce at the toe means a pound at the withers.'*

"It is not surprising therefore to find that the majority of our horses are at the decadence of their powers when they should be at their prime, and a prolific source of such disability is the habitual pounding along on hard roads, with over-weighted, ironclad feet."

Calculating that a horse going at a fair trot lifts his feet all round 60 times a minute and this with each shoe unnecessarily heavy by 12 ounces, the amount of effort uselessly expended is easily calculated for a period of, let us say, one hour.

Lifting one foot 60 times a minute; for four feet,  $60 \times 4 = 240$ . Lifting 3 lbs. each time, in one minute he will lift 180 lbs., and in one hour 10,800 lbs. or  $5 \frac{2}{5}$  tons. Assuming 24 miles as the day's work, the needless expenditure of energy for that distance if performed at the trot would be  $16 \frac{1}{5}$  tons.

If this  $16 \frac{1}{5}$  tons per hour, resulting from 48 ounces lifted unnecessarily, be eliminated, certainly the horse will travel farther or come in fresher at the end of a day's march than if not obliged to lift it. What relief this will be we leave to the reader's conjecture.

It is interesting to point out an analogy with a marching infantryman. If in an infantryman's shoe a 12-ounce leaden insole is placed, thus increasing the weight carried on his foot from 27 ounces to 39 ounces, an increase of nearly one-half, the infantryman will not march long in such shoes before he expresses an opinion. The troop horse can express no opinion; he does his best with whatever he is shod, be the shoe heavy or light.

In the past year the writer has also experimented considerably with a view to ascertaining the adaptability of duralumin for use in the manufacture of certain articles (other than horseshoes) of the soldiers' equipment. It was found that cups and mess tins when made of duralumin had, when tested at the Bureau of Standards, from 25 per cent to 75 per cent more rigidity than the regulation aluminum articles. With spoons, the advantage was still greater, while shelter-tent pins had as high as six times the rigidity of aluminum pins. Duralumin plates tested at Frankford Arsenal indicated that even the metal helmets could be made of it and have weight for weight rather greater resistance to shrapnel than the regulation steel helmets worn in the A. E. F.

As more skill is developed in working the alloy and as improved methods of manufacture make it less expensive, we may confidently predict that at no very distant future it will, in those articles of equipment carried on the person, displace aluminum, just as aluminum only a dozen or more years ago displaced tin, iron, and steel.

## Editorial Comment

### OUTLAWING WAR!

AN APPEALING SLOGAN, this: "Outlaw War." Professor Butler, of Columbia, recently remarked that it is the talkers (not the doers or the thinkers) who rule the roost today. We are inclined to think that it has ever been thus, and that this fact can account for many of the ills that have fallen upon the world. This is an interesting sample of the talkers' method, this clever association of words, both rich with connotations which would seem to embody a splendid idea, but which when seriously regarded is discovered to embody nothing but its nine letters.

Outlawry has been obsolete for a century. Outlawry is—or was—an act of war itself. It was a declaration of war by the community upon one who defied its constituted authority. It put its victim outside of protection of the law. Outlawry became obsolete when it was perceived that it was predicated upon unsound principles. We cannot place our brother outside the pale of social cognizance. We are our brother's keeper. That has been accepted by Christianity for two thousand years.

Outlawry, even when practiced, depended upon two fundamental conditions: constituted authority and power to enforce that authority.

How sublimely ridiculous, then, is this proposed outlawry of war! All praise to the efforts of those who aspire to create even a vestige of constituted authority among nations. After all, a greater or less degree of faith and hope is the measure of distinction between League of Nations and Anti-Leaguers. But what can be said of him who, in face of the existing lack of any general and effective constituted international authority and the existing total absence of any power to enforce such authority if it do exist, cries out fatuously for outlawry of war?

If war is a crime, as it is commonly termed, how outlaw it? When outlawry was practiced, it was the criminal who was outlawed, not the crime. The criminal was deprived of all legal protection. The *crime* has no legal protection of which it can be deprived. We speak of and study the laws of war, but war itself is extra-legal.

Perhaps it is more logical to regard war as a ravaging disease which has not been eradicated. A disease cannot be outlawed. It can be conquered, but only as the increasing intelligence of the world—all the human atoms of the world, of which the doctors represent in this respect only a slightly super-average element—brings the necessary knowledge and control. It takes more than a Pasteur to make the world free from infection of disease. It takes more than a pacifist to make the world free from the infection of war.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

That nation that is involved in the throes of war, shall it be regarded as a criminal, and shall the unorganized world, in some unexplained fashion, outlaw it?

Was our country criminal in '76? Was the North criminal in '61? Was the South? Was Belgium criminal in 1914? Criminality, where not obviously ruled out of court, is throughout history, in most instances, a matter of dispute.

When one regards a nation at war, not as a machine stupidly manipulated by a clever Machiavellian ruling class, but as an aggregation of human beings swayed by human emotions, responsive to every wave of mistrust, fear, exaltation, at once agonized and heroic, pitiable and sublime, all this talk of crime and criminal and of outlawry becomes miserably inapplicable and inane.

"Outlaw war," a shifty shibboleth!

War is a terrible fact! As a counter-fact, only one principle has ever been known. Just as disease is best prevented by sanitation or the organization of society in physical health and strength against the attacks of disease, so is war prevented only by the sound and healthy organization of society to withstand the attacks of war.

When a nation is so organized and is known to be doughty and strong, it is enough to say when assailed, as Charles Francis Adams said to England in 1863, "It would be superfluous to point out to Your Lordship that this is war."

### CAVALRY ROAD SPACE

WE HAVE SEEN diagrammed cavalry columns in march around the edge of a text-book page. They impress us about as forcefully as a line of Morse code. We can translate statistically, but the thing has no life.

On a map of the vicinity of Washington in the Chief of Cavalry's Office has been posted, in conspicuous diagram, a cavalry division on the march, with its advance guard; farther back along the road, the trains; also an infantry division is shown in march, with its trains following. This map so treated impresses one with several significant things. A few miles blocked out on the roads of a map representing ground unfamiliar to one may mean very little to the average observer. A few miles blocked off on roads with which he is entirely familiar are immediately transformed into a vision for him. He sees certain units of actual familiar landscape filled with troops and all their gear. He sees the checks and halts and blockades and confusion that actually attend the movement of troops; the space that separates the commander from some of his units becomes more apparent. If another marching column like our infantry division is shown on a converging or crossing road, he is reminded of the checks that Sordet's Cavalry Corps was subjected to in trying to get over to the left of the retreating line across retiring British infantry columns.

## EDITORIAL COMMENT

There is no surer way of fixing things in the mind (next to actual experience) than by visual process. It is probable that much use can be made of this posted-map idea. A division camp, a bivouac, might be plotted on the map; a dismounted regiment deployed for dismounted attack. These things, presented graphically on a map of familiar terrain, arouse interest, fix the attention, and enlist the powers of memory. It is suggested that a map of the vicinity of each cavalry garrison be so embellished, in striking colors and symbols, and hung in a conspicuous place. One thing certain, the man who works on the map will impress some road distances and details of army organization on his own mind. Any one may experiment with this. The exercise, to be profitable and interesting, must be done on a map of thoroughly familiar terrain.

### PRIZE ESSAY CONTEST WON BY CAPTAIN B. F. HOGE, CAVALRY

THE RESULTS of the recent prize essay contest were very gratifying. Thirteen essays were submitted and were referred to a committee of judges composed of Colonels Herbert B. Crosby, Hamilton S. Hawkins, and George E. Mitchell, all of cavalry. This committee made the following awards:

First prize essay: "Cavalry Marches."

Second prize essay: "A Study of the Relationship between the Cavalry and the Air Service in Reconnaissance."

Third prize essay: "Cavalry Combat."

These essays proved to be written by the following authors: Captain Benjamin F. Hoge, cavalry; Captain Edward M. Fickett, cavalry, and Major Karl S. Bradford, cavalry.

The judges also made mention of two other essays, which proved to be written by Colonel Kirby Walker, cavalry, and Major General William H. Carter, U. S. Army, retired, and regretted that more prizes were not available to be awarded them. The prizes were money prizes; the first, \$150.00; the second, \$75.00, and the third, \$25.00.

Only the essay which was awarded the first prize, "Cavalry Marches," is published in this number of the JOURNAL. The other essays will appear in subsequent numbers.

### THE FIFTH CAVALRY AT GAINES' MILL

#### American Military Paintings

ATTENTION IS INVITED to the handsome frontispiece, which is a reproduction of a painting by W. T. Trego, representing the charge of the 5th Regulars at Gaines' Mill, June 27, 1862.

This action is described by a participant, Lieutenant-Colonel A. K. Arnold, 1st Cavalry, in the CAVALRY JOURNAL of December, 1889, in an interesting article of eight pages, illustrated by a diagram map.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

The 5th Cavalry were represented in this action by Troops A, D, F, H, and I, and was commanded by Captain C. J. Whiting. This force numbered about 220 sabers and, together with 250 sabers of the 6th Pennsylvania Lancers and 125 sabers of the 1st Cavalry, was drawn up in support of the batteries that were attempting to hold back Pickett's infantry, following up the rout of Porter's army. When the batteries were finally out of ammunition and had to limber up, General Cooke, commanding the cavalry, ordered Whiting to charge. Colonel Arnold says:

"Captain Whiting, after waiting a few moments, gave the command to move forward. The sabers of the men were in their scabbards. I partly turned to my men and ordered them to 'draw saber,' and this command was taken up along the line.

"Our position was so close to the enemy that, almost as soon as we were in motion, we took the gallop, increasing the speed as much as possible as we proceeded onward; but, as we did not have sufficient space in front to take the charging gait, we could not reach his line in full career. Arriving near the line, we were received by a heavy fire from the right and front, the effect of which placed all the officers except one *hors de combat*, and quite a number of men, thus destroying the cohesion of our front. A part of the command passed forward and through the ranks of the enemy, while fragments turned to the right and moved to the rear.

"Our casualties were great. Lieutenant Sweet was killed; Captain Chambliss, Lieutenants Arnold, Watkins, and Maley wounded, and Captain Whiting injured by his horse being killed and falling upon him. Three enlisted men were killed, 25 wounded, and 24 missing; total commissioned and enlisted killed, wounded, and missing, 58. Twenty-four horses were known to have been killed.

"When that portion of the command which was intact struck the enemy, his line wavered and was broken here and there, and it was some little time before its continuity was restored. If the charge had been followed up by the other portion of the division, it would have probably resulted in crushing the enemy's extreme right, as everything was made favorable to that end by the charge of the 5th U. S. Cavalry. Even after the enemy had recovered from his confusion, he failed to move forward to take possession of the guns that remained, but waited, as if expecting another attack. But the 6th Pennsylvania had been withdrawn (to support Robertson's battery, which retired safely) just as we were making the charge, and the 1st U. S. Cavalry, although its brigade commander had been ordered to support us, and charge if necessary, had ordered it to the rear just after we struck the enemy, thus leaving this little detachment of 220 sabers to do battle against fearful odds.

"The battle closed with the charge of the 5th U. S. Cavalry. Most of the retreating troops were rallied on the plateau near the river, under the protection of our remaining batteries and cavalry. The enemy, observing reinforcements coming up, did not press forward, but contented himself with firing a few shots from his artillery, and, night approaching, both armies remained quiet in position."

## EDITORIAL COMMENT

An interesting note describes how Colonel, then Lieutenant, Arnold was himself wounded and caught under his horse, and later attempted unsuccessfully to jump a fresh mount over a ditch, in which he was thrown and remained for some time stunned.

This beautiful painting is one of the originals of the illustrations used in a publication by George Barrie's Sons, entitled "The Army and Navy of the United States." This folio is probably familiar to a number of our readers. Mr. Robert Barrie has written recently to the Secretary of War, offering these paintings, many of which have been on exhibition in the library of the U. S. Military Academy, for sale at very reasonable prices.

The 11th Cavalry has purchased "Commissioned Officers and Privates, Cavalry, 1802-1810," and has presented it to the Chief of Cavalry, to be hung in his office. This is a thoughtful and praiseworthy action on the part of the 11th. Colonel Jenkins writes:

"Inasmuch as George Barrie's Sons are disposing of their exhibit from the Library at West Point, which are all of the mounted service, it is believed that the other regiments of our arm will assist in keeping the paintings in their rightful place, which we consider to be the office of our chief."

Other paintings of a cavalry interest include "Cavalry Charge, 1863," in oil, by W. S. V. Allen, priced at \$150.00; "Light Horse Skirmish of Outposts, 1777," \$100.00; "Captain and Troopers, 1861," \$100.00; "Troopers Mounted, 1889," \$100.00; "Dragoon, 1846," \$75.00, and "Dragoons, 1821-1832," \$55.00, all in water color, by Allen, and "The Rough Riders at Las Guasimas," in water color, by Ditzler, for \$100.00. The oil painting reproduced on the frontispiece of this number of the JOURNAL is priced at \$200.00.

Any regiment or individual interested in these paintings may communicate to the CAVALRY JOURNAL or direct to George Barrie's Sons, Philadelphia.

## THE CAVALRY FUND

AS THIS NUMBER of the JOURNAL goes to press the books of the Cavalry Fund show that \$1,185 has been contributed. Of this amount \$752 was contributed as a response to the special request for funds for the Olympic Team and will, of course, be so appropriated. In fact \$653.50 has already been turned over to Colonel Pierre Lorillard, Jr., Secretary-Treasurer of the Special Army Horse Show Committee. It is felt that this contribution from cavalry officers is an earnest of their interest in the success of the Army Olympic Team and will help materially to induce civilian friends of this project to give liberal financial or equine support.

The fund still lacks a little of being sufficient to furnish the Cavalry Association's donation as sponsor to the Endurance Ride, but it is fully expected that it will be considerably added to during the next few months.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Cavalry organizations have also contributed about \$694.00 toward the Army Polo Team, which makes the amount thus far contributed by cavalry officers and organizations for general purposes \$1,879.

The largest amount received from any source is a contribution of \$482.50 from the officers at Fort Riley. In addition, that post is pledged to the extent of another \$100 for Army Polo. The 3d Cavalry makes the next best showing, with \$229 contributed to the Cavalry Fund (including Olympic Team) and presumably half of \$400 sent in to the Central Polo Committee. These contributions come from the two posts of Fort Myer and Fort Ethan Allen, and a battalion of field artillery at each post is partly responsible for the \$400 polo contribution.

The 12th Cavalry, at Fort Brown, has contributed \$120 for the Army Polo Team; the 8th, at Fort Bliss, has sent in \$51 for the Olympic Team; the 4th, at Fort McIntosh, has sent in \$50 to the Central Polo Committee; the 13th, at Fort D. A. Russell, has contributed \$15 for the Cavalry Fund, including the Olympic Team and a share in the donation from that post of \$39 for Army Polo. The 10th has contributed \$100 to Army Polo, and the 14th has sent in \$52 for the Olympic Team. The 5th has contributed about \$50 to the Olympic Team and Army Polo and small contributions have come in from the headquarters of the 1st Cavalry Brigade at Fort Clark and the 1st Cavalry. Officers on duty in Washington have contributed over \$50 to the General Cavalry Fund and have made generous support to the Olympic Team. About \$300 has been contributed by individual officers elsewhere serving away from cavalry units.

The 6th Cavalry has promised \$300 for the Cavalry Fund and an equal amount for Army Polo. The 11th and 14th have each promised \$200 for the latter object.

It is felt that a very praiseworthy response has been made to the requests for funds for these general purposes, and the only thing more that could be desired is that all officers and organizations that have not yet joined in this support for approved general cavalry activities do their part to make the cavalry support unanimous.

### A SERVICE THE CAVALRY JOURNAL CAN RENDER

#### DO YOU HAVE A HOBBY?

It may be a sport—chess, horse-racing, dogs; or a study—geology, economics, some branch of history; or you may be interested in a particular line of literature, or of modern progress in some art or science. The possibilities included in the term "hobby" are too infinite to enumerate.

The Cavalry Association can easily render a special service to its members in this respect. Through our office come notices of practically all the new publications as they come out. In addition, we have catalogues listing the old.

## EDITORIAL COMMENT

Where these will not suffice to exhaust a given field, we have the tremendous resources of the Library of Congress close at hand, as well as the War College Library and special libraries.

If you will inform the CAVALRY JOURNAL in what particular subjects you are specially interested (with as definite specifications as practicable), your needs will be kept on file, and as publications appear that may be of interest to you notice will be sent you. This service is offered to you as a member of the Cavalry Association and will not obligate you in any degree.

Since you are a member of the Cavalry Association, why not profit by all the service it is in a position to afford you?

### APPRECIATION OF THE JOURNAL

WE HAVE refrained from publishing many pleasant things which have been said and written about the JOURNAL, although these comments have been a source of immense gratification. The following, recently received, is an interesting sample:

"We like the JOURNAL as well as ever. It is the paper a cavalryman needs, not because it needs his support, but because it is the best place to find things he wants to read. Is one getting up a field meet and wants some jumps that are different, consult the JOURNAL. Is he puzzled by having more horses than men, read the JOURNAL and learn how it was done in the First. Is any one looking for live tactical problems taken from real life, keep an eye on the JOURNAL. Does he want to know what the other regiments are doing, and how, keep up with the JOURNAL."

### U. S. M. A. 1884 CLASS BULLETIN

THE LIBRARY U. S. M. A. lacks the following numbers of the 1884 Class Bulletin and would be very glad to receive these issues in order to complete set: Numbers 5, 10, 14, 19, 21, and after.

### SUBSCRIPTIONS

IT IS PLEASANT to announce that the 3d, 4th, 12th, and 13th Cavalry have a 100 per cent paid-up subscription list among their troops and officers. This, of course, should obtain in every regiment, and until it does the Cavalry Association and CAVALRY JOURNAL will not function with the maximum beneficial results. Each regiment will be 100 per cent when its officers envisage the Association and JOURNAL as a part of national defenses to such an extent that they will think it worth the dues of \$2.50 per year to belong to the Association of their arm. THE JOURNAL is inherently worth the price as a magazine of a technical nature. That is aside from all argument as to duty. Due to the rapid decrease in the authorized number of cavalry officers, the time is fast approaching when the continuance of publication of a cavalry journal will depend directly on the subscription of every regular officer. Let us anticipate this necessity. Get the 100 per cent now.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

It is the earnest desire of the management of the CAVALRY JOURNAL that all will co-operate in the methods being used to keep up the subscription list of the JOURNAL and membership in the Cavalry Association. Experience has taught that the present arrangement of having representatives in the units is the *only* way in which the JOURNAL can be kept running. Some one must see officers *personally* and get them into the Association, and then, when their subscriptions expire, *some one* must get their renewals. If the management waited for renewals and new subscriptions to come in without this solicitation, it would not be possible to continue.

As explained in the last issue, several notices of expiration are sent to the individual through the mails *before* the efforts of the JOURNAL representative are enlisted. The management is extremely desirous that no official pressure be brought to bear on officers in this matter, and it believes that no such pressure is being used. It is hoped that commanding officers try to sell the JOURNAL to their officers on its merits, and in this it is felt that true co-operation is being had. Commanding officers may quite properly present the fact that officers of rank and experience maintain their membership in the Association and keep up their reading of the JOURNAL. This will persuade eligibles to come in and *stay* in. Further than moral persuasion, nothing is asked or desired of commanding officers or JOURNAL representatives.

The management is always ready to receive helpful suggestions concerning the operation of the Association's business, and in each case endeavors to adjust matters to the satisfaction of the individual member, tempered with justice to the Association as a whole. The field is so small that every cavalry officer is actually needed in the Association. If officers who have had or are having trouble about their JOURNAL will frankly advise the Association, matters can in every case be straightened out.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL REACHES THE R. O. T. C.

Captain Gereen, Assistant P. M. S. & T. at the University of Georgia, writes:

"I wish to call your attention to the interest taken in the JOURNAL by the Cavalry R. O. T. C. students at this university. While only three subscriptions have been sent in during the past month, I feel that there will be more later.

"These subscriptions are simply obtained by passing my copies out to those that are interested, with a little information explaining the merits of the JOURNAL and its up-to-date articles of cavalry action during the late war; also the other articles pertaining to cavalry.

"It is believed that the JOURNAL is one means of instilling interest and imbuing the Cavalry R. O. T. C. students with the cavalry spirit, because they see and grasp the practical side of cavalry from the practical and interesting experiences of the writers. It is hoped that more students from the university will subscribe for the JOURNAL later."

## Topics of the Day

### ARMY OLYMPIC TEAM PREPARATIONS

MAJOR JOHN A. BARRY is now in London sizing up the situation. When he returns he will find most of the candidates for the team already busily at work at Fort Myer, where the team will be prepared. A few candidates for the team have already arrived and they have a string of 16 prospects to commence work with. These are promising government horses, with a few private mounts, and it is believed that out of the lot three or four satisfactory team mounts can be made.

The committee, consisting of Major Beard, Messrs. R. E. Strawbridge, F. S. Von Stade, J. Watson Webb, and L. E. Waring, which is entrusted with the selection and purchase of horses for the team, have not yet, at this writing, made any purchases, but have been attending a number of horse shows, and report that they have some prospects lined up.

The funds thus far raised include not only the \$750 from cavalry officers and amounts from officers of other branches, but also several donations from civilian backers of the project, notably \$1,000 each from Mr. C. C. Stillman, Mr. John McE. Bowman, Colonel R. H. Williams, Jr., Mr. H. F. Sinclair, and Mr. Price McKinney.

### CHIEF OF CAVALRY HONOR RIFLE TEAM

By PERMISSION of the War Department and beginning this year, the Chief of Cavalry will select annually, from among the soldiers of all cavalry regiments, an honor rifle team. It will be called "The Chief of Cavalry's Rifle Team." The names of its members will be announced to the cavalry service and each member will receive a suitable bronze medal. This team will not actually assemble as such, but will correspond, in a way, to what is known in athletic circles, for example, as the "All American Football Team," etc.

The team will be composed solely of enlisted men, and only those will be eligible who fire the regular record course with their respective regiments and who have not qualified at any time as Distinguished Marksman or shot on the Cavalry Team or other service team.

The team will consist of one man from each regiment which fires the regular qualification course. In each regiment, subject to the conditions above stated, that man will be selected who makes the highest individual score in record practice.

At the end of the season, as soon as regimental commanders send to the Chief of Cavalry the names of the successful competitors, the team will be announced and handsome silver medals awarded.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

### NATIONAL MATCHES

IN PREPARATION for the National Matches, the competitors for the Cavalry Team have been assembled at Fort Des Moines. Lieutenant-Colonel A. H. Davidson is the team captain again this year, with Lieutenant-Colonel I. S. Martin as his assistant. Major J. O'Hara has been designated coach. In addition to these officers and a supply officer, 39 officers and 51 enlisted men, a total of 90 competitors, are engaged in the preliminary firing.

The following matches will be held at Fort Des Moines on such dates as may be selected by the team captain, with the approval of the commanding officer, Fort Des Moines, provided that the matches will not be commenced until all competitors shall have twice fired the National Rifle Team Course, 1923, at Fort Des Moines:

#### No. 1—Cavalry Regimental Team Championship:

Course: The National Rifle Team Match Course, 1923.

Open to one team of three competitors from each regiment.

Prizes: The team making the highest score will be awarded the Cavalry Regimental Team Championship Trophy, and a bronze medal will be awarded to each member of the team.

#### No. 2—Cavalry Individual Championship Match:

Course: The National Rifle Team Match Course, 1923.

Open to all officers, warrant officers, and enlisted men of cavalry.

Prizes: The individual making the highest score will be awarded the Cavalry Individual Championship Trophy and a gold medal; second place, silver medal; third place, bronze medal.

#### No. 3—200-yard Individual Championship Match:

Course: 20 shots at 200 yards, offhand.

Open to all officers, warrant officers, and enlisted men of the Cavalry.

Prizes: The individual making the highest score will be awarded a silver medal; second place, bronze medal.

#### No. 4—1,000-yard Individual Championship Match:

Course: 20 shots at 1,000 yards. No sighting shots.

Open to all officers, warrant officers, and enlisted men of the cavalry.

Prizes: The individual making the highest score will be awarded the Fort Bliss Trophy and a silver medal; second place, bronze medal.

The individual making the highest aggregate score in the Individual Championship Match, 200-yard Individual Championship Match, and the 1,000-Yard Individual Championship Match will be awarded the Holbrook Trophy and a gold medal.

## TOPICS OF THE DAY

The Cavalry Regimental Team Championship Trophy will be retained by the winning regiment and the other trophies by the organizations to which the winners belong, for one year or until the next competition. Should the winner of any trophy not be a member of an organization, the custody of the trophy will be subject to disposition by the Chief of Cavalry.

All medals awarded will become the permanent property of the winner.

No individual may be a member of a regimental team who has been a shooting member of the Cavalry or the Cavalry-Engineer Team in more than one of the Cavalry Team matches of 1920-21-22. No such individual will be permitted to participate in the individual matches herein mentioned.

A greater effort is being made this year than ever before to win the national matches and high hopes are entertained.

The cavalry stood second in 1906, fourth in 1907, third in 1908, fourth in 1909, third in 1910, sixth in 1911, first in 1913, third in 1915, seventh in 1918, third in 1919, and seventh in 1920; the Cavalry-Engineer Team stood seventh in 1921 and took fifth place last year. This year the engineers have their own team.

### HORSESHOEING IN ORGANIZATIONS

MAJOR WILFRID M. BLUNT, cavalry, suggests:

In conjunction with regimental and post field days, horse shows, or other occasions, would it not be possible to incorporate a horseshoeing contest, possibly giving appropriate prizes? For example, a disinterested officer might go through the animals of each organization the day before and select a horse from each needing shoeing for each horseshoer of that unit. In order to make the test as fair as possible, these animals should be quiet animals, with normal feet. They could be shod in their respective shops the afternoon or morning immediately preceding the field day, horse show, or other occasion. The would automatically limit the time which could be spent on shoeing to half a day (or less, if so desired) and permit their being judged along with other events. Some such scheme as outlined above would promote interest in horseshoeing both in organization commanders and horseshoers.

### COLORADO ENDURANCE RIDE

THE FIVE DAYS' annual Colorado Endurance Ride will start from the Broadmoor Hotel, Colorado Springs, on July 30. The total distance will be approximately 300 miles, the maximum riding time allowed being 50 hours. The weight of rider, saddle, and equipment is required to be a minimum of 225 pounds (bridle and halter excepted). The prizes are: First prize, \$600; second prize, \$400; third prize, \$300; fourth prize, \$200; fifth prize, \$150; sixth prize, \$100. An individual cup is awarded to the winner of the first prize.



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

### NEW CAVALRY DISTINGUISHED MARKSMEN AND PISTOL SHOTS

IT IS GRATIFYING to note that the following cavalry personnel were in 1922 transferred to the class of distinguished marksmen: Captain Roderick R. Allen, 4th Cavalry; First Lieutenant Samuel P. Walker, Jr., 7th Cavalry; Sergeant Jens B. Jensen, Troop F, 4th Cavalry, and Sergeant Jerry Kubovy, Troop G, 1st Cavalry, all of whom fired on the Cavalry or Cavalry-Engineer teams at the national matches, winning therein either gold or bronze medals. In the same year Lieutenant-Colonel Alexander H. Davidson, 8th Cavalry; Captain Joseph Yuditsky, 14th Cavalry; First Lieutenants George A. Rehm, 14th Cavalry, and Samuel P. Walker, Jr., 7th Cavalry, and Sergeant Jens B. Jensen, Troop F, 4th Cavalry, were transferred to the class of distinguished pistol shots, having all fired on the Cavalry-Engineers team in the national matches and having won either gold or bronze medals. These officers and men also won between them in the national individual matches with the rifle one gold and one silver medal, and with the pistol one gold and five bronze medals.

### THE ARMY AND THE BOY SCOUTS

THE FOLLOWING LETTER from General Pershing to Mr. James E. West, Chief Scout Executive of the Boy Scouts of America, points out the opportunity for army officers to perform a notable service in connection with the training of the youth of the country—a service for which they are well qualified in the main:

MY DEAR MR. WEST:

I have received a copy of a resolution recently adopted by the National Council, Boy Scouts of America, in which the hope is expressed that Army and Navy men may take a greater interest in the organization. You ask my co-operation in bringing this to the attention of the Army with a view to encouraging active participation by a greater number of Army men.

The Scout program being non-military in character, it is true, as suggested in the resolution, that some Army officers have hesitated to take active part in scouting, fearing it might create misunderstanding; but I am sure, from the information you have presented to me, that making known this resolution, expressing the earnest desire of the leaders of the Boy Scout Movement for a greater degree of co-operation, will serve to remove this misunderstanding.

After carefully reviewing the activities of the Boy Scouts of America, their program, objectives, leadership, and actual accomplishments, I do not hesitate to say that I should be very glad to see members of the Army everywhere take such active part in scouting as official duties and local conditions permit.

That the Boy Scout Movement has already recruited a group of over 130,000 men giving volunteer service in character-building and citizenship training, and that over 2,000,000 boys of America have been

## TOPICS OF THE DAY

helped by this program is a remarkable accomplishment. I feel that the work is one with which any soldier should be proud to be associated.

Such association would be of benefit in many ways. The leadership of boys develops qualities which aid in the leadership of men, and active Scout service would give valuable experience to many of our officers which they might not otherwise get in time of peace. Moreover, the responsibility of setting an example to boys who have adopted a standard as high as that expressed in the Scout oath and law must react on the leader in a manner entirely to his benefit and to that of those with whom he associates.

Having kept in close touch with the work of the Boy Scouts, I thoroughly approve of its object for the good it does the boy; and, further, I approve of it as a soldier for the good it does to those who may be called upon to serve as our future defenders; and, finally, as an American citizen, I approve of it for the training it gives in preparing the boy to be a worthy citizen of his country.

I feel that it is a distinct recognition of the high qualifications of Army men to be asked to participate in a movement which has accomplished so much for the youth of the land and which has so much of promise for the future.

The Secretary of War, with whom I have discussed the matter, joins me in hoping you may find many Army men who will appreciate and take advantage of this opportunity to become useful workers in a great undertaking.

Very sincerely yours,  
(Signed)

JOHN J. PERSHING.

### SCREW-WORMS IN FISTULOUS WITHERS

By Captain R. V. Morledge, U. S. Army, Retired

THE FOLLOWING may be of interest to some cavalymen and to the research branch of the Veterinary Corps:

In October, 1920, the 12th Cavalry made a march from Del Rio, Texas, to Camp Travis. At that time I was commanding Troop F, 12th Cavalry. We drew a number of remounts at the Camp Travis Remount Depot and took them with us on the return journey.

The second day from Camp Travis I noticed a swelling on the withers of a large, good-looking remount. This was massaged regularly and the horse was not ridden, but the swelling increased in size; so that shortly after reaching Del Rio the veterinarian opened it, so as to give drainage to the abscess. Most cases of fistulous withers are tedious and discouraging to treat, and this was no exception. This horse received careful and scientific treatment from the regimental veterinarian, but when his withers appeared to be healing, pus would reform and the swelling would remain. In May, 1921, the discharge of pus had ceased, but the swelling still remained. About this time orders were received to turn all surplus animals out to pasture; so, thinking the grass and exercise would do this horse good, I turned him out with the others. I



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

visited him a week later and he appeared about the same as usual. The following week I visited him, and when within a hundred yards of him I could see that he had screw-worms—and *he had them in large numbers*; there was a hole in his withers the size of a walnut and blood was dripping to his hoof. He was immediately taken to the veterinary hospital, where the veterinarian said he did not know “whether to treat him or shoot him,” but decided to treat him. The worms were destroyed by chloroform. The way that this horse recovered was remarkable. No pus formed; the wound was completely healed in two weeks, leaving only a noticeable scar. This horse was not used in ranks, as there was a close mate for him in the same troop which was herd-bound; so these two were used as the light wagon team.

I was ordered to Fort Riley in September, 1921. The regiment marched to Brownsville in October, and I have been informed that this horse made the trip in excellent condition. When I questioned the veterinarian as to the reason for this rapid healing, he stated it might be due to the fact that the screw-worms ate infected tissue before eating normal tissue, and they might have destroyed the infected parts completely, leaving a clean wound to heal. This horse was No. 8, Troop F, 12th Cavalry.

In the year 1909, when my family lived at Cumberland, Ohio, a well-to-do farmer, George Crow, of that place, owned a fine Morgan mare which had a bad case of fistulous withers; she had this abscess for more than two years. Mr. Crow would have killed this mare, but she was a great favorite of Mrs. Crow, who insisted that the mare be treated.

My family moved to Pennsylvania in 1909, and I had not heard of this animal until May, 1922, when I visited Mr. Crow. He showed me this same mare, and told me that at the time they had almost decided to kill her they found a large number of “maggots” in the wound, which they destroyed. The wound healed rapidly and the cure was permanent. She is now thirty years old and is serviceably sound and is used by Mr. Crow, who is now past eighty-five years old, for his personal transportation.

Screw-worms and maggots are closely related, one being the larva of the blow-fly, the other the larva of the common house-fly.

### A TEXAS ENDURANCE RIDE PROPOSED

CAPTAIN H. M. GREGORY writes:

“Don’t you think that there is room for a good long ride in Texas? We certainly have enough regiments there to assure good support from the cavalry. If rides or races are to be organized in various districts of the country, then our regiments should certainly find some conspicuous way to support them. Not so much would this be done because of the value of our support as because of the need of our showing appreciation of any public interest in horses.

“If officers in a regiment should secure prospects for an endurance

## TOPICS OF THE DAY

ride about a year before the ride and put them into preliminary training, they might select one or two candidates some time before the race and give them every encouragement to train to win. Of course, to be successful the plan would have to receive united support from the members of the regiment. Might not the regiment as a whole bear a large part of the expense incidental to the race itself and in return receive a good share of any cash prize won? We certainly need to work out some plan whereby a young and active officer may be able to get into things of this kind.”

### CAVALRY R. O. T. C. ACTIVITIES

IT IS INSPIRING to note the increasing activity of our R. O. T. C. units. In every section of the country they are popularizing the horse, the cavalry branch, and the R. O. T. C., and are doing a lot to insure that the R. O. T. C. is here to stay and to develop itself as a main prop and source of the Organized Reserves.

A press notice from Corvallis, Oregon, advises that four class teams and one officers’ team have been playing the first schedule of polo games that has ever been played on the Oregon Agricultural College campus, and that a tournament with Stanford University is contemplated; also, the same college beat its nearest rival by more than 200 points in a recent rifle contest. At a gymkhana held May 11 the cavalry units won over the field artillery by a total score of 42 to 18. The program included races, relay races, and jumping. One event was the Gretna Green Race, in which three teams were entered, each consisting of man and girl from each unit. The men, mounted, start at starting point and lead saddle horse to point where girls are stationed. Each man dismounts, assists lady in mounting, and both ride to starting point holding hands.

On May 29, 4,700 spectators witnessed the Tenth Annual Military Tournament. A magnificent sham battle was staged, in which the cavalry participated along with the other units. The cavalry put on a mounted exhibition which was favorably commended.

From the University of Arizona came a telegram late in March announcing the victory of its polo team over Stanford by a score of 8 to 3.

Coming further east, interest centers upon the University of Illinois, where a great cavalry gymkhana was held April 28. This occasion was attended by nearly 1,000 spectators, and consisted of mounted pyramid races, Roman races, pony express races, mounted wrestling, and jumping.

In the same quarter another big R. O. T. C. unit gives evidence of the right cavalry spirit. On Memorial Day the corps of cadets at Michigan Agricultural College staged their first horse show for the benefit of their military band and the college polo association.

*Saber Cuts*, issued every once in a while by the military department of Norwich University, keeps the friends of that institution informed of the progress of polo, which has developed remarkably at Norwich during the past

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

few years. Norwich and V. M. I. were both represented by polo teams in the Intercollegiate Tournament held at Fort Hamilton during May. In the course of this tournament the Norwich Cadets defeated Harvard University 12 to 2 and lost to Yale a few days later by a score of 25 to 2.

The month of May also witnessed a fine horse show at Massachusetts Agricultural College, Amherst. A number of members of the State legislature were present to witness this demonstration of the work of the R. O. T. C. and the show was well attended by the people of the vicinity, who are becoming more and more interested in the military work at this institution. It is also worthy of comment that polo is being rapidly popularized throughout this region and a number of civilian polo clubs have been formed. The illustrations shown opposite page 370 illustrate the character of the Amherst "Aggie" horse show. Attention is invited to the particularly attractive lay-out of the show field, the preparation of which was skillfully managed under an appropriation of only \$300.00. The triple-bar jump is the performance of a cadet in the first year advance course cavalry unit.

"ALL the pure and noble arts of peace are founded on war; no great art ever rose on earth but among a nation of soldiers. . . . There is no great art possible to a nation but that which is based on battle. . . . When I tell you that war is the foundation of all the arts, I mean also that it is the foundation of all the higher virtues and faculties of men. It is very strange to me to discover this, and very dreadful; but I saw it to be quite an undeniable fact. The common notion that peace and the virtues of civil life flourished together I found to be wholly untenable. Peace and the vices of civil life only flourish together. We talk of peace and learning, of peace and plenty, and of peace and civilization; but I found that those were not the words which the Muse of History coupled together; that on her lips the words were peace and sensuality, peace and selfishness, peace and death. I found, in brief, that all great nations learned their truth of word, and strength of thought, in war; that they were nourished in war, and wasted by peace; taught by war, and deceived by peace; trained by war, and betrayed by peace; in a word, that they were born in war, and expired in peace."—*John Ruskin*.

(From Ruskin's address entitled "The Crown of the Wild Olive," delivered at the Royal Military Academy at Woolwich, in 1866.)

## New Books Reviewed

**THE FRONTIER TRAIL, OR FROM COWBOY TO COLONEL:** A narrative of forty-three years in the Old West as cattleman, Indian fighter, and army officer. By Colonel Homer W. Wheeler, U. S. Army, Retired. Times-Mirror Press, Los Angeles, Calif., 1923. 21 illustrations, 334 pages. (Price, \$3.00.)

It seems entirely appropriate that this interesting personal narrative of the experiences of a cavalry officer on the plains of the great West a generation ago should be noticed in the *CAVALRY JOURNAL*.

Our old cavalrymen, a majority of whom are now retired, will find many chapters intensely interesting, especially in those where their trail has crossed that of Lieutenant Wheeler.

We speak of him as *Lieutenant* with a purpose, for Wheeler was forty-five years of age when he attained his captaincy in 1893, after nearly eighteen years in the grade of first Lieutenant, during which period most of his hazardous service was performed, after the perusal of which the reader must conclude that this particular lieutenant fairly earned his double bars.

In fact he had earned his original appointment as second lieutenant through his valuable services as a civilian volunteer on sundry scouts, the last being in the engagement of Sappa Creek, Kans., in April, 1875, where his gallantry attracted the attention of army officers to such an extent that they recommended him for a commission, and the first that Wheeler knew of this was the receipt in the mail of an envelope addressed to Second Lieutenant Homer W. Wheeler, 5th Cavalry, inclosing his appointment.

This narrative throws interesting and valuable side lights on many noted characters whose names on the plains a generation ago were household words. Obscure features of several important engagements with Indians are likewise cleared up.

Colonel Wheeler, like all of his contemporaries in the service, has a strong admiration for the Indian character, his faith in which is amply justified by his splendid work in training an Indian troop.

To those interested in the Indian question, as well as the work performed by our cavalry in the development of the Great West "The Frontier Trail" is cordially recommended.—Reviewed by Colonel W. C. Brown, U. S. A., Retired.

**OPERATIONS OF THE 29TH DIVISION.** Compiled by Major W. S. Bowen, C. A. C. The Coast Artillery Journal, Fort Monroe, Va., 1923. 6 x 9¼, 410 pages. (Price, \$1.25.)

This volume, which is a compilation of official battle reports, orders, and messages, is a splendid source book for the military student.

In addition to the reports of all the units, from that of the division commander down to and including those of all the platoon commanders, this book contains the messages sent from and received at division headquarters, the army and division field orders, and a specially prepared 1/20,000 French *Plan Directeur* which embraces the front occupied by the 29th Division.

In many of the reports officers rendering them have included instructive comments upon the operation, tactics, equipment, etc. The book is unique and reflects credit upon its compiler and publishers.

**PRINCIPLES OF COMBAT.** By Major R. E. Jones, Infantry. Riker's, Booksellers, Des Moines, Iowa. (Price, \$1.00.)

The reader will consume it in an hour. He will find it full of the ideas with which he is familiar and with which he is in full accord. The need of discipline, the means of securing

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

it, behavior toward superior, toward subordinates, military efficiency—all these are matters of common consideration. And there is nothing startling or novel or radical in Major Jones's presentation. But there is a little of genius in his manner of marshaling these thoughts and—in direct and convincing sequence and words—"driving them home." It is a helpful little book for any commander, for any commander's helper, for any commander's subordinate. He will find its perusal an hour of considerable profit.

General Holbrook says regarding it:

"I have taken great pleasure in reading this book from cover to cover. I am confident that it will be of interest and benefit to all into whose hands it may fall. The brief and clear-cut way in which you set forth many principles of command becomes all the more impressive by reason of the method adopted in stating them. Psychology is at last being recognized as a subject worthy of most careful study. You have well classified the knowledge requisite for command or leadership. If to this knowledge is added personal character, which establishes confidence, the leadership is assured. I am very glad indeed that you are thinking for the benefit of the service, and that you have given expression to your thoughts in a way to make them available to those ambitious to command."

**HISTORIQUE DU CORPS DE CAVALERIE SORDET.** By Colonel Boucherie. Charles Lavauzelle. Paris. 100 pages. (Price, \$1.90.)

The first day of the war this cavalry corps crossed the Belgian frontier and advanced to meet the enemy. The author claims that from August 5 to 15, east of the Meuse, it indicated the apparent enemy contour from hour to hour; it reported the march of the enemy armies, it warned of the battle of Dinant twenty-four hours ahead; the following days, on the Sambre, it re-established liaison with the Belgian army, kept contact with the enemy armies between Namur and Louvain, and covered and afforded intelligence to the 5th Army.

On the left wing of the 5th Army it assured liaison with the English Army and held for it the crossings of the Sambre. On the left wing of the English Army, from August 26 to 28, it rendered such brilliant services to the British, by counter-attacking the German columns which tried to envelop them, that both General Smith-Dorrien and Marshal French later declared that it had saved the English Army from a disaster.

During the retreat, continues the author, the cavalry corps covered and furnished information to the exterior wing of the 6th Army, with its exhausted divisions, while with its least-done-up troops a provisional division was constituted which maintained liaison with the English and stopped with tireless obstinacy the enemy advance guards at Pont-Sainte-Maxence and at Verberie.

After enabling the 6th Army to retreat in safety, and after having marched over 100 kilometers in 36 hours, the Sordet Cavalry Corps joined in to the offensive of the Marne and operated against the enemy's flank and communications.

In spite of insufficient material, lacking aviation, with a reduced complement of artillery, almost always without infantry supports, constantly in contact with the enemy, the Cavalry Corps fulfilled all the missions assigned to it.

This account is accompanied by sketches which enable the reader to follow the operations. It is believed that no English translation of this book is available.

**WINNING AND WEARING SHOULDER STRAPS.** By Lieutenant-Colonel Charles F. Martin. Cavalry, U. S. Army. Macmillan Co., 1918. 105 Pages. (Price, \$0.50.)

This is a study of the art of command. The main divisions of the treatise are "Military Efficiency," "Essential Military Qualities and Habits," "Discipline and Morale,"

## NEW BOOKS REVIEWED

"Leadership and Command." The work is expository in method and, being in no sense argumentative, is very readable and pleasing. A new subhead greets the reader every several pages, a delightful manner of keeping the interest. The style is almost conversational. The matter is presented in a very stimulating way, and this is, perhaps, the most valuable attribute of the book. One can hardly read it without some introspection and resolution to correct some of his deficiencies.

## SPECIAL BOOK NOTICE

It is desired to remark upon the large demand which has been aroused for two books in which the Cavalry Association is especially interested: "The German Cavalry in Belgium and France 1914" and "A History of Cavalry." "The Desert Mounted Corps" has also been distributed in large numbers and is still in demand. In supplying these three books so extensively to the cavalry service the Association is supplying our officers with a remarkably complete ground-work of professional reading. The History of Cavalry covers the whole field very satisfactorily up to the late war and the history of the German Cavalry and the British Cavalry in Palestine afford a fairly extensive knowledge of the interesting and important cavalry work of the World War.

The Cavalry Association has a special interest in the first two mentioned books, as it is the publisher of the English edition of the first and has acquired the entire stock of and rights to the second. Its action in these directions has been amply justified by the large number of sales of these deservedly popular and very important cavalry books.

## PRIZE FOR NEW SUBSCRIPTIONS

To every member of the Cavalry Association who sends in before September 1 two new paid-up subscriptions to the CAVALRY JOURNAL will be sent a copy of Dennison's *History of Cavalry*.



## Foreign Military Journals

### Charge of Cavalry Mass Stood Off by Infantry

The CAVALRY JOURNAL has presented to its readers many instances of successful cavalry action during the World War. It would be harmful not to present also the instances of unsuccessful cavalry employment, so that the mistakes which these illustrate may be impressed upon the mind and avoided by our own cavalry.

A striking example of the futile employment of cavalry in a mounted charge of masses against good infantry in position is afforded by an account in *Militär Wochenblatt*, *Merck*, 1923 (Nr. 27), which is translated here in full.

### ATTACK OF RUSSIAN CAVALRY MASSES AGAINST GERMAN INFANTRY

By Lieutenant a. D. v. Clausius

The Brusilov offensive had brought the Austrian Army of Puhallo to a stand west of Lutsk; German divisions were brought from all theaters of war to the Kovel region.

The attack was continued on the 2d. Night patrols reported strongly fortified enemy positions east of Polodes, which were exceedingly hard to distinguish in the high fields of grain. Artillery fire (including fire of mortars) co-operated efficiently, and the battalions, beginning from the right flank, worked their way forward. Toward noon the Russian front appeared to be well shaken. Individual Russian soldiers were seen emerging from the positions which were being pounded by the heavy artillery fire and seeking safety in the fields. The command, "Fix bayonets," was given, and there were no further halts. Foremost of all, Corporal Vogel, of the 83d Reserve Regiment, leader of a telephone squad, reached the Russian position ahead of his fellows, and with his coil of wire fetched 43 Russians out of a shelter.

As the pursuit was commencing the air report reached the battalion, "Strong Russian cavalry on the march from Lutsk toward Radomysl." Right in our sector! The maintenance of liaison in the high grain fields was very difficult. Above all, the artillery could not follow. About two kilometers in front of us lay an extensive stretch of woods, which we made haste to reach in order to reorganize our formations. We pressed at once through the woods, a matter of two kilometers, and reached the edge toward the reported enemy. Here the formations were re-established, ammunition brought up, the machine-guns assembled in the firing line, and the 2d Battalion of the 83d (reserve regiment) drawn up close behind the front line. Here we awaited the arrival of our artillery. Rifle pits were soon thrown up in the soft ground.

Beyond the foreground, which was hilly and covered with high crops, small mounted groups and wagon columns could be seen in the distance, apparently moving hither and thither without any design. Then out of a wood lying half left from us came several lines of advancing infantry, which upon receiving our fire withdrew again into the wood. The utmost attention was aroused; distances were estimated to points in front; the assembled 16 machine-guns were all ready to open fire; observers in the tree-tops had good fields of view. Unfortunately, an observer from the artillery reached us with the information that the batteries were still in march. About 6 o'clock of the afternoon an observer reported, "The Russian cavalry is riding toward us in strong masses."

Shortly after, the approaching lines could be made out indistinctly in the high grain. The Russian cavalry, in attacking, lean their bodies forward upon their horses' necks, covered with unusually thick manes, so that the rider is scarcely to be distinguished.

At about 1,000 meters an intense rifle and machine-gun fire was opened upon this far-sung charging mass, eight lines deep, with sights set at 700. At 600 yards the attack broke up. At first, single troopers, then large bodies, broke to the side and then to the rear, carrying the last lines back with them. In spite of the heavy, well-directed fire, small detachments (of the strength of a platoon) approached us at top speed, which, as they reached our immediate front, were discovered to be without riders, who may have been shot down or have gotten away.

The charge was brilliantly ridden. The great masses of cavalry appeared suddenly and came in an extended gallop, utilizing by extraordinarily skillful maneuvers the cover afforded by the strongly undulating ground, advancing toward our lines with wonderful fearlessness. Our men sprang out of their shelter trenches with enthusiasm and shot at the approaching wave of horsemen. Some shot standing, others kneeling. Only on the left flank of the 1st Battalion of the 83d did the cavalry succeed in discovering a gap and getting through. In the lead a Russian colonel—apparently the commander of the regiment—stormed through the gap, saber swinging high, making a turn in the woods in order to roll up our line, which rested part on the edge of the woods and part in front of it. With his sixty or so horsemen he got as far as a farm lying in front of the woods and held by half a platoon of the 1st Battalion. The platoon commander, Lieutenant D. R. Linke, recognized the danger in time and executed a wheel. Lieutenant Linke tried to shoot down the onrushing Russian colonel with his own carbine, but the carbine missed fire. However, in the same moment a non-commissioned officer, standing near him, brought the brave colonel down from his horse dead, so that he fell against the platoon leader. The cavalymen turned about and only a few succeeded in making the gap. The regimental staff, which throughout the attack had remained close behind the front without any cover, upon the telephone report from the 1st Battalion of the situation on its right flank, had moved the battle headquarters speedily to the position of the regimental reserve, and so was able to meet a sudden surprise attack with superior strength.

According to the declaration of a captain, shot down close in front of our lines, 12 Russian regiments received the command to break through our front by a charge. It cannot be ascertained if all the regiments actually charged. In any case, this is the only instance in the course of the whole war of a charge of strong cavalry masses on a large scale. Thanks to excellent leadership and the calm and steadiness of every man, it was brilliantly stood off and the Russian attempt to break through baffled. The whole incident was kaleidoscopic. Like an apparition, it had come and disappeared. Jubilant shouts arose along the lines. By the report of the wounded—and intoxicated—captain of horse, the troops designated for the attack had been freely provided with French cognac, and were put to the charge with the information that they were attacking Austrian troops. When the captain recognized the spiked German helmets, however, he realized that the charge was bound to fail.

The charging force was the so-called Trans-Amur Border Cavalry Corps, which had just arrived at the Russian western front, after a march of three months, from eastern Asia, where it had been raised in the spring of 1916, to be elite troops in the expected break through. And they served in this manner on June 2, 1916, when they succeeded in breaking through the Austrian position. The troops were equipped with lance and saber, in addition to bayonets designed to fix to 6-millimeter carbines, which the front rank fired during the charge. It is interesting to note that in the case of the riderless horses that penetrated our line, the large part, even in spite of the most severe gunshot wounds—in breast and belly—kept the gait of the charge and held together, passing through our line in the same instant. Great heaps of dead riders and horses lay in our front; a number of horses, part of them wounded, were caught up in the woods behind us.

The regiment suffered the following losses in this engagement: 15 dead, 83 wounded.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

We captured one officer, 250 men, one machine-gun, about 60 useful horses, and a mass of horse equipment, arms, and ammunition.

### Sixth Cavalry Brigade in the Battle of Shaikh Saad

*Journal of the United Service Institution of India, January, 1923.*

In this number appears an account of the Battle of Shaikh Saad, an incident of the campaign in Mesopotamia in 1915-1916. The troops engaged included the 6th Cavalry Brigade and the 16th Cavalry Regiment, and the operations of the cavalry throughout the course of the attempt to relieve the British troops besieged in Kut-el-Amara are given in some detail.

In this same number is an interesting article by General Androski, former commandant of the Russian Staff College, on the possibilities of conflict between America and Japan, with some shrewd observations on comparative available forces and probable trend of operations. It is of interest to note that the author concludes that the Washington Conference on Limitation of Armaments, which was in progress while this article was written, represents a clever diplomatic stroke, by which America covers her present inadequate preparation by arranging for a continuance of the *status quo* in the Pacific.

For students of the cavalry work in the final Balkan campaign in 1918, an article by Major Ponsonby, on "The Final Phase of the War in the Balkans," furnishes an excellent account of the operations on this front as a basic setting for such study, although very little reference is made in this article to that cavalry work.

In an article covering the examination for admission to staff college, the following paragraph is noted:

"It is well to begin the more or less detailed study of campaigns now, and the following campaigns are suggested:

"1914-18, in France (especially first two months and last four months).

"1915-18—Mesopotamia.

"1915-18—Palestine

"1806—Ulm.

"1806—Jena.

"1815—Waterloo.

"1861-64—Shenandoah Valley."

It is interesting to note that the war of movement in France is emphasized, and that the interesting campaigns in Palestine and Mesopotamia are included in so short a list; also that although the Franco-Prussian War and Russo-Japanese War are omitted, the American Civil War comes in for a place. Incidentally, it may be remarked that there is an abundance of cavalry history included in these several campaigns.

Major C. D. Noyes contributes an interesting brief study on "Characteristics of Great Leaders."

### Where Cavalry Intelligence Was Not Utilized and Need of Cavalry Was Felt

*Revue Militaire Générale, October, 1922.*

In an interesting and detailed account of a meeting engagement at Neufchâteau, August 22, 1914, which continues through the numbers for September, October, November, and December, this comment on the cavalry is included:

"This battle was a tactical surprise in all the force of the term.

"Yet our 4th Cavalry Division had fulfilled its reconnaissance mission in this region. It had reported enemy forces in the neighborhood of Neufchâteau; it had even reported on August 21 that the crest to the east of Petitvoir was strongly occupied. But the battle was fully joined before the information was transmitted to General Goulet. The mixed brigade fulfilled its rôle. It marched upon the enemy which it was ordered to attack, but which, relying on official intelligence, it believed to be still at a distance. Its

## FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS

dispositions were judiciously made, in conformity to the orders received and to the regulations—and the column was brutally crushed by the enemy masses.

"What was at fault was the service of security. Twenty-five poorly instructed and poorly mounted reserve cavalymen proved to be not only incapable of providing for a mixed brigade in march the zone of protection of a dozen kilometers, absolutely necessary to secure its advance guard against the enemy field artillery, but even incapable of keeping the liaison with neighboring units."

In the 14th chapter of his continuing discussion of the French doctrine of war, "Lucius" holds that while cavalry must, in the future as in the past, precede the large units and indicate the apparent contour of the enemy line and determine his flanks, the cavalry, in spite of its increase in fire power and other means, will not be able to penetrate behind this "contour," and cannot assure that this line of fire is not merely a simple screen, without strength, designed to conceal the enemy dispositions. To penetrate this curtain, infantry and artillery will be required.

*Revue Militaire Générale, December, 1922.*

By General Rostovtzeff an account of the Red Army of Russia. He discounts the value of the army strength figure, cited at about 700,000. He says Toukhatchevskii characterizes the Red Army thus: "Everywhere there is slovenliness, negligence, indiscipline." Toukhatchevskii was formerly commander-in-chief of the western front and is now Director of the Academy of Workmen and Peasants of the General Staff. One does not gather from this article that the Red Army will be likely to figure largely in the political course of Europe or of the Near East.

### Divisional Cavalry

In the concluding remarks on the hotly contested battle of Neufchâteau, in this number, Commandant Grasset urges that "it is indispensable to assign sufficient elements of security troops to columns in order that they may protect themselves by their own means. Without doubt, two or three squadrons, vigorously commanded and well mounted, are necessary for a division or mixed brigade."

### Usefulness of Cavalry

"The rôle of cavalry in battle has changed less than one would believe," says "Lucius," in his chapter on the new regulations which is contained in this number; "in any case, the cavalry is far from having failed, as is so often stated. It is, in fact, the arm *par excellence* of exploitation of success, and it has demonstrated this: as in the work of the Marwitz cavalry in Flanders in 1914, the Schmettow corps in Roumania in 1916, the British cavalry in Palestine, and the French cavalry on the Saloniki front in 1918. If, on our (French) front, it was not employed on this mission, that is either because it was prevented by its exhaustion, as at the Battle of the Marne, in 1914, or because the breaches in the enemy line were insufficient to afford passage to the cavalry.

"However, in continuation of a certain number of break-through offensives, cavalry units would have been able to play an important rôle had they been thrown into the breach created, as, for example, at Verdun (February 24, 1916), on the Somme (July 4, 1916), in Picardy (March 24, 1918), on the Aisne (May 28, 1918).

"It is, therefore, very reasonable that our 'Instructions' have not ceased throughout the war to consider the rôle properly played by cavalry in the phase of exploitation. Now, in order to fill this rôle, this arm must keep its distinctive qualities—mobility and speed. These same qualities permitted it to give the greatest service in the defensive phase of the spring of 1918 in covering the breaches made by the Germans on the 24th of March and the 28th of May. It is necessary to keep these qualities, at whatever cost, and not to reduce the maneuvering capacity of cavalry on the pretext of augmenting its fire power. With the armament with which our cavalry was equipped at the end of the war, it was fitted to fight on foot and could, nevertheless, be maneuvered with all the rapidity necessary, and could even fight mounted. It is not a question of transforming it into mounted infantry. Besides, in open warfare, it is quite as useful as ever, while

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

if the occasions for its use in position warfare are less frequent, on that day which sees the need for it, nothing can replace it.

"The Germans lost sight of that fact. They sacrificed their cavalry to the necessities of position warfare and the critical need for effectives. Their cavalry adopted progressively the organization and methods of infantry combat and lost its own distinctive qualities. When the day arrived when it should have been used, in the great battles of the spring of 1918, it no longer existed as cavalry. The voluminous instructions of Ludendorff for the offensive of 1918 say not a word of the rôle of the cavalry. At that time the German army had only three cavalry divisions still mounted, and they were on the Eastern front.

"Let us maintain a spirited cavalry—fast, animated with offensive spirit, and able to act, according to circumstances, either on foot or mounted."

It is of interest to note that this French opinion (which seems to be a pronouncement of some authority, since this study by "Lucius" has been running through more than a dozen numbers of *Revue Militaire Générale*) is considerably at variance with the trend of French thought upon and modification of cavalry during the first four years following the war. It is difficult to reconcile this author's "cavalry policy" with the present French organization, equipment, and cavalry training, which has stressed *puissance des feux* above everything.

*Revue Militaire Générale*, February, 1923.

Cavalrymen will find a stirring narrative in this number, entitled "*Comment Perit le 20<sup>e</sup> Chasseurs à Cheval*." This is an account of the manner in which this fated regiment acted as cavalry escort to a mixed brigade which, after the evacuation of Lille, was ordered on the rather desperate mission of re-establishing the French grip on that city pending the arrival of the British. The country to be traversed was full of German mounted patrols and larger advance units, with which the Chasseur squadrons had some bloody encounters. A portion of the brigade and some of the cavalry penetrated into Lille and were besieged there. A remnant were forced to surrender upon the exhaustion of ammunition, but only after this devoted force had held up 60,000 German troops for two days.

### The Battle of Lodz

The student of the battles of the World War will find one of the most interesting of them described in considerable detail in this number. The Battle of Lodz, with first the Russians and then the Germans nearly caught in the enemy's enveloping maneuver, has been long considered an illuminating study. Its complexities are largely dissipated by this account, of which the most serious defect is lack of adequate maps and diagrams, and a minor fault is the loose fashion of referring by similar abbreviations to organizations of different degrees.

As the Germans used both Frommel's and Richthofen's Cavalry Corps, five cavalry divisions altogether, in the course of this battle, and the Russians got Novikoff's Cavalry Corps engaged before it was over, the study of this operation is of special interest to cavalrymen.

At the outset, Richthofen marched his cavalry corps in between two infantry corps, overcame the slight resistance met, and succeeded in getting in rear of a Russian Army Corps. Count Egon von Schmettow, commanding the 6th Cavalry Division, decided to make a night attack on the town of Kutno with his division. He penetrated into the place from several sides and got possession after desperate street fighting. In the course of which the division took 1,200 prisoners. Then at daybreak the same division continued its course in rear of the enemy, and seven miles east of Kutno the advance-guard squadron captured the automobile of the civil governor of Warsaw, whom it sent back under escort to Thorn. This turning movement of the cavalry alarmed the Russian infantry and they retreated.

## FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS

On the Russian side the cavalry were active in hedging in the von Scheffer force of more than an army corps, which was so nearly caught in a bag and only extricated itself by the most obstinate efforts and miraculous luck. Novikoff's cavalry, on the south, was doing its best (evidently not good enough) against Richthofen's Corps, while to the north the advance guard of the Germans was hurled back by a charge of dragoons and Cossacks.

This account comprises 21 pages and is well worth the student's attention.

*The Cavalry Journal* (British), January, 1923.

The article entitled "Progress" is a pleasing dissertation on post-war cavalry. Among its several excellent points may be noted particularly a plea for better training in horse-mastership.

This number contains Chapter XXIV of Colonel Osborne's serial study of the operations of the mounted troops of the E. E. F. in Palestine. This chapter covers the pursuit of the Turkish armies after the break through by the coast, and the masterful maneuver by which the cavalry blocked the Turkish retreat.

A striking example of the work of a British cavalry brigade is presented in "The 9th Hodson's Horse at Cambrai, 1917."

Other interesting articles in this number include "The Duke of Wellington's Charger, *Copenhagen*," an account of the cavalry in the Revolution of 1745 (which is described so entertainingly in *Waverley*), a history of the development of standards and guidons, and an installment of a serial entitled "First Stages of the Training of the Young Horse to Jump."

*Cavalry Journal* (British), April, 1923.

The leading article in this number is a noteworthy chapter in the cavalry history of the World War. It deals with the final phase of the operations in Mesopotamia and illustrates a typical and important use of cavalry, the cutting off of the enemy's retreat. In the last days of October, 1918, the Turks made a strong stand on a range of hills that crosses the river Euphrates 70 miles or so below Mosul. While the British infantry stormed the position in front, two cavalry brigades, by difficult marches through the mountains and over almost waterless country, got in upon the enemy's rear, bagged the whole army as it was pushed along by the infantry, and captured a large force of reinforcements before a juncture was effected. Both obstinate dismounted occupation of a position and mounted charges characterized the combat.

"Standards and Guidons" is concluded in this number.

Colonel Osborne's serial account of the "Operations of the Mounted Troops of the Egyptian Expeditionary Force" describes in this number the results attending immediately upon the September, 1918, offensive and the drive of the cavalry up the coast into the Turkish rear. With all means and all possible energy, the exploitation of the success was developed to the utmost. It is particularly interesting to note that the cavalry which got across the enemy's line of retreat were not permitted to sit tight and oppose a passive resistance to his further retreat. The cavalry was led vigorously against the enemy's leading troops and thus made the annihilation of the enemy more sure and rapid. This contribution includes a highly interesting account of the attack of the 4th Australian Light Horse Brigade, just at dawn, upon a strong and obstinate Turkish garrison at Semakh, on Lake Tiberias. A mounted charge in the dark was a remarkable feature of this action, which is made more instructive by means of an excellent sketch map.

Colonel E. D. Miller contributes a few points on the selection of polo ponies. Major Paterson's article on training young horses in jumping is concluded in this number.

## Polo

### NO POLO FIELD

I've read the Scriptures, Old and New,  
The Hymnals, Psalms, and just a few  
Of the world's best works on creed.  
But not one word of cheer I find  
For the day when I must leave behind  
Boots, spurs, saddle, and steed.

I read of pearly gates and wings,  
Of golden streets and many things  
That may appeal to you;  
Of snow-white robes and halos bright,  
Of angels, harps, and wondrous light,  
And nothing much to do.

But not a word can my search yield  
Of stable, horse, or polo field,  
In Heaven or in Hell.  
And horsemen will not care to go  
Where they can't ride and play polo;  
Oblivion is as well.

Across the Styx one prophet looks  
And sees green fields and shaded brooks,  
But hopes are soon repealed;  
For another writer says he thinks  
Those fields so green are just golf links,  
And not a polo field.

So I reject the white man's creed,  
And the more of his beliefs I read,  
The less I seek his goal.  
Much more the savage Red Man knows  
Of God, and where the spirit goes,  
And gives his horse a soul.

The Happy Hunting Ground for me,  
For on those plains there'll surely be  
A place to hit the ball.  
With boots and spurs and saddle clean,  
With whippy cane and pony keen,  
I'm waiting for the call.

—P. B. H. in "Saber Cuts."

## POLO

### THE POLO PONY—CARE OF THE FEET AND SHOEING

By Frank G. Churchill, Senior Instructor in Horseshoeing, the Cavalry School

This subject is an important one and one that is inclined to be overlooked by most horsemen.

The polo pony requires considerable speed, stamina, and, most of all, sound feet and strong leg tendons.

The shoeing practiced on the polo pony is with the object of attaining the greatest assistance to the pony in speed, starting and stopping. Little consideration is given to the horn structures of the hoof. The average polo shoe (rib steel) is not of sufficient weight and strength to properly protect the foot, resulting in a shattered condition of the wall of the hoof and frequently contraction of the heels to a greater or less degree, following a season's work. Too frequently this same method of shoeing is continued throughout the year, to the detriment of the feet.

During the playing season the following points with reference to shoeing should be noted:

**Preparation of the feet:** The feet should not be trimmed as low as for normal shoeing.

**Commercial rib steel** makes a very desirable material for the shoes. It can be procured in the bar form or in the finished shoe. The rib or rim gives the pony a firm footing, which enables him to make quick starts and stops and sharp turns without slipping.

For the front feet it is desirable to make a light bar for this style of shoe, as the material is very light and the strain on the shoes and nails during severe polo-work is liable to spring or spread the heels of the shoe off of the buttress and shatter or weaken the wall to which the shoe is attached. The bar may be made very thin and light by removing the rim. Frog pressure on the bar can be had if desired. By leaving the rim on the bar a very decided grip is obtained for use in stopping the pony suddenly.

The shoe may be turned with the rim either on the outside or inside edge of the shoe. Personally, I prefer the shoe with the rim on the outside of the shoe, for by this method the weight is more evenly distributed on the wall of the foot, and the footing is made more secure by having a larger ground surface to the shoe. With the rim on the inside edge, the greatest weight falls over the white line and outer border of the sole; the ground surface of the shoe is small in circumference and induces a lateral rocking of the foot as well as a too rapid breaking over of the foot at the toe; the pony is liable to be thrown off his gait and to stumble or even fall.

**For the hind feet:** An open shoe (rim on the outside of shoe) with turned heel calks, the calks slightly inclined to the front, instead of being perpendicular to the shoe; the calks about three-eighths of an inch in height.

When the outside season is over, examine all feet very carefully and remove all shoes from ponies that can stand it. There are sure to be contracted heels. The ponies having sound feet should go without shoes the entire off season if they do not get tender. The others should go barefoot for about one month and then be shod—with a bar shoe if frog is healthy and contraction slight, with a bevel-edge shoe if frog is not healthy and heels much contracted. It may be necessary with some of the worst feet to shoe with that shoe immediately. Ponies used for indoor polo will play either barefoot or with service shoe. Calks may be necessary behind, according to footing.

It is my contention that no other shoe will equal the results obtained (in a given time) by the proper use of the bevel-edge shoe.

**The bevel-edge shoe:** This shoe is an open shoe (plain pattern), fitted as the normal shoe, with exception of a little greater expansion at the heels, and the bearing surface of the shoe, from the bend of the quarter to the point of the heel, beveled toward the



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

outer edge, starting with a minimum amount of bevel at the quarter and increasing the bevel as the heel is approached. When using this shoe, great care should be exercised in preparing the foot; it is not a difficult job but a painstaking one. The feet must be kept soft. Watch closely the expansion of the heels, as with this style of shoe the heels of the foot spread rapidly and necessitate changing the shoes at short intervals.

**Preparation of the feet:** First procure a level bearing surface (normal preparation), then bevel the inner bearing surface of the wall from and including the buttress to a point near the bend of the quarter, distance to correspond with bevel on the shoe. The latter part of the preparation should be performed after the shoe is fitted to the outline of the foot. The bevel on the bearing surface of the foot is the reverse to the bevel on the shoe, so that the quarters and heels of the foot are resting upon the outward beveled surface of the shoe.

**Principle of this method:** The quarters and heels of the foot, resting upon the beveled surface of the shoe, are constantly being forced outward by the weight of the animal upon the foot when standing or in motion. The spreading of the heels permits of greater freedom of the horny frog in developing and acquiring its normal size and condition.

This shoe is of my own design and I have used it successfully for the past fifteen years.

The weight of shoes used during the off season, irrespective of design, should be of a much heavier pattern than those used during the playing season. The additional weight affords greater protection to the feet against concussion, and with slow work strengthens the tendons by carrying the additional weight.

By this method it is believed that the polo pony will show greater speed and have stronger tendons, with feet in better condition to follow the game throughout the season.

### A COMPLIMENT TO THE ELEVENTH CAVALRY POLO TEAM

The following letter was addressed April 23 to the commanding officer of the 11th Cavalry, Presidio of Monterey, California, by the chairman of the Pacific Coast Polo Subcommittee:

MY DEAR SIR:

I wish to congratulate you upon the fine sportsmanship, the excellent polo, and the exceptionally good turnout of the team recently playing in the Pacific Coast Championships from the 11th Cavalry, captained by Major Chandler.

They made many friends for the army all up and down the coast, as well as many converts to the idea that polo is excellent officer training.

It is to be regretted that your team has such serious illness in its mounts early in the season. I have no doubt that if it had not been for that they would have made a much better showing.

I have been personally very much interested in army polo, and if there is ever anything that comes to your attention in which I can be of assistance in promoting it, I trust you will let me know.

Yours very truly,  
(Signed)

JOHN B. MILLER,  
*Chairman, Pacific Coast Subcommittee.*

### TWELFTH CAVALRY

Interest in polo has not waned during the quarter, in spite of the target season and the fact that three officers have gone to the cavalry rifle tryout at Des Moines. From eight to ten officers have been turning out for practice three or four times a week at Fort Brown, where the players have been receiving some splendid instruction from Captain Earl K. Breen, formerly of the Wild Horse Team, which included Major Dudley Edenborough, of the Black Horse Team, and Captain Philip Messenger of Scot's Greys. Captain

## POLO,

Breen, who is now residing at Brownsville, is teaching the Buckmaster system used by the English international team. Captain Messenger will visit Captain Breen shortly, and will also assist the Fort Brown players while here. At Fort Ringgold the cavalry officers have been turning out for a game every Sunday morning.

### THIRTEENTH CAVALRY

Polo activities are progressing in spite of the fact that range work is interfering to some extent. Thirty-three horses, some only partially trained, are in the polo stables, and an effort is being made to increase this number.

Round robins are being played each Sunday afternoon before good crowds from the post and from Cheyenne.

Plans are now under way for a tournament, to be held from June 30 to July 8, with four or five teams participating, and it is expected that there will be some good polo during the encampment of the Wyoming, Utah, and Idaho National Guard cavalry regiments during July.

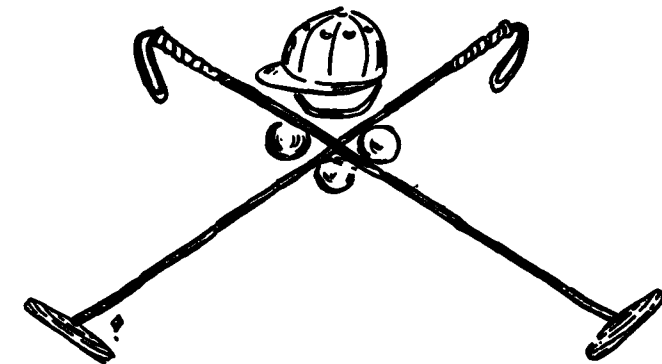
The regimental team had to regret to fully decline an invitation to the tournament to be held in Boise, Idaho, during May.

### BROADMOOR

Polo at Broadmoor promises big this season. The army will probably be well represented by teams from Fort Riley, Fort Leavenworth, Fort Sill, and Fort D. A. Russell. Denver poloists will be represented by Major C. F. Cusack, J. F. Campion, R. D. Brooks, Ira B. Humphreys, and V. Z. Reed. Colonel W. P. Draper, of Hopedale, Mass., who recently completed a course at the Cavalry School, is expected to attend and bring with him a string of fifteen ponies.

### POLO PONIES IN THE PHILIPPINES

There is a lack of ponies in the islands. The 26th Cavalry, while well mounted at present, are riding old horses and the next two years will see a great change in their string, since they have very little raw material from which to develop new ponies. There seems to be an impression in the States that good ponies are numerous in the Islands, and many officers on being ordered to the Philippines have been discouraged from bringing ponies. This erroneous impression should be corrected and officers should be encouraged to bring good horses where possible.



# The Cavalry School

THE CAVALRY SCHOOL—Fort Riley, Kansas

Brigadier-General Edward L. King, Commandant

Brigadier-General Mallin Craig has been relieved as commandant of the Cavalry School and assigned to command of the Coast Artillery District of Manila, P. I., and Colonel Hamilton S. Hawkins has been relieved as assistant commandant and assigned as colonel of the 3d Cavalry, to command Fort Myer, Va. Both of these officers carry with them the best wishes and sincere admiration of the Cavalry School for their high personal and professional attainments. Brigadier-General Edward L. King is the new commandant; the new assistant commandant has not yet been appointed.

Major-General Patrick, Chief of the U. S. Air Service, and Brigadier-General Dorey, of the 7th Corps Area, visited the post in April and inspected the air activities, which are commanded by Major C. L. Tinker. Major-General Helmick, Inspector General of the Army, visited the post in May.

The flying field at Fort Riley has been designated Marshal Field in honor of Colonel F. C. Marshall, of the office of the Chief of Cavalry, who lost his life in an airplane accident last December while on a flight from San Diego, Calif., to Nogales, Ariz. Next year will probably see a battalion of field artillery stationed at Fort Riley, which, with the Observation Air Service Squadron and the company of Mounted Engineers already here, will allow the solution of combined problems with those branches of the service most likely to serve with cavalry in war.

Several riding exhibitions were given during the past quarter, among them being two jumping competitions by six officers from each platoon of the Troop Officers Class on selected jumpers, a remount competition by four officers from each platoon of the Troop Officers Class, and a jumping exhibition of the Second Year Class and one of the Advanced Class.

The Fort Riley Polo Team, consisting of Captain Gerhardt, Major Patton, Major J. K. Brown, and Lieutenant-Colonel Lewis Brown, has recently played two games with Fort Leavenworth, both of which Fort Riley won—the first, played at Fort Leavenworth, by the score of 9 to 3, and the second, played at Fort Riley, by the score of 9 to 5. A polo ball was given on May 26 for the benefit of the polo fund. An amateur show, the Riley Revue, was given by the Troop Officers Class for the benefit of the *Rasp*.

Major-General Holbrook, the Chief of Cavalry, was present at Fort Riley for the graduation exercises and was greatly interested, especially in the equestrian events. During the week dances were given by both the Advanced Class and the Troop Officers Class.

The first event of the graduation week was a contest in horseshoeing, contestants being required to inspect the shoeing of a number of horses against time, noting faults in shoeing and indicating those which should be classified as important and those as minor faults. The winner was Captain Holt; second, Major T. K. Brown.

The next event, which was held on Saturday morning, was a point-to-point race of about five miles over a flagged course, including obstacles of height and width. The contestants were required to start at intervals and ride the course without watches. Points were deducted for refusals and run-outs at the obstacles, and for finishing the course either over or under a fixed time. This event was open to members of the Advanced Class only and was won by Major Nalle; second, Major Cowles. The afternoon event for the best schooled remount, open only to members of the Troop Officers Class, was won by Captain Baird; second, Captain Waters.

## THE CAVALRY SCHOOL

Monday morning was devoted to pistol and saber work. A squad competition was held between a selected squad from each of the four platoons of the Troop Officers Class, in which each squad was required to make three runs in close order at a line of overhead targets (3 shots) and three runs in extended order at a line of ground targets (3 shots). The competition was won by the squad from the 4th platoon, with a score of 94 hits out of a possible 148; second, the squad from the 1st platoon, with 91 hits. The same squads then competed in saber work, each member of each squad making one run over the qualification course, total scores of the eight men of each squad to count. This was won by the squad from the first platoon; second, the squad from the 4th platoon. Then followed a demonstration of a pistol and saber attack by a composite platoon, which was characterized by great dash and spirit and elicited the warm approval of the Chief of Cavalry. In the afternoon a jumping competition for members of the Advanced Class was won by Lieutenant-Colonel Turner; second, Major Garr. Following this a schooling event on trained horses and remounts, open to members of the Second Year Class only, was won by Captain Coe; second, Captain Padgett.

Tuesday morning the Platoon Cup, presented for individual excellence, over the regulation saber course against time, open to the 15 members of the Troop Officers Class who had made the 15 highest scores with the saber, was won by Captain Morris in the remarkable time of 58 seconds. Captain Hood was second. A combined pistol and saber event against time, in which the contestant was required to fire five shots at silhouette targets, take a jump, change magazines, fire five more shots at silhouettes, and attack several dummies with the saber, was won by Major Reese; second, Captain Stewart. In the afternoon the first phase of the Cavalry Pentathlon, a new event, was held. The contestants, numbering about 75, each one armed with a rifle, a polo stick, a polo ball, a pistol, and a slip of paper bearing his name, were marched to a squad of horses, chose horses at random, and at the command *Go*, mounted, rode about a mile to the polo field, knocked the balls the length of the field, rode a half mile to the rifle range, fired at bottles assigned to them until they broke them; then rode a half mile to a barrel, in which they dropped their names; then back to the pistol range, where it was necessary to hit other bottles, and finally to a finish point. This phase of the event, which was extremely exciting and brought forth much bold riding and not a few falls, was won by Captain Mandell; second, Captain Ednie. The next night, after dark, the second phase was held. This consisted in indicating to the contestants, by map co-ordinates, the location of horses one-half mile away and of a finish point about three miles away. At the command *Go*, the contestants rushed to the horses, mounted, and raced to the finish. This phase was won by Captain Herman; second, Captain Ednie. By the system of scoring adopted, the whole event was won by Captain Ednie; second, Captain Mandell.

Wednesday morning a troop officers' jumping contest in the stadium was won by Captain Earnest; second, Captain Jones; and a second-year-class contest by Captain Davis; second, Captain Coe. Thursday morning a troop officers' jumping contest in the riding hall was won by Captain Colwell; second, Major Bradford; and in the afternoon the Remount Cup, for the best trained remount, including schooling and both indoor and outdoor jumping, was won by Captain Pattison; second, Captain Taylor.

Thursday night the night ride over an unknown course of 46 miles was held. With the idea of preventing racing over good roads, in an effort to beat Captain Gerhardt's remarkably fast time of last year, which was the avowed intention of every contestant, the course was laid over the sparsely settled country south of the river, the four control stations being situated at obscure points. One half of the contestants was sent over the course in one direction, the other half in the opposite direction. The night was dark, the network of roads extremely confusing, and the maps inaccurate. Only about 35 of the contestants finished, the winner turning up in Captain Jones, with Captain Cramer

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

in second place. The time was about six hours. It is safe to say that the average distance traveled was about 65 to 70 miles, although casualties and cases of exhaustion among the horses were practically negligible.

Saturday morning General Holbrook made an interesting talk, presented prizes and diplomas, and the school year was over. It is fitting to mention here with gratitude the great generosity of the citizens of Junction City in presenting cups each year for the various graduation events, which adds so greatly to the interest taken in them by the students.

## Regimental Notes

### FIRST CAVALRY—Camp Marfa, Texas Colonel A. V. P. Anderson, Commanding

On April 1 the regiment commenced its regular target practice.

On April 3 and 6 the regimental commander held his annual tactical inspection of the command. An estimate of the comparative excellence of the rifle troops was compiled, with the following results: A, F, G, B, C, and E.

April 8, Major-General Robert L. Howze, Division Commander, and Major A. R. Chaffee, G-3, 1st Cavalry Division, arrived at Marfa and visited the outpost at Presidio, Texas, on April 9, and on the two following days inspected the command at Camp Marfa. His inspection was not confined to the tactical efficiency and appearance of the garrison, but included an inspection of stables, barracks, hospital, quartermaster activities, and other buildings of the post.

April 11 an elaborate luncheon was tendered General Howze by the Marfa Chamber of Commerce, all officers of the garrison and prominent citizens of Marfa attending. General Howze interested his audience by an outline of the anticipated training and concentration of the division.

April 20-21 the garrison was honored by a visit from Major-General Eli D. Helmick, Inspector General of the Army. General Helmick made a minute inspection of the general appearance, tactical and administrative efficiency of the regiment, and of all buildings and utilities at the post. He expressed himself as being well pleased with the appearance and progress of the command.

Major-General Mason M. Patrick, Chief of Air Service, visited the camp on April 13. Due to urgent matters which required the General's presence in El Paso, his stay here was of very short duration.

The social activities of the regiment have been somewhat curtailed during the past two months, due to target practice. Weekly informal hops are held at the "Black Hawk" open-air pavilion, an annex to the Officers' Club.

The regiment has had several new officers assigned during the quarter, including Colonel Le Roy Eltinge, who is to assume command upon the relief of the present regimental commander in the near future.

### SECOND CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas Colonel Charles A. Romeyn, Commanding

The routine work of the regiment during the months of April and May consisted in demonstration work and instruction in marksmanship. Troop stables were used for gallery practice, and shooting was thus carried on regardless of weather conditions.

## First National Bank

Junction City, Kansas

The only United States Depository for Disbursing Officers' Accounts adjacent to Fort Riley.

Over Thirty Years' Experience  
with Army Accounts

*The Bank of Courtesy and Service*

### OFFICERS

Thomas B. Kennedy, *President.*

James V. Humphrey, *Vice-President.*

O. O. Clark, *Vice-President.*

W. F. Miller, *Vice-Pres. and Cashier.*

E. J. Denver, *Assistant Cashier.*

## The B. Rockwell Merchandise & Grain Co.

JUNCTION CITY, KANSAS

Established 1865.

Incorporated 1892.

WHOLESALE GROCERS

RETAIL GROCERS

Fresh Meats

Dry Goods

Women's Wear

Shoes

Luggage

Bargain Basement

Grain

57 YEARS' CONTINUOUS SERVICE  
TO THE ARMY

## EISENHOWER'S

622 North Washington St.  
JUNCTION CITY, KANSAS

*Drugs*

*Eastman Kodaks*

*Developing and Finishing*

*Fountain Service*

*Fine Candies*

*Perfumes*

(Will always cash a check for a Cavalry Officer)

## Announcement

**BREAKING AND RIDING**

By FILLIS

**HAS JUST BEEN REPRINTED**

**\$7.50**

Order from

**The U. S. CAVALRY ASSOCIATION**

1624 H St. N. W.

Washington, D. C.

## Good Eats Cafe

607 N. Washington St.

Junction City, Kansas

The Junction Cafe which caters to  
Army trade

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

April 9 to 25 the Pioneer Section, Staff Platoon Headquarter Troop, took part in a demonstration showing the erection of wire entanglements and single and double-lock bridges. A double-lock bridge 45 feet in length was constructed in fifty-two minutes and transportation passed over.

April 10 the Communications Platoon demonstrated a brigade radio net in operation.

April 18 Troop B gave a demonstration with war strength machine rifle platoon and on April 28 gave a horse show in East Riding Hall.

April 16 the entire regiment took part in an experiment in aerial observation, involving aerial photography, showing a troop acting as advance guard for a regiment and demonstrating comparative visibility, disregarding cover and with use of cover. The regiment was reviewed April 30 by Brigadier-General Edward L. King.

From May 4 to 8 Troop B and Headquarters Troop took part in May Day events in Manhattan, Kans. These troops pitched a model camp in the city park and took part in a street parade and maneuver with the R. O. T. C. units. A horse show was given the afternoon of May 7 in the Kansas State Agricultural College Stadium, which was witnessed by over five thousand spectators. Cups and cash prizes were donated by business men and the Chamber of Commerce of Manhattan, Kans. A noteworthy feature of this show, causing great excitement among the spectators, was the jumping by non-commissioned officers in McClellan saddles. Six men tied for first place, having cleared 4 feet 8 inches. The following note appeared in *The Manhattan Mercury*: "The general conduct of the soldiers also came in for a liberal amount of praise from the public and the various committees in charge of program. Each and every man conducted himself in a soldierly manner, and not one complaint against the presence of the troops was heard—a fact commendable and a credit to the 2d Cavalry to which unit the participating service men are attached."

The following demonstrations were given during May:

Squad, platoon, and troop in all phases of musketry training.

War strength troop in advance-guard work over varied ground, including combat.

Aerial observation problem, demonstrating use of panels and aerial route photographs.

The contents and packing of troop pack outfits (kitchen pack, picket line, and pannier and ration). These packs are specially designed for durability and ease in packing without employing diamond hitch.

Squadron in combined action against infantry.

May 19 the regiment was reviewed by General Eli A. Helmick, Inspector General, followed on May 21 by inspection of barracks and stables. The annual inspection of the entire regiment by Colonel Samuel McP. Rutherford, Inspector General, Sixth Corps Area, was made from May 19 to 22.

The Regimental Day was celebrated with a mounted field day the first days in June. The list of events were as follows:

Class 1—Mounted tug of war.

Class 2—Best trained troopers' mount, privates.

Class 3—Privates' jumping.

Class 4—Best four-line team to escort wagon.

Class 5—Best trained troopers' mount, N. C. O.

Class 6—Non-commissioned officers' jumping.

Class 7—Best two-line team to light wagon.

Class 8—Officers' jumping (all officers in regiment entered).

Class 9—Open jumping, open to winners of first, second, third, and fourth places in classes 3 and 6.

Class 10—Mounted rescue race.

## REGIMENTAL NOTES

### THIRD CAVALRY—Headquarters and Second Squadron, Fort Myer, Virginia

Colonel Hamilton S. Hawkins, Commanding

The annual Society Circus, for the benefit of the post athletic fund, was held on April 4. The feature event was the mounted drill given by 32 Washington debutantes—past, present, and future—under the command of Second Lieutenant William J. Crowe.

The squadron took part in the review for Major-General Henry T. Allen, April 13, at the Washington Monument grounds, given upon the occasion of General Allen's retirement.

As a part of a series of exhibitions given to the public by the various organizations comprising the District of Washington, on April 25 a platoon of Troop G, commanded by First Lieutenant David A. Taylor, demonstrated a combined mounted and dismounted attack against an enemy strong point and machine-gun nest.

The monthly post hop, held April 27, was in honor of Colonel and Mrs. Hawkins and Miss Nancy Hawkins. A number of the officers stationed in Washington were on hand to welcome them.

From May 15 to 19 every one's attention was centered on the National Capital Horse Show, either as an exhibitor or as a spectator. Captain Arthur P. Thayer on *Red Wing* and *Allemande*, Captain Charles Wharton on *Careless*, and First Lieutenant M. E. Jones on *Gaylord* were winners of one or more ribbons in the individual events, the latter winning the blue and a handsome cup in the heavy-weight charger class. Second Lieutenant H. C. Hine placed fourth in the endurance ride on *Baldy*, who also placed in the open jumping class. Private Patterson, Headquarters Troop, riding; Sergeant Patton, Troop G, on *Groucho*, scored in the same event. The Army Challenge Cup was won for the fourth time by a Fort Myer team. As the cup became the permanent possession of the post last year, we now have a leg on the new cup. The team which won was composed of Major C. P. George, 16th Field Artillery, on *Morgan*; Captain Charles Wharton on *Custer*, and First Lieutenant D. W. Sawtelle on *Guisenont*.

May 19, Regimental Day, coming at the same time as the horse show, the memorial ceremony was held the following (Sunday) evening, when Chaplain W. R. Scott held a special service in the Service Club. The program consisted of an illustrated service on "The U. S. Army in Art and Story," "Third Cavalry Historic Scenes," "Army Hymns and Battle Songs," an address, "The Third Cavalry," and "Honors to the Regimental Colors."

The intertroop baseball series was won by Troop E, which is now contesting with the artillery winner for the post championship.

Track has also occupied the attention of the officers and men this spring. Two meets have been held on the post: the first, a cavalry meet, May 4, being won by Troop E with 67 points, while a week later, in the post meet, Headquarters Troop and Squadron Headquarters, combined, with 20½ points, finished third, the first two places going to the artillery.

May 26 the Fort Myer track team walked away with the District track and field championship with 68 points, while its nearest competitor, Fort Humphreys, made 47 points. Second Lieutenant F. R. Pitts, with first in the mile, second in the 880 yards, and third runner on the winning mile relay; Private Chavez, Troop E, first in the pole vault, and Private Sheppard, Troop E, first man on the relay team—were the point winners from the cavalry in this meet.

Polo has been in full swing since the middle of April, there being three full teams in action. Games are held frequently with the 1st Battalion, 16th Field Artillery, stationed at this post, and the War Department team in Washington.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

### FOURTH CAVALRY (Less First Squadron)—Fort McIntosh, Texas

Colonel Howard R. Hickok, Commanding

March 17 was Horse Show Day at Fort McIntosh. This show was one of the best held by the 4th Cavalry in many years. The 12th Cavalry contributed greatly to the success, as that regiment had entries in practically all events and carried off several prizes. In connection with the Horse Show, a polo tournament was held with the 12th Cavalry. Games were played on the 16th and 19th, with results as follows:

First game won by 12th Cavalry—score, 7 to 5.

Second game won by 4th Cavalry—score, 10 to 7.

Tournament won by 4th Cavalry—score, 15 to 14. Both games were hotly contested from start to finish and the winner of the tournament was not decided until the last stroke of the gong.

The Corps Area Commander, Major-General Lewis, inspected Fort McIntosh on April 6. General Eli Helmick, Inspector General, inspected the post on April 27.

During the months of April and May the entire time and attention of the 2d Squadron, Headquarters, and Service Troops was directed to the annual target season. The first relay of troops from Fort McIntosh completed their target practice on the 14th of May with highly satisfactory results. The second relay departed for the target range, 9 miles east of Fort McIntosh, on the 15th.

### First Squadron—Fort Sam Houston, Texas

Major Robert M. Cheney, Commanding

March 6 the following places were won in the Second Division Horse Show by members of the squadron:

Officers' Individual Jumping: Second place, Lieutenant Henry I. Hodes. Third place, Lieutenant John I. Gregg.

Enlisted Men's Individual Jumping: Second place, Sergeant Arthur Power, Troop B. Third place, Private Elvin R. Crist, Troop C.

Championship Jumping: Third place, Lieutenant Henry I. Hodes.

Saber contest, for members of squadron only:

1st. Sergeant Anthony J. Chimelewski, Troop C.

2d. Private Oscar A. Dewaele, Hq. Det.

3d. Corporal Nelson Perry, Troop B.

April 10 a formal inspection of the squadron was made by Brigadier-General Benjamin A. Poore and Lieutenant-Colonel Daniel Van Voorhis, cavalry.

The squadron participated in the "Battle of Flowers" Parade in San Antonio on April 20 and was highly commended by Brigadier-General Dennis E. Nolan, commander of the Second Division and Fort Sam Houston, for its fine appearance.

April 28 the squadron participated in a review of all troops of the Second Division and Fort Sam Houston for Major-General E. A. Helmick. The squadron was inspected by General Helmick on April 30.

April 15 to 29 the following Cavalry Reserve Officers were attached to the squadron for active duty:

Major H. B. Rhodes, Dallas, Texas.

Captain Olin Culberson, Hillsboro, Texas.

First Lieutenant Everett E. Shaw, Oklahoma City, Okla.

Second Lieutenant J. C. Driver, Dallas, Texas.

At a squadron parade on May 3 a silver loving cup was presented to Troop A for having qualified the highest percentage of men at dismounted pistol firing.

## REGIMENTAL NOTES

May 8 the squadron marched to Camp Bullis for its annual target practice. Rifle firing has been completed, with an average of 89 per cent qualified. Sergeant Weslie J. Reed, Troop B, made a total score of 336 on the record course, which beat by four points the range record held by Captain F. V. Berger, Quartermaster Corps.

### Polo

San Antonio Polo Club annual polo tournament:

April 15—Headquarters, 8th Corps Area, 22; 1st Squadron, 17 (local handicap).

April 22—15th Field Artillery, 4; 1st Squadron, 11 (without handicap).

April 25—Second Division, 12; 1st Squadron, 9 (without handicap).

Two non-tournament games, played with the 15th Field Artillery in the latter part of April, resulted in scores of 13-6, 12-4, both in our favor.

### FIFTH CAVALRY—Fort Clark, Texas

Colonel William D. Forsyth, Commanding

On May 28 Troop B returned to Fort Clark from the subpost of Camp R. E. L. Michie, at Del Rio, having been relieved by Troop C. Troop E returned to Fort Clark on May 30 from duty at the subpost of Camp Eagle Pass, having been relieved by Troop F. It has been reported that Camp R. E. L. Michie is to be abandoned, for which we are duly thankful, as it will give us one additional troop at Fort Clark.

The regiment is busily engaged mornings with target practice and in the afternoons with construction work, necessitated by the recent increase in the garrison of the Headquarters 1st Cavalry Brigade, Brigade Headquarters Troop, and the 1st Machine-Gun Squadron.

To date, four lettered troops and the two squadron detachments have completed record rifle firing and all qualified at least 80 per cent. Despite the large number of recruits received since last fall, we hope to qualify at least 80 per cent in all organizations.

Master Sergeant S. H. Middaugh, retired, who served in the regiment for twenty-seven years, is back with us again, engaged in writing the regimental history from the date of organization of the regiment to December 31, 1922. We hope to complete the work soon and to publish the history in book form.

### SIXTH CAVALRY—Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia

Colonel R. J. Fleming, Commanding

The regiment has been scattered in three different States for the summer training period—Troop C, Captain Renn Laurence commanding, being at Camp Knox, Kentucky; First Squadron, less Troop C, Captain W. G. Simmons commanding, at Fort Oglethorpe, and the regiment, less First Squadron, Lieutenant-Colonel Tompkins commanding, at Camp McClellan, Alabama.

Previous to departing for Camp McClellan, the Second Squadron, Major C. W. Foster in command, spent three weeks on the range. This time was inadequate to complete the target season, but good records were made by all troops, particularly when weather conditions, lack of sufficient time, and the number of men who fired are considered. Headquarters Troop, Captain Arthur Truxes commanding, preceded the Second Squadron on the range, completing the target season, and returning with a mark of 98 2/5 per cent qualified (one man failing to qualify) for the other troops to shoot at.

On April 24, 1923, three days after the return of the troops from the range, the three different components of the regiment bade farewell to each other for the summer, Troop

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

C departing on a ten-day march to Camp Knox, and the regiment, less the First Squadron, leaving on its march to Camp McClellan. Due to the soft condition of the animals, most of which had been on the range with insufficient exercise to place them in proper condition for such service, the progress of the regiment on the march was of necessity rather slow, an average of about 25 miles per day for the five days being made. The total distance covered en route was about 130 miles, halts being made and camps being pitched for the night at Trenton, Ga.; Allen, Ala.; Collinsville, Ala., and Glencoe, Ala. The trip was completed with animals in good condition and men in high spirits.

Prior to arrival at Camp McClellan, the regiment paraded through Anniston, Ala., where it was very popular during its stay here last summer, and was given an enthusiastic welcome, being met in the suburbs by the mayor and a special committee and escorted through the city. Colonel J. Henry Edmondson, of Anniston, honorary colonel of the regiment, and his staff also joined en route and welcomed us.

The time since arrival in camp has been spent in getting settled and in preparation for the various duties which will be required of the regiment during the training camp period. Quite a bit of fatigue and general police work has been necessary, though not so much as last year. Much of the personnel, both commissioned and enlisted, has been placed on special duty through camp headquarters. A provisional troop has been organized for demonstration and escort purposes, each troop of the Second Squadron furnishing one platoon. Captain W. G. Ingram is in command of this troop.

May 4 the regiment celebrated Regimental Day, the 62d anniversary of its organization, with a barbecue and a full holiday. After a bountiful feast on barbecued pork and beef, with all proper accessories, short but interesting talks were made by Brigadier-General Edward B. Winans, camp commander; Colonel R. J. Fleming, 6th Cavalry; present camp executive officer, Lieutenant-Colonel D. D. Tompkins, Chaplain Henry N. Blanchard, former Governor Kilby, of Anniston, and others. The barbecue was attended by many guests from the 22d and 8th Infantry Regiments, now in camp, and from Anniston and the near-by vicinity. The anniversary celebration was brought to a close by a dance in the evening, given by officers of the regiment at the Anniston Country Club. As the opening social event of the camp, it was a brilliant one, and was attended by many officers and ladies of the camp and local and out-of-town guests.

A class in equitation has been organized for the benefit of officers of the camp and civilians in the locality. Captain W. G. Ingram is the instructor for the class, which meets on three days of each week.

### SEVENTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel Walter C. Short, Commanding

April 1st to 11th, inclusive, was devoted to problems in employment of cavalry, including troop, squadron, and regimental problems.

The First Cavalry Division Horse Show was held on April 12th, 13th, and 14th. The following is a list of the 7th Cavalry winners: Class 1—Polo mounts, Captain J. A. Hettinger won first place. Class 2—Best pack-horse, Staff Sergeant Patrick J. Devine, Headquarters Troop, won first place and Corporal Jones Flagg, Headquarters Troop, won second place. Class 5—Best turned out officer's horse, Captain A. W. Roffe won third place. Class 8—Recruit class, Private P. Myrover, Troop E, won first place, and Private John Welsh, Troop G, won third place. Class 11—Officers' chargers, Major S. W. Winfree won first place. Class 14—Bending race, Captain A. W. Roffe won first place. Class 17—Best wheel draft mule, Private E. A. Rossen, Service Troop, won second place and Private F. P. Wasko, Service Troop, won third place. Class 18—Radio Section, 1st Squadron Detachment won first place and Headquarters Troop won second place. Class 21—Best cavalry

## REGIMENTAL NOTES

horse, Staff Sergeant William L. O'Brien, 2d Squadron Detachment, won first place. Class 22—Best turned out enlisted man's horse, Staff Sergeant Patrick J. Devine, Headquarters Troop, won first place and Sergeant R. L. Church, Headquarters Troop, won second place. Class 26—Automatic rifle horse, Corporal W. C. Schaefer, Troop C, won first and Private Harlow, Troop G, won second place. Class 27—Enlisted men's mount, Sergeant G. B. Lewis, Troop G, won first place. Class 31—Championship jumper, Captain A. W. Roffe won first place. Class 33—Horses suitable to become polo mounts, Captain J. A. Hettinger won first place. Class 35—Best turned out band trooper, Corporal J. A. Caffot won first, Private Joe Rosillo won second, and Private F. C. Hill won third, all of Service Troop.

April 15 preliminary rifle practice and dismounted pistol instruction was taken up, and on May 5th the 2d Squadron and one-half of the Headquarters and Service Troops marched to Dona Anna target range, 28 miles north of Fort Bliss, for range practice. Rifle record practice was completed by these troops on June 2d, 12 officers and 245 enlisted men firing the course, all officers and 240 enlisted men qualifying. A total of over 98 per cent qualified. The First Squadron and remainder of the Headquarters and Service Troops departed for Dona Anna target range on June 8th and expect to beat the record made by the 2d Squadron. Should they be successful, the total percentage for the regiment will establish a new record for the cavalry in qualification attained in rifle practice.

### NINTH CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas

Major Joseph F. Richmond, Commanding

The baseball season opened auspiciously on May 1 with a parade of the baseball teams of the 2d and 9th Cavalry, led by the bands of both regiments, and a very successful season is now in progress.

The Inspector General paid us a visit last month and found the regiment in excellent shape. The Chief of Cavalry inspected the troops and remained for dinner with the regiment on May 28 and expressed himself as well pleased with the condition of the regiment.

The painting and calcimining of the troop barracks was completed last month, and now the regimental carpenters are rebuilding the porches and stairways and repairing the floors. The paint squad has moved out to Rileyville, and First Sergeant William Smith's spotless town is getting a new coat of Montgomery, Ward and Company's paint. The general effect is excellent.

Staff Sergeant William Harris, Staff Sergeant Richard W. Peters, and Sergeant Henry Moore were retired on May 26th and June 4th respectively, with appropriate ceremony, followed by a reception and dance in their honor at the 9th Cavalry Club, with refreshments from the regimental mess.

The night of June 1 the Cavalry School dinner was served at the 9th Cavalry mess, with the Chief of Cavalry as the guest of honor. Covers were laid for three hundred guests, including fifty business men from Junction City. The 9th Cavalry band furnished the music.

Memorial Day was fittingly observed with services in the cemetery and at the 9th Cavalry Club.

Applications for enlistment continue to come in from all sections of the country, but, due to overstrength, at present none can be accepted.

Target practice for the regiment began June 6. Captains W. R. Stickman and Frank C. De Langton, Sergeant Cleveland Morrow, Troop "G," Private Hubert Wiley, Headquarters and Service Troop, and Private, First Class, Thomas Hawker, Troop "A," left on May 31 for Des Moines, to represent the regiment at the rifle competition there.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

### TENTH CAVALRY—Fort Huachuca, Arizona

Lieutenant-Colonel Hu B. Myers, Commanding

In March Major-General Edward M. Lewis, commanding the 8th Corps Area, inspected the post and regiment. The following month the regiment was inspected by Major-General Eli Helmick, the Inspector General.

Much work has been done by the regiment during the past few months in improving the buildings and grounds of the post. The summer training camps that are impending demanded considerable construction. Lumber for these improvements was salvaged from condemned buildings at Camp Jones, at Douglas, and hauled to the post by wagon train. In spite of this necessary work, preliminary instruction in rifle practice has been carried on and a group of the 1st Squadron has already completed the record course. Much time has also been devoted to try-outs for the Cavalry and Corps Area rifle and pistol teams, and from the scores made it is thought the regiment will be able at least to be strong contenders for the Corps Area rifle and pistol trophies.

### TWELFTH CAVALRY—Fort Brown, Fort Ringgold, and Sam Fordyce, Texas

Colonel Sedgwick Rice, Commanding

The regiment completed its saber and pistol practice during the past quarter with satisfactory results, qualifying in saber practice every officer and man armed with the saber, except five. However, an additional sixty-five men, authorized but not required to run the course, also qualified, making a total of 406 qualifications, divided as follows: expert, 40; excellent, 165; swordsman, 201.

In the mounted pistol course, 409 officers and men qualified and only two were disqualified. Of the 99½ per cent who qualified, there were 446 experts, 10 sharpshooters, and 7 marksmen.

The regiment made an excellent record in dismounted pistol practice, qualifying 90 per cent of its officers and men. Headquarters and Service Troops and the First Squadron qualified 97.91 per cent of the personnel of these five troops. The regimental qualifications included the following: expert, 128; sharpshooter, 171; marksman, 138.

Captains Oron A. Palmer, Herman F. Rathjen, and John P. Scott, First Sergeant August C. Hendricks, and Sergeants Selmer Gustaves and Edward Yeszowski have gone to Des Moines to engage in the cavalry tryout for the national match. The regiment's representatives in the Corps Area pistol, rifle, and automatic rifle competition leave on June 9 to participate in that event.

The 1st Squadron and the band, together with all officers of the regiment stationed at Fort Brown, assisted the Brownsville post of the American Legion in the observance of Memorial Day. The troops and members of the Legion marched from the post to the cemetery, where a short program was conducted by the Legion. A small detachment was sent to Mercedes to assist the American Legion post at that place in its observance of the day.

### THIRTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming

Colonel Roy B. Harper, Commanding

The first of a series of regimental dinners was held at the Regimental Club February 28, with 100 per cent attendance. An excellent dinner was served, followed by cards and dancing. Music was furnished throughout the evening by the regimental orchestra.

March 28 the Regimental Commander was the host at the dinner, the same program prevailing. The excellent attendance indicates the popularity of these affairs and gives promise of their becoming a fixture in the affairs of the regiment.

On March 24 a gymkhana, which was open to civilians from Cheyenne, as well as to the personnel of the post, was held in the post riding hall. The committee in charge

## REGIMENTAL NOTES

had spared no pains to make the show a success, and as a result the large attendance of members of the garrison and civilians went away highly pleased.

Following is a list of events, with the winners:

*Enlisted Men's Jumping Class*—Master Sergeant James A. Grady, 13th Cavalry.

*Officers' Charger Class*—Captain Frank L. Whittaker, 13th Cavalry.

*Best Lady Rider*—Mrs. Walter H. Niel.

*Novice Jumping Class*—First Lieutenant Theo. E. Voigt, 13th Cavalry.

*Musical Chair Race*—Private Gerald Capes, Troop E, 13th Cavalry.

*Best Artillery Gun Team*—2d Platoon, Battery C, 76th Field Artillery.

*Free for All High Jump*—Captain Frank L. Whittaker, 13th Cavalry.

*Best Four-line Team*—76th Field Artillery.

*Harnessing Race, Four-line Team*—13th Cavalry.

Three officers of the regiment are contemplating entering horses in the Colorado Endurance Ride, to be held at Colorado Springs during August, 1923. This ride is conducted along the same lines as the Eastern Endurance Ride, and gives the officers who are unable to make the trip East an opportunity to compare their horses with those that are entered in the eastern event.

Captain Herbert E. Watkins will enter his thoroughbred *Norfolk Star*, which won the event last year. Captain Donald S. Perry will enter his half thoroughbred, *Commodore*, a very good type for the test, and Lieutenant Theodore E. Voigt will enter a Government-owned three-fourths thoroughbred, *Boise*. This latter horse won the officers' charger class at the Western National Horse Show at Denver, Colo., this year, and should give a creditable performance in the endurance ride. These officers have started work on their mounts with a view to having them in the best possible condition for the event.

Target practice began May 1 and is progressing well.

Troop G marched, about June 1, to Fort Douglas, Utah, to be present for the summer training camp to be held there during July and August.

National Commander Owsley, of the American Legion, was the guest of the two posts of the legion in Cheyenne, May 26 and 27. The regiment took part in his entertainment.

### FOURTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort Des Moines, Iowa

Colonel H. La T. Cavanaugh, Commanding

Preliminary instruction for annual target practice began on April 1 and continued throughout the month. The troops went on the target range on May 1 and were engaged in practice in rifle marksmanship from that date until June 1. This part of the work has been progressing very satisfactorily and the organizations have shown good results from the preliminary instruction. The 2d Squadron has nearly completed its record practice and to date has qualified 100 per cent.

Major-General Holbrook, Chief of Cavalry, visited the post on May 20 and 21. He inspected the troops in the barracks and received a review. Following the review a tactical exercise was held, demonstrating several fundamental principles of the use of cavalry. On Sunday afternoon, May 20, a polo game was played on the post polo field, after which Colonel and Mrs. Cavanaugh entertained the officers and their families and a number of civilian visitors at a tea given for General Holbrook. During his visit here the Chief of Cavalry was entertained at a luncheon in Des Moines given by the Greater Des Moines Committee, after which he addressed the gathering upon the subject "Preparedness." His talk was well received and filled with interest for all who heard him.

Following the visit of the Chief of Cavalry we were visited by Lieutenant-Colonel George E. Goodrich, Inspector General for the 7th Corps Area, who made the annual inspection of the post and command.



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

On Memorial Day the 2d Squadron, Major Rush commanding, paraded in the city of Des Moines. Colonel Cavanaugh commanded the 1st Division of the Memorial Day parade on this occasion. The appearance of the troops was excellent and they made a most creditable showing in every way.

As these notes are being forwarded, the members of the cavalry rifle and pistol team are beginning to arrive. Lieutenant-Colonel Alexander H. Davidson, recently assigned to the 14th Cavalry, has arrived and again will have complete charge of the work of the team here this summer as he did last.

Rivalry in the post baseball league is very keen and every team is fighting hard for its "place in the sun."

### TWENTY-SIXTH (SCOUT) CAVALRY—Camp Stotsenburg, Pampanga, P. I.

We have organized an athletic council to serve in an advisory capacity on all proper matters. That has made work more satisfactory. It is not so necessary to experiment in field meets to find out what is a pleasant variation.

We keep a plan worked out for several months in advance. This is controlled in its chief characteristics by a department order prescribing certain contests at definite times and providing for a field and track meet nearly every month. Each month we publish a particular program for the next meet long enough ahead of time to give every one ample time to train. We also get out a dope sheet for the meet coming six or eight weeks in the future. This has brought gratifying remarks from members of the command. As no successive meets are alike and no two meets exactly alike, we hear such pleasing remarks as: "How soon are you going to have another — event?" One might think that a cavalry post would have at every show an officers' performance jump, but we put an event under that name in our program only about once in three months. Last month it was Officers' Pairs (6 at 3 feet and 3 feet 6) and four 4-foot jumps. This month it was a five-barred broad jump. Next time it will probably be five miles and six hard jumps, for speed, performance, and condition.

Our April meet is a two-day affair featuring the Pentathlon. Hereafter it will also feature the annual Polo Pony Show, the first of which was held this morning.

The program for this included conformation; speed, straightaway; driving the ball for distance on one stroke; carrying the ball, up and back; running and turning, four fifty-yard laps; driving for accuracy, 80 yards to a goal (I believe this should have been 60 yards); and bending. There was a cup on each event and a trophy for the winning regiment, all of which were provided by business houses.

In order to keep things moving and have something doing all the time, a series of interludes was arranged. These were run off more or less in between the events of the Pony Show. They included the broad jumping, ladies' jumping, non-commissioned officers' galting and platoon demonstrations, both in military exhibitions and mass athletics.

This morning's events gave the cavalry a chance to clean up. In the Polo Pony Show, Captain Delmore Wood brought us home four cups and Captain Norman Waldron another one, one artillery officer, Lieutenant H. D. Reed, taking the two remaining cups. Two cavalry girls took second and third in the ladies' jumping, Lieutenant Fidel Segundo, P. S., 26th Cavalry, won the broad jump, making 24 feet, and cavalymen took second and third in the galting.

We are all as pleased as can be with the way the new regiment is turning out. None of us were very enthusiastic last summer, before the change was made. A month after we started working on the scouts the views concerning the venture were obviously changing. Ever since that time officers have been acquiring more and more enthusiasm for the Regiment of Scout Cavalry. It has been complimented by various commanding officers—post, division, and department—and by other visiting officers.



R. O. T. C. HORSE SHOW AT MASSACHUSETTS AGRICULTURAL COLLEGE, AMHERST, MASS., MAY 5

# FORTY YEARS OF WISCONSIN CAVALRY



Oconomowoc, Wis. 1886



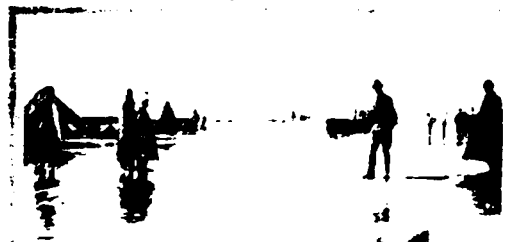
Camp Douglas, Wis. 1907



Camp Douglas 1908  
*find two future Colonels*



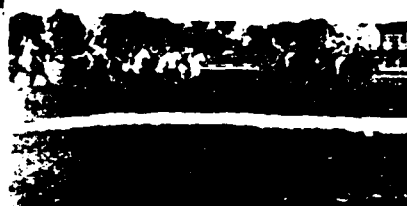
Fort Sheridan, Ill. 1915



Mexican Border 1916



France 1918



Milwaukee, Wis.  
1922

## National Guard



105th CAVALRY COAT OF ARMS

### WISCONSIN CAVALRY

THE Wisconsin Cavalry is a focal point of National Guard interest, and, in view of the large part which the guard plays in the National Defense Plan, it deserves the attention of the whole Army of the United States and all citizens who are supporters of their army. Early in the spring the lower branch of the Wisconsin State Legislature, by a vote of 64 to 14, abolished the National Guard in that State.

The answer of the Wisconsin cavalymen, sturdy upholders of a State sovereignty that these neosolons would pervert into a futile mockery of paper pretension based on half-baked hopes and puerile speculations, like a clear trumpet note, unhesitating, was:

"The true cavalryman will stick to his outfit through these troublous times as in others. With our heads up and our heels down, we'll attend to our horses and our soldiering." This was the answer published in the last number of the Badger Trooper, an excellent service paper, which has just discontinued publication.

The Governor and a fine lot of people, with sound heads and true hearts, came out solidly in opposition to this radical measure, and the bill was killed in the State.

This bucketful of cold water received by the cavalymen of Wisconsin has not diminished their ardor one whit, and, even though it seems likely that the work of the State troops will be handicapped by inadequate appropriations, they intend to "carry on." In view of these unusual circumstances, the CAVALRY JOURNAL invites attention specially to the splendid activities of the 105th Cavalry.

### 105TH CAVALRY GETS NEW COAT OF ARMS

The recently approved coat of arms of the 105th Cavalry displays the traditional Wisconsin badger perched "couchant" upon a "wreath" or twist of the colors, gold and blue, the latter commemorating the fact that Wisconsin was a part of the Louisiana Purchase from imperial France.

Following is an extract from the letter of the Secretary of War officially awarding and describing the arms:

"1. The Secretary of War approves the following coat of arms for this regiment:

"**Crest**—That for a regiment of the Wisconsin National Guard: On a wreath or and azure a badger couchant proper.

"**Shield**—Per pale or and gules, two chevrons counterchanged; in dexter chief a horse's head erased, within an annulet sable.

"**Motto**—Follow me.

"**Name**—105th—1st Wisconsin—Cavalry.

"2. **Description**—Light Horse Squadron, organized in 1880. Redesignated Troop 'A,' 1st Wisconsin Cavalry, 1880. Troop 'B' added, 1916. Both troops mustered into Federal service and served on border in 1916 and spring of 1917. First Regiment, Wisconsin Cavalry, organized and drafted into Federal service July, 1917. Converted into 120th Field Artillery September, 1917. Served on four fronts with 32d Division in France. Decorated with Croix de Guerre by French Government. Reorganization as 1st Cavalry, Wisconsin National Guard, started in August, 1919, and completed early in 1920. Redesignated as the 105th Cavalry, Wisconsin National Guard, April 1, 1921.

"Yellow (or) for the Cavalry Service, impaled with the scarlet for the regiment's conversion into field artillery during the World War. The two chevrons, represent the two chevrons of a year's overseas service. The ringed horse's-head device is that of the Light Horse Squadron, organized in Milwaukee in 1880, in which the regiment had its origin. The motto, 'Follow Me,' is the keynote of modern cavalry tactics."

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

In use, the new regimental coat of arms will take the place of the U. S. arms on the regimental standard, and its gold and red colors will show up most effectively against the yellow silk of the banner. The shield design itself will be placed on the breast of the eagle and the motto, "Follow Me," will appear on the ribbon shown in the eagle's beak. Above the eagle will be the badger crest, instead of the U. S. cluster of stars. On the scroll under the eagle will appear "One Hundred Fifth—1st Wisconsin—Cavalry."

### WHAT A GUARD CAVALRY REGIMENT CAN DO

#### The 105th Cavalry, Wisconsin National Guard

The 105th Cavalry, Wisconsin National Guard, is making for itself an enviable record in all phases of its training. In the recent indoor competitions held throughout the military services, under the auspices of the National Rifle Association, the team representing the 105th Cavalry, picked from only three of its troops, made the remarkable record of placing sixth among the various regular-service regiments that competed in this match. Considering that the 105th was the only cavalry regiment to enter this match, and that indoor competitions and competitions of any sort with fire-arms had never been entered into by any one of the members representing the regiment, this is indeed a remarkable record. This enthusiasm toward shooting does not extend only to the favored few who were lucky enough to make the regimental team, but the entire organization is imbued with the desire to become first-class marksmen. As a good example of this enthusiasm and spirit of competition, there were 26 entrants in the national individual indoor rifle competition from the three troops stationed at Milwaukee. Furthermore, the selection of team members to represent the regiment was based solely on performance of the individual.

Leading up to the regimental match, each troop stationed in Milwaukee (A, B, and Headquarters) entered teams in the company team match open to all companies throughout all the services. Headquarters Troop won the regimental championship and placed sixth among the other services in the final standing. Again, considering that every man on this team was new to competition shooting and the majority of them shooting the rifle for the first season, this makes a record that is hard to beat anywhere. This keen inter-individual and inter-troop competition was instrumental in developing a team that defeated the Century Rifle Club of Milwaukee, composed of old National Competition shots, in two of its three shoots. This team further defeated the Neenah, Wis., team, considered the best in the State, in two straight meets. Nor is the regiment dependent upon a few good shots to uphold its record in shooting. As a matter of fact, it is very difficult to pick a team from the score or more excellent shots, and no team has had the same personnel on it throughout the dozen matches fired in this season.

Nor does the regiment base its efficiency alone on rifle shooting. Each troop has a platoon composed of the men who are able to devote more than the ordinary number of hours to drills and exercises. These platoons are made into the crack drill platoons of the respective troops. In a recent competition between the platoons of troops at Milwaukee, Troop A won with an exhibition of dismounted drill, close order, including the manual of arms, that is seldom equaled or beaten by any troops. The precision of the movements, alignment, distances and intervals, appearance and neatness, were faultless. This same platoon performed for the Inspector General recently, after the troop had undergone an inspection that would have been a credit to any organization. He rated this organization one of the finest in its performance he had ever witnessed. Now that the mounted season has opened, each organization has organized mounted drill platoons for further work of the same nature mounted. To foster and encourage these organizations, the Regimental Commander, Colonel J. J. Quill, has caused to be issued the following memo:

## NATIONAL GUARD

### Subject: Annual Platoon Competition and Field Officers' Cup

1. The field officers of this regiment are offering a trophy, to be known as the "Field Officers' Cup," which is to be awarded annually, at camp, to the troop of the 105th Cavalry winning the competition platoon drill.

2. The cup will be brought to camp annually and competed for until won three years in succession by the same troop.

3. In order that preparation for the contest may be uniform, the attached program, prepared by Captain A. N. Norton, Cavalry, U. S. A., is published in advance as the official program for the 1923 competition. It will be noted that dismounted and mounted subjects are valued at 40 per cent and 60 per cent, respectively. All subjects will be based on latest training regulations, and any question of interpretation of these regulations required in advance may be secured from Captain Norton, in writing. The latter will make a file of these decisions, available to the judges.

4. The judges will be selected from without the regiment, if possible.

5. The contest is open to all troops, including Service and Headquarters Troops. No more than one platoon per troop may be entered. A platoon will consist of not less than 24 men or more than 32 men in ranks, with not less than two file-closers in addition.

### Program of Platoon—Competition Drill—1923

#### DISMOUNTED DRILL

Appearance, uniforms, and condition of arms—value, 5

#### DISMOUNTED DRILL, CLOSE ORDER

Value, 15

- |                                    |                                  |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Form platoon.                   | 11. By the right and left flank. |
| 2. Column of fours.                | 12. To the rear (twice).         |
| 3. Column of twos.                 | 13. Line.                        |
| 4. Column of troopers.             | 14. Platoon, right turn.         |
| 5. Column of fours (platoon halt). | 15. Platoon, left turn.          |
| 6. Column right.                   | 16. Double time, quick time.     |
| 7. Column left.                    | 17. Double rank.                 |
| 8. Troopers left oblique.          | 18. Line.                        |
| 9. Troopers right oblique.         | 19. Stack arms, take arms.       |
| 10. In place, halt.                |                                  |

#### MANUAL OF ARMS, ETC.

Value, 5

#### DISMOUNTED DRILL, EXTENDED ORDER

Value, 15

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Take distance.                        | 5. Squads in line, 40 yards, interval, double time. |
| 2. Assemble.                             | 6. Line of squad columns, 40 yards' interval.       |
| 3. Take intervals to the left, assemble. | 7. Halt, kneel, lie down, rise.                     |
| 4. Squads in line, 10 yards, distance.   | 8. As skirmishers.                                  |

### The following to be given by signals only:

- |  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| 1. Down.   | 6. Increase range 100 yards.   |
| 2. Range (select any convenient range).  | 7. Fire faster.                |
| 3. Are you ready?  | 8. Rise, to the rear.          |
| 4. Commence firing.  | 9. Line of squad columns.      |
| 5. What range are you using? (To be signaled to each squad leader, who will in turn reply, by signal, the range in use.) | 10. Assemble, column of fours. |

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

### Mounted Drill, Close Order

#### GENERAL APPEARANCE OF MEN AND ANIMALS, CARE AND ADJUSTMENT OF EQUIPMENT

Value, 10

#### CLOSE ORDER DRILL

Value, 30

NOTE.—Arm and whistle signals will be used in all movements after which "sig." is placed; otherwise oral commands will be used.

- |                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| 1. Form platoon.          | 10. Column of twos. sig.                   |
| 2. Prepare to mount. sig. | 11. Column of fours. sig.                  |
| 3. Mount. sig.            | 12. Troopers right and left oblique. sig.  |
| 4. Form rank.             | 13. Fours right, left and left about. sig. |
| 5. Column of fours. sig.  | 14. Line. sig.                             |
| 6. Trot. sig.             | 15. Double rank.                           |
| 7. Line. sig.             | 16. Column of troopers. sig.               |
| 8. Right turn. sig.       | 17. Line, halt. sig.                       |
| 9. Left turn. sig.        |  |

Repeat above with sabers at carry.

#### MOUNTED DRILL, EXTENDED ORDER

Value, 20

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Form platoon, mounted.                   | 10. Squads assemble in line. sig.        |
| 2. Forward march. sig.                      | 11. Assemble in column of fours. sig.    |
| 3. Squads extended (40-yard interval). sig. | 12. To fight on foot, action right. sig. |
| 4. Line of squad columns. sig.              | 13. Horses back. sig.                    |
| 5. To the rear. sig.                        | 14. Bring up led horses. sig.            |
| 6. Trot. sig.                               | 15. Mount.                               |
| 7. To the rear. sig.                        | 16. Disperse by squads.                  |
| 8. As foragers. sig.                        | 17. Assemble in line. sig.               |
| 9. By the left and right flank. sig.        | 18. Halt. sig.                           |
|   | 19. Draw saber.                          |

Repeat above with sabers at carry.

1. Saber manual and exercises. Time limit, 5 minutes.
2. Assemble.
3. Return saber.
4. Raise pistol.
5. Conduct platoon to favorable distance, by successive increases of gaits execute a short (50 yards) charge with pistol.
6. Rally, count fours, fours left about, return pistol, draw saber, and execute a like charge back over same ground with saber, and retire in column of fours.

It will be noted that all movements are based strictly on the regulations, and that no trick or show movements are included. Great interest is already being displayed by these organizations and many inquiries are being received relative thereto.

Specialists' schools are being conducted along a systematized course. Twice weekly, in addition to the regular drill periods, sketching and scouting classes are being conducted for the intelligence sections of the Headquarters Troop and Squadron Detachments. Remarkable progress is being made and excellent sketches are being turned in.

The officers are imbued with the spirit of progress. Throughout the long winter months map problems and war games have been the subjects of discussion. Almost all conceivable situations wherein cavalry may act have been used as bases for map problems and war games. Some rare flashes of leadership and cavalry tactics have been displayed at nearly all the games. One game in particular, after having run four weeks (attack and defense of a convoy), was completed at 2 a. m. and was the subject of discussion many days thereafter.

## NATIONAL GUARD

Beginning with May 1, the outdoor class for officers began with equitation, saber and pistol exercises, and, best loved of all, polo. The various officers have succeeded in whipping into very good shape quite a string of the public horses and have developed a fairly fast string of good polo mounts. Every Saturday afternoon and Sunday is occupied by the officers in polo, and the enlisted men, under an officer, go for long road rides.

The officers, about 25 in number, have organized a club with a percentage of all federal pay received as dues therein. The purpose of the club is to promote all social and unofficial relations of the officers of the regiment and provide the necessary funds for all social functions, athletic expenses, and other expenses that could properly be charged to the club.

A large number of the officers of the regiment and about twenty enlisted men are pursuing the standard instruction contained in the army correspondence courses and very good progress and grades are being attained.

Given six weeks in which to harden both men and animals, it is believed that this regiment would be able to take the field and render first-class service under all conditions.

### ESSEX TROOP HORSE SHOW

The third annual horse show of The New Jersey Cavalry Horse Show Association was held at the Armory, in Newark, N. J., on May 4 and 5. It was very successful, both in respect to the number of excellent entries and also from the social point of view. The show has become an institution now and is looked forward to each year with a great deal of interest by horse lovers in New Jersey and New York. A show ring was built in the center of the riding hall, which was gaily decorated with flags and bunting. A broad promenade surrounded the ring, and along one side stretched forty boxes, which became the rendezvous of New Jersey society. The show was preceded by a dinner of The New Jersey Cavalry Horse Show Association in the grill, which the Governor and numerous civil and military dignitaries of the State attended. The army was also represented by officers from the New York National Guard, Governors Island, and Fort Hamilton.

The saddle classes and jumping events were distributed proportionately over Friday and Saturday nights, while Saturday afternoon was devoted mainly to the children's classes, harness entrants, and several military events. The civilian classes were unusually good, the close competition causing the judges no little difficulty to pick the ribbons. In the jumps the field was led by *Sandy* and *Black Watch*, owned by Michael J. Devaney, of Brooklyn, and *Going Up*, owned by Fred Wettach, of Elberon, which horses clearly outclassed anything else in the show. The competition in the military events narrowed down mainly to a regimental affair, with a sprinkling of horses from the First Division, Fort Hamilton, and 110th Field Artillery.

Three performances were given—Friday night, Saturday afternoon, and Saturday night—and they were all well attended. The boxes and reserve seats were sold out early and the promenade was well filled. The New Jersey Cavalry Horse Show Association feels that in its annual horse show it has established a rather high mark at which to shoot, and that it has stimulated and revitalized in New Jersey a waning interest in the horse.

### PRIZE FOR NEW SUBSCRIPTIONS

To every member of the Cavalry Association who sends in before September 1 two new paid-up subscriptions to the *CAVALRY JOURNAL* will be sent a copy of Dennison's *History of Cavalry*.

# The Organized Reserves

## NOTES OF THE SIXTY-THIRD CAVALRY DIVISION

Lieutenant-Colonel Henry Dickinson, Cav., T. N. G.

And they sound the "Boots and Saddles,"  
Then we mount up and away.—*Fiddlers' Green.*

Those of you who had sense enough first to "jine the cavalry" and then had old Dame Fortune smile on you through the War Department, and took advantage of "I. Authority has been obtained to train a limited number of reserve officers of the 63d Cavalry Division, in various grades (with their consent), April 1st to 15th, inclusive, at government expense," will never live to regret it.

There were eighteen fortunates who were met by Acting Adjutant L. D. Carter, on Sunday, April 1, 1923, at Fort Oglethorpe, Ga., where the Old Sixth Regulars hold the Fort in a regular way. They were all men of the South: Colonel Fair, of the Old North State; Major Collett, from the State where they sing, "There is nothing finer than a day in Carolina," and believe it; Major Wilson, Captain Dickinson, and First Lieutenant Garmony, from the Volunteer State; Captains Williams and Doyle and Lieutenant Hilbert, from New Orleans, with the "Sky Pilot," Captain Chaplain Tucker, from Baton Rouge, and all the rest; Captains H. R. Dyer and Wideman, First Lieutenants Cockrell and Ballard and Second Lieutenants Alley and Samuel Allen Marshall, late of the V. M. I., from Florida, because they said it was a nice place to go back to when they had dried out "up Nawth"; then First Lieutenant Mott, of the "Delta, Sir." The "Delta" seems to be somewhere in Mississippi.

We were all assigned quarters in the Officers' Club, on the south side of the parade ground, nice, roomy quarters, with never more than three of us to each bath-room.

At our first meal, Sunday, April 1, the reserve officers began to get acquainted. Any one with half an eye could easily see that we were all pleased with everything up to that time and were looking forward to a most delightful and beneficial schooling for the ensuing two weeks.

Sunday afternoon the officers of the 6th had a polo game. Polo, to one who has watched it, is an intense pleasure; to one who has never seen a game, it is a revelation. Age and rank in a polo game? Nosuchadamthing. The game was played in a slashing, dashing cavalry style. The non-coms were betting that Captain Wilkie Burt would have an accident, and he did. Horse and rider rolled over in the middle of the field; but both arose and shook themselves, the noble steed got under the dashing captain, and the game went on as if nothing had happened; and nothing had, for usually Burt bursts bones. Oh! what shall I say, beautifully? That is the word. Well, one side beat the other, that was sure, and I found out afterwards that Lieutenant-Colonel Tompkins' Irish Nightingales had beaten the Baltimore Griddles—at least they wore yellow rompers, and were captained, very ably too, by Major Kimball. You see, they elect the lieutenant-colonels and majors captains, but that's where rank stops, because I overheard the Colonel tell the Major while in a race after the ball, "The ball is mine, and would the Major please desist from hitting it" (well, that's what he meant, even if he didn't use those exact words), and the Major's reply had the effect of making me know that I was back in the army, for it was couched in the same polite language and informed the Colonel that he would handle the ball, while the Colonel was ordering ice drinks and cold towels elsewhere.

By the end of that polo game we were "home again and happy." Later, supper and an evening to while away as we pleased. I had the good fortune that night of finding

## THE ORGANIZED RESERVES

the commanding officer, Colonel Fleming, at home. During that short call all my doubts, if I had had any, were dispelled and I knew that we reserve officers had been accepted as brothers in arms with the regulars, and that's some feeling, if you know what I mean. Courtesy without condescension will do more to raise and hold an officer's morale than anything else.

Our real training began Monday morning at 7 o'clock. All the officers of the regiment and the reserve officers were present. After a short address of welcome by the commanding officer, the school was turned over to Captain Halstead, to conduct us through the intricacies of the automatic pistol, the service rifle, and the new machine rifle. Captain Halstead is human, and from the very beginning of his demonstration all of us realized that Kipling's words, "Don't call your martin a cross-eyed old bitch, for she's human as you are, and you treat her as sitch," are words of great depth and meaning. We began to learn and enjoy learning right there, and not for one instant did we cease either learning or enjoying it. Followed arms and equipment, the school of the trooper, by Lieutenant Shirley; ride, stables, officers' meeting, care of the horse, musketry, by Captain Simmons; estimate of the situation and small problem mounted, by Captain Lawrence. Tuesday, the school of the trooper and squad, ride, and stables. In the morning. Tuesday afternoon, a little more advanced, the same as Monday. Plenty of riding on nice, gentle old troop horses, my orderly always to the contrary notwithstanding.

Wednesday, guard duty, school of the platoon, and officers' meeting. Afternoon, nothing doing and nothing done. Thursday began with something new to most of us, cavalry weapons, and the day continued with small problems, but always well considered advances in all the subjects, with "composing orders" during the afternoon. There's where we met some new army diplomacy. Captain Simmons corrected just one order, and then, with a benign smile, "Gentlemen, just pass your orders to the one on your left and correct each other's." We never heard of that lot of orders again. Many good officers have been shot for composing a better order than mine was.

Friday brought something new—military courts and discipline, troop messing, and history and origin of cavalry, all interesting subjects, well taught by Captains Wadleton, Lawrence, and Shell. Do not think, dear reader, we were allowed to forget what we had learned, because we were not. Neither were we allowed to forget our old troop horses, gentle though they were. It had been suggested that "Allen's Foot Ease" was also good for what ailed us.

Saturday came and was our big day. It was the first day that some of us had ever participated in a cavalry parade, inspection, and review. Of course, one can give only his own impressions on such a day. Some of us had a troop, some a platoon, and some a squad. Each had the rightful commander of that unit at his left hand, and it made me feel like Horatius at the bridge when he saw Lars Porsena in the offing and heard those kind words, "I will stand at thy left hand." But even that didn't do my morals much good when I found I had a new horse. Now naturally, being of a retiring and timid temperament, I made inquiries. Says I to orderly, "Is he gentle?" Says orderly, "No, sir. I asked Sergeant Williams not to send this 'un, 'cause when that empty scabbard rattles, he'll buck, sir; and when he bucks, sir, you had better hold the scabbard away from his flanks."

X—  
Field Orders  
No. 15.

TROOP C, 6TH CAV.,  
FORT OGLETHORPE, GA.,  
7 Apr., '23, 9 a. m.

1. Enemy located directly south our position . . . consisting one bucking polo pony, with evil disposition. Our troops consisting one large body infantry with two legs and two hands.

2. Place our body directly over enemy, flanking him to right and left. Establish close contact and hold position as long as possible.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

3. Grasp reins in right hand, placing hand on pommel of saddle. Place left foot in stirrup, assisting with left hand, if necessary; grasp mane with left hand; if none, grab neck. Mount slowly, throwing right leg to offside enemy without kicking enemy. Sit down gently (if enemy permits). While enemy stands still, probably gently chewing a straw, change reins to left hand. With right hand reach entirely around your main body and the enemy's left torso, draw saber from somewhere out of sight, near enemy's left flank. Enemy still standing gently chewing straw—maybe.

X.—When enemy bucks hold empty scabbard away from enemy's flanks. Be prepared at all times, standing, at walk, trot, or canter. Give necessary orders to troop to salute reviewing officer, always keeping close contact with the enemy.

4. Hospital train will follow close in rear.

5. Send messages collect to wife.

Distribution

All over the 2" map.

DICKINSON,

Captain.

There was one good thing the orderly's confidence did me. I didn't have any buck fever about that review. I never expected to get that far. The parade, review, and inspection went off according to schedule, with Lieutenant-Colonel Fair as reviewing officer and Major Collett commanding the squadron. One could easily persuade oneself that a general was reviewing his crack regiment. The regulars, both officers and men of the 6th, would not allow a few reserve officers to throw them off. Here let me compliment the reserve officers, because I heard the Colonel tell almost all of them that they acquitted themselves like regulars.

Saturday afternoon we were off duty, so that some of us availed ourselves of this opportunity to accept the hospitality of the Polo Association and knock the ball around. This was thoroughly enjoyable, as all the ponies were well trained and it was pleasure to practice on them.

Sunday, led by Colonel Fleming, we had a cross-country ride that was enjoyed by every one but the chaplain. We got in too late to listen to (as I heard afterwards it was) a most pleasing and elevating sermon. Monday began an altogether different thing, viz: Captain Lawrence commanding; column of twos; walk, trot, and lead; trot, walk, and lead, 14 miles to Catoosa Springs, for pistol and rifle marksmanship. Finally we got there, high in spirits if sore in body. At Catoosa we found the second squadron of the 6th, Major Charles W. Foster, commanding. On the following Thursday they were to begin firing for record. We had all the time before that to learn how, practice, and Thursday, fire for record. Imagine yourself as I was, a former air service officer, who had not fired a Springfield since 1917, getting ready to shoot for record in two days. Captain Lawrence and his able assistant, Lieutenant Reybold, had patience, and they could demonstrate, and they made us practice, and you would be surprised how well we learned and how often some of us hit the bull's-eye.

Thursday dawned a beautiful day and all of us merrily hied to the range. First 600 yards, then 500 yards, then 300 yards, most of us rolling up fine scores; then rain and more rain; back to barrack, dinner, and more rain. At 3, horses and rain, at 3:01 p. m. mounted, wet saddles, and rain. At 3:12, trot and rain. Back to Fort Oglethorpe, representing a squadron; must get there at 4:56 p. m. same day. What pace should be set? Trot. Yes; we trotted and the heavens wept on all of us and for some of us, I hope, but Captain Lawrence got us there on time.

We enjoyed Catoosa and I learned a lot, and, what is better, we learned from a good teacher, so that I feel that we can return to our outfits at home and teach them.

Friday we had lectures on riot duty by Lieutenant Fletcher, squadron drill, troop administration, and history of the 6th Cavalry. All very interesting and instructive; so instructive that since my return from the camp I have successfully passed an examination for major of cavalry, Tennessee National Guard, and it is safe to say that I could not have touched it if I had not had the two fine weeks at Oglethorpe.

## THE ORGANIZED RESERVES

The saddest words we heard there were that the horse show and polo games for the next day and Sunday had been called off on account of rain. That meant that we were through Saturday noon, April 14.

We found the officers of the 6th Cavalry, from the commanding officer down through the second lieutenants, as fine gentlemen, as hard workers in the interest of our government, and as conscientious in the performance of their duty as any body of men, no matter how selected, that could be found in this or any other country; and for the reserve officers who attended the School at Fort Oglethorpe I wish to take this opportunity of thanking the commanding officer, Colonel Fleming, and Lieutenant-Colonel Tompkins, and all the rest of those officers of the 6th for the helpful and intelligent manner in which they taught us and the pleasant time they gave us.

## THE 305TH CAVALRY

The following officers of the 305th Cavalry made entries in the Officers' Charger Class of the Philadelphia Indoor Horse Show, held at the Squadron Armory, on 32d Street, Philadelphia, from May 2 to 5: Major Edward Hay, Major R. R. D. McCullough, Captain George V. Strong, Captain William S. Brogden, Captain E. P. Rutan, and First Lieutenant Robert M. Patterson. Major McCullough won the blue ribbon in the class, which comprised 18 entries, and Captain Brogden won the red ribbon. The yellow ribbon went to Captain Samuel Evans, 103d Cavalry, Pennsylvania National Guard.

The regular monthly luncheon of the regiment was held at the Racquet Club on May 17, with twenty-four officers of the regiment present. Colonel Groome presided. Colonel Groome spoke on the efforts on the part of certain men and women in the United States to undermine our system of national defense passed by Congress in 1920. He said these sinister influences have already reduced the Regular Army of the United States from 280,000 to 125,000, and have cut the appropriation of the National Guard to a point where in many States they are barely able to function. They are now bending every effort to do away with the least expensive component of this system, the Reserve Division.

Major Horace Hare spoke on the Citizens Military Training Camps. Major Hare, who is the Civilian Aide to the Secretary of War for the C. M. T. C. in Pennsylvania, said that the non-support of these training camps would in a few years put the Reserve Division out of existence, and the men and women in our State who are opposed to any form of defense find that in opposing the training camps they have a fair chance of gaining their objective without coming into the open with an attack on the National Defense Act of 1920.

The officers of the regiment, as citizens of the United States who are voluntarily giving their time to help carry out the laws of this country and support the government, decided to send a resolution to Congress protesting against the activities of the misguided individuals and organizations who are strenuously opposing the Reserve Corps and the training of the young men of this country.

At the meeting Major Smalley announced that eleven officers of the regiment had requested training at Fort Myer during June, at their own expense.

## PRIZE FOR NEW SUBSCRIPTIONS

To every member of the Cavalry Association who sends in before September 1 two new paid-up subscriptions to the CAVALRY JOURNAL will be sent a copy of Dennison's *History of Cavalry*.

# THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Devoted to the Interests of the Cavalry,  
to the Professional Improvement of Its  
Officers and Men, and to the Advance-  
ment of the Mounted Service Generally

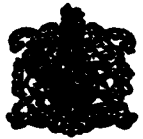
EDITED BY  
**JEROME W. HOWE**  
MAJOR OF CAVALRY

COPYRIGHT, 1923, BY  
THE UNITED STATES CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

Published quarterly by the United States Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street, Washington, D. C. Editor, Major Jerome W. Howe, Cavalry. Managing Editor, Captain George A. Moore, Cavalry. Entered as second-class matter March 22, 1920, at the post-office at Washington, D. C., under the Act of March 3, 1879. Acceptance for mailing at special rate of postage provided for in section 1103, Act of October 3, 1917, authorized May 29, 1920.

\$2.50 per year; single copy, 65 cents. Canadian and foreign postage, 25 cents additional.

ESTABLISHED  
OVER 125 YEARS.



BY APPOINTMENT  
TO H.M. KING GEORGE V.

*Peal & Co*

BOOTMAKERS.

*487, Oxford Street.  
London, W.1.*



BY APPOINTMENT  
TO H.R.H. THE PRINCE OF WALES

Military, Polo, Hunting Boots; Spurs, Whips, Crops, Kit Bags, and Cases

*Peal's Representative Will Be At*

**MURRAY HILL HOTEL, NEW YORK**

from JULY 16th to 26th

## 15 Words

Fine language may be useful in selling bonds, but it is the last thing that should influence the buyer. All the rhetoric about 5½% Prudence-Bonds can be put into these fifteen words — Secured by first mortgages and Guaranteed as to interest and principal by our entire resources.

*Write for Booklet C-J-354*

**The PRUDENCE  
COMPANY, Inc.**

31 Nassau St. 162 Remsen St.  
New York Brooklyn

## Occidental Restaurant

The Place to Dine  
for  
Army Officers

**GUS. BUCHHOLZ & SON**

*Proprietors*

1411 Pennsylvania Ave. N. W.  
WASHINGTON, D. C.



## A History of Cavalry, by Colonel Denison. 467 pp., index, 11 maps. \$4.50.

The only book of its kind. Complete story of development of Cavalry. All important battles and wars described. Traces changes in weapons and armor, as well as showing development also of Infantry. Copious quotations from original sources. Marks left by every great leader set forth—an epitomized biography of each great captain of Cavalry. This book won prize from Russian Emperor for best history of Cavalry. First edition, 1877; second, 1913. Most scholarly military book we have offered for many months. Read the fascinatingly written tales of the battles of the Cavalry from the dawn of history! No Cavalry officer's library can be complete without this particular book.

English edition of **The German Cavalry in Belgium and France: 1914.** By Lieutenant-General von Poseck, Inspector of Cavalry, German Army. Maps. Price, \$4.00.

The U. S. Cavalry Association has undertaken the publication of this important story of the German Cavalry's activities in 1914 on the Western Front. This is the part of the War so many people neglect to study. In almost all battles where Cavalry took part it usually began and ended the action. The war on the Western Front was one big battle. The German Cavalry began that battle. Initial maneuvers, concentrations, meeting engagements, services of security and information, patrol work, skirmishes and combats are reported. Read why the German armies could advance so rapidly at the beginning of the War. Most of the actions are described by participants. General von Poseck concludes his book with some valuable observations on Cavalry.

## As to Military Training, arranged by Major John F. Wall, U. S. Cavalry.

An up-to-date manual especially adapted to the needs of the Mounted Service. 267 pages, illustrations, and maps. \$2.50. Special prices on lots.

"A handy compendium of useful information well adapted to the needs of the Mounted Service and which any one entering upon a military career may study with great profit."

W. A. HOLBROOK,  
Major-General, U. S. Army, Chief of Cavalry.

## Cavalry Tactics

As Illustrated

By the

War of the Rebellion

By

Colonel Alonzo Gray

Paper 50 cents

## BOOK DEPARTMENT U. S. Cavalry Association

1624 H Street N. W.

Washington, D. C.

## As to Polo

By W. Cameron Forbes

The Standard Book of the  
Game

Fifth Edition, \$3.00

25 DIAGRAMS

## Equitation, by H. L. de Bussigny, with photographic illustrations. \$7.50.

A pupil of Baucher and an old campaigner in the French Cavalry, this skilled riding master and horse trainer at age of 76 publishes the results of a lifetime of experience and observation of the horse.

## The Strategy on the Western Front, by Col. H. H. Sargent. \$2.50.

A masterpiece written by a military strategist of acknowledged reputation. While its title refers to one front, it is actually a survey of the strategy of the whole war on all fronts, a thoughtful survey presented in such clear, concise fashion as to make the World War intelligible.

## BOOKS ON THE PALESTINE CAMPAIGN

By W. T. Massey, official correspondent with the London newspapers with the Egyptian Expeditionary Force: **ALLENBY'S FINAL TRIUMPH**, illust., \$3.00.

This book is a narrative of the final operations only of the Palestine campaigns after the capture of Jerusalem. "Three Turkish armies were wholly destroyed by the Cavalry passing around the flank to the rear and sitting astride every road the enemy could take to the north."

**THE DESERT MOUNTED CORPS**, by Lieut.-Col. the Hon. R. M. P. Preston, D. S. O. With introduction by Lieut.-Gen. Sir H. G. Chauvel, K. C. B., K. C. M. G. Price, \$4.50.

The Cavalry did wonders in the World War. By its victories in Palestine it rendered the defeat of the Central Powers inevitable. Read how the British Cavalry charged Infantry out of its trenches, took more than its own numbers in prisoners, in eleven days marched over 300 miles, took more than 60,000 prisoners, 140 guns, and 500 machine-guns in the Damascus campaign alone, and how in the Aleppo advance two Cavalry divisions went 367 miles, captured over 23,000 prisoners and 20 guns—about seven times its own strength. Read this book and be able to prove what you believe. No understanding of modern Cavalry can be complete without a thorough knowledge of this part of the war.

**THE ADVANCE OF THE E. E. F.** British official account with operation maps and Allenby's final reports. \$3.00.

**EACH ONE OF THESE BOOKS WE RECOMMEND BECAUSE THEY WILL APPRECIABLY ADD TO YOUR LIBRARY**

The book department exists to serve. We get what you want or tell you why. Any book, magazine, or paper obtainable we can supply, foreign or domestic, military or otherwise. Send the U. S. Cavalry Association all your business and help to make a better CAVALRY JOURNAL.

## CONTENTS FOR OCTOBER, 1923

VOL. XXXII. No. 133

	Page
CAVALRY COMBAT.....	385
Major Karl S. Bradford, Cavalry.	
CAVALRY TRAINING IN THE C. M. T. C. AT CAMP KNOX, KENTUCKY.....	395
Major William Waller Edwards, Cavalry.	
A BRITISH DRAGOON IN THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION.....	400
Major-General William H. Carter, U. S. Army, Retired.	
A STUDY OF THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN THE CAVALRY AND THE AIR SERVICE IN RECONNAISSANCE.....	412
Captain Edward M. Fickett, Cavalry.	
THE ETHICS OF PREPAREDNESS.....	422
Colonel J. P. Tyffe, 109th Cavalry, Tennessee National Guard.	
SONNETS OF A MANHATTAN HORSE.....	427
Agnes Kendrick Gray.	
SIDE LINES FOR CAVALRY.....	428
Lieutenant-Colonel L. J. Fleming, U. S. Army, Retired.	
THE BRITISH CAVALRY IN PALESTINE AND SYRIA.....	435
Lieutenant-Colonel Edward Davis, Cavalry (observer with the British Army).	
THE COLORADO ENDURANCE RIDE.....	444
Captain Herbert E. Watkins, 13th Cavalry.	
LOSS OF "COMMODORE" IN THE COLORADO ENDURANCE RIDE.....	447
Captain Donald S. Perry, 13th Cavalry.	
EDITORIAL COMMENT:	
MODERN DEFENSE POLICIES INCREASE IMPORTANCE OF CAVALRY—STRONGER CAVALRY—HORSE ARTILLERY—CAVALRY DIVISION MANEUVERS—POLO—CREATING A CITIZEN ARMY: OUR PRINCIPAL MISSION—ABSTRACTIONS, THEORIES, AND FACTS—ROCK-RIBBED—AUTHOR! AUTHOR!.....	450
NOTICE OF THE ANNUAL MEETING OF THE UNITED STATES CAVALRY ASSOCIATION .....	457
TOPICS OF THE DAY:	
PROGRESS IN WORK FOR THE OLYMPIC GAMES—MARCHING FROM FORT D. A. RUSSELL, WYOMING, TO FORT DOUGLAS, UTAH, WITH CAVALRY AND ARTILLERY—JUMPS WITHOUT WINGS—THE CAVALRY TEAM TRY-OUT MATCHES AT FORT DES MOINES—THE CAVALRY TEAM AT NATIONAL MATCHES—A NEW IDEA: THE ARMY CONTACT CAMPS—THE CHIEF OF CAVALRY'S RIFLE TEAM—HIGH JUMP RECORD BROKEN—SHOEING HORSES FOR USE ON PAVED STREETS—CAVALRY TEAM SECOND IN NATIONAL MATCH.....	458
NEW BOOKS REVIEWED.....	464
FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS.....	468
POLO .....	475
REGIMENTAL NOTES.....	485
THE NATIONAL GUARD.....	498
THE ORGANIZED RESERVES.....	503

Check against any books you may desire and give mailing address below:

Name.....

Address.....

# The United States Cavalry Association

## DESIGN

1. The aim and purpose of the Association shall be to disseminate knowledge of the military art and science, to promote the professional improvement of its members, and to preserve and foster the spirit, the traditions, and the solidarity of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States.

—ARTICLE III of the Constitution.

Organized November 9, 1885

## OFFICERS

### *President:*

Major-General WILLARD A. HOLBROOK, Chief of Cavalry.

### *Vice-President:*

Brigadier-General STUART HEINTZELMAN, A. C. of S., G-4.

### *Secretary and Treasurer:*

Major JEROME W. HOWE, Cavalry.

## EXECUTIVE COUNCIL

Brigadier-General JOHN P. WOOD, National Guard of Pennsylvania.

Colonel GEORGE C. BARNHARDT (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Colonel WILLIAM R. SMEDERS, JR. (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Colonel HERBERT B. CROSBY, Cavalry.

Colonel LEON B. KROMER (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Lieutenant-Colonel EDWARD DAVIS, Cavalry.

Lieutenant-Colonel JOHN PHILIP HILL, Cavalry Reserve Corps.

Major JOHN C. MONTGOMERY (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Major JONATHAN M. WAINWRIGHT, 3d Cavalry.

## MEMBERSHIP AND SUBSCRIPTION FOR THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Membership shall be of three classes, which, together with the conditions of eligibility therefor, are as follows:

- (1) Active, for which all general officers of the Army of the United States and all commissioned officers of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States shall be eligible.
- (2) Associate, for which all present and former commissioned, warrant, and non-commissioned officers of honorable record of the military or naval services of the United States not included in class 1 shall be eligible.
- (3) Honorary.

Any person desiring to become an active or associate member shall make application to the Secretary, which application shall set forth facts establishing his eligibility and be accompanied by payment for at least one year's subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL; and, the applicant's eligibility appearing, the Secretary shall award him membership from the date at which his subscription to the JOURNAL is commenced.

Active and associate members of the Association shall subscribe annually for the JOURNAL and make payment therefor in advance.

Application for membership should be addressed to the Secretary, U. S. Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street N. W., Washington, D. C., showing present or former military status and accompanied by remittance to the order of the Association for \$2.50, first year's subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL. Membership is continued after the first year by renewal of subscription to the JOURNAL.

Any person or organization not eligible for membership may subscribe for the JOURNAL at the regular subscription rates of \$2.50 per year. Canadian and foreign postage, 25 cents additional.

Members and subscribers are requested to give prompt notice in advance of change of address.



DUEL BETWEEN COLONELS CARLETON AND WASHINGTON  
(Illustrating "A British Dragoon in the American Revolution")

# THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Vol. XXXII

OCTOBER, 1923

No. 133

## Cavalry Combat\*

BY

Major KARL S. BRADFORD, Cavalry

ONE of the most important questions to cavalry at the present time is the relative value of the different kinds of cavalry combat—that is, the mounted attack, the dismounted attack, the combined attack, and the defense. Cavalry is the only arm which presents this problem. Infantry and artillery attack and defend, but in either case they fight dismounted. Cavalry, with the added possibility of using its horses in combat, is confronted with a problem distinctly its own, which only cavalry can solve. This problem usually centers about the use of the mounted attack, on which there are two schools of thought, one extreme maintaining that the mounted attack has lost none of its effectiveness, the other that cavalry is no longer capable of attacking mounted. It is desirable that there should be a crystallization of thought, or cavalry doctrine, on this extremely important point.

There now exists a widespread lack of uniformity of opinion as to just what constitutes a mounted attack, a dismounted attack, and a combined attack. This question is often avoided because of its complexity and its tendency to lead to fruitless and academic discussion, but it is absolutely essential to settle it before anything like a clear understanding of the matter can be obtained. It is therefore proper to attempt to define, or describe briefly, just what we mean when we refer to the different kinds of cavalry combat.

The cavalry troop, as now organized, is not a homogeneous unit—that is to say, all of its platoons are not similarly constituted. The presence of the machine-rifle platoon in each troop and the machine-guns in the new cavalry organization have added to the existing confusion as to just what constitutes a mounted attack and what constitutes a dismounted attack. Machine-rifle and machine-gun units possess the power of maneuvering mounted, but they have ordinarily only one method of fighting—that is, by fire—which, for these weapons, is necessarily dismounted. The rifle platoons, being the only elements capable of fighting both mounted and dismounted, are the most convenient units to take as a basis for the classification of attacks.

\* This essay was awarded third prize in the recent Prize Essay Contest.

A mounted attack may be defined as one in which all the rifle platoons engaged (except such portions of these platoons as may be used on secondary missions, such as patrolling) actually close with the enemy mounted. Such an attack may or may not be supported by machine-rifle, machine-gun, artillery, or other fire, and a part or all of the force may be dismounted after reaching its objective in order, for instance, to mop up, to consolidate the position, or to pursue by fire. Such an attack may be made in close order (the classic boot-to-boot charge) or in formations which are extended both in frontage and in depth. Either the pistol or the saber may be used, regardless of the formation. The formation may be either a close-order line, usually followed by other similar lines or by variously constituted columns, or it may consist of an extended line, with from 3 to 10 or more yards interval between troopers, usually followed, at distances which may vary from 50 to several hundred yards, by other similar lines or by columns.

In other words, the mounted attack now includes, not only the pre-war cavalry charge, but also an attack delivered mounted in formations similar to those developed by the infantry during the World War. This must be thoroughly understood, because it is not intended to assert that cavalry can successfully attack infantry in position, using close-order mounted formations. As a matter of fact, when using deep, extended infantry formations, a mounted force, due to the speed of its advance, may suffer fewer losses than infantry advancing over the same space of ground. This is conclusively proven by the fact that the British cavalry in France, as well as in Palestine, was called on to attack positions, and did successfully attack positions, which the infantry was unable to take.

A dismounted attack may be defined as one in which all the rifle platoons (except such portions as may be used on minor secondary missions) are used dismounted. The attack may or may not be supported by machine-rifle, machine-gun, artillery, or other fire, or it may be delivered by fire alone, the mounts being used only for maneuvering purposes. The latter is a distinctive cavalry action, inseparable from the in-and-out harassing tactics used by many competent cavalry leaders, in which the method is to maneuver mounted to a chosen position, dismount and deliver an effective fire, mount up, and repeat the operation elsewhere.

It must be made clear at the outset that, for the purpose of this discussion, the decision as to whether any attack is mounted or dismounted is absolutely independent of the method of maneuvering prior to the attack. It may be taken as axiomatic that cavalry, whenever possible, maneuvers mounted. For any attack to be designated a mounted attack, cavalry must actually *close with the enemy mounted*. Any attack in which actual contact is not gained with the enemy while mounted is a dismounted attack.

A combined attack is one in which part of the rifle platoons are used mounted and a part used dismounted. A defensive action, being always conducted dismounted, needs no special definition. It is not intended to discuss

here the use of cavalry on foot, when separated from its horses and armed with infantry weapons. In this case cavalry is no longer cavalry, its personnel merely being converted, for the time being, into infantry for the purpose of making up a deficiency in that arm.

Having arrived at these definitions, it is now possible to proceed to a discussion of the characteristics of the different kinds of combat—that is, their powers and limitations. The missions of cavalry, according to the new training regulations on the employment of cavalry, are the following: reconnaissance, screening, providing security for other forces by the use of covering detachments, seizing and holding important positions for subsequent occupation by less mobile forces, containing enemy forces or delaying his movements, participating with other forces in battle, exploitation of a success, defeat of the hostile cavalry, raids, maintaining liaison between other forces, and minor warfare against small enemy forces or guerilla bands. In taking up the characteristics of the different kinds of combat, each of the missions of cavalry should be kept in mind with a view to determining, if possible, which kinds of combat are most likely to be used by cavalry when employed on its different missions.

Considering first the close-order mounted attack, or cavalry charge, it may be said that its chief favorable characteristics are surprise, speed, and shock. Its unfavorable characteristics are the large and compact target presented to enemy fire, particularly fire from automatic arms, and the difficulty experienced in crossing unfavorable ground, whether rendered unfavorable by natural or artificial obstacles, or both.

Surprise, speed, and shock combine to produce the moral and material effect of the cavalry charge. Surprise is obtained by maneuvering under cover to a position for launching the attack, which is as close to the enemy as possible. The speed of the attack gives the enemy little time to recover from his surprise and reduces the time during which the attackers are exposed to fire. Shock is produced by the compact nature of the formation, which enhances the effect of the combined speed and weight of men and horses. (The average speed of a cavalry charge is about 20 miles per hour and the dead-weight of a platoon of 24 mounted men may be taken at about 15 tons.)

The close formation, on the other hand, gives rise to both of the unfavorable characteristics of the charge. It presents a compact target to the enemy, which, in spite of its speed, stands little chance of passing through successive bands of continuous fire from automatic arms without losing so much of its cohesion as to be bereft of most of its effectiveness. The solid formation also leaves to individual troopers practically no chance to avoid obstacles presented by the ground, and the attack may end in men and horses piling pell-mell on top of each other over an unsuspected obstacle, as Napoleon's cavalry did in the sunken road at Waterloo. Moreover, shock, which is, after all, the distinctive feature of the charge, presupposes a target to receive it, and this

presupposes enemy troops in dense formations in the open. Cavalry is the only arm which takes such formations in modern warfare.

There can be little doubt that the usefulness of this form of mounted attack has greatly decreased as a result of the developments of the World War. It can still be used against enemy cavalry if the latter does not or cannot resort to the tactics successfully employed in 1914 by the German cavalry against the larger bodies of French cavalry. These tactics consist in refusing to meet the enemy mounted and in drawing him on to concealed nests of automatic weapons protected by wire. As such form of resistance is less applicable to small bodies, such as patrols, which are not ordinarily equipped with automatic arms and whose missions usually preclude the time necessary to emplace and protect them, it is evident that the most general use of the close-order mounted attack will be against small bodies of enemy cavalry mounted.

In 1914 small bodies of French cavalry did habitually and successfully attack and disperse small bodies of German cavalry. This fact has frequently been misconstrued in the announcement of a general rule to the effect that mounted attacks can be used by small bodies of cavalry only, but it should be qualified by making it clear that it refers only to the close-order mounted attack.

The close-order mounted attack can also be used against large bodies of cavalry when occasion arises. However, it is believed that such occasions will arise less frequently in future wars. The modern conception of the proper use of cavalry is that it must hold its mission inviolate, to the exclusion of the natural desire to meet the enemy cavalry mass in action, which so often results for one side in an indecisive action, such as the one Jeb Stuart fought at Gettysburg, where the Southern Army did not profit in the slightest from the possession of its cavalry. A more skillful use of cavalry in the future will be to occupy the enemy cavalry mass, if it is employed in mass, with a small fraction of our cavalry, while our main cavalry force is used to carry out a mission of more direct assistance and value to its army. If Jeb Stuart had held off Pleasanton's cavalry with a small portion of his force while attacking Meade's communications with his main force, the result of the battle of Gettysburg might have been reversed.

The close-order mounted attack can also be successfully used in certain circumstances against infantry, as when, for instance, the latter is discovered in formations against which shock may be produced and when he is inferior in morale, training, armament, and ammunition or surprised in an unfavorable situation. These are opportunities to be recognized and taken advantage of at the moment and can be almost entirely neglected in our calculations, because peace-time preparations should be for action against good troops in favorable situations. If the latter can be defeated, there will be no difficulty in overwhelming the former.

Another special case of the close-order mounted attack is the charge in column of fours, or similar "wedge"-shaped formation, which may be used

for instance, when a cavalry command is caught in unfavorable circumstances and must act promptly to cut its way out of an embarrassing situation. Specific examples of such a situation are when a command is ambushed in a village street, defile, or other restricted space or is surrounded in the open. It is not necessary to discuss these situations under the head of mounted attacks, because in reality they are not so much attacks as energetic means of self-defense, which serve to illustrate the extreme flexible nature of cavalry and the varied methods of action which may be conceived and executed by the leader who possesses initiative and courage.

The close-order mounted attack can and should be prepared and accompanied by fire of automatic arms, whenever this is possible, but the rapidity with which situations leading to such an attack develop will preclude the use of preparatory and accompanying fire in the majority of cases.

Therefore, except in certain special cases which will be of infrequent occurrence, the close-order mounted attack, or cavalry charge, will be of use only against enemy cavalry mounted, and this most frequently against small bodies, not to exceed squadrons or troops. Such minor actions may be incident to almost any of the missions of cavalry due to the universal use of patrolling, but with two exceptions they will never constitute its main actions or missions. These exceptions are when cavalry receives the specific mission to defeat the hostile cavalry and when it must do so in order to accomplish its mission.

The extended-order mounted attack retains the favorable characteristics of surprise (if launched unexpectedly) and speed, but sacrifices that of shock. On the other hand, it no longer suffers from the unfavorable characteristic of presenting a compact target nor, to the same extent, from the difficulty in crossing unfavorable ground.

The loss of the power of shock constitutes a sacrifice only against troops presenting a target against which the shock may be produced. To lose the power of shock against infantry, which never presents a compact target, is in reality not a sacrifice. The gain is all on the side of the elimination of the unfavorable characteristics. A thin line of troopers, spaced at intervals of from 3 to 10 yards, each line irregular in its shape instead of possessing the accurate straightness of drill ground formations and moving at speed, presents a target more difficult to hit than corresponding extended-order infantry formations. The increased size of individual targets in the formation, due to the fact that each trooper is mounted on a horse, as compared with the small target of the individual infantryman, is compensated for by the speed attained in the cavalry advance, which cannot be even approximated by the infantry. If infantry attacks at a speed of 2 to 5 miles an hour, cavalry does so at 10 to 25 miles an hour, an increase of 500 per cent.

In extended formations, individual horsemen can pick their way over exceedingly rough ground and over or around almost any form of obstacle likely to be met. At the Cavalry School, classes in equitation easily ascend slopes of 45 degrees, descend those of 60 degrees, and ride over ground pre-

senting every variety of natural and artificial obstacle, scrambling in and out of sunken roads and negotiating stiff artificial obstacles consisting of fences  $3\frac{1}{2}$  feet high and ditches 8 feet wide. The widest trench described in the 1914 Field Service Regulations is not over 6 feet wide at the widest point, and the developments of the World War have tended to decrease the width of trenches. The artificial obstacle most nearly calculated to stop free-going horses is a wire entanglement, but horses going at full speed will jump low wire, unless it is laid in bands more than 8 feet wide.

Moreover, the extended-order mounted attack will always be prepared or accompanied, or both, by fire from automatic arms and from artillery when available. This fire is of the same value to the mounted attack, in demolishing obstacles and in keeping the defenders under cover during the advance, as it is in the case of an infantry attack. Even in firing over the heads of mounted troops no great difficulty is experienced, provided the same precautions are taken as with dismounted troops and provided the fire is cut off or switched a trifle sooner, in order to allow for the greater height of mounted men and to provide a slightly greater factor of safety due to the speed of the attack. This is compensated for by the speed of the attack, which carries it home almost simultaneously after the fire is stopped or switched.

Cavalry is a combat arm. Since it will fight cavalry only in small bodies, or when specially ordered to do so or its mission demands it, most of its fighting will be against infantry. An analysis of the missions of cavalry will verify this statement. Cavalry cannot attack infantry in position, mounted, in close-order formations, but it can do so in extended-order formations, due to the diminished effect of fire against troops in open formations. Especially when a long approach over open ground is necessary to obtain the objective, thus rendering the attack extremely costly for infantry, the mounted attack will be valuable because of the comparatively short length of time consumed in reaching the objective. This is the secret of many of the mounted attacks of British cavalry against infantry in France and Palestine. Even if the enemy position is entrenched, horses can jump the trenches. Each successive line of horsemen is assigned the mission of assaulting a particular line of trench, or of mopping up, just as similar missions are assigned to successive waves of dismounted troops in an infantry attack. In other words, cavalry has stolen a page from the infantry book of tactics and applied it to the mounted attack when used against infantry.

From the foregoing it might seem as though cavalry will always attack infantry mounted, but such is not the case. It does not appear that the British cavalry, although machine-guns held no terror for them, ever attacked mounted against positions heavily protected by broad bands or belts of wire entanglements, such as were used on the western front in France. No successful method of crossing such entanglements, when they were too wide for horses to jump, say greater than 8 feet, has yet been devised. In such cases cavalry, if it attacks at all, must ordinarily attack dismounted.

Like the special cases of the close-order mounted attack—that is, when used against infantry in unfavorable situations and the attack in column of fours to escape from an unfavorable situation—there is a special case of the extended-order mounted attack, which must be mentioned here and which consists in swarming or circling about the enemy while firing into him mounted with pistol or rifle until he is sufficiently disabled to be captured. This is a method of attack formerly used by American Indians and is still of value to cavalry, especially against slow-moving or stationary objects in the open, such as wagon trains or parks.

It is concluded, therefore, that the extended-order mounted attack, if properly prepared and accompanied by fire, may be used against infantry except when it is amply protected by wire entanglements.

The characteristics of the dismounted cavalry attack are fire-power, deep formations, slowness of advance, ability to cross certain obstacles which are impassable to horses, and vulnerability of led horses.

It is generally assumed that a dismounted cavalry unit is equivalent in fire-power to the next smaller infantry unit—that is, a dismounted troop is equivalent to an infantry platoon, a dismounted squadron to an infantry company, and so on. The dismounted cavalry troop (led horses mobile) has a fire strength of 54 rifles and 6 machine-rifles, the dismounted cavalry squadron has 162 rifles and 18 machine-rifles, and the dismounted cavalry regiment has 324 rifles and 36 machine-rifles, with usually a troop of 6 machine-guns attached. The infantry platoon of 4 squads has 32 rifles and 4 automatic rifles, the company of 4 platoons has 128 rifles and 16 automatic rifles, and the battalion has 384 rifles, 48 automatic rifles, and a company of 8 to 12 machine-guns. This proportion is approximately the same for the higher units. Considering the increased power of the machine rifle over the automatic rifle, the equivalent is approximately correct, so far as rifles and automatic arms are concerned. The infantry curved fire weapons, hand and rifle grenades, which are used principally for mopping up trenches, are largely offset in the cavalry by the pistol, which is issued to every cavalryman and is used dismounted for mopping up. Assuming equal training and equal artillery support, it is therefore reasonable to assume that, so far as fire-power is concerned, a cavalry unit can hold its own, dismounted, against the next smaller infantry unit, but would find itself at a disadvantage against the corresponding infantry unit.

The formations used in the dismounted cavalry attack are, in general, the same as those used by infantry, so far as the organization and armament of cavalry will permit. While many cavalry missions involving time as an important element make it advisable for cavalry to develop its maximum effect without delay, it is nevertheless absolutely necessary to adopt infantry principles in the dismounted attack against a position which infantry can take only by the use of these principles. If infantry requires a certain amount of depth in its formation to successfully attack a position organized in a certain manner, then dismounted cavalry requires exactly the same amount of depth if the conditions of the attack are the same. Dismounted cavalry has no inherent

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

quality of its own which allows it to do otherwise. If the time necessary to the development of a sound dismounted attack is lacking, cavalry had better try a mounted attack or not attack at all. However, while the importance of time as an element in any problem is not overestimated, there does exist a tendency in peace to reckon time in seconds and minutes, where in war it is more apt to be reckoned in hours and days.

The comparative slowness of the advance of the dismounted attack, as opposed to the rapidity of the mounted attack, is compensated for, to a certain extent, by the smaller individual targets presented to the enemy and to their greater ability to take advantage of the cover afforded by the ground for concealment. The dismounted attack is therefore better adapted to situations in which covered approaches are available to within short range of the objective than to those in which large open spaces must be crossed in order to reach the objective.

Dismounted men can cross wire which horses cannot cross, because horses' legs are unprotected and peculiarly subject to injury, while a soldier's legs are protected by shoes and leggins. Although in France every precaution was taken by artillery to demolish as much of the enemy's wire system as possible before the infantry assault, nevertheless numerous captured German positions existed in the Argonne forest in 1919 still protected by wire, presenting too formidable an obstacle for horses to cross, which was actually crossed by American infantry.

These two conditions in France—that is, covered routes of approach, usually through trenches, to within close proximity to the enemy positions and positions protected by wire in enormous quantity—presented situations peculiarly favorable to the dismounted attack. Where the same conditions exist again, cavalry, if it attacks at all, will attack dismounted.

The most unfavorable characteristic of the dismounted attack by cavalry is the vulnerability of its led horses. If they are killed, captured, or stampeded, the command has lost its chief asset, mobility, and is no longer cavalry, but an inferior form of infantry. The greatest danger to led horses is not, as frequently supposed, the accompanying noise and excitement of large engagements. One squadron of the Second Cavalry remained in a position of readiness behind the infantry lines during the preparatory bombardment of St. Mihiel, and the officers stated that the horses were easily quieted. The real dangers are enemy artillery, airplanes, and cavalry, particularly the latter. Enemy artillery fire and airplanes can be avoided by concealment, protection, and movement, but enemy cavalry can use its mobility to seek out led horses and render them useless. This consideration leads to the obvious deduction that a small isolated cavalry command should never dismount in the presence of enemy cavalry.

Thus far only that form of dismounted attack in which the attackers actually close with their adversary has been considered. There is another form of dismounted attack, which consists of attacking only with fire, which is of

## CAVALRY COMBAT

extreme importance to cavalry, due to its mobility, which allows it to open fire unexpectedly from positions on the enemy's flanks and rear, where moral and material effects are greatly increased. Here is the opportunity to open fire with full effect at once and to demoralize the enemy by the realization of the precariousness of his position. An example of this type of action is seen in Sheridan's pursuit of Lee from Richmond to Appomattox, in which Sheridan dispatched successive cavalry units to the flanks of Lee's army, where they kept the latter on the move by dismounted fire into the flanks of his columns. A later example is furnished by the action at the village of Yanoff in 1914, described by the Russian General Goloyine in the *CAVALRY JOURNAL*, in which the mere sound of fire in their rear was sufficient to cause the Austrian forces, successful up to that moment against the Russians in their front, to initiate a withdrawal.

Summing up the dismounted attack, it may be said that cavalry units can successfully attack dismounted against the next smaller infantry units, provided its led horses are protected from enemy artillery, airplanes, and mounted troops and provided it adopts the principles of attack which infantry would use in like circumstances. It can further be said that the dismounted attack is of greater application where covered approaches exist to within close proximity to the enemy and must be used, to the exclusion of the mounted attack, if wire is used in sufficient amount to present an impassable obstacle to horses. Finally, cavalry will often use a form of dismounted attack by fire only, after using its mobility to place it in favorable position for this type of action.

The combined attack has in general the characteristics, both favorable and unfavorable, of both the mounted and dismounted attack.

It is evident that the combined attack should not be used when conditions unfavorable to either the mounted or the dismounted attack exist, unless they exist for only one of these kinds of combat in that part of the field in which only the other kind of combat is to be used. Thus, since cavalry should not ordinarily dismount in the presence of enemy cavalry, it is obvious that the combined attack is rarely used against cavalry. And since the close-order mounted attack is rarely used against infantry, this class of mounted attack is not ordinarily used in the combined attack. Since the combined attack will be used principally against infantry, it should not be used when conditions sufficiently unfavorable to the use of the mounted attack against infantry exist. These conditions are, principally, wire entanglements and a line of departure for dismounted troops close to the enemy position.

The dismounted part of the combined attack may be made either with fire and movement, in which case the attackers actually close with the enemy, or by fire only, in which case the attackers do not actually close with the enemy. The decision as to which type of dismounted attack is to be used depends upon local conditions.

It will be rare that the use of a combined attack can be foreseen. Most frequently the procedure will be to launch the dismounted attack first and



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

to delay the launching of the mounted attack until conditions favorable to the mounted attack, though not necessarily existent at the beginning of the engagement, are imposed or brought about by the success of the dismounted attack. This ordinarily results in holding out a mounted reserve for a dismounted attack and using that reserve, either mounted or dismounted, as subsequent developments may dictate. If the reserve is subsequently used dismounted, the attack is not a combined attack.

Of the combined attack, then, it can be said that it is used principally against infantry, that extended order is ordinarily used for the mounted part of the attack, that either an attack by fire and movement or by fire alone is used for the dismounted part of the attack, that this form of attack is not used when conditions especially unfavorable to the mounted attack exist, and that it is a form of attack more likely to be used as circumstances develop than to be deliberately planned beforehand.

Cavalry is sometimes considered purely an offensive arm, but a consideration of the missions assigned to cavalry will show that they can often be best accomplished by a defensive form of action. While offensive action may frequently be the best form of defense, it is clear that if the defense does accomplish the mission it should be used instead of the more costly offense.

Such missions as providing security for other forces by the use of covering detachments, holding important positions for subsequent occupation by less mobile forces, and containing enemy forces or delaying his movements are purely defensive in their nature and others, such as screening, participating with other forces in battle, and maintaining liaison between other forces may be offensive or defensive according to circumstances. Cavalry which is not trained in defensive action will be found wanting in the accomplishment of such missions or will accomplish them only at a greater cost than circumstances warrant.

No one will dispute the general statement that any body of troops which is deficient in a knowledge of defensive fighting will be beaten sooner or later by an enemy which is equally strong on offense but stronger on defense. The French in 1914 found that they had been overtrained in the offense to the detriment of the defense, and much of their effort from then until 1918 was expended in learning proper defensive methods. That the French were deficient in offensive tactics in 1918 is only further argument in favor of the general proposition that they should have been equally well trained at all times in both offensive and defensive tactics.

Cavalry defensive methods will often differ considerably from infantry methods, because cavalry is seldom called upon to act upon the defensive for more than a short period of time and should never be so used indefinitely. This leads to less depth than is customary in infantry dispositions, to a greater preponderance of fire during the early stages of the action, and to a greater use of expedients, such as frequent changes of position of automatic arms and artillery, which confuses the enemy as to number of these weapons engaged.

## CAVALRY TRAINING IN THE C. M. T. C.

Cavalry will ordinarily use some form of the deployed defense, will less frequently use the position defense, and will never use the zone defense. Cavalry defense will usually be of an active rather than a passive nature, with the holding out of a reserve, often mounted, for the purpose of passing quickly to the offense in case of necessity.

Cavalry, then, like other troops, will attack or defend according to its mission, except that small, isolated cavalry bodies will ordinarily attack similar enemy bodies, mounted. In attacking infantry, cavalry will do so in extended order, either mounted or dismounted, the choice of the kind of combat to employ depending on local conditions, the most important of which are wire and the nature of the approach to the enemy position. It is therefore useless to assign different values to training in the different kinds of combat which cavalry will use, because any well-trained cavalry force will be proficient in them all. This wide choice of means is one of the greatest elements of cavalry strength, by which the skillful leader will be quick to profit, to the eternal consternation of a less active enemy.

## Cavalry Training in the C. M. T. C. at Camp Knox, Kentucky

BY

Major WILLIAM WALLER EDWARDS,\* Cavalry

THE C. M. T. C. organization at Camp Knox this summer contemplated two troops of cavalry, but as the applications only reached a high-water mark of about a hundred, the two troops were consolidated into one, two sets of barracks being allotted. This arrangement was very desirable for several reasons. There was room in one of the barracks, after bunks were arranged by platoons to the satisfaction of the camp medical officer, for a study-room downstairs, where the classes of whites and blues met each evening, under the supervision of an officer, to go over the next day's course; also, the horses available, those of Troop C, 6th Cavalry (Captain Renn Lawrence commanding), allowed, with the reduced number, practically a horse for every candidate. The cavalry was composed of selected men, all in the course being at least "advanced reds" who had stood the test of one year's training. The troop was organized into three platoons, each under a "blue commander." The commander of the troop was a regular officer, Captain Wiltshire, a graduate of the Cavalry School, and his three assistants, who acted as instructors, were reserve officers who had just completed the course in the O. R. C. Camp. One, Captain Cutting, who had come all the way from Denver, Colorado, had taken the course at Riley besides. All were enthusiastic horsemen, and their con-

\* Instructional Staff, C. M. T. C., Camp Knox, Ky., July 27 to August 25, 1923.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

scientific work is most commendable. Their influence, reaching into the many communities represented by the boys with whom they come in contact, will undoubtedly be felt in future camps.

A regular sergeant, who had wrestled with the same problem in the R. O. T. C., took care of troop property. The boys wondered why he never rode. The secret is here disclosed. He didn't have time.

When it is considered that an army of 3,000 boys began mobilization at Camp Knox on the 27th of July, and that by the 25th of August the last boy had turned in his equipment and was on his homeward way, some conception can be formed of what the training problem was. A C. M. T. C. Training Camp such as this makes it seem as though the cantonment days of 1917 had returned. Most of these boys were not used to prolonged active exercise, either of mind or body; yet it was necessary that they carry home with them a vision of what is meant by the military obligation of citizenship and of how an army really functions. Furthermore, their ideas had to be definitely shaped in a brief period of four weeks.

The schedule of instruction, which was planned personally by Colonel Frank, the C. M. T. C. commander, in accordance with War Department instructions, was an excellent one. Each day was well balanced, the morning being devoted to military and the afternoon to athletics and amusements, the period being punctuated by week-end trips on the Ohio River and to Mammoth Cave. Whenever practicable, candidates in all three courses—red, white, and blue—took their progressive instruction together, the "whites" as non-commissioned officers, the "blues" as officers assuming leadership over the "reds." In this way, theory was quickly supplemented by practice, time economized, and a reliable estimate formed of the individual capability of the several groups.

The cavalry schedule included basically the cavalry drill, from the school of the soldier through that of the platoon, the horses being brought up each morning from the troop stables. There were also short marches over a varied terrain. Many of these marches were combined with problems.

We were fortunate in obtaining in an abandoned National Guard camp a sand-table, which was installed on the shady side of one of the cavalry barracks and proved a never-ceasing source of interest. The course in cavalry tactics began with sand-table exercises and embraced a tactical ride and field problems in patrolling, advance guard, outpost, and finally the troop in attack and defense. These were all made purposely as simple as possible, each one to illustrate definite and cardinal cavalry principles. In the tactical ride the troop spent the entire morning along the March Road, which winds over ridges and through woodlands and has at convenient intervals open country on either side. At points of vantage a circle was formed, the situation explained as it developed, and a full and lengthy discussion insisted upon. From the ideas unfolded by the boys themselves in these discussions, three definite problems were formulated—in patrolling, advance guard, and outpost—in which the candidates took part over the same ground the following day. Roosevelt Ridge offered a large open field suitable to a cavalry attack, and a movie man was there as the problem ended to "catch" the three platoons as they charged

## CAVALRY TRAINING IN THE C. M. T. C.

successively out of the woods. These pictures (Fox), with others by Pathé, were shown at the camp auditorium during the last week, amid many cheers.

The problem in defense was a rear-guard action held near the Dixie Highway, one of the main automobile thoroughfares through the South, the theater of operations being a series of adjacent hills, which were occupied successively in keeping the enemy at bay. In both of these problems, though dismounted action was used, final precedence was given to the charge, by a mounted reserve, against the enemy's flank, so that the last and most effective impression gained was that a sudden mounted attack from an unexpected quarter was the most effective action of which cavalry is capable. These problems were preceded by a careful preliminary explanation after mimeograph sheets had been distributed, and were followed by a critique on the ground when time was available, or by a supplementary conference around the popular sand-table.

In the "white" equitation class the bull ring soon gave way to jumping and cross-country riding, in which fallen logs and other obstacles were ample each day to gratify an ever-lurking desire for a fresh adventure.

Such subjects as the care of animals were covered by lectures. The points of the horse, his capabilities, limitations, and requirements, were carefully explained by troop officers, while the camp veterinarian concluded the course by several most interesting talks at the veterinary hospital on "Common Injuries and Diseases: Their Care and Treatment." Field engineering demonstrations were given to the "whites" by the engineer company, whose barracks were adjacent to those of the cavalry. The Browning automatic rifle was shown by the machine rifle squad of Troop C, 6th Cavalry, and the machine-gun, from the mechanism to direct and indirect fire, was illustrated by the machine-gun company of the 10th Infantry. Besides the regular demonstrations, which were given by the training troops of the garrison to the C. M. T. C. organizations, the cavalry had a few special demonstrations of their own arm—the attack of the platoon dismounted, and the course in mounted pistol practice at the conclusion of the course in pistol marksmanship. The C. M. T. C. cavalry had some instruction practice dismounted and a simulation of the mounted practice mounted, immediately after which they were given this demonstration by the regulars of how it should be done, with ball cartridges, down to the marking of the targets.

The last demonstration by Troop C, given before an audience composed of all the C. M. T. C. troops and many other spectators besides, was most effective and spectacular. The enemy were engaged by the frontal fire of a dismounted platoon, and after fire superiority had been achieved, the other two platoons charged, mounted, on the flanks in successive waves, the first with the pistol, the next with the saber. The active and intelligent co-operation of this troop, which had marched from Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia, to lend their services, was an important factor in the success of the training.

At an old red barn on Roosevelt Ridge that had been used for storing tobacco before the military days of Camp Knox, squad after squad of C. M. T. C. cavalry could be seen one bright morning emerging from the woods,

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

where they had left their imaginary horses, and forming a prone skirmish line on the crest, to fire vigorously upon an enemy patrol (of eight card-board silhouettes) which held a ravine in their front. When a machine-gun nest (two silhouettes) came into action unexpectedly upon the left front it was promptly silenced by the machine rifle squad of the regulars. Each time a squad came up the engagement was watched and criticized by the squad which succeeded it. The object of this musketry problem, as originally intended, was to illustrate leadership in a cavalry advance guard, but it quickly resolved itself into a keen competition to determine the comparative efficiency of squads.

After each critique by the umpire, the marking of the targets added to the spirit of rivalry. In fact, it was markedly noticeable throughout the camp how spontaneously there seemed to spring that loyalty and *esprit de corps* which is the life of any organization and which is the first element distinguishing an army from a mob. As the training progressed, this was not only seen upon the athletic field, but also in the amusement hall, where members of the same organization would sit together and give their own songs.

Another incident, which spoke forcibly for the benefit of the month's discipline to these young Americans and the change in their mental attitude, was the comparatively short time in which their disinclination to salute turned into a positive eagerness to do so, to the extent that upon leaving and after having changed their uniform for "civvies" their military salute was still in evidence. This was most gratifying and an infallible index of the good spirit as well as the good discipline of the camp.

It may be wondered how boys could cover so much ground in this short time and accomplish anything at all. The principal object during those fleeting weeks concerned itself not in the proper execution of the details; this, it was thought, would come afterward; but in giving them a broad perspective. The organized preparation of the "whites" and "blues" each evening in the troop study hall enabled them, though tired from the day's activity, to begin intelligently the next day's work and make better progress than they could otherwise have done. Despite the limited time, it was quite surprising how much real military knowledge was absorbed. After one of the problems, I asked personally a majority of the boys various questions concerning its different military phases, and the answers I received were all pertinent and indicated serious thought.

The average age of these boys seemed to be that on the border between high school and college. There were several regular non-commissioned officers of Troop C who were taking the Blue Course and who were recommended for reserve commissions. The services of these men were of great value as instructors, especially in the course of Cavalry Drill Regulations.

The horses used—those of Troop C, 6th Cavalry—were excellently trained, and to this fact and the care of the instructors is attributable the lack of a single accident during the camp, despite the cross-country riding and the charges. There were two reviews, the last one being given before the Corps Area Com-

## CAVALRY TRAINING IN THE C. M. T. C.

mander, General McRae, and the platoon lines seemed to go around as easily and were as well kept at the trot as at the walk.

There was a keen desire on the part of the boys at all times to ride, and many envious eyes were turned upon them by the infantry, as they rode at their daily drills and maneuvers. If every boy can have a horse to ride next year, there is no doubt that a cavalry squadron can be recruited with ease.

I believe that the character of these boys was improved by their brief association with their horses. Some of them had never experienced any such companionship. They learned to appreciate the affection which exists between the horse and his rider, and that their combined intelligence, endurance, and courage can accomplish wonderful things. It is to be earnestly hoped that the training in these summer camps has awakened a lasting interest in the horse which will be felt in insuring for him throughout the country the place and recognition he deserves in the cause of national defense.

As those three thousand boys—infantry, engineers, artillery, and cavalry—passed in review for the last time, with the friendly woods for a background and the sun sinking over the hills, beyond the March Road, it must have been uppermost in the minds of all who watched them, how soon the future of America will rest in their hands. On each succeeding line of faces was written a tense determination to do their best.

They had learned military drill, they had gained a fundamental knowledge of strategic principles, but it was clearly evident that the roots of National Defense had reached deeper soil. In sharing their patriotic service with others, the seeds had been sown broadcast for a truer, broader Americanism, which will soon be reaped in closer adherence to laws and a higher loyalty for national ideals, which means greater national strength.



## A British Dragoon in the American Revolution

BY

Major-General WILLIAM H. CARTER, U. S. Army, Retired

**S**TUDENTS of military history, pondering over the long-drawn-out contest for independence of the American Colonies, have usually reached the conclusion that the failure of Congress to raise, for the period of the war, a considerable body of Continental cavalry was a lamentable sacrifice of a natural advantage. It would be interesting, if not profitable, at this late day, to explore the archives and show what might have been the result, on many fields of action, had there been available a body of horsemen trained to fight mounted and on foot. Without entering into the realm of dreams as to what "might have been" on a large scale, the story of what was achieved by a single British leader of marked talent and courage, in face of apparently insuperable obstacles, cannot fail of interest to ambitious cavalymen of the present day. The period of Lieutenant-Colonel Banastre Tarleton's services covered in this writing concerns mainly his operations with the British Army in the Carolinas and Virginia, from the siege of Charleston to the surrender of Earl Cornwallis at Yorktown.

Banastre Tarleton was educated at Oxford University and was less than twenty-one years of age when America declared her independence. He secured, by purchase, a commission as cornet in the King's Dragoon Guards and accompanied Earl Cornwallis to America. He served in the cavalry, under the immediate command of Sir William Erskine, at the capture of New York, the battle of White Plains, and the actions resulting in the capture of Forts Washington and Lee. He first came into conspicuous notice as commander of the advance patrol which on December 13, 1776, made a successful dash and captured General Charles Lee at Basking Ridge. His conduct led to rapid promotion, first as captain of Harcourt's Horse and then as brigade major of cavalry. He is best known through his services as commander of the legion, a mixed force of cavalry and infantry, under Cornwallis. He was promoted to lieutenant-colonel of light dragoons on Christmas Day, 1782. He rose through the several grades to colonel, major-general, lieutenant-general, and general, which last he attained in 1812, and was created a baronet in 1815. With the exception of one year, he was a member of Parliament from 1790 to 1812.

After the attempt to capture Savannah, in which action the American Army lost its first Chief of Cavalry, Count Pulaski, Sir Henry Clinton decided to carry the war into the Southern States more vigorously. In making up the force to accompany him from New York to Charleston he included two hundred and fifty cavalymen, under command of Lieutenant-Colonel Banastre Tarleton, who had already given evidence of his talents and untiring energy. At the

## A BRITISH DRAGOON IN THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION

very outset of his career in his new field he met with a most discouraging disaster, for the fleet in which he sailed encountered one of the storms for which Hatteras has long been notorious, and all the cavalry horses were lost. Downcast, but not disheartened, Tarleton set to work immediately to remount his men. Through purchase and seizure he secured horses and set to work diligently to condition his legion for immediate service.

Three small regiments of American cavalry, with a body of militia, had been maintaining communication with the Charleston garrison. In order to terminate this, Tarleton, reinforced by a body of riflemen under that very energetic and resourceful partisan, Major Ferguson, who later was killed at King's Mountain, was sent against the enemy April 12, 1780, followed by two regiments of British infantry. On the following day, in the evening, Tarleton moved on the road to Monk's Corner to surprise the American camp at that place, and was fortunate enough to capture a negro carrying a letter for an officer in the American camp. For a few dollars reward the services of the negro were secured as a guide and proved of great value. It was learned from him that the American cavalry had taken up a position in front of the river with the bridge at their back, while the militia infantry were on the other bank.

At 3 o'clock in the morning Tarleton's advance guard of dragoons and mounted infantry, supported by the infantry of his legion and Ferguson's corps, advanced on the main road, the only avenue of approach because of swamps on both sides. Upon approaching the American camp, Tarleton ordered the charge, a complete surprise, which was executed with great success. Major Bernie, of Pulaski's legion, and several other officers and men were killed or wounded, while a large number fell into Tarleton's hands, together with the ammunition and baggage train. Tarleton's fame spread quickly through the Southern Colonies, for the behavior of some of his men toward the civil community was so outrageous that they were threatened with hanging by other officers.

Toward the end of April, Colonel White arrived from the north with some dragoons and collected many of those who had escaped from Monk's Corner. He was joined soon after by Colonel Horry's cavalry regiment and a detachment from Georgetown. On May 5 Colonel White crossed the Santee at Dupui's Ferry and surprised a detachment of Tarleton's dragoons on a foraging expedition and captured the entire party. Colonel White then marched toward Lenew's Ferry, intending to cross under the protection of two hundred Continental infantry, ordered to be in position there. Tarleton, without any knowledge of the capture of his foragers, was marching to Lenew's Ferry, with one hundred and fifty dragoons, to gain intelligence of the enemy. While on the march he was informed by a Tory of the capture of the foraging party. Being assured of the intention of the Americans to cross the river at Lenew's, Tarleton pushed forward rapidly. The boats ordered by White had not arrived. While waiting for them Tarleton drove in his outposts and

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

charged his bivouac. Colonel White, Washington, and other officers and men escaped by swimming, but Tarleton captured a considerable number of officers and men and rescued his foraging party. Tarleton reported five American officers and thirty-six men killed.

As soon as General Lincoln surrendered Charleston, the American forces in the vicinity retired up the north bank of the Santee River. Earl Cornwallis pursued with a portion of the British forces one of the columns under Colonel Abram Buford. Tarleton commanded the British advance guard, comprising forty men of the 17th Dragoons, one hundred of Tarleton's legion, and one hundred and thirty of the legion dismounted, with one three-pounder gun. Tarleton left the main column on May 27 and, by seizing horses along the route, reached Camden on the 28th, where he learned that Colonel Buford had left Rugeley's Mills on the 26th and was marching rapidly to join a body of Americans approaching from Salisbury.

Tarleton determined to prevent the junction, if possible. At daylight next morning he learned that the Americans were only about twenty miles ahead of him. He detached Captain Kinlock to overtake the Americans and demand their surrender, magnifying the strength of Tarleton's force to impress them. Buford received Kinlock without halting, and after detaining him some time sent him back with a refusal.

Tarleton closed the gap rapidly, but many of his men had fallen out and the horses of his only field gun were unable to proceed from exhaustion. His command was in no condition for battle, but he was so confident of their superiority to the Americans that he determined to push on and fight. About 3 o'clock in the afternoon the Americans were in sight. Colonel Buford halted immediately and prepared for action. He directed his two cannon and the baggage to continue the march, and formed his infantry, comprising three hundred and eighty Continentals of the Virginia line, in an open wood.

Tarleton quickly made his plans for Major Cochrane to take sixty dragoons and as many mounted infantry to attack the American left flank; the 17th Dragoons and part of the legion to charge the center, while Tarleton himself, with thirty selected horsemen and some infantrymen, should assault the American right flank. When Tarleton bore down on the American line and was only about fifty paces distant, he heard their officers direct them to reserve their fire. The fire discipline of the Continentals was excellent, and it was not until Tarleton's party was within about ten paces that a volley was fired. Two British officers were killed and one wounded and three privates killed and thirteen wounded and thirty-one horses killed and wounded. Tarleton's own horse went down. Tarleton reported more than one hundred American officers and men killed and wounded and two hundred captured, together with the guns, wagons, and stores, but his reports were not always accurate.

In commenting on this fight, Tarleton frankly said if Colonel Buford had halted, parked his wagons in a favorable position and used them as breast-works, with his advantage of Continental infantry and two cannon, he would

## A BRITISH DRAGOON IN THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION

have prevented the attack or defeated it. Of course, it was impossible to load the muskets of that period for a second volley after having reserved their fire so long.

It was not merely the lists of killed, wounded, and captured that made Tarleton's energetic actions receive applause in the British camps, but the great value to their cause in dampening the ardor of the patriotic militia and encouraging the sympathetic Tories. In reporting to the home government the results of the campaign to date, General Henry Clinton wrote:

"I have to give the greatest praise to Lieutenant-Colonel Tarleton and the cavalry for their conduct, bravery, and eminent services."

Soon after his action with Buford, Tarleton retired to Charleston, sick. During his absence his legion was nearly destroyed by constant employment on patrol and detached service, but upon his return Tarleton soon made his command once more a unit to be respected.

So high a value was placed on Tarleton's services that Lord Cornwallis, while at Camden, ordered all the horses with the army assembled and the best to be selected for the use of Tarleton's legion.

On August 15, 1780, Lord Cornwallis informed Tarleton his army was ready to meet the enemy and he desired accurate intelligence. Tarleton started at once, and during the evening captured three American soldiers about ten miles from Camden, who stated they had been left as convalescents at Lynche's Creek and had been notified to join the army that night at Rugeley's Mills, as General Gates was preparing to attack the British camp near Camden next morning. Tarleton mounted the prisoners behind some dragoons, withdrew quietly, and rejoined the army. The story of the prisoners agreeing with other intelligence, Lord Cornwallis moved on the road to Rugeley's Mills, and about 2 o'clock in the morning the head of the column encountered the American advance guard. At dawn the two commanders made their preparations for battle. Tarleton was directed to remain in column to act defensively or offensively, as occasion should require.

When the American militia gave way, the excellent Continental regiments from Maryland and Delaware maintained the action until charged on the flank by a part of Tarleton's men under Major Hangar, while Tarleton completed their confusion. Colonel Armand, with his American cavalry, assisted by many officers, endeavored to rally the militia beyond a creek crossing the road, but Tarleton rallied his scattered dragoons and charged again, breaking all resistance and capturing the ammunition and baggage trains and many prisoners. In his report of the battle of Camden, Lord Cornwallis said:

"At this instant I ordered the cavalry to complete the rout, which was performed with their usual promptitude and gallantry; and after doing great execution on the field of battle, they continued the pursuit to Hanging Rock, twenty-two miles from the place where the action happened, during which, many of the enemy were slain, and a number of prisoners, near one hundred and fifty wagons, a considerable quantity of military stores, and all the



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

baggage and camp equipage of the rebel army, fell into our hands. . . . The capacity and vigor of Lieutenant-Colonel Tarleton, at the head of the cavalry, deserve my highest commendations."

The defeat of General Gates still left Colonel Sumpter in the district, and Lord Cornwallis, on the evening of the battle, directed Tarleton to start after him the following morning, August 17, with three hundred and fifty men and one cannon.

On the march Tarleton picked up about twenty stragglers, and learned that Colonel Sumpter was retreating along the western bank of the Wateree River. On his arrival at the ferry near Rocky Mount, at dusk, he perceived the enemy's fires about a mile from the opposite shore. He secured the boats and gave orders that no fires should be lighted. The Americans marched before dawn and apparently had not observed the proximity of the British. Tarleton crossed his gun and dismounted men by aid of the boats and the cavalry by fording and swimming.

Sumpter had been very successful of late, with his column of one hundred Continentals and seven hundred militia and two cannon, and now had with him as prisoners a hundred British regulars and one hundred and fifty Tories in the British service. He also had about fifty wagons loaded with arms, ammunition, and stores. These Sumpter moved in advance of his column instead of in rear, as is the usual way.

The diligence and care with which Sumpter marched somewhat disconcerted Tarleton, whose men and horses began to show signs of exhaustion. Tarleton made a careful inspection of his command and, after dropping out the unfit, found he had only one hundred dragoons and sixty light infantrymen available for rapid pursuit. He moved forward with much circumspection for a few miles, when his advance guard was fired upon by two videttes, both of whom were killed by the advance guard.

Proceeding carefully to the crest of a neighboring hill, Sumpter's camp was discovered in a state of quietude, indicating that the firing of the videttes had caused no alarm. Tarleton quickly formed his men in one line and advanced to the charge. The Americans were completely surprised and cut off from their arms before they could assemble. The immediate release of the British prisoners materially increased Tarleton's force and enabled him to secure many American prisoners.

In this pursuit and action Tarleton relied upon secrecy and celerity on the march, for the element of surprise in the days of the flint-lock musket counted much for victory. Fortune sometimes favored him, but in all his operations, up to this time, Tarleton had shown the true cavalry spirit and sought contact with the enemy upon every possible occasion. Though he started under great disadvantages, after arriving in South Carolina he had fought, in turn, and sometimes in combination, the best types of leaders on the American side.

All authorities agree that his services were of inestimable value in keeping alive the loyalty to the Crown of the Tory element in the South.

## A BRITISH DRAGOON IN THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION

On October 10, 1780, Tarleton was ordered to reinforce Major Ferguson wherever he could be found, his absence without communication having given cause for anxiety. Ferguson was the only British partisan who shared with Tarleton in any degree the honors of the campaign of detachments. But Ferguson had met his fate on October 7th, at King's Mountain, at the hands of the over-mountain men.

On October 18, Tarleton obtained information that Sumpter was again on the march with a view to an attack on a detachment of Tories occupying a post a few miles from Ninety-Six. Tarleton marched all day and encamped with every precaution as to secrecy, but a deserter from the 63d Foot, forming part of his force, informed Sumpter of his danger. Sumpter vanished, but Tarleton pursued with what Light Horse Harry Lee has characterized as "Tarleton's accustomed velocity."

Finding that his infantry could not overcome the start obtained by Sumpter, Tarleton left them and pressed forward with one hundred and seventy cavalrymen and eighty mounted infantry. Sumpter realized that he could not cross the Tyger in face of Tarleton, and prepared to fight. He took up a well-chosen position, but by a ruse Tarleton induced Sumpter to quit it to attack him, when by a charge of his dragoons he broke the line and had the advantage until darkness enabled the Americans to withdraw, carrying their wounded commander with them. Tarleton did not go unscathed in this affair, for one of Lord Cornwallis' aides who accompanied the expedition was mortally wounded, two lieutenants of the 63d Foot killed and three wounded, and forty-five non-commissioned officers and privates killed or wounded.

General Daniel Morgan, the famous commander of Virginia riflemen, reported for duty with General Greene's army about this time, and proceeded immediately, with Colonel Washington, against the Tory militia in the Camden district, capturing their commander, Colonel Rugeley, and one hundred of his men.

Lord Cornwallis became very anxious about the force commanded by General Morgan, and invited suggestions from Tarleton. In writing to Tarleton he said:

"I am always sanguine when you are concerned. . . . I wish you would get three legions, and divide yourself into three parts; we can do no good without you."

While the main British force under Cornwallis moved in the direction of King's Mountain, Tarleton, whose legion had been strengthened by fifty men of the 17th Dragoons and two hundred of the 7th Foot, moved toward the Pacolet River, where Morgan was guarding the fords, and succeeded in crossing about six miles above Morgan's camp. Morgan withdrew, and Tarleton immediately took up the pursuit with a view to bringing him to battle before he could effect a crossing of Broad River and form a junction with reinforcements known to be on the way to join him.

Two troops of cavalry were sent forward to harass Morgan's rear guard.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

This had continued only a short time when word was sent back that Morgan was forming his troops for battle.

It is not necessary to describe in detail the battle of Cowpens, as the action is known to all Americans. Suffice it to say that, having satisfied himself as to the proper course, Tarleton proceeded to translate his plans into vivid reality, but he had counted without his host. In pursuance of Morgan's plan, the militia appeared to give ground, and Tarleton ordered a general advance, when the American line faced about and threw the British into confusion. Morgan then ordered a charge, when Tarleton's entire force broke and fled from the field. About fifty officers and men of Tarleton's dragoons rallied around him, and he charged the cavalry of Lieutenant-Colonel Washington to secure some respite. After a personal combat with Washington, Tarleton was forced to join his fleeing troops.

The old war-worn hero of Saratoga and many other fields had administered to Tarleton his first and a most inglorious defeat. The turn in the tide by the defeat of Ferguson at King's Mountain assumed the proportions of a tidal wave at Cowpens, in the good effect produced in the Colonies where gloom had followed upon the long succession of American defeats. Congratulations were showered upon Morgan, the first being a letter from Otho Holland Williams, the distinguished commander of the Maryland brigade in Greene's army, who also served as deputy adjutant general:

"I rejoice exceedingly at your success. Next to the happiness which a man feels at his own good fortune, is that which attends his friends. I am much better pleased that you have plucked the laurels from the brow of the hitherto fortunate Tarleton, than if he had fallen by the hands of Lucifer. I am delighted that the accumulated honors of a young partisan should be plundered by an old friend. We have had a *feu de joie*, drunk all your healths, swore you were the finest fellows on earth, and love you, if possible, more than ever."

It would be interesting to follow Tarleton's career in detail during the period when Lord Cornwallis and General Greene were playing a game of hide and go seek prior to Cornwallis' determination to abandon the Carolinas and march to Virginia, where, by joining forces with General Phillips, he hoped to render some more tangible service to the British cause. After the capture of Charleston the whole campaign had resolved itself into a species of minor warfare, in a country devoid of all but the barest food and forage needs of a sparse population. All munitions and supplies had to come from distant and meager magazines.

In spite of almost insuperable obstacles, Greene had concentrated about seven thousand men near Guilford Court House and threatened Cornwallis' line of communications to Wilmington.

Cornwallis immediately advanced upon Greene and fought the battle of Guilford Court House. During the battle the brigade of British guards executed a bayonet charge against the Maryland brigade of Continentals, who were supported by Washington's cavalry. The guards were driven back with

## A BRITISH DRAGOON IN THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION

heavy losses, including their commander. Tarleton advanced to the charge and rescued some of the guards' officers who had been captured, but was himself wounded during the action. Though claiming a victory, the British Army was seriously crippled by the large number and the character of its losses. Abandoning the more severely injured, Cornwallis marched to Wilmington encumbered with wounded, many of whom died on the journey. Discouraged with the indecisiveness of his campaign in the Carolinas, Cornwallis now decided to march to Virginia and join the British force sent there from New York and engaged in laying waste the country along the James. He selected a body of sixteen hundred men from what remained of the brigade of guards, the 23d, the 33d, and the second battalion of the 71st Foot, a detachment of the Royal artillery with four guns, Tarleton's legion and two light companies, and the Hessian regiment of Bose, and left the remainder of his troops to be sent by sea to Charleston.

Tarleton marched in advance with one hundred and eighty dragoons and two companies of mounted infantry and spread the news of an exaggerated army following, for which he directed large quantities of supplies, not in existence, to be collected along the line of march. General Greene gave no further consideration to Cornwallis and proceeded with operations against Lord Rawdon's forces to the south. Tarleton met with little resistance and arrived at Halifax, on the Roanoke River, whence spies were sent into Virginia to obtain information of General Phillips' command. Then the situation of Cornwallis was not altogether reassuring, and he wrote to Tarleton:

"You must be sensible that, in the present instance, I put the greatest confidence in you. I trust to your discretion my honor and future happiness. I am convinced you will be on your guard against the sanguine opinions of your friends and your own prejudices. Above all things, attend to dates, and distinguish between is and has been."

As soon as Cornwallis reached Halifax, he ordered Tarleton to cross and locate crossings of the Meherrin and Nottoway, which lay between the Roanoke and Petersburg, the place of rendezvous appointed by General Phillips. Tarleton had marched about four miles from Halifax, when he was overtaken by Earl Cornwallis, attended by six dragoons of his guard. Upon arrival of some American country people, Tarleton was directed by Cornwallis to dismount his men and form them in single rank, for inspection, to facilitate discovery of two men who had committed atrocious outrages the preceding evening. One sergeant and one private were pointed out and accused of rape and robbery. Cornwallis had them taken back to Halifax, summoned a court-martial, gave them an immediate trial, approved the sentence of death, and had it executed on the spot as an indication to the inhabitants and the army of the standards of justice and discipline held by the British commander.

Tarleton reached the Nottoway May 15th. Benedict Arnold, who had assumed command upon the death of General Phillips at Petersburg, now ventured out to meet Cornwallis, who hurried forward to assume command of all



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

the British forces with a view to operations against Marquis de La Fayette, who was assembling such American troops as were available to resist the invaders.

Cornwallis directed Tarleton to move forward and obtain intelligence of the American forces. Near Warwick Court House he encountered a party of militia reported as four hundred in number. A heavy downpour of rain prevented the use of their firearms, when Tarleton charged, so that with very slight loss to himself he dispersed the militia.

Having learned of the reinforcements for his army coming from New York, Cornwallis marched to the James and crossed to Westover, the plantation of Colonel Byrd. Unhappily, Benedict Arnold at this time discovered that he had important business in New York and secured leave of absence, thus escaping capture at Yorktown later.

In seeking information Tarleton approached the main American camp, drove in the pickets, and sent a patrol to the rear of it, where a courier was captured with letters from La Fayette addressed to General Greene, Baron Steuben, Governor Thomas Jefferson, and others.

While the main British Army was in Hanover, and La Fayette, with the Americans, was between them and Fredericksburg, Cornwallis sent Tarleton to break up the Virginia Assembly at Charlottesville. Tarleton, with one hundred and eighty cavalymen and seventy mounted infantrymen, proceeded between the North and South Anna. He halted near Louisa Court House at 11 o'clock the first night and resumed the march at 2 in the morning. Before daylight he captured and destroyed a train of twelve wagons loaded with arms and much needed clothing for the Continentals of General Greene's army. Tarleton believed that, having marched seventy miles in twenty-four hours, with every precaution he would be enabled to effect a complete surprise, but he found the ford at the Rivanna was guarded. The advance charged across the river with slight loss and drove away the guard. Tarleton followed, and as soon as one hundred cavalymen had crossed he moved rapidly forward and galloped into Charlottesville. Seven members of the assembly were secured, but Governor Jefferson had observed the march of the British from his house and made his escape. The British and Hessian prisoners captured at Saratoga had long been held in cantonments near Charlottesville, but recently had been removed. A few who had been allowed to find employment in the country came in and joined Tarleton, who now returned to Cornwallis' camp.

Tarleton marched with the army to Richmond, covering the left flank, and then took post at Meadow Bridge. The British Army left Richmond June 20, 1781, and marched by way of Bottom's Bridge and New Kent Court House to Williamsburg.

Early on June 26th Tarleton proceeded with his legion to Burwell's Ferry, on the James, but before the horses were unsaddled the sound of musketry and cannon indicated an attack on the British. A courier arrived soon with urgent orders for Tarleton to rejoin Cornwallis. There still remain the scars of this incursion, in the shape of a mahogany stair rail in the Grove, the once

## A BRITISH DRAGOON IN THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION

famous home of the Burwells, which was hacked by the sabers of the angry and disappointed dragoons.

Sir Henry Clinton, having some concern about his hold on New York, now desired Cornwallis to return some of the troops, and he decided to withdraw from Williamsburg and take post at Portsmouth.

To execute this movement it was necessary to cross the James, and James Island, the site of old Jamestown, was selected as the place for crossing.

Cornwallis began ferrying his wheel transportation and stores across to Cobham on July 5th. Early the following morning Tarleton sent out foragers, who returned with information that La Fayette's troops were advancing on the British position. Tarleton quickly arranged to take the Americans at a disadvantage, and while Cornwallis placed his infantry in concealment Tarleton sent a negro with one of his dragoons, posing as a deserter, to communicate that the British had crossed the James, except Tarleton's command. Whether deceived or not, the Americans crossed the swamps and moved against Tarleton's line, which fell back through the intervals, when the infantry rose up and moved to the attack, the 46th, 76th, and 80th on the left, with the brigade of guards, Yorke's brigade, and the Hessians on the right. Marquis de La Fayette withdrew after the action to Green Spring, the former place of abode, a century previous, of Lord Berkshire, Colonial Governor of Virginia. Cornwallis did not follow, but contented himself with continuing his movement across the James.

On July 9th Tarleton left the army at Cobham under orders to proceed to Prince Edward Court House and thence to Bedford County to destroy supplies. After a march of four hundred miles in fifteen days, he rejoined the army and reported that—

"The stores destroyed, either of a public or private nature, were not in quantity or value equivalent to the damage sustained in the skirmishes on the route, and the loss of men and horses by the excessive heat of the climate."

Tarleton allowed himself little rest on this raid, for his old enemy, Daniel Morgan, and Anthony Wayne were after him.

Under instructions from higher authority, Cornwallis abandoned Portsmouth and sailed around to Yorktown. Tarleton was ferried across to Hampton, where the horses were jumped overboard and landed without accident. Tarleton was assigned to look after the country between Hampton and Williamsburg, while Simcoe, with his rangers, performed a like service at Gloucester, on the opposite side of York River from Yorktown.

Tarleton had roved at will through the Carolinas, to find himself, at the end, confronted with videttes of the American and French troops marching into position for the siege of Yorktown.

On October 2, 1781, the American and French generals were observed reconnoitering the British defenses with a view to beginning the attack. On the evening of that day Tarleton's cavalry and mounted infantry were sent across the York River to Gloucester, and on the morning of October 3d

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

foraging parties from all organizations were sent out. Having loaded the wagons and pack-horses, the infantry escorted them within the fortified lines, while Tarleton prepared an ambushade for some American horsemen seen in the distance. Tarleton's patrol now reported some French hussars in sight. Tarleton's and Simcoe's dragoons were then posted in a wood, while Tarleton went forward with a patrol to reconnoiter the enemy, who turned out to be the Duke de Lauzun's hussars and who immediately charged. In the mêlée one of De Lauzun's hussars thrust his lance into a British dragoon's horse, which plunged against Tarleton's horse and threw him to the ground, unhorsing Tarleton. The incident was witnessed by Tarleton's dragoons, who came forward at full speed, but arrived in such disorder as to be unable to make an impression upon the French hussars. During this mêlée Tarleton secured another horse, and, observing the disordered condition of his own troopers, he ordered a retreat. Tarleton's mounted infantry then came forward, dismounted at three hundred yards, and, taking up a position in a thicket, opened fire on the French hussars and enabled Tarleton to rally his dragoons. Tarleton then retreated to Gloucester and reported a loss of one officer and eleven men. There had been some bantering as to what would happen when Tarleton and De Lauzun should meet. In his memoirs the Duke wrote of the affair just described from Tarleton's story:

"I had not gone a hundred paces, when I heard my advance guards firing pistols. I advanced at full gallop to look for ground on which I could arrange my troops for battle. On arriving I perceived the English cavalry three times more numerous than mine; I charged it without stopping, and we came together. Tarleton picked me out and came at me with his pistol raised. We were going to fight between our respective troops when his horse was thrown down by one of his dragoons, who was being pursued by one of my lancers. I ran on him to take him prisoner. A company of English dragoons threw itself between us and protected his retreat; his horse was left to me. He charged me a second time, without breaking my ranks; I charged him a third time, upset a portion of his cavalry, and pursued him to the intrenchments of Gloucester."

Among De Lauzun's casualties was a wounded aide, Baron de Robeck, a young Swedish officer fighting under the French flag for America and the ancestor of the present Admiral Sir John de Robeck, recently commanding the British Mediterranean fleet.

This was Tarleton's last fight on American soil. He continued in command of the post at Gloucester, having besides his own legion that of Lieutenant-Colonel Simcoe and the 80th Foot.

The arrival of Count de Grasse's fleet in Chesapeake Bay lost control of the sea to the British, deranged the plans of their generals, discouraged the loyalist or Tory element in the Colonies, and was the signal blow that finally assured the independence of the Colonies. No officer of the British Army had a clearer view of the situation confronting Lord Cornwallis than Tarleton.

## A BRITISH DRAGOON IN THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION

who had favored abandoning Yorktown, crossing to Gloucester, seizing horses to mount all the men physically fit, and making an attempt to escape from the coil encompassing them. Cornwallis did give the order and begin the crossing of his army at night, but during the passage of the second contingent a violent squall separated the boats, and Cornwallis, becoming discouraged, brought back the first contingent, which had landed at Gloucester. This rung down the curtain of hope on the British troops who had for so many years borne the burden of England's efforts to prevent the independence of America. Cornwallis surrendered, and Tarleton's late enemy, the Duke de Lauzun, was sent on the frigate *La Surveillante* to convey the news to France, his legion cavalry remaining at Hampton. The British fortifications were destroyed and headquarters established at Williamsburg, with the regiments of Bourbonnais and Royal Deux Ponts in garrison there, while the regiment of Soissonnais and the grenadier companies and chasseurs of Saintonge continued at Yorktown, the remaining companies of Saintonge being billeted between Yorktown and Hampton.

In passing, it may be remarked that Lord Cornwallis had the clearest vision of the task upon which they were embarked of any of the British generals who commanded in America. His surrender at Yorktown did not lose him the esteem of the British Ministry, and during the remainder of his life he was called from one post of honor to another. He was selected to untangle the snarl in the affairs of India after the recall of Warren Hastings, and later, when increased age warned him to decline, he again reluctantly went to India as Governor General, and died there soon after inaugurating important reforms. He was a high-minded and gallant soldier, whose code of ethics embraced all that was fair and generous in war, not inconsistent with the cause in which he had drawn the sword.



## A Study of the Relationship between the Cavalry and the Air Service in Reconnaissance\*

BY

Captain EDWARD M. FICKETT, Cavalry

**W**HILE it has always been essential that an army have knowledge of the strength, tactics, and dispositions of its opposing armies, and of the terrain over which the army expects to operate, the complex character of modern warfare has made it necessary that an army of today have the most complete and detailed information of the enemy's entire war-effort and of the terrain. For this purpose modern armies have built up a highly specialized Service of Information, which is charged with the procurement of this essential information in both peace and war on actual or probable enemies. The development of this highly specialized service has not, however, in any way lessened the responsibility of the officer of all classes and of the commanders of all bodies of troops to use every effort to procure independently that necessary or valuable information upon which their operations may be based. These developments have increased, rather than lessened, the responsibilities of Cavalry and Air Service troops in the matter of reconnaissance, and particularly emphasize the vital necessity of co-operation between these two "seeing" services. This co-operation cannot be effective unless the Cavalry knows the possibilities and limitations of the Air Service, has a general idea of its methods, and a very close liaison between the two services. Similarly, the Air Service must have a like knowledge of the Cavalry. It is not argued that the sole and primary purpose of these two services is the procurement of information, but this is one of their primary missions, and as such is the subject of this discussion.

Reconnaissance according to the Field Service Regulations, is "the term used to designate the work of troops or individuals when gathering information in the field." This definition has since the issuance of these regulations been restricted and redefined by the General Service Schools as "the procurement in the field of information of military value by recognized military personnel sent out from a command. It seeks to gain information on which to base strategical combinations and maneuvers or tactical operations." Of all the sources of information which are available to the Intelligence Section of the General Staff in operations, reconnaissance and observation are the most important, since this

\* This essay was awarded the second prize in the recent Prize Essay Contest.

## RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN CAVALRY AND AIR SERVICE

information, as a rule, embodies actual facts, from which definite conclusions may be drawn. But, in order that the information obtained by reconnaissance and observation may be readily understood by those who are to use it, the personnel in the field must have knowledge of what is desired and present the information secured accordingly. Hence the necessity for co-operation between the Cavalry and the Air Service and the necessity for each of these to know what the other is doing and can do, and what the Intelligence Sections of the General Staff desire.

The General Service Schools classify reconnaissance as distant, or strategical; close, or tactical; and battle reconnaissance, each of which, for our purpose, may be considered in two parts—*e. g.*, air and ground. Distant or strategical reconnaissance is generally ordered by the higher commanders with the purpose of securing the necessary information upon which to base strategical plans and decisions for the subsequent maneuvering and combat. It is of importance at all times, but is essential during the opening phases of the operation. It is usually carried out by the Air Service and large bodies of Cavalry. The usual missions of distant reconnaissance, as stated by the General Service Schools, include "the determination of the areas of concentration of the enemy's forces; the strength, general composition, routes, and direction of movement of each of the enemy's main columns; the progress, depth, and width of the movement; the location and configuration of the enemy's position and his defensive organization; the location and strength of his general reserves or mass of maneuver; his lines of supply and administrative establishments. Distant reconnaissance missions also include verifying and supplementing information already on hand concerning the topographic, geographic, economic, and political features of the terrain passed over in the execution of the primary mission."

Close, or tactical, reconnaissance is necessary to, and should be ordered by, commanders of units of any size of all arms when the opposing forces are within striking distance of each other. This also is a Cavalry and Air Service function for the command as a whole, though each arm performs it for its own particular purpose. Missions of this class of reconnaissance include, quoting again from the General Service Schools mailing list matter, "the determination of the details of the location, distribution, strength, composition, and movements of the enemy; the location of his flanks and local reserves; his local defensive organization, local supply arrangements, equipment, training, physical condition, and morale; the making of detailed examinations of the terrain and inquiry into local resources; and the gaining of any other information necessary to the preparation of the tactical plan and the proper conduct of the combat."

Battle reconnaissance is necessary to the combat of units of all arms and is carried out by these troops during combat. It has for its object the determination of changes in the situation from that established by tactical reconnaissance and during the course of the operation. Battle reconnaissance to the flanks is of especial importance, and it is here that the Cavalry is normally used

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

as it is withdrawn from tactical reconnaissance to the front. These merge one into another as the operation proceeds successively, strategic into tactical, and tactical into battle, but in each the faith of the commander is pinned to the Cavalry and the Air Service.

Thus it is evident that effective reconnaissance requires the proper utilization of Cavalry and Air Service and the other arms upon occasion, each supplementing the other. In the preparatory stages of the operation the Air Service initiates the reconnaissance and locates the main enemy forces in order to determine the line of advance of the Cavalry elements. The reconnaissance activities of the Air Service fall into the main classifications outlined above, but each also consists of visual and photographic reconnaissance. It is in the proper exploitation of the latter that the Cavalry is particularly interested.

There are, in addition, two other classifications of aerial reconnaissance, namely, command reconnaissance, or that especially ordered in an emergency by the commander having Air Service at his disposal, for the purpose of quickly verifying or supplementing other information, and artillery reconnaissance, or spotting. These are without the limits of the present discussion.

The activities of the Air Service in reconnaissance are of the greatest value and cannot be minimized, but in order for it to be effective it must be supplemented by the work of ground troops. It covers broad areas in great depth, but its observation can hardly be continuous except under the most favorable operating conditions. Visual reconnaissance by the Air Service furnishes a general picture of the situation, with a more detailed study of the particular missions assigned, but the territory to be covered is so great that it is impossible for even the best trained observer to see and record all things which may be transpiring in the area traversed; hence negative information reported by the Air Service cannot be conclusive until supplemented by physical examination by ground troops, particularly of areas not easily reconnoitered from the air. Adverse weather conditions also restrict the usefulness of visual aerial reconnaissance, but the developments of photography are such now that good photographic reconnaissance can be secured where even visual reconnaissance is severely handicapped. Weather conditions of this character, therefore, should not be allowed to interfere with such reconnaissance should the tactical situation demand it. The Air Service cannot secure details, such as identifications, strength, and composition of units, nor their intentions; likewise it is difficult to obtain exact dispositions of units by air reconnaissance.

Thus the question narrows down to: What can the Cavalry best do toward the accomplishment of the above outlined missions in each class of reconnaissance, what can the Air Service do best, and how can each best supplement the work of the other? The most graphic way to scrutinize this question is possibly by a tabulation, as follows:

## RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN CAVALRY AND AIR SERVICE

<i>Strategic Reconnaissance</i>		
Mission.	Service best equipped to perform mission and means used.	Reason.
Areas of concentration of enemy.	Air (visual).....	These areas are denied to formed troops in the early stages of the combat; other sources are more or less unreliable.
Enemy strength and general composition.	Air (visual).....	The Air Service, for the same reason, can secure data more nearly correct than can be secured from observers, in most cases, in the early stages of an operation; the information from all sources must be collated.
Routes and direction of movement of each of enemy's main columns.	Air (visual and photographic).	Ground troops are often deceived as to the main effort unless they are able to penetrate very definitely the enemy's cavalry screen.
Progress, depth, and width of movement.	Cavalry (contact elements).	Can best determine the width and progress of the movements by the establishment and maintenance of contact.
	Air (visual and photographic).	Can best determine the depth of the movement for reasons outlined above.
Location and configuration of enemy's position and his defensive organization.	Cavalry (intelligence personnel). Air (visual and photographic, especially the latter).	Each can determine a part of this requirement, and the photographic reconnaissance of the Air Service in this case is of the utmost value, but in the present stage of photography ground troops must supplement the interpretative work of the Air Service by ground interpretation.
Location and strength of general reserves or mass of maneuver.	Air (visual)..... Cavalry (as a result of successful penetration of the enemy cavalry screen).	Difficult to secure by any service, but more available to the Air Service.
Lines of supply and administrative establishments.	Air (photographic and visual).	Particularly important that these be photographed and made a part of map information for the use of Artillery and Air Service commanders in long-distance bombardment.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

### Strategic Reconnaissance—(Continued)

Mission.	Service best equipped to perform mission and means used.	Reason.
Verification and supplementing of information on: topographic and geographic characteristics of terrain.	Air (photographic) .. Cavalry (intelligence personnel). Engineers (topographers).	One of the pre-eminent functions of the Air Service is reconnaissance of this character, which, after interpretation by trained ground troops, is incorporated in map form.
economic and political characteristics.	This is distinctly a function of ground troops and should be made the subject of special reports by the intelligence personnel of these troops.	

All of the above reasoning is based upon the assumption that the cavalry screens of the two opposing armies are, to a certain extent, neutralizing each other, thus permitting the cavalry engaged in strategic reconnaissance to ascertain little more than the general width, rate of progress, and composition, strength, organization, etc., of the opposing screening elements. Prisoners will help some, but their statements must be checked. At the same time it must also be assumed that the Air Service of each army is about equally active. Unless, therefore, we are able first to defeat or secure the superiority over the enemy in the air, we cannot hope to obtain any great quantity of reliable information on the opposing army. Similarly, we must admit his ability to keep our Air Service at a considerable height by anti-aircraft, as we intend to do the same. The same process of reasoning applies to tactical reconnaissance. In other words, we cannot assume that while we know what the enemy is doing, he does not know what we are doing, unless we take the necessary steps to insure this security. These are: the establishment and maintenance of contact at all times, the defeat or the rendering of the enemy's air force inferior, and the penetration of the enemy's cavalry screen, at the same time maintaining our own. In order to study graphically the value of the services in the various missions included in tactical reconnaissance, there follows a tabulation similar to that prepared for the study of strategical reconnaissance:

### Tactical Reconnaissance

Mission.	Service best equipped to perform mission and means used.	Reason.
Details of the location, distribution, strength, composition, and movements of the enemy.	Cavalry, reconnaissance and combat patrols, scouts, observers.	This is a large order and is one of the most important of the tactical reconnaissance missions; each of the reconnaissance services is

## RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN CAVALRY AND AIR SERVICE

### Tactical Reconnaissance—(Continued)

Mission.	Service best equipped to perform mission and means used.	Reason.
	Air, visual, except in the location of enemy forces, where photographic is valuable.	nearly co-ordinate, one with the other. The Cavalry is considered first because a great portion of this information is incapable of definite determination without combat.
Location of flanks and local reserves of the enemy.	Air, visual, and Cavalry.	If the Cavalry has properly accomplished its missions, as determined by the results of the preceding strategic reconnaissance, this information is immediately available at all times; if not, visual reconnaissance by the Air Service must make up the deficiency. Both should supplement each other, however, and it is the duty of both.
Local defensive organization of the enemy. Local supply arrangements.	Air, photographic, and ground troops.	The most efficient solution of this mission is by the aerial photography of the organized area, its interpretation by the Air Service observers, and checking and reinterpretation by ground troops in the course of their reconnaissance work, for final compilation in map form preparatory for the attack.
Equipment, training, physical condition, and morale.	Ground troops, especially Cavalry.	Vigorous and aggressive cavalry reconnaissance, such as that conducted by the famous leaders of the Confederate cavalry during the Civil War, are the only effective solution of this mission during war of movement. During stabilized situations, all troops have their opportunity to perform this class of reconnaissance. It is impossible for the Air Service to assist here except by deduction from the results of other missions.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

### Tactical Reconnaissance—(Continued)

Mission.	Service best equipped to perform mission and means used.	Reason.
Detailed examinations of the terrain.	Ground troops, based on map information, supplemented by air photography.	Aërial photography is excellent for this purpose, in that it gives an excellent detailed study of the area, which when compared with the map will reveal startling facts, but the interpretation of aërial photographs is an art and many things are subject to some doubt, unless all points are definitely verified by ground troops. Here is one of the greatest opportunities for co-operative activity by the Air Service and Cavalry.
Inquiry into local resources and other information.	Due to the general nature of this statement, it necessarily includes all services, but when used in this classification of reconnaissance, the Cavalry is the arm which is in the most favorable position to secure such information, from the very nature of its mission.	

The mobility of Cavalry, and at the same time its ability to investigate into and definitely determine the status of the enemy forces and the conformation of the ground, practically requires the accomplishment of these missions for the command as a whole by the Cavalry. However, each arm and each commander will have its own reconnaissance elements out and each of them will secure portions of the above information. The effort here is only to present the general relationships. In similar manner, as the operation develops and the actual combat commences, so does tactical reconnaissance merge into battle reconnaissance. For the Cavalry, this normally consists in withdrawing to the designated flank or flanks and continuing the reconnaissance for the protection of the flanks of the main forces, at the same time seeking anxiously for an opportunity to exploit a false move by the enemy, his retreat, or to attack other Cavalry objectives. The battle reconnaissance of the Air Service, however, is actually what is separately known as command reconnaissance and artillery reconnaissance. Aside from these two, there is little actual battle reconnaissance of the Air Service, except for that portion which is assigned or attached

## RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN CAVALRY AND AIR SERVICE

to and is accompanying the Cavalry on its flanking and exploitation operations. Hence we have in battle reconnaissance perhaps the closest relation between the Cavalry and the Air Service, for in this work it is the moment that counts, and action must be immediate. This time element, therefore, precludes the use of photography, except as the situation becomes more stabilized and positions are occupied for a considerable period, when air photographic reconnaissance assumes a greater importance. The distinction between tactical and battle reconnaissance must be kept clearly in mind in this connection, and also the fact that a great proportion of the aërial battle reconnaissance is conducted under the name of command and artillery reconnaissance by the units in the line, leaving for aërial battle reconnaissance the above-stated employment and in addition employment in the determination of the reserves and their movement and the mass of maneuver.

From the above comparative study of the relations of the Cavalry and Air Service in the three main classifications of reconnaissance, it is possible to arrive at the following conclusions, which are based on the reasoning set forth in that study. Naturally, if the reasoning is in error, the conclusions must be also; but it is thought that the principles are sound.

First. In strategical or distant reconnaissance it appears that the army is dependent upon the activities of the Air Service in visual reconnaissance for the determination of the general direction of march of the Cavalry screen and the relative strength of the component parts thereof. In fact, we are dependent upon the Air Service primarily for nearly all of the essentially military information which is obtainable by strategical reconnaissance, except the exact determination of the width of the movement, his determination along certain lines (that is, his determination to advance on portions of his general line of advance, while in others his effort is less determined and is not backed up in force; in other words, the locating of the line of his contemplated main efforts), his intentions, the characteristics of the terrain, and the political and economic character of the country as related to the enemy war effort. These latter are the function of the Cavalry screen—that is, cavalry and its supporting troops—and can only be accomplished by these troops.

Second. In tactical or close reconnaissance we arrive at a point where the ground troops, especially the Cavalry, are in a position to secure the definite, detailed information which in many cases can only be determined by actual combat. The activities of the ground troops, while directed toward the attainment of certain definite, detailed missions, are guided by, and base a great many of their premises upon, the results of the aërial tactical reconnaissance missions, especially the photographic missions. This latter is particularly true as the situation tends toward stabilization, with its consequent high organization handicapping the mobility of cavalry and rendering very difficult the work of the ground reconnaissance agencies without proper direction, which can only come from a study of the results of aërial photographic reconnaissance upon which to base orders for the accomplishment of definite missions by the ground agencies.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Thus, in tactical reconnaissance the importance of the closest co-ordination and liaison between the Air Service and the Cavalry is apparent, and the necessity for the individual officers of both services to have a knowledge of the fundamental principles and capabilities of the other becomes self-evident. The cavalry officer should have sufficient knowledge of the appearance of the ground from the air and of the interpretation of aerial photography—in fact, of the possibilities of aerial photography as a whole—that he may intelligently base the operations of his reconnaissance elements on this class of information from the Air Service. Similarly, the Air Service officer should have sufficient knowledge of the operations and difficulties of ground troops that he may be able to give the proper weight to information of various classes that he may secure, and to see in apparently unrelated or immaterial activities a relation which may be of the greatest importance to the ground commander. The two must go hand in hand. The best reconnaissance of the Air Service, either visual or photographic, is seldom conclusive without ground confirmation or check; similarly, with ground information. In addition, the Air Service must be able to readily recognize those critical points of the terrain which might cause embarrassment to the operations, to make such photographic reconnaissance of them as may be necessary, and to be able to make the preliminary interpretation and report upon these points.

Third. In battle reconnaissance the governing element is time; hence, again the necessity for close and continual liaison between air and ground and thorough understanding of each by the other.

In the ideal reconnaissance activity the Cavalry and Air Service, as the reconnaissance elements *per se*, work together for the information of the command as a whole. It has been my observation in many studies of this subject that the idea is left in the mind of the student that each is working more or less independently for its own information, secondarily for the information of the command as a whole, less so of the Air Service than of the Cavalry. The principle to be emphasized is that stated above—that is, information for the whole of the command. For the purpose of illustrating, therefore, how the Cavalry can supplement the Air Service in reconnaissance, the following brief explanation of aerial photographic reconnaissance may not be amiss:

The Infantry Divisional Air Service consists of a headquarters, observation squadron, photo section, and air intelligence section. There is no Cavalry Divisional Air Service assigned to the division at the present time. It is assumed, however, that the necessary elements would be assigned from the corps or the army upon the organization of the Cavalry screen. The air intelligence office, commanding the air intelligence section, actually functions in operations as a part of the divisional G-2 section and as the air adviser to G-2. His work and the work of his section correspond to the work and duties of the intelligence section of the Cavalry unit, in that he also is the intelligence officer of the air officer and consequently is the adviser of his commander on intelligence and particularly reconnaissance matters. Thus he is in charge of all aerial photo-





## RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN CAVALRY AND AIR SERVICE

graphic and visual reconnaissance, but he is particularly charged with the operation of the former.

The photo section is the organization created for the mechanical handling of the photographic equipment, its installation, care, repair, the development and printing of negatives, their filing, etc. There are two main classes of aerial photographs—vertical and oblique. These classes are based upon the position of the camera in the ship and are self-explanatory. Vertical photographs may be pin-points—that is, single photographs covering a limited area for a particular purpose; stereoscopic—that is, two photographs covering practically the same area from a slightly different position, in order to see the relief more plainly; mosaics, or series of photographs flown, covering a considerable area, each overlapping the other, producing when completed a more or less accurate picture of the terrain covered, depending upon the boldness and change of the relief; and those taken for photographic mapping purposes, the aerial procedure for which is practically the same as for mosaic work, but the map is compiled from each photograph successively rather than laying them down in a mosaic in order to eliminate the errors incident to the construction of the mosaic and the variation in the relief. An example of the first is shown in Plate I, and an abbreviated example of mosaic work is illustrated in Plate II. These are both examples of work with the single-lens camera.

The multiple-lens camera is far superior to the single-lens for photographic mapping or the topographic reconnaissance of an area; but since all exposures but the one vertical must be transformed to the vertical before they are subject to interpretation, and since the equipment is considerably more bulky, this is not so well adapted to rapid reconnaissance of the more restricted areas. Oblique photographs may be pin-points, or single photographs of a limited area; stereoscopic, the same as vertical stereoscopic; or panoramic—that is, a series of obliques taken at about the same angle for the purpose of showing a long line. An illustration of an oblique photograph is seen in Plate III.

It is very clear, or should be to the average officer, that the information contained in Plate I is not sufficient upon which to base a statement that there is a ford or crossing of the river at this point. The statement must be verified by the ground troops by actual testing. Similarly, the mosaic, Plate II, shows a railroad paralleled by a road entering a pass through a group of commanding mountains. This would be a critical point to military forces attempting to advance through this pass or use the railroad, and as such would warrant especial consideration as the location of a possible strong enemy defense. Without ground reconnaissance, the information contained in this mosaic is more or less misleading and especially is it incomplete. Try to use this as a map upon which the probable dispositions of friendly and enemy forces are spotted and note what essential information is lacking. This lacking information is the information which the ground troops must obtain. It is often said that a proper combination of vertical and oblique or stereoscopic vertical and oblique photographs will give the same result without the necessity for enter-

PLATE II

ing the area with ground troops at all. Test after test has shown that certain essential elements are always in doubt if not lacking altogether. The ground troops must supply this information by the actual entrance of the area or by actual reconnaissance. The only ground troops whose scrutiny will be of service to the command, due to their position in the operation, are the Cavalry. Hence the necessity for the close co-ordination between Air Service and Cavalry, and the necessity for the training of each in the fundamental principles of the other.

Thus the Cavalry has acquired new responsibilities and been relieved of old; it has gained the duty of training its personnel in the study and interpretation of aerial photographs by actual comparison with the map and ground; it has gained eyes in three dimensions, where it formerly had two; it is now charged with the checking of definite information, where formerly it traveled on rumor. It has lost a great portion of its responsibilities in strategic reconnaissance and the Air Service has taken them over, but it has gained responsibilities in tactical reconnaissance which more than overbalance the responsibilities lost. Until the Cavalry begins to train its officers and men in the fundamental principles of interpretation of terrain from both ground and air and the recognition of ground forms in air photographs, the Cavalry is not fitting itself for one of its paramount duties in time of war. Similarly, without proper co-ordination and direction, both Air Service and Cavalry will fail in their support of each other. This co-ordinating agency is the second, or intelligence, section of all staffs. The duty is put squarely up to it in A. R. 10-15 and cannot be evaded. If, then, without Air Service we are blind, as one has stated it, without Cavalry we are doubly blind. In training our Cavalry in reconnaissance, our motto might well be, "Look and ye shall see, seek and ye shall find."

## The Ethics of Preparedness

BY

Colonel J. P. FYFFE, 109th Cavalry, Tennessee National Guard

(The following address was delivered before the class in ethics at the All Souls Unitarian Church, Chattanooga, Tenn.)

**I**N a far country, in fair weather, there was a wedding in high life, and all the neighbors were invited to the feast following the wedding. The young men and maidens went out to meet the wedding party in the late evening, but the bride, then as now, found it necessary to take a little more time over her toilet, so that the bride and the bridegroom did not arrive at their new home for the feast until a late hour.

Among the young people who assembled on the highway to meet the party were ten young virgins, and while they awaited the coming of the wedding

## THE ETHICS OF PREPAREDNESS

party they lay down under a spreading tree upon the grass to take a nap, leaving their lamps burning. When the wedding party arrived and the virgins were awakened by the noisy greetings, five of them, who had taken the precaution beforehand, while the market-place was yet open, to fill their lamps and provide themselves with extra oil, were ready to join the merrymakers. The other five, who took a chance on the earlier arrival of their hosts, had not provided oil so that they had to leave the assembly and seek a new supply wherever they could find it, and of course they had to pay war prices to get it at that time of night. The result was that the five wise virgins entered the castle and enjoyed the party, and the gates to the castle were closed, so that the five foolish virgins not only bought oil at a high price, but missed the fun.

The United States, in most of its wars, has played the part of the foolish virgins. Both its men and its supplies for these emergencies have been purchased at such a late hour that the price has been exorbitant.

There has grown up of late years a new school of thought, which decries patriotism and bids us replace it with a kind of brotherly love broad enough to include all mankind of every race and nationality, coupling with it the doctrine of non-resistance. These views are not held altogether, or perhaps to any great extent, by the thoughtless and the fad-followers, but are participated in by many of our leading thinkers. They say we must not give the boy a tin sword to play with, for we teach him at an early age to think of war. We must not give him a toy gun, lest we teach him to kill.

This modern school tells us we must not have an army, for in its strength we will find confidence to wage war. They do not want us to feed upon the meat that Caesar fed upon, lest we fill our coffers with the fruits of conquest. They say the world must get over its age-old idea of settling differences by conflict and learn that modern progress leads to a better way. The army rifle must go the way of the dueling pistol and brotherly love must take the place of international hate and jealousy. May God speed the coming of that day. But is it here now? If we alone follow these views and learn to war no more, we but open the gates of Troy and our destruction will be certain. A considerable part of their argument is based upon dogmatic theological doctrine. They proclaim Christ as the Prince of Peace, losing sight of the fact that Christ Himself said, according to the Gospel of St. Matthew:

"Think not that I am come to send peace on earth; I came not to send peace, but a sword."

The Bible, from beginning to end, teaches us that God has used famine and pestilence and the sword as His own weapons for the disciplining of the nations.

The whole world is in accord in wanting peace, but we differ in the method of obtaining it; and while we all cry, "Peace, peace" there is no peace. So far, civilization has made progress only through the purification of its politics by war. Protracted periods of peace result in the accumulation of wealth by a

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

few, who are possessed of that peculiar cunning by which it is acquired, at the expense of the less fortunate.

"Till fares the land, to hastening ills a prey,  
Where wealth accumulates and men decay."

China is our best example of a nation too proud to fight, as Germany was our best example of one too willing to fight. There is a happy medium to be found in a strong, well-balanced nation that is ready to defend its own rights, but does not covet that which belongs to another.

They tell us that by thinking thoughts of peace we shall accomplish peace. This will be true when our thoughts and prayers have accomplished an effective organization that will maintain world order. Stonewall Jackson was a man of strong religious convictions, and always opened his battles with prayer. He put much trust in God, but he saw to it that his men kept their powder dry. Let us likewise pray for peace, but at the same time have a little powder and keep it dry.

The farmer plants his corn and cotton, and after it is up he thins out the rows, leaving only the sturdiest stalks to reach maturity. So God thins down the nations of the earth, leaving only the sturdiest, destroying all who have become profitless and weak, leaving room for the others to grow. Then, since it is the survival of the fittest, let us, as a nation, be among the fittest. Let us keep our lamps trimmed and burning till the Bridegroom comes.

They tell us not to put into our school histories portraits of our military heroes or stories of our wars. Shall we forbid the Sunday-school teacher from reading to her class from the Bible how Moses led the children of Israel out of Egypt and how the army of Pharaoh was swallowed up in the Red Sea? Shall it be ungodly for her to tell them the story of how Lot and his family were captured by five kings and carried away into captivity, and how Father Abraham mustered his own private standing army, overcame the five kings, and liberated his nephew. Shall she not unfold to them something of the wonderful doings of that great general who, with the sword of the Lord and of Gideon, overcame the Midianites? Is it unwise in this modern civilization to let our growing boys read from the Bible the wonderful story of that great actor and warrior, King David, the anointed of the Lord? They would have us tell the story of Nero and all that is horrible concerning war, but not of the patriotism of those who overcame Nero. We cannot agree to rob history of its story of wars; we would not forget Rienzi, the Roman, or Leonidas and his Spartan brethren who held the pass at Thermopylae, or Horatius at the bridge, nor the battle of Marathon. We cannot forget Runnymede or John of Gaunt and the birth of Magna Charta; we would not still the voice that makes our school walls echo with

"Scots wha hae wi' Wallace bled,  
Scots wham Bruce has aften led,  
Welcome to your gory bed,  
Or to joyous victorie."

## THE ETHICS OF PREPAREDNESS

Generations yet unborn will witness the rise and fall of their Roman empires, experience their reformations, and raise the flag of freedom over their revolutions. Freemen in generations to come will sign declarations of independence and find them worth fighting for; wars are but the milestones on the road to higher civilization. One day this road will lead us to the halcyon city of perfect peace, when the milestones will be no longer needed. We thought we were nearing that goal in the long period of peace prior to 1914. We forgot that Christ said, "I come not to bring peace, but a sword," and in verification of His declaration we had the greatest war the world has ever known, at a time when we thought no more wars possible.

We thought we had fought this great fight to end wars, and sat down around the peace table to write its obituary; but nations and men were not ready for it; so war still rages, while our friends cry peace, peace; but there is no peace. Alfred Tennyson dreamed a dream that seemed near to come true, when Woodrow Wilson tried at Versailles to materialize it. Wilson like Tennyson,

"Saw the heavens filled with commerce, argosies of magic sail,  
Pilots of a purple twilight dropping down with costly veil;  
Heard the heavens filled with shouting and there rained a ghastly dew,  
From the nation's airy navies, grappling in the central blue.  
Far along the world-wide whispers of the south winds, rushing warm,  
With the standards of the people plunging through the thunderstorm."

Here our world experiences stop, but Wilson's magnetism and the poet went on:

"Till the war-drums throb no longer and the battle flags were furled,  
In the parliament of men, the federation of the world.  
There the common sense of most shall hold a fretful realm in awe,  
And the kindly earth shall slumber, lapped in universal law."

It was a beautiful dream, a wonderful picture, and let us all pray for its ultimate fulfillment; but until the time comes when the earth shall be "lapped in universal law," it behooves us, in the name of freedom and for the sake of our homes, to have a little powder on hand and keep it dry.

This nation needs to be prepared for self-defense, but it does not require a large standing army to burden the taxpayers. It was the view of the founders of our government, and so set down, that "a well-regulated militia is the true safeguard of a free people." And the national defense act, under which we are now attempting to organize militia and the national reserves, only modernizes the law that required every male citizen to keep and own a match-lock or fire-lock and powder-horn. These forces represent a body of citizens who do the voting and, if occasion requires, are prepared to do the fighting they voted for.

We were led into the last war because we had the reputation of being unprepared. Had the Kaiser believed that in twelve months the Americans could raise, arm, and equip an army of four million men, send two million of them across the ocean to confront his own legions along the battle lines in Flanders, no German submarine would have torpedoed an American ship or ship carry-

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

ing American passengers. A little preparedness would have been a valuable asset in our argument with the Kaiser.

For Tennyson's vision let us substitute another: We have seen at Germany's behest the new Russian republic overthrown by Lenine and Trotsky and bolshevism established, together with the Third Internationale, which is preaching the same doctrine of international brotherhood that our advanced thinkers at home are preaching, except the Bolsheviks would use force to compel world mastery, while our friends would use only the hypnotic power of thought. After Germany became a republic the effort to spread Bolshevism in that country failed. A very pronounced effort to have it take root in America likewise failed.

But what of the Turk who, "at midnight, in his guarded tent was dreaming of the hour when Greece, her knee in suppliance bent, should tremble at his power"? The Russian Bolsheviks gave the Turk his start. Italy and France handed over to him vast stores of munitions, and he has marched back to his former position astride the Dardanelles, and now dreams of taking again his lost provinces in the Balkans. It is not a far cry to an allegiance between Russia, Turkey, Germany, and possibly other European nations, leading to the control of all Europe under the insidious doctrines of the Third Internationale. If this should happen, the old balance of power equation would be the Third Internationale *versus* the Anglo-Saxon world, to complete the picture of an earth lapped in universal unrest.

Lest you think this political alignment visionary, contemplate the interior economy of the nations involved. Here and in western Europe we want peace, because our hearts and minds are involved in the pursuit of health, wealth, and happiness; manufacturing, commerce, agriculture enlist our interest and we do not care to be disturbed by lawlessness or war. It is not so in Russia and Turkey; with them there is enough agriculture to supply a meager subsistence to a frugal population. Beyond that there is no great public or personal interest, save politics and war. Therefore their people are easily led into efforts of conquest with promises of plunder. It is difficult for our people to get the viewpoint of those who are led to believe that from war they have everything to gain and nothing to lose.

The pagan nations of the Far East have learned the value of propaganda, and are crying against a Christianity which they say prays for world peace with their navies at target practice. So formidable and caustic are the railings of these pagan politicians that the Methodist missionaries are staggered.

Would they shame us in the name of Christianity to cease target practice, while they march from the Dardanelles to the Mississippi, behind their pagan propaganda? Do the Turk and his allies intend to unfold a new war on Christianity?

We can abolish patriotism only in that day when a federation of the world holds a fretful realm in awe. While mad dogs are running loose in our neighbors' yards, it behooves us to have a little powder and keep it dry.

## Sonnets of a Manhattan Horse

By Agnes Kendrick Gray

I

A draft-horse! What of that? Don't scoff at me,  
You racers and you slender saddle-mares,  
With your high-bred Arabian fore-bears.  
I've brains worth all your gilded pedigree!  
I've horse-sense capped with keen-edged common-sense,  
And city wisdom that you'll never know  
Out where your country days are safe and slow;  
And knowledge earned by hard experience.  
Here, in this steel- and iron-bodied town,  
The horses, like the children of the street,  
Must keep a steady head to keep their feet;  
Must have their wits about them or go down.

And this is my stern pride—to hold my own,  
Here where so often hearts, like walls, are stone.

II

I have a tuneful driver—just a lad;  
He whistles till my ears are fairly split;  
And yet I like his noise—strange, isn't it?—  
For he's the kindest boss I ever had.  
My master's not a hustler, in his way,  
But he's a happy kid and treats me well.  
He never tells me I can go to Hell,  
Though where that borough is I couldn't say;  
But it's a very well-known place, I fear,  
Because I hear it spoken of so much  
Among the teamsters, taxi-men, and such.  
I like New York and want to stay right here.

And so I'm glad he doesn't make me go  
Where other folks are sent—to Hell, you know.

III

One morning, headed for the Avenue,  
On Thirty-second Street the big green bus,  
Blocked by the traffic there, drew up to us,  
And from it looked a pretty girl in blue.  
(My boss was whistling like an April bird,  
While factory-men were loading up for him;  
The way was jammed, our wheels stood rim to rim.)  
She spoke to her companion and I heard:  
"What luck to be as happy as he looks,  
Whistling in all this clattering noise and dirt!"  
And then I heard her sigh as from a hurt—  
Some human hurt not written in my books.  
I like that girl. . . . I hope she'll find, some day,  
A whistling lover, very kind and gay.

IV

I know, I know, that some time, late or soon,  
The motor-truck will force me from this street  
I love and know so well; will drive my feet  
To follow shadows like the sinking moon,  
Whose light dies out before the risen day.  
To some poor town will drive me, old, alone,  
To stumble rough-shod over cobblestone,  
And drift to ruin with my shabby dray.  
Whenever cruelly these thoughts intrude  
Upon my mind, I snort and toss my head  
And paw the asphalt, smooth beneath my tread,  
To thrust away this dark and bitter mood!

And yet—I know, I know, that, soon or late,  
My dray and I must share this sorry fate.

## Side Lines for Cavalry

BY

Lieutenant-Colonel L. J. FLEMING, U. S. Army, Retired

**T**HE side line referred to in this discussion consists of two heavy leather anklets joined together with a stout chain about 16 to 18 inches long.

The anklets have strong steel fasteners to hold them around the horse's pasterns. In use, one anklet is first fastened around either front pastern of the horse, and then the other anklet around the hind pastern on the same side. It is evident that the two feet that are side-lined must work together, whether at a walk or faster, and if faster than a walk, the gait becomes a pace.

A side-lined horse cannot gallop, as the chain prevents the extension necessary to the gait, and usually he paces very awkwardly and slowly, even if he is a natural pacer.

Hobbles, on the contrary, do not prevent the galloping gait, though they modify it considerably. They consist of an anklet around each front pastern, the two anklets connected by a short chain.

The hobbled horse can walk and trot; but, his stride being limited to the length of the chain, progress is very slow. The chain, however, does not limit the galloping stride, but causes the two front feet to strike the ground approximately at the same time, and at a run the two hind feet are carried far to the front of (and on either side of) the front feet.

From the above it will be seen that the side lines allow comparatively free movement at the walk or pace, but absolutely prohibit extension into the gallop or run, while hobbles considerably restrict progress at the walk or trot, but allow comparatively free extension into the gallop or run. A combination side line and hobble would impose the limitations of both.

Hence it results that hobbles should be used by persons who turn one or two horses out unguarded to graze and have no fear of a stampede, but wish to curtail the horse's ability to stray to a great distance in a short time; while side lines should be used by persons who furnish a guard to prevent a considerable number of horses straying, but who have much to fear from a stampede and wish to render one impossible.

For both side lines and hobbles it may be said that, in order to be effective, they must be made so strong that a horse cannot break them, and this can evidently be done. It is simply a question of material, weight, and cost. The side line that was issued by the Ordnance Department in 1896 was, as I remember it, satisfactory as to quality, type, strength, and weight. Hobbles are lighter than side lines and do not need to be so strong.

It is here necessary to consider the horse's mental attitude with reference to gait. Any one who has ridden or driven a horse knows that he becomes more excited and harder to control as the speed increases, and, in the nature of the horse, when startled or frightened he instinctively seeks safety in flight,

## SIDE LINES FOR CAVALRY

and when numbers of excited horses join together, they increase each other's excitement and *stampede* in frenzied and uncontrollable flight. On the other hand, if at the first fright the horse lunges out and finds himself shackled, he subsides, stands still and trembles or takes a controlled gait. It is here that the principle of the side line comes into play, and if, at the first terrific lunge, it holds against the strain, the horse must content himself with moving at a slow, controlled gait, and his whole mental attitude is at once subdued and changed.

Some form of side line was used by our cavalry for a considerable period. The exact dates are unknown to me, but my personal experience extended over ten years, from 1890 to 1900, and I have heard many accounts of their use prior to 1890, and of how the Indians on the plains, in a number of instances, charged upon the grazing herds, yelling, firing their rifles, and waving buffalo skins, etc., and stampeded the herds. This was a great disaster to the cavalryman on the plains, far from home. From my own experience, however, I am forced to believe that, in view of the great necessity for keeping down the weight of the cavalryman's equipment, the early side lines were probably not strong enough to hold and failed at the very time when they were intended to succeed.

The side line was discarded as part of the cavalryman's equipment about 1900.\* I have never heard why, but presume that from the instances of their failure they were not thought to be worth carrying, or that, with the cessation of Indian campaigns on the plains, their day of need had passed. Either reason, however, would have been erroneous, as I will show later on.

### USES OF SIDE LINES

Our service in Mexico brought out very clearly the imperative need of side lines as part of the cavalryman's equipment. As is always the case, as soon as the cavalry came to do the all-important work for which it is maintained, it had to cut loose from transportation and live off the country. No form of transportation that has ever been invented can accompany it at all times. Pack-trains cannot keep up for any material length of time, and they consume most of what they carry. Automobiles can keep the cavalry supplied only as long as we stick to good roads. Wagons are too slow. Railroads cannot always reach us. Combinations of these different means of transportation can do a great deal, but the cavalryman must always be prepared for the time when they fail—as they surely will.

In Mexico practically no long forage is gathered into barns or stacks, so it

\* Before the punitive expedition was withdrawn from Mexico the author brought the matter of the need for side lines to the attention of the commanding general, with the result that an experiment in their use was ordered. About 800 side lines were obtained and distributed to the several cavalry regiments in Mexico, which were the 5th, 7th, 10th, 11th, and 13th. Troop A, 5th Cavalry, had a complete outfit. The side lines were received only a few days before the troops were withdrawn and there was no suitable opportunity to try them out.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

must be gathered by the horse while the tired trooper sleeps and rests. Herding without side lines at night is too risky, when a stampede (though unlikely) would prove disastrous to the work in hand. Fortunately, no stampedes occurred, so far as I have heard, but horses and men suffered unnecessarily. There was plenty of grass, and the horses should have grazed all night; but when they did graze part of the night, tired and sleepy troopers had to hold them on the lariat, and it was impracticable when making long marches to allow the full benefit of grazing, as the men had to have some rest and sleep.

When in permanent camp or making short marches, the side line is not so necessary, though it is very convenient and saves work. Horses may well be herded without side lines in daytime, at greater or less distances from camp; but, even if well trained to herd, they are *always liable to stampede* and cause confusion and annoyance. Moreover, where large bodies of cavalry are camped, the need of side lines to limit each troop to its prescribed area is very great.

In making a series of long marches, there is no substitute for the side line. It enables all halts to be utilized to the fullest extent, with the minimum of strain on the men, and the horses and men resume the march in the best possible condition under the circumstances. The side line represents comfort and long forage for the horse, and the work he does in carrying it is more than compensated for by the refreshed condition of himself and his rider when the march is resumed. Horses graze best at night, and their stomachs are accustomed to receiving the ration of long forage at that time. When they stand on the picket line a guard is necessary, and the same guard can care for them while grazing on side lines.

If they have been grazed only for a short time and then tied on the picket line, they are restless, kick and injure each other, break their halter straps, and have to be caught up, often having an uncomfortable place to lie down (as they must lie down where they are tied). If the weather is cold, they are still more restless—kick, move, lose sleep—and yet cannot move around enough to keep warm and cannot get behind a sheltering bush or hillock to break the wind.

All this is changed if the horses are herded on side lines. On arrival in camp, the horses are tied to the picket line and groomed, then fed such grain as is available; the men pitch camp before dark and get some warm food; then the grazing detail takes the horses out (when the grazing ground is distant from the camp), each man riding one horse and leading three, carrying a side line for each horse, the trooper's bedding, arms, etc., and if the weather is bad he may even take his shelter tent. On arriving at the grazing ground, the horses are side-lined and allowed to graze or lie down and rest, as they prefer. Each horse selects his bed and is not molested by the others. He moves around enough to prevent stiffness and keep partly warm, if the weather is cold, or he lies down and is probably protected from the cold wind by high grass, bushes, hillsides, etc. The grazing ground can often be selected with these points in view. As to the men, a herd guard of one N. C. O. and three or five men is taken from the grazing detail and the balance bivouacs near by, ready to take up the defense of the horses in case of attack, or they may form a part of the

## SIDE LINES FOR CAVALRY

outpost of the camp if the grazing ground is favorably located. If the men hold the horses on the lariat while grazing, they are unable to make any defense in case of attack, even if they have their arms slung on their backs, as they will be more than occupied with the horses. A proper-sized grazing detail for sixty horses would be two N. C. O.s and fifteen men.

The horses of the herd guard are equipped with watering bridles, blanket, and surcingle. Usually only one man of the herd guard is on duty at one time. He may remain mounted and occasionally ride around the herd to keep the horses closed up and to prevent straying, but usually it is sufficient for him to remain dismounted most of the time, holding his horse by the rein and allowing him to graze, occasionally riding around the herd. The N. C. O. and the other men of the herd guard side-line and lariat their horses and go to sleep till awakened by the man on post at the hour for posting the new relief. Any number of troop herds can be grazed in the same locality, separated by small spaces, up to the limit of capacity of the available grazing area. The herds are brought back to camp in time for breakfast for the men and the morning feed of grain for the horses. If the grazing ground is near camp, all available men lead the horses out and side-line them, then return to the camp, leaving the horses in charge of the herd guard—one N. C. O. and three or five men.

This brings us to a consideration of the important matter of the relative location of the camp and the grazing ground. The two should ordinarily be near together, the grazing usually within the line of outposts; but if there is little or no danger from the enemy, it may be beyond the outpost. Or the camp may have to be located with reference to grazing instead of to the best camping facilities. Whenever it is practicable to unsaddle for the night, it will generally also be practicable to graze near camp. In case of a hurry call to arms or to march, the side-lined herd can be caught up and saddled with only a little more delay than if they were tied on the picket line. If a night attack is at all likely, it would be a wise precaution to improvise hobbles from the halter shank (or any other suitable article), in addition to the side lines, as this will greatly reduce the horse's ability to make speed.

## INSTANCES OF USE

I will not cite two notable instances of the use of the side lines that come within my personal experience. Both occurred in peace time, in Montana and Dakota, where grazing is usually good, and in the summer, when it was nearly at its best, but in my judgment use can be made of the side lines in any country that I have ever seen and at any season of the year.

On June 13, 1896, Troop D, 16th Cavalry, under command of First Lieutenant John J. Pershing, now General of the Armies of the United States, started from Fort Assiniboine, Montana, to round up the Crow Indians and ship or march them to Canada. I was second lieutenant of the troop and accompanied it. The march took us westward across the Rocky Mountains to the vicinity of Fort Missoula and the Flat Head Indian Reservation. The



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

must be gathered by the horse while the tired trooper sleeps and rests. Herding without side lines at night is too risky, when a stampede (though unlikely) would prove disastrous to the work in hand. Fortunately, no stampedes occurred, so far as I have heard, but horses and men suffered unnecessarily. There was plenty of grass, and the horses should have grazed all night; but when they did graze part of the night, tired and sleepy troopers had to hold them on the lariat, and it was impracticable when making long marches to allow the full benefit of grazing, as the men had to have some rest and sleep.

When in permanent camp or making short marches, the side line is not so necessary, though it is very convenient and saves work. Horses may well be herded without side lines in daytime, at greater or less distances from camp; but, even if well trained to herd, they are *always liable to stampede* and cause confusion and annoyance. Moreover, where large bodies of cavalry are camped, the need of side lines to limit each troop to its prescribed area is very great.

In making a series of long marches, there is no substitute for the side line. It enables all halts to be utilized to the fullest extent, with the minimum of strain on the men, and the horses and men resume the march in the best possible condition under the circumstances. The side line represents comfort and long forage for the horse, and the work he does in carrying it is more than compensated for by the refreshed condition of himself and his rider when the march is resumed. Horses graze best at night, and their stomachs are accustomed to receiving the ration of long forage at that time. When they stand on the picket line a guard is necessary, and the same guard can care for them while grazing on side lines.

If they have been grazed only for a short time and then tied on the picket line, they are restless, kick and injure each other, break their halter straps, and have to be caught up, often having an uncomfortable place to lie down (as they must lie down where they are tied). If the weather is cold, they are still more restless—kick, move, lose sleep—and yet cannot move around enough to keep warm and cannot get behind a sheltering bush or hillock to break the wind.

All this is changed if the horses are herded on side lines. On arrival in camp, the horses are tied to the picket line and groomed, then fed such grain as is available; the men pitch camp before dark and get some warm food; then the grazing detail takes the horses out (when the grazing ground is distant from the camp), each man riding one horse and leading three, carrying a side line for each horse, the trooper's bedding, arms, etc., and if the weather is bad he may even take his shelter tent. On arriving at the grazing ground, the horses are side-lined and allowed to graze or lie down and rest, as they prefer. Each horse selects his bed and is not molested by the others. He moves around enough to prevent stiffness and keep partly warm, if the weather is cold, or he lies down and is probably protected from the cold wind by high grass, bushes, hillocks, etc. The grazing ground can often be selected with these points in view. As to the men, a herd guard of one N. C. O. and three or five men is taken from the grazing detail and the balance bivouac near by, ready to take up the defense of the horses in case of attack, or they may form a part of the

## SIDE LINES FOR CAVALRY

outpost of the camp if the grazing ground is favorably located. If the men hold the horses on the lariat while grazing, they are unable to make any defense in case of attack, even if they have their arms slung on their backs, as they will be more than occupied with the horses. A proper-sized grazing detail for sixty horses would be two N. C. O.s and fifteen men.

The horses of the herd guard are equipped with watering bridles, blanket, and surcingle. Usually only one man of the herd guard is on duty at one time. He may remain mounted and occasionally ride around the herd to keep the horses closed up and to prevent straying, but usually it is sufficient for him to remain dismounted most of the time, holding his horse by the rein and allowing him to graze, occasionally riding around the herd. The N. C. O. and the other men of the herd guard side-line and lariat their horses and go to sleep till wakened by the man on post at the hour for posting the new relief. Any number of troop herds can be grazed in the same locality, separated by small spaces, up to the limit of capacity of the available grazing area. The herds are brought back to camp in time for breakfast for the men and the morning feed of grain for the horses. If the grazing ground is near camp, all available men lead the horses out and side-line them, then return to the camp, leaving the horses in charge of the herd guard—one N. C. O. and three or five men.

This brings us to a consideration of the important matter of the relative location of the camp and the grazing ground. The two should ordinarily be near together, the grazing usually within the line of outposts; but if there is little or no danger from the enemy, it may be beyond the outpost. Or the camp may have to be located with reference to grazing instead of to the best camping facilities. Whenever it is practicable to unsaddle for the night, it will generally also be practicable to graze near camp. In case of a hurry call to arms or to march, the side-lined herd can be caught up and saddled with only a little more delay than if they were tied on the picket line. If a night attack is at all likely, it would be a wise precaution to improvise hobbles from the halter shank (or any other suitable article), in addition to the side lines, as this will greatly reduce the horse's ability to make speed.

### INSTANCES OF USE

I will not cite two notable instances of the use of the side lines that come within my personal experience. Both occurred in peace time, in Montana and Dakota, where grazing is usually good, and in the summer, when it was nearly at its best, but in my judgment use can be made of the side lines in *any country* that I have ever seen and at *any season* of the year.

On June 13, 1896, Troop D, 10th Cavalry, under command of First Lieutenant John J. Pershing, now General of the Armies of the United States, started from Fort Assiniboine, Montana, to round up the Cree Indians and ship or march them to Canada. I was second lieutenant of the troop and accompanied it. The march took us westward across the Rocky Mountains to the vicinity of Fort Missoula and the Flat Head Indian Reservation. The



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

troop returned to Fort Assiniboine on August 14, after an absence of two months and one day. Short camps of a few days each were made at Great Falls and Fort Missoula, but as a rule the march continued daily, usually twenty-five or thirty miles a day and on several occasions forty miles. The total distance marched was over twelve hundred miles. Grain was carried on the wagons, but the horses had no long forage, other than grazing, except when at Great Falls and Fort Missoula. As the marches had to be slow, on account of our wagons and those of the Indians, camp was usually made late in the afternoon, so the horses could graze only at night. They were side-lined and grazed all night, every night on the march. When we returned to Fort Assiniboine the horses were in practically as good flesh as those of the other troops that had remained there, and there were no sore backs nor cases of lameness or of soreness from the side lines.

On one occasion the troop, with about 75 Indian wagons and 500 Indian ponies, which were herded, on the march, at the rear of the column, went into camp on the Las Marias river. The Indian animals were in charge of their herders for the night and the troop horses were side-lined and herded as usual. During the night a storm and cloudburst broke over the camp and the weather grew quite cold. In the morning all the Indian ponies were gone, but not a single troop horse was missing.

On another occasion the troop had halted at noon for lunch and the men were eating while holding their horses by the reins. A dog from a near-by ranch came up on a hill overlooking us, saw the horses, and barked. A broncho became frightened, stampeded, and took the whole herd with him. It took till dark to catch up the horses and collect the equipment, which was scattered for six miles in the direction taken by the stampeding herd. For a week or more every horse in the troop was ready to stampede at any unusual sound, particularly at the sound of a galloping hoof. That same night the horses were herded on side lines and a number of times coyotes came near and howled. Each time I could hear the horses make a terrific effort to stampede, but each effort died out after the first lunge, when they found that the side lines had them. After this when we halted for lunch, about an hour, the troop was unsaddled and side-lined, and men and horses had a good rest.

The other instance that I referred to was a mapping trip that I made from Fort Buford, North Dakota, lasting 45 days, from August 15 to September 30, 1894. I had with me a wagon and three mounted men and covered about 900 miles. Grain was carried on the wagons, but all long forage was obtained by grazing. Camp was changed every day. My detail was too small to permit of keeping a guard over the horses at night. On the first night out the horses were put on the lariat and picket pin. Soon the coyotes came near and began to howl, the horses got excited and galloped around at the end of their lariats, and presently several of them broke loose. We caught them up after considerable trouble, and I was puzzled to know what to do with them. They had to be grazed, as we had no hay. I finally decided to side-line them in addition to the lariat and picket pin. It worked perfectly. The coyotes continued

## SIDE LINES FOR CAVALRY

howling from time to time, but the horses were unable to get up enough speed to pull up their picket pins. This method was used every night during the balance of the trip and not a single horse got loose or burned himself on the lariat. On several occasions, while picketed among bushes, they became tangled up, and fell with a grunt, but when untangled and allowed to get up, they were found to be uninjured by the rope. I explain this from a consideration of the horse's mental attitude as a result of the side lines. When the rope was around the foot that had the side line on it he could not kick, and when it was on the other foot he thought it was the side line on it and there was no use to kick.

This instance suggests the value of the side line to a small reconnoitering patrol, far from support and forage (as it will often be) and obliged to bivouac out for one or several nights, and to keep concealed and away from houses and stores of forage.

### MINOR USES OF THE SIDE LINE

1. *To quickly gentle wild or vicious horses whose feet cannot be handled:*

Make a slip noose in the end of a rope, thrown on the ground (diameter of noose about 5 feet); lead horse, all four feet, into noose; draw it up and throw horse, pulling all his four feet together; put on two side lines (one on each side); remove rope and allow horse to get up. He can then be handled freely. Keep side lines on a week or more, gradually teaching horse to walk slowly with side lines on; saddle, mount, unsaddle, move about, carrying rider—can all be taught without bucking. If horse is handled quietly and gently, bad habits can be cured and his fear eliminated in the minimum of time. If a wild horse is mounted before gentled, he bucks, and every such lesson tends to confirm him in the bad habit.

2. *By the farriers, to restrain horses that resist treatment:*

Assuming that the horse is broken to side lines, they can easily be put on one or both sides, and then the treatment applied.

3. *Prevention of kicking on picket line:*

Certain horses are habitual kickers when tied on the picket line and are the source of many injuries to other horses. Side-lining will prevent this. Certain native regiments of the English Army in India use stallions that give much trouble from fighting on the picket line, and the custom has grown up to tie their hind feet to pegs driven in the ground. Side lines would be better.

4. *To prevent a horse throwing his head and wasting his feed from the feed-bag:*

Put on one side line, then tie the halter shank, as short as necessary, to the front pastern that has the side line on it.

5. The above instances will suggest many others where the side line may be used in restraining horses, being remarkably convenient and efficient for this purpose. For example, they can be used to cure rearing horses.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

### METHOD OF TRAINING TO SIDE LINES

1. Fasten side line first around either front pastern, then around hind pastern on same side.
2. Lead the horse forward one step at a time until he learns mechanism of the movement and that side-lined feet must move together.
3. Turn the horse loose and allow him to move at will or graze.
4. Keep side lines on for only short periods at a time, till skin of pastern is toughened and horse understands how to handle them.
5. The side lines are intended for use in grazing only, and horses should not be driven long distances nor hurried when side-lined.
6. An entire troop can be trained in two or three days.

### OBJECTION TO SIDE LINES

The following are some of the objections that I have heard made to side lines and my answers to them:

1. There is not enough use for the side line to make it worth carrying.

Answer. It is not always necessary, but the time when it is necessary is when the cavalry is doing its crucial work, which cannot be done by any other arm, and it is absolutely necessary to the highest success in that work.

2. Does not prevent stampedes.

Answer. If the side lines are made strong enough and are not worn out, they will not break; and if they do not break, the horse cannot stampede. The side line issued by the Ordnance Department in 1896 is considered strong enough.

3. Teaches horses to pace.

Answer. In ten years' experience I never saw a case, and it does not seem that it would teach pacing unless horses are driven considerable distances faster than a walk, neither of which is contemplated with side lines.

4. Causes injuries to fetlocks.

Answer. Experience shows that this is unlikely if horses are properly broken to side lines, gradually toughened, and not driven long distances or at fast gaits when side-lined. In case of soreness, bandage the pastern before putting on side line or dispense with the side line temporarily.

5. The trooper's pack is already too heavy.

Answer. That is true, but I would cut down something else. Each article of the equipment has its uses, but the side line is not the least useful. I sympathize with the cavalry horse, but do not think that any article of essential equipment should be stricken off the list; rather that the commanders should be authorized to leave them behind for a particular campaign or a particular

## BRITISH CAVALRY IN PALESTINE AND SYRIA

march, as we did the sabers when going into Mexico and (if we were reasonably sure of having full forage) as we might leave off side lines, but not otherwise. Besides, there are many other ways of saving the horses.

a. Leave off the lariat and picket pin. They are not needed when the side lines are used for grazing, though they have other uses that the side line cannot perform.

b. Remove the saddles and relieve the horse of his load at every opportunity; the side line greatly facilitates this.

c. Make the marching hours short and the resting hours long by marching at the proper gait.

d. Dismount and lead, instead of stopping to rest, for periods so short as not to warrant removing saddles.

The side line is vitally necessary when cavalry is making long daily marches and dependent on grazing for long forage, and this is usually the case when cavalry is doing its most important work. This use of the side line alone justifies its place as an indispensable part of the cavalryman's equipment. The rest and feed that it enables the horse to obtain more than compensate for his effort in carrying it.

Let any two troops of cavalry participate in an active campaign under average conditions, one equipped with the side line and trained in its use, and the other not, and the value of the side line will be speedily demonstrated.

## The British Cavalry in Palestine and Syria

BY

Lieutenant-Colonel EDWARD DAVIS, Cavalry

(Observer with the British Army)

### THE CONQUEST OF SYRIA (Continued)

NIGHTFALL of September 20, 1918, found the Cavalry Corps in possession of all avenues of escape available to the Turkish forces west of the River Jordan. In their great ride to the north they had overrun the plain of Armageddon, figuratively disclosed in the Book of Revelation as the battlefield of the Apocalypse, on which the final struggle between Good and Evil is to be fought. The Yeomanry, the Indian Lancers, and the Australians—the latter with their new swords—cared little for any future struggle, but, in the guise of Good, fought it out on the spot with the "Evil Turk."

In the meantime the second phase, the air attack, had attained full blast. It had actually started a few hours before the great "break-through," when a Handley Page bomber, piloted by Captain Ross Smith, rose from the Aus-

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

trafians' aërodrome at Ramleh about half-past 1 on the morning of September 19. This machine had just flown all the way out from England. Captain Smith made straight for Afule, the principal signal center of the Turkish forces, and dropped his half ton of bombs so accurately that he practically wiped out telegraph and telephone communication between Turkish General Headquarters at Nazareth and the Army and Corps Headquarters to the south. Before the necessarily extensive repairs could be made, the Cavalry Corps was itself in possession of Nazareth and Afule. As the cavalry rushed to the north, special air squadrons bombed all Turkish telegraph and telephone exchanges throughout the Turkish area, completely deranging communication. Relays of British planes hovering over enemy aërodromes kept the German machines on the ground. The severance of wire and airplane communication was so complete that the division commanders in the Turkish line not only were unaware of the cavalry encirclement, but were without any information other than of the great attack in progress on their right flank. On the 20th and 21st, as the Turks began to withdraw all along the line, the Royal Air Force dealt some of the severest blows of the entire attack. On the road leading from Nablus toward the Jisr ed Damie crossing of the River Jordan, they discovered an enemy column of guns and transport, about six miles in length, passing through a defile. Attacking the head of the column, they continued their bombing on a schedule of two machines arriving over the objective every three minutes, with an additional six machines arriving every half hour. Between 8 o'clock in the morning and noon they had blown up in the narrow road 87 pieces of artillery, 55 automobile trucks, 4 automobiles, and 932 wagons. Thousands of dead animals lay among the debris, and the troops that closed in on the area a little later gathered in some 1,500 prisoners. In this and other instances the Air Force achieved startling combat successes, but from the cavalry standpoint their greatest contribution had been the annihilation of the telegraph, the telephone, and the enemy airplanes as means of intercommunication.

The next phase was that of the infantry attack all along the line, from the great hole in the Turkish defenses next to the sea, through which the cavalry had passed, to the River Jordan on the east, with the main thrust in the sector north of Jerusalem. This was the final push to dislodge the remaining enemy divisions, most of the German troops being in this sector, and to start them all on their retreat back into the cavalry net. Had the break-through at the coast proved only a partial or ordinary success, these troops in the Jerusalem sector would have borne the brunt of the operations, because they were faced by the most difficult of physical obstacles, the greatest density of enemy troops, and perhaps his best regiments. It was also indicated by the enemy positions here that his dispositions in depth were probably all that they should have been, and this gave rise to the feeling that they would be found likewise effectively disposed in the coastal sector. Against this feeling of anxiety was the personal estimate of the Commander-in-Chief himself, that Marshal Liman von Sanders

## BRITISH CAVALRY IN PALESTINE AND SYRIA

had actually entrusted his western defenses to thin formations. By the night of the 19th it was known in the center that the judgment of the Commander-in-Chief had proved to be correct, as usual, and that the cavalry were already far around the Turkish right. The assault scheduled for that night went through with great confidence, the Irish of the 10th Division and the Welsh of the 53d immediately scoring initial, though small, successes, which they enlarged on the 21st, the Irish advancing 24 miles in 24 hours over the roughest country, while the Welsh got astride the last remaining road to the River Jordan.

Thus, between daylight of the 19th and nightfall of the 21st, the VII and VIII Turkish armies, lying west of the Jordan, had been trapped and put on the verge of destruction by operations in swift sequence: the break-through on the coast and the encircling movement of the cavalry, the complete disruption of intercommunications by the Air Force, and the final steady drive into the awaiting net by the infantry. But there was another Turkish army, the IV, which lay east of the River Jordan, with about 6,000 rifles, 2,000 sabers, and 74 guns, augmented by Hejaz Railway garrison troops totaling about 6,000 rifles and 30 guns. This IV army and its related troops were to be taken care of by a detachment called "Chaytor's Force," after its commander, Major General Chaytor, of New Zealand, who had at his disposal his own cavalry division, the "Anzacs," one Indian infantry brigade, two battalions of British West India troops (negroes), the two Jewish battalions, four batteries, and other essential divisional troops. The veteran troopers of the Anzac Division were naturally the strength and the skill of this detachment. The Indian Brigade was likewise good, following the traditions of the Indian Army. The West Indians had had many ups and downs since the days before Gaza, and there were various opinions as to their fighting value. They had yet to show that they could keep up with this army. The Jewish troops were an unknown quantity and got a certain amount of good-natured "joshing" in that mischievous way which seems to characterize the soldiers of all armies. They were called the "Jordan Highlanders," and their motto was said to be "No advance without security," all of which bantering they received with the great good humor and broadmindedness which has had so much to do with their racial achievements in many fields.

The mission of this composite force was to engage the attention of the IV Turkish Army to the greatest extent without risking battle prematurely, to protect the right flank of the troops operating west of the Jordan, and to seize the Jisr ed Damie crossing at the earliest opportunity. They advanced on the 21st and got on the road leading from Nablus to the river crossing, though the Jisr ed Damie was not actually taken until the night of the 22d. This completed their co-operation in so far as the isolation of the VII and VIII Turkish armies was concerned. Their offensive against the IV Army will be described later.

In the meantime the Cavalry Corps, blocking all the roads leading to the plain of Esdraelon, had entered fully on that activity known as "reaping the

fruits of victory." In the words of one who played a leading part both in the planning and the execution of the great coup, "When the tired Turks came rolling out onto the plain, pursued by the infantry and the airplanes, they were a delightful prey for our lancers and swordsmen." On the right flank the 3d Australian Brigade began to effect large captures immediately upon securing their objective, the town of Jenin. As the advance guard approached Jenin on September 20, a large enemy camp was discovered in an olive grove, and a mounted charge by one troop, supported quickly by two more troops, forced the surrender of 1,800 Turks and Germans, who were taken completely by surprise. The brigade continued its advance and seized the town itself, the entire column having marched 11 miles in 70 minutes, following its first advance of 51 miles in 24 hours. An enemy force of 3,000 men was captured in Jenin just as darkness came on. The 10th Light Horse Regiment then moved toward a position covering a pass on the road south of Jenin to await the approach of Turks coming out of the hills. A machine-gun troop of about 25 men, while attempting to join the leading squadron, actually got ahead of it in the road, and at about 9 o'clock at night came upon a large body of enemy troops in a narrow gorge. Despite the odds against him, the lieutenant commanding the troop decided to bluff it out and called on the Turks to surrender, putting a burst of machine-gun fire close over their heads at the same time. Taken by surprise and being unable to make out the lieutenant's real force in the dim moonlight, the Turks and Germans, penned in the narrow gorge, with machine-gun fire playing over their heads, decided to surrender. Their total force was 2,800 men and 4 guns. The early arrival of other troops relieved the lieutenant of any anxiety he may have had as to the disposal of his big capture. Altogether, on the first night of its arrival in rear of the Turks, the 3d Brigade captured 8,000 prisoners, 5 guns, 2 airplanes, several machine-guns, and a disbursing officer's safe containing gold and silver equivalent to \$100,000. Not all of this array of booty came in large captures, by any means. Patrols under lieutenants and non-commissioned officers, covering roads to the south and east, effecting liaison with contiguous units, picked up smaller enemy detachments. They followed the example set by the larger elements of the brigade and charged mounted whenever there was opportunity to employ this swift and decisive method.

The 5th Cavalry Division, it will be recalled, had assaulted Nazareth, the Turkish General Headquarters, on September 20th, capturing 2,000 prisoners. It remained somewhat in rear of the center of the Cavalry Corps, ready to support either the 4th Cavalry Division or the Australians and also watching the roads toward the Mediterranean, where, at Haifa and the Acre, a little to the north, there were Turkish garrisons of considerable strength. On September 23 the Fifth Division, turning directly away from the corps, marched northwest to capture those two seaports and to make Haifa available as a base from which supplies could be carried to the east, on the road Haifa-Nazareth-Tiberias. The Commander-in-Chief was already preparing to lay his hand on Damascus.

One column of the 5th Division, moving to the right, captured Acre after slight opposition. The other column, the 14th and 15th Brigades, disposed of serious opposition at Haifa by a series of mounted charges, supported by horse artillery and machine-guns. The place was held by forces stronger in men and guns than the British attacking units, but the latter won the day with comparatively small losses. The Jodhpur Lancers, in column of squadrons in line of troop columns, approached the east side of the town, rode down an opposition of machine-gunners and riflemen, capturing three pieces of artillery, and ultimately charging mounted straight through the town. The Mysore Lancers and the Sherwood Rangers, assaulting on the south side of the place, galloped the enemy positions, capturing 5 pieces of artillery, 2 machine-guns, and over 200 prisoners. In less than an hour's fighting Haifa had been taken, and with it 17 pieces of artillery, 11 machine-guns, and 1,360 Turks and Germans. Being relieved the next day by troops of the 7th Infantry Division who had been sent up in motor trucks, the 5th Division withdrew to join the Cavalry Corps in its advance on Damascus.

The 4th Cavalry Division had captured Beisan and the bridge over the Jordan, Jisr Mejamie, by the night of September 20, after their great advance of 85 miles in 34 hours and 100 miles in 36 hours. During the 21st they captured 3,000 Turks coming out of the hills from the south. On the 23d the Turks discovered a ford across the Jordan south of Beisan and began to escape from the cavalry net in considerable numbers. The 11th Brigade was sent to block this exit, one regiment, 36th Jacob's Horse, going down the east bank of the Jordan, while the County of London Yeomanry and the 29th Lancers followed the west bank. A mounted charge by the 29th Lancers against the Turks' main position on the mound netted 800 prisoners and 25 machine-guns. Jacob's Horse, on the east bank, made two mounted charges, which were unsuccessful on account of bad ground. Reinforced by a squadron of the 29th Lancers, Jacob's Horse galloped the enemy once more, and this time successfully. In the meantime the Turk had lost his artillery to the Middlesex Yeomanry, who had forded the river at a point south and charged mounted against the guns. This series of fights at the Abu Naj ford was hotly contested, the Hampshire Battery, going into action at the gallop, having every one of its guns hit within a very few minutes. The Turk withdrew after the loss of his guns. It had been a hard but brilliant day for the British, who had captured 3,000 Turks, 30 machine-guns, and 10 pieces of artillery. The 11th Brigade and other units of the 4th Cavalry Division continued southward in the Jordan Valley the next day, charging mounted against the demoralized enemy whenever he showed signs of opposition. Their decisive action, supported by the fast work of the Hampshire Battery, brought them captures of 29 machine-guns, 8,000 rifles, and 5,000 Turks, including Rushdi Bey, commanding the 16th Turkish Division.

While the Cavalry Corps, as such, had played the leading part in wrecking the Turkish VII and VIII armies, the cavalry of the XX and XXI Infantry

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Corps had been doing important work on a smaller scale. Each of General Allenby's Infantry Corps had normally one regiment as corps cavalry, this force being considered large enough, in view of the presence of the Cavalry Corps and the fact that the Commander-in-Chief knew how to employ the latter so as to reap the utmost benefit from its services. The Worcester Yeomanry Regiment was the corps cavalry of the XX Corps and a composite Yeomanry Regiment performed like service for the XXI. For the advance into Syria, however, the entire 5th Australian Cavalry Brigade was attached to the XXI Corps to protect the latter's left in its great wheel to the east after it had opened the ten-mile gate in the Turkish trench line next to the sea. On this occasion the corps cavalry got ahead of the XXI Corps as the great swing to the east progressed, and thus arrived first at Tul Keram, the final objective, a well fortified place and depot of considerable importance. The brigadier sent one regiment to get astride the road leading east, thus cutting off the escape of a large column of transport, while he attacked the town from the north, assisted by planes of the Royal Air Force. By the time the leading brigade of the corps arrived the town was ready to fall, and did, at the first rush. But the corps cavalry, watering their horses after dark, then made an all-night march across country to cut the railway east of Ajje, accomplished this at daylight, and then marched back to Tul Keram, a total march of about 30 miles. On the same day they protected the left flank of the corps as it resumed its advance eastward on Nablus. After the latter place was captured one squadron rode south down the Jerusalem road and connected with the XX Corps Cavalry, the Worcester Yeomanry, thus fulfilling its duties as to liaison between the two corps. On September 22 the 5th Australian Brigade terminated its duties as Corps Cavalry and rejoined the Australian Division near Jenin, having taken over 3,500 prisoners during its three days with the XXI Corps. The Worcester Yeomanry Regiment, with the XX Corps, advanced with the 10th and 53d Divisions during the night attack of September 20th and effected liaison with the cavalry of the XXI Corps on the west during the following day. Two days later they connected with the 4th Cavalry Division on the east, while the latter were operating in the Jordan Valley.

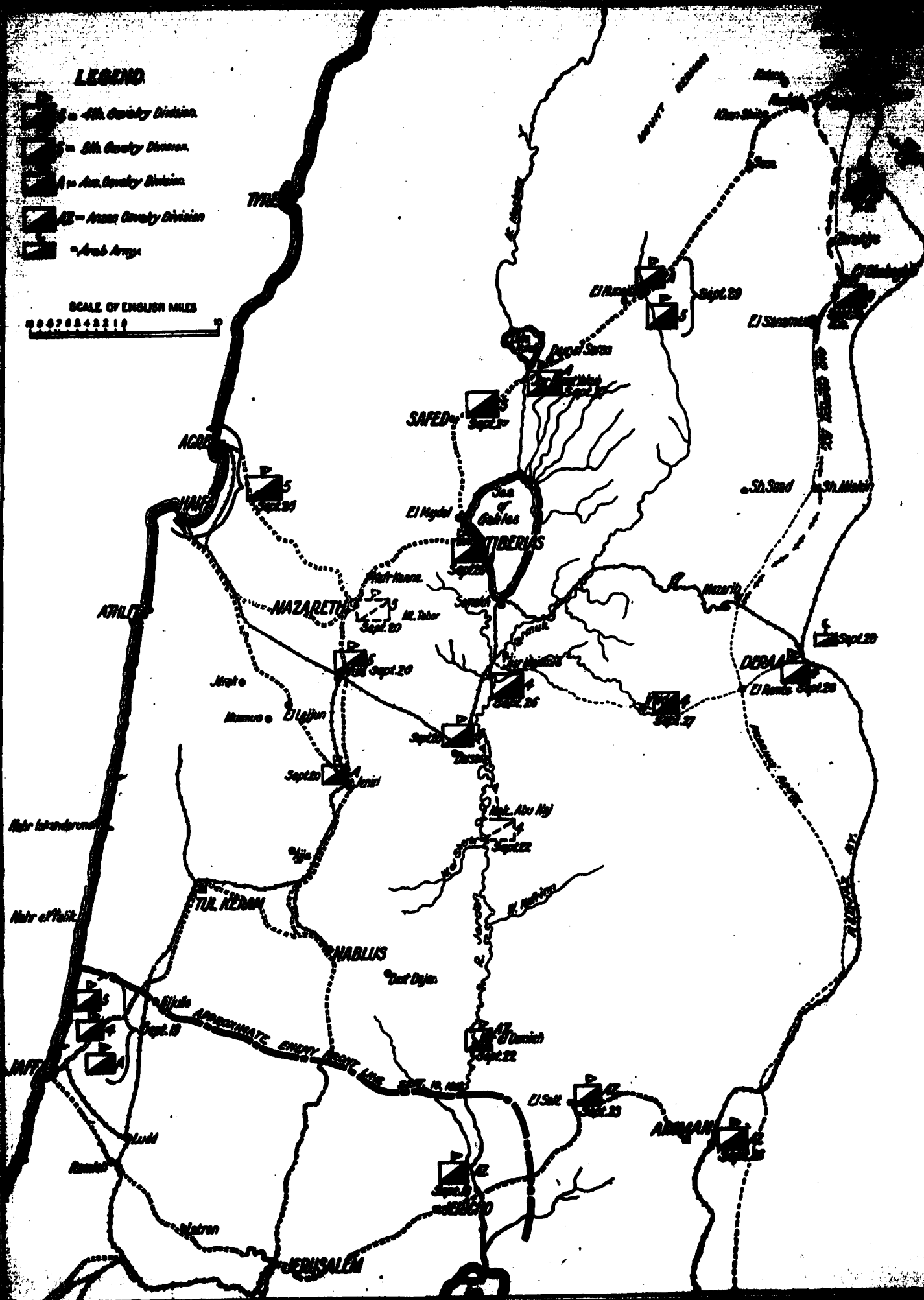
By the night of the 24th of September, six days after the operations began, General Allenby's troops had completely wrecked the two Turkish armies west of the Jordan. A veteran force intrenched for 9 months in terrain favoring the defense had been dislodged from a line 40 miles long, its formations pounded to pieces, harassed, killed, and captured, together with all of its accumulated supplies and most of its guns. This extraordinary destruction was made possible by the Cavalry Corps, and in that organization the factors that brought results were fast and sustained marching, the mounted attack, and the effective co-operation of the horse batteries and the machine-guns.

As the fragments of the Turkish VII and VIII armies that got across the Jordan began their desperate rear-guard actions in the direction of Damascus, that ancient capital of the Arab world became the objective of another retreat-

# LEGEND

- 4th Cavalry Division
- 5th Cavalry Division
- Arm. Cavalry Division
- Arabs Cavalry Division
- Arab Army

SCALE OF ENGLISH MILES  
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10



THE BRITISH CAVALRY IN PALESTINE AND SYRIA

## BRITISH CAVALRY IN PALESTINE AND SYRIA

ing Turkish force, the IV Army, which had been attacked by "Chaytor's Force" east of the Jordan. On September 23 that army began its withdrawal in good order, still full of fight, though General Chaytor, by his capture of Amman on September 24 and his seizure of all accessible water supplies, cut off and made imperative the surrender of the entire II Army Corps, which had furnished the Hejaz Railway garrisons south of Amman. Merely harassing that part of the IV Army which was withdrawing toward Damascus only to encounter almost complete annihilation at Deraa, General Chaytor turned his attention to the forces he had trapped. By September 28 he had captured 10,000 Turks, 57 pieces of artillery, 147 machine-guns, 11 railway engines, 106 railway cars, together with supplies, equipment, and ammunition in proportionate quantities. The Anzac Cavalry Division, by its mobility, gave "Chaytor's Force" its ability to cut off the II Corps. Although there were several mounted charges during the attack on Amman, few opportunities for this class of work were available to "Chaytor's Force."

The advance of the Cavalry Corps on Damascus was the next phase of the campaign—a task accomplished entirely by the cavalry and its various auxiliaries. The 5th Cavalry Division and the Australian Division, advancing by the route Nazareth-Tiberias-Jisr Benat Yakub-Kuneitra-Kaukab-Damascus, had 90 miles to go. The 4th Cavalry Division, pursuing the Turks by the route Beisan-Jisr Mejamie-Irbid-Remte-Mezerib, thence north along the old French railway, had 120 miles to go. Two days' rations and forage were carried; after that they lived off the country. As to wheels, only guns, ammunition wagons, and ambulances were allowed. It was estimated that 45,000 Turks were in Damascus or retreating on it. Although disorganized, time was all they needed to establish some kind of a new front, and with true Turkish persistence, to start the whole thing over again. But the Commander-in-Chief expected his cavalry to deny the Turks this element of time and also to further eliminate their forces. By September 25 the infantry came up to take over the garrison responsibilities in all the towns from the sea to the River Jordan, and the cavalry were off the next day on a new offensive, in which, as will be seen, the factors that produced results were again fast marching and reliance on the mounted charge whenever possible.

As a preliminary move, on September 25 the 4th Australian Brigade, still commanded by Grant, who led it at Beersheba, attacked Semakh, a small town at the south end of Lake Tiberias (the Sea of Galilee). Encountering the enemy just before daylight, a mounted charge by two squadrons of the 11th Regiment, in the dark, got them clear into the streets of the town, where very desperate fighting continued for an hour, before the place was captured. The Teutonic allies of the Turks were conspicuous here, their resistance being described by an Australian as follows: . . . "the Germans, drunk, desperate, and under orders to fight to a finish, obeyed, as becometh good soldiers." Immediately after capturing Semakh, mobility was availed of and a squadron sent straight off north to Tiberias, where it assisted in the capture of



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

that town before dark, galloping the place from the southwest, while troops of another regiment galloped it from the north and armored cars came in on the road from Nazareth. At Semakh the Australians lost 17 killed, 60 wounded, and had 77 horses killed. The enemy lost 70 killed and 50 wounded, while 390 Turks and Germans surrendered.

The town of Tiberias, on the sea of Galilee, was the rendezvous of the 3d and 4th Australian Brigades on September 26, while the 5th Brigade approached from Nazareth. Villages to the north, along the shore, were reconnoitered by a detachment of two troops. An entire squadron, with two machine-guns, left the brigade at Mejdal to feel out Safed, 12 miles north. Early on the morning of September 27 the entire Australian division advanced, their objective being the Jisr (Bridge) Benat Yakub, which the enemy had blown up. The leading brigade had one regiment and six machine-guns as advance guard. The enemy stood in force at the bridge, determined to delay the Australians' crossing to the utmost, in order to give the Turkish IV Army, over at Deraa, as much advantage as possible in the great parallel pursuit which was now beginning. Attacking with two brigades, the division commander engaged the enemy from the west bank with two batteries, a machine-gun squadron, and the riflemen of the French detachment, while the 3d Brigade gradually effected a crossing north of the bridge and the 5th Brigade swam the river some miles to the south, forcing the enemy out of his position after some sharp fighting in the dark. The blowing up of the bridge kept all wheels, including the artillery, on the west bank, but the corps' bridging train came up at midnight to repair the break. As the work had not been completed the next morning, the guns of the artillery were finally crossed at one of the fords some time after 9 o'clock and moved up to Deir el Saras, where the two cavalry brigades had arrived late the night before. The enemy was using motor trucks to assist his withdrawal, but was pursued so promptly that he could not stop to defend Kuneitra, where the Australian Division bivouacked on the night of September 28. Here the 5th Cavalry Division caught up with the Australians. They had been close behind at the Jisr Benat Yakub, but a motor truck had broken down the temporary arch which the engineers had built at the old bridge, and this had seriously delayed the division. The Turkish 3d Cavalry Division, or the remnants of it, was now on the road ahead, among the enemy troops retreating on Damascus. Their presence added to the interest, as they were indeed old opponents of the Australians, dating away back to pre-Gaza days.

Before going farther with the Australian Division and the 5th Cavalry Division, one should turn to the activities of the 4th Cavalry Division, which had been given the task of pushing straight east from the Jisr Mejameh, across the Jordan, to Deraa, on the Hejaz Railway, there to intercept the IV Turkish Army as the latter came up from the Amman region, harassed by the Arab contingent under Lieutenant-Colonel Lawrence. On September 26, when the 4th Cavalry Division crossed the Jordan, the Turks were hurrying north along

## BRITISH CAVALRY IN PALESTINE AND SYRIA

the old Pilgrim route, through Remte, with a strong flank guard holding Irbid, to the west. The 10th Cavalry Brigade encountered this flank guard in the afternoon, and one squadron charged mounted, but without fire support, against a position that proved too difficult as to terrain and too strong as to troops, the squadron suffering a loss of about half its strength. Another regiment, the 38th Central India Horse, attacking dismounted, was also driven back, but during the night the Turks withdrew to join their main force. The next morning Lawrence, with his Arabs, attacked the head of the IV Army column, capturing 500 Turks at Sheikh Saad. On the same day the 10th Brigade made contact with the Turks at Remte. Here the Dorset Yeomanry and the Berks Battery, with the same teamwork that they had displayed at El Mughar and Abu Shushah, almost a year before, gave a typical illustration of joint cavalry and horse-battery work. While making a dismounted demonstration to cover a movement of the remainder of the brigade, the Dorsets were heavily counter-attacked by the Turks and very hard pressed. Having their led horses very near, the Dorsets, by quick work, mounted, and charged the counter-attack in the open, to the complete surprise of the Turks, 25 of whom were killed with the sword, while the others fled and were dispersed by the fire of the Berks Battery. The 38th Central India Horse gave the Turks their final boost north by charging them mounted, killing a good number, capturing 187 Turks and 20 machine-guns. On the 28th the entire division entered Deraa and joined forces with Lawrence's Arabs and all the other Arabs, who had sprung to arms as soon as the Turks seemed to be in full retreat. Less the 10th Brigade, the division moved rapidly north along the Pilgrim route and the old French railway, arriving at El Ghabaghib, about 30 miles south of Damascus, on the morning of the 30th.

In the meantime the two other divisions, over on the Mount Hermon road, resumed their advance from Kuneitra on the night of September 29, the Australian Division leading. In an engagement at midnight and for a few hours thereafter the advance regiments dislodged a Turko-German rear guard, capturing 25 prisoners, 2 guns, and 7 machine-guns. In the pursuit immediately following, 350 prisoners, 400 rifles, 1 gun, and 8 machine-guns were taken. At Kaukab, 10 miles from Damascus, an enemy force of 2,500 infantry with guns was encountered, holding a ridge. Two batteries shelled the position, the 4th Australian Regiment galloped it in front, and the 12th Australian Regiment charged mounted against the enemy's left flank, dislodging the defenders and taking the greater number of the Turks prisoners. The two divisions then quickly began to encircle Damascus on the northwest, west, and south. The Australians, the French Detachment, and a New Zealand Machine-gun Detachment caught several thousand enemy troops attempting to escape to Beirut by rail and road through the narrow Abana gorge northwest of the city. A train full of officers and men was raked with fire and stopped; the head of the column of foot troops, horsemen, and transport was likewise cut down, and a panic quickly ensued in the narrow defile. About 400 of the

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

enemy were killed in this gorge and over 4,000 were captured. Two brigades of the 5th Cavalry Division galloped to the east, cutting up a Turkish column coming from the south, capturing 576 prisoners and 4 guns and forcing other Turkish troops back on the 4th Cavalry Division, which was just approaching Damascus on its long march from the Jordan via Deraa. Later in the afternoon about 1,000 more Turks were captured by the troops operating south of the city, the last remnant of the Turkish 3d Cavalry Division, the division commander and his staff finally being taken.

Damascus fell early on the morning of October 1, 1918. The 3d Australian Brigade moved around west of and through the city without stopping for ceremony, hurrying northeast along the road to Homs, pursuing and capturing prisoners, charging mounted against the enemy wherever found. The entire 5th Cavalry Division moved around east of Damascus, joining the Australians on the Homs road. Cavalry Corps headquarters were established in Damascus and troops took over the city to preserve order and to restrain the exuberance of the Arab army, which had also arrived.

Thus, in 12 days the goal had been attained. Three cavalry divisions had each marched over 200 miles, and their combined captures included over 60,000 prisoners, 140 guns, and 500 machine-guns. Their extraordinary dash in all respects and especially their almost habitual employment of the mounted charge, supported by fire action, not only made such great destruction to the enemy possible, but kept their own casualties to the low figures of 125 killed, 365 wounded, and 43 reported missing.

## The Colorado Endurance Ride

BY

Captain HERBERT E. WATKINS, 13th Cavalry \*

**U**NDER orders from the War Department, Captain D. S. Perry, Lieutenant Theodore E. Voigt, and myself, all of the 13th Cavalry, shipped three horses on the 13th day of July from Fort D. A. Russell, Wyo., to Colorado Springs, Colo., to enter them in the Colorado Endurance Ride, held at Colorado Springs from July 13 to August 3, 1923. These three horses were transported by the Government, and the officers and an orderly for each officer were placed on detached service and furnished transportation to and from Colorado Springs.

Prior to shipping to Colorado Springs, Lieutenant Voigt and myself had kept our horses in training for the ride for a period of three months, riding them daily, except Sunday, over a gradually increasing course until we were

\*Captain Watkins is winner this year and last year of the Colorado Endurance Ride. A picture of Norfolk Star appeared in the CAVALRY JOURNAL, January, 1923.

## THE COLORADO ENDURANCE RIDE

giving them twenty miles each day, which ride we continued for a period of one month. During this period we increased their feed to sixteen pounds of crushed oats and unlimited hay per day. The oats were fed four times per day, as follows: at six a. m. four pounds, at eleven a. m. two pounds, at four p. m. four pounds, and at eight p. m. six pounds. When the horses were brought in from exercise we had their backs massaged for one-half hour with lotion and placed bandages soaked in white lotion loosely on all four legs from the knee and hock joints to below the fetlock joints. During this period of training the horses carried only the normal weight of saddle and rider, in my case 195 pounds.

After the horses had rested one day from their shipment to Colorado Springs, we added sufficient weight to our saddles to make up the required 225 pounds, and rode them each day for three hours over parts of the course which was to be followed in the ride. During this period we cut their oat feed to fourteen pounds, fed at the same times as before, taking one pound each from the early morning and afternoon feed. We continued this exercise until four days before the start of the ride, when we took off the extra weight and cut their exercise to one hour each day.

The course for the ride was laid out in the vicinity of Colorado Springs, starting and finishing each day at the Broadmoor Hotel. The roads over which we traveled were ordinary motor highways of graded dirt and gravel, with pavement only at a few crossings. They were universally very hilly, and on the third day especially we climbed fifteen hundred feet between the start and the noon halt. The course was approximately 300 miles in length covered in five successive days.

The conditions of the 1923 ride were changed to make them identical with those of the Eastern Endurance Ride. The horses entered were required to be of known breeding, and only pure-bred, cross-bred, and grade horses were permitted to enter. The horses were required to carry a minimum of 225 pounds and were allowed fourteen pounds of grain per day, with unlimited hay. The riders were allowed a groom to care for their horses at the night halt. Each day's ride must be completed in not less than nine hours nor more than eleven hours, and the entire ride must be completed in not more than fifty hours. The scoring was based on an allowance of forty points for a perfect time score of forty hours and sixty points for perfect condition of the horse. Condition of the rider was not taken into consideration in the scoring.

The arrangements made by the officials for the conduct of the ride were the best possible. The stable furnished by the Broadmoor Hotel has light, airy box stalls, with plenty of room to care for the horses outside. The five routes selected were carefully laid out to avoid pavement, every turn was marked with an arrow, and each mile was marked with a numbered disk. The spirit of officials and riders in the ride was excellent. The officials were uniformly courteous and helpful and worried only that every one should have an exactly square deal and every bit of help possible to render. Each of the riders was determined

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

to do everything possible to win the race, and at the same time was always anxious to help the other fellow and careful to take no advantage not allowed by the rules of the ride.

There were nineteen horses present for the preliminary judging of horses, and each owner and rider was careful to point out to the judges at this time all the defects, blemishes, and injuries of his horse—something very unusual in horse judging! Of the nineteen horses entered, four were thoroughbred, five were half thoroughbred, five were standard-bred, one was saddle-bred, and the rest were a mixture of all these breeds, with a little Percheron and Morgan thrown in. There were five entries from the Army, including one from the Remount Service, and one horse was ridden by an officer of the Reserve Corps, Major H. R. K. Tompkins, from Denver, who made a very splendid showing with his horse.

Of the nineteen horses which entered on the first day, only seven were present at the finish of the ride. The other horses dropped out along the road, disqualified for various causes, the most frequent of which was fatigue. The two other entries from Fort D. A. Russel had hard luck on the first day. Captain Perry's horse, *Commodore*, died when about three-fourths of the way to the finish, and Lieutenant Voigt's horse, *Boise*, was not permitted to start the second morning by the judges. *Commodore* had a rupture of the stomach, brought on by colic, an unavoidable accident and one which the judges and veterinarians were unanimous in agreeing was due to no fault or neglect of the rider. *Boise* seemed to finish in very good condition, but while being cooled out gave evidence of distress, and, although given relief by the veterinarians, would not eat either that evening nor the next morning. After a day's rest he seemed to recover entirely and to be in excellent condition.

Following are the details of the final results of the ride:

Standing.	Name, breeding.	Sex.	Color.	Age.	Height.	Weight at start.	Weight at finish.	Loss.
1.	<i>Norfolk Star</i> , thoroughbred.....	G	Ch	8	16½ in	1,000	985	15
2.	<i>Nintu</i> , thoroughbred .....	M	Bay	aged	15.3	1,045	1,030	15
3.	<i>Bags</i> , half standard-bred.....	M	Br	8	15¼	950	935	15
4.	<i>Indianola</i> , cross-bred.....	G	Ch	7	15.3½	1,080	1,065	15
5.	<i>Captain</i> , standard-bred .....	G	Ch	8	15.1	1,055	1,005	50
6.	<i>Kansas</i> , saddle-bred .....	G	Ch	10	16¾	1,160	1,125	35
7.	<i>Chief</i> , standard-bred .....	G	Ch	7	15.2½	1,065	1,005	60

	Girth.		Score.		Final.	Total time.
	Heart.	Loan.	Speed.	Condition.		
1.....	72	73	31.47	58	89.47	46.04
2.....	74½	74	34.14	53	87.14	45.44
3.....	72	72	26	56	82	46.45
4.....	73	71	32	47	79	46.00
5.....	72½	69	25.07	50	75.07	46.52
6.....	73½	77½	19.60	44	63.60	47.33
7.....	71½	72½	24.96	Unassigned		46.53

## LOSS OF "COMMODORE"

Only six prizes were offered and seven horses finished. Mr. Lafayette Hughes, of Denver, with splendid sportsmanship, awarded a prize to the seventh horse equal in amount to that won by the horse which was awarded sixth prize.

*The Rider and Driver* says of the race:

*Norfolk Star*, the winner, did not make the best time registered in the contest. That honor went to *Nintu*, sleek little mare of Lieutenant M. M. Corpening, but when his diminutive rival and other rivals began to lag, as the last hard sixty-mile grind drew to a close, *Norfolk Star* had reached his goal.

A wonderful specimen of horseflesh, he proudly faced critical judges, Saturday morning, in as perfect physical shape as the day the race started. He had been over 300 miles of hard, hilly road, carrying a heavy rider, but *Norfolk Star's* powers of endurance had not even been stretched.

Lieutenant Corpening rode his little mare *Nintu* at a killing pace, but she made the distance without a whimper. When the last day's grind was started, *Nintu* had a clear lead on every other contestant, but that last long jaunt took the "pep" from the little mare in just enough measure to allow her to be eclipsed.

The first prize was \$600 and a handsome individual trophy cup.

## Loss of "Commodore" in the Colorado Endurance Ride

Captain DONALD S. PERRY, 13th Cavalry

THE horse entered by me in the Colorado Endurance Ride of 1923 was a standard-bred, thoroughbred cross, 16 hands 1 inch in height and weighing 1,100 pounds, 12 years old, name *Commodore*.

His training was commenced about May 1, 1923, at which time he was considerably overweight and soft. I was guided largely by the article in the CAVALRY JOURNAL of January, 1923, by Major Wainwright, on the training of army horses for the Eastern Endurance Ride of 1922; also by the advice of Lieutenant-Colonel W. H. Neil, Remount Service.

At the start I did considerable walking, mostly over hilly ground just north of the post—this to turn the fat into muscle and to develop the wind. Later I gave *Commodore* two or three long, slow rides per week, between twenty and twenty-five miles, one day per week fast work only at trot and gallop and the rest of the time walking. He started carrying weight about July 10, or three weeks before the ride.

He was fed 14 pounds of oats per day, one feed of bran per week, and all the hay he would eat. At the start of his training he was given several hours grazing each day, but this was soon cut down to half an hour, and then to about 20 minutes daily.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

On July 13 *Commodore* was shipped to Colorado Springs and stabled at the Broadmoor Hotel polo stables. From then on until two days before the ride his training was continued, the change of climate not affecting him at all. He was in splendid condition, feeling very high-lived, and whenever allowed to run loose would kick and squeal like a colt.

Preliminary examination of entered horses by judges and veterinarians was made on July 20. At this examination one of the veterinarians pronounced *Commodore* to be one of the best-conditioned horses among the entrants.

On Monday morning, July 30, the ride started. All horses were examined by the veterinarians before leaving stables and *Commodore* was absolutely normal. The course led to a ranch 30 miles out and about 1,300 feet lower in elevation than the starting point. I reached this ranch about 10:20 a. m., averaging a fraction over seven miles per hour. Twice on the way I stopped at water and sponged out the horse's nostrils, dock, and between hind legs. Once he drank, but not much. At noon stop he would not eat his oats, but did eat some grass and drank a little water. He was again examined by the veterinarians and was still normal. After about 25 minutes rest I started back. At the end of the 48th mile I noticed that *Commodore* was slowing up, and a few minutes later that he was bloating slightly. I immediately dismounted and led him to some grass at the side of the road, where I unsaddled. This was about 1:40 p. m. The secretary of the ride, Mr. Hayes, passed about this time in an automobile, and I requested him to notify one of the veterinarians to come up immediately. Mr. Hayes missed the veterinarian on the road, and the latter did not arrive for about 40 minutes. Soon after he was unsaddled *Commodore* fell down on his side, and at about 2:10 p. m. was dead.

An autopsy was made, and it was discovered that the horse died of acute indigestion, there being a split 14 inches long and a number of large holes in his stomach, caused by expansion of gas. The veterinarians could assign no reason for this, as the horse had eaten nothing except his usual feed of oats and hay the preceding feeds. The oats were clean and of good quality and the hay was a very good grade of timothy. The water along the road and in the valley at the noon stop was alkaline and might have been the cause, but all the other horses had the same water and it did not seem to affect them.

I do not know what caused the attack of acute indigestion that caused the death of *Commodore*. I had owned him for six and one-half years and had proved him a fine road horse many times on the Mexican border. *Commodore* was hot, but not overheated; he had shown no signs of exhaustion; he had not been pushed too fast.

I believe that the method of training used was right, and agree with the veterinarians, who said that the same thing might have happened in his stall at Fort Russell.

## LOSS OF "COMMODORE"

Major Henry Leonard, judge of the ride, writes:

DEAR COLONEL HARPER:

Captain Perry gave his mount most excellent care and rode him intelligently and judiciously; he had trained and prepared his horse conscientiously and painstakingly, and the animal's death was in no way ascribable to his neglect. As a matter of fact, as developed by autopsy, the horse died from an attack of acute indigestion engendered by something he ate. At the midday stop he was normal, as shown by his temperature, pulse, and respiration.

It was my desire to write you on this subject, because I have learned from experience that the Cavalry looks with suspicion upon an officer who loses a horse, and the burden of proof rests upon him to show it was not his fault. Captain Perry is a young officer who impressed me unusually favorably, both as a soldier and a horseman, and only credit is due him for his conduct in the endurance ride.

I want to congratulate you upon the performances generally of the officers of your command, and especially on Captain Watkins' success. We think well enough of him to put up the funds for his Eastern competition. All of this I happen to know rebounds to your credit in the Department, as it properly should.

Very sincerely,

HENRY LEONARD.



## Editorial Comment

### MODERN DEFENSE POLICIES INCREASE IMPORTANCE OF CAVALRY

CAVALRYMEN MUST LEARN to properly evaluate their arm and to insist forever and with indomitable spirit upon its proper maintenance and, indeed more: upon its expansion.

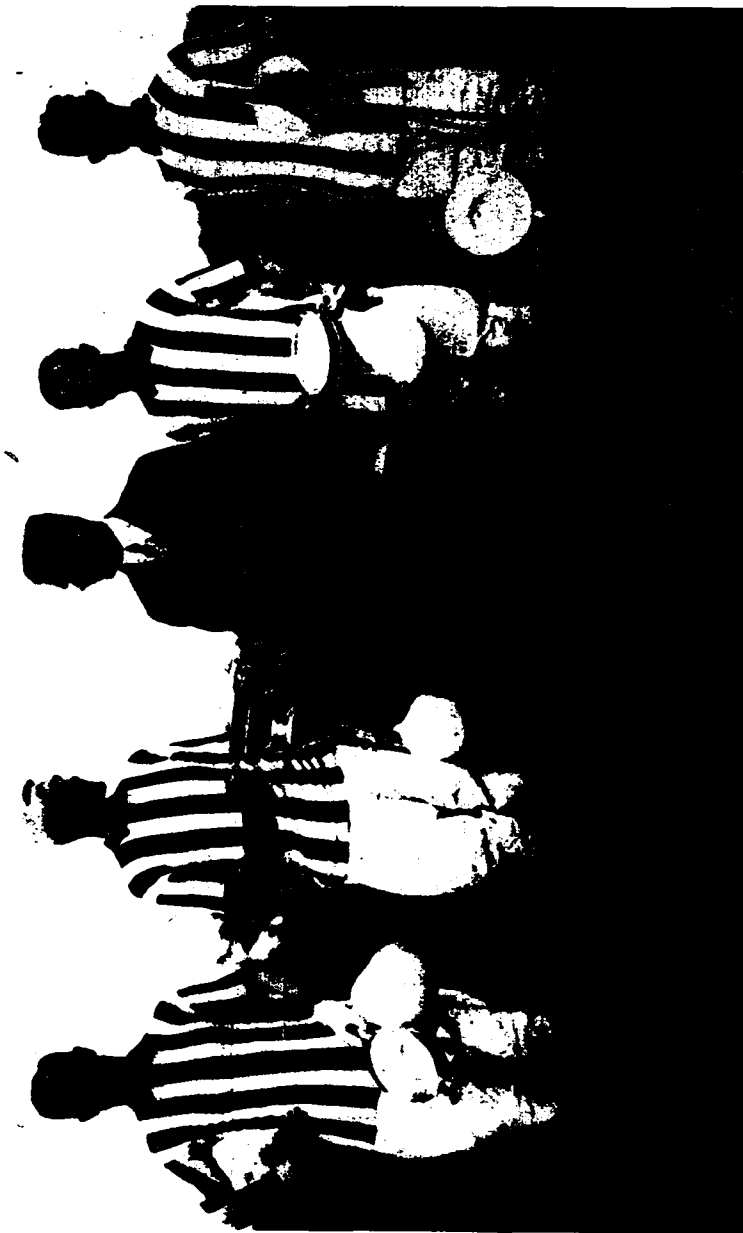
It is easy to demonstrate the need for a strong cavalry, but no one will exert himself greatly to demonstrate what does not intimately interest him. We cannot expect an infantryman to do more than admire the cavalry as a possible auxiliary, more given to romance than the bitter business of battle; we cannot expect the artilleryman to regard the cavalry as anything more than a possible difficult target; the airman will merely agree that the cavalry must co-operate in "his" reconnaissance. The cavalryman must state his own case if it is to be stated at all. Fortunately, we have some forceful souls in our ranks who, in and out of season, have preached and continue to preach the cavalry doctrine. It is for every cavalry officer to support this band of leaders. Every cavalryman must be an advocate of a strong cavalry, a stronger and stronger cavalry.

It should not be necessary to review here the grounds upon which that stand should be made. But one thing may be profitable to mention. Much of the reluctance to invest the cavalry with a proper importance is due to modern developments in warfare, particularly to the development of air service, tanks, gas, and increase of battle-fire of automatic weapons and artillery. A cavalryman should be ready-tongued to point out the fallacies that have become woven into many theories with respect to these developments and their effect on the employment of cavalry. Those fallacies have been exposed in the teachings of the Cavalry School at Fort Riley, in the pages of this JOURNAL, and in many articles in foreign service journals. There is no excuse for any cavalry officer to be apologetic for his arm. Five years of analysis of the World War have quite reversed the judgment pronounced upon the future of cavalry.

But it is not necessary to remain upon the defensive. After we have demonstrated to our critics that the developments of modern war have some of them modified, but none of them usurped or destroyed, the value of cavalry, then it is in order to point out a fact of primary importance.

The modern developments in organization for war have greatly increased the importance of cavalry. This fact is only beginning to be apparent and it is probably not yet appreciated except in limited circles. It is easy of demonstration.

Modern war has become a warfare of masses. Nations throw the weight of their whole strength into the conflict. But it must be borne in mind that this aggregate of offensive and defensive strength does not exist at the outbreak



WINNERS OF THE JUNIOR CHAMPIONSHIP AND THE INTERNATIONAL MILITARY POLO TOURNAMENT

Major Beard, Colonel Brown, Assistant Secretary of War Davis, Major Herr, Major Wilson  
(SEE POLO)



MAJOR R. R. D. McCULLOUGH, CAV. R. C.,  
Commander of the First Squadron of the 305th Cavalry (Pennsylvania) and his entry in the Devon Horse Show

## EDITORIAL COMMENT

of war and must be developed. The economic rivalry between nations will not permit more than a small proportion of their efforts to be bent toward preparation of this war strength. Yet the opening campaign of any war, the first few months, may easily be critical. Witness the anxiety which prevails as to what a strong air armament may accomplish during this initial period. A no-less-significant factor in respect to this period is the cavalry.

Practically alone, among all the land forces available at the outbreak of hostilities, the cavalry needs not to await an augmentation of her force to be effective. The possibility of creating effective cavalry after hostilities have commenced, in time to utilize to advantage, is admittedly precluded. The cavalry strength must, therefore, be complete at the start.

The cavalry which the nation has seen fit to provide against the day of national jeopardy must stop the first rush, if we are on the defensive. It is folly to argue the probability that we will never be attacked on our own soil. If one believed in such security, we would dispense with most of our land troops and confine our defense to the air service, the navy, and the coast defenses. If land troops are required at all, the cavalry must breast the onset as the one already-formed nucleus around which the mobilizing nation can array its growing strength. It may not be long before this strength is adequate for the task. Our defense policies are the result of careful study of all the possibilities, all possible combinations of enemy and all possible methods of organization of our own strength. Our infantry and artillery bulwarks will, part of them, acquire their war strength in a short time. However, much of this strength will be only partly trained. And there will remain a critical initial period during which the cavalry will be the sole land force, completely trained, armed cap-a-pie, ready to fight in any fashion, with all its accompanying auxiliary strength in guns and aircraft, with its radio communication giving unprecedented breadth to its intelligence and liaisons, to which the country will anxiously look for its security. The case is similar with a possible initial offensive.

It is, then, proper to advance the proposition: For every step taken in the direction of development of maximum national war strength that brings as an inevitable accompaniment a *dilution* of immediate effectiveness, the cavalry, as an actually existing combat force and not merely a potential one, *must be augmented*.

And this proposition follows quite as inevitably: With the necessity devolving upon the cavalry to be the *initial defender*, the combat potentialities of the arm must be increased. The cavalry must maintain itself as a self-dependent, highly organized combat arm in the truest sense, embodying within its own organization all reasonable means of attack and defense.

These theses are already recognized by some forward-thinking cavalrymen to be true. It remains for the body of cavalry officers everywhere to grasp their great significance and to bring and keep to the fore a demand for a serious consideration of the cavalry potentialities of the next war and the need for augmentation of our cavalry strength.



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

### STRONGER CAVALRY

ACCEPTING, THEN, THE PROPOSITION that the cavalry must be kept a true combat arm in this day of powerful engines of war, it is incumbent upon us to determine how we can increase our combat effectiveness—against any and all enemy troops and contrivances. We must not be deterred by gas; we must be able to cope with tank and aircraft, and we must admit the impassability of no obstacle, even of wire. It is apparent that the trooper, unaided, will never be able to overcome some of these difficulties. But we have already gone a long way beyond the capacity of the individual trooper. We have given our cavalry the automatic weapons, accompanying artillery, radio equipment, pioneer equipment, and are prepared to add other special means where required.

All this has been accomplished to the accompaniment of frequent barks of protest from those who could visualize nothing better than the line of flashing sabers or the romantic individual prowess of the old frontier days.

It is only a logical step to proclaim that we must go still farther and find the solution to the new problems. If we are inspired with this doctrine, we will somehow surmount the difficulties. It may quite transform the appearance of our cavalry units to do it. What matter? It may tax our essential quality of mobility to the utmost to do it. What matter, if we manage to retain that mobility? But, however it is to be accomplished, the striking power and defensive strength of our cavalry must be greatly augmented.

The important thing is to envisage *all* the various cavalry missions and put due emphasis on those which will seldom be fulfilled unless the cavalry shall itself be a powerful as well as a mobile agency.

It is hard to keep the proper balance. France, Germany, and Italy have been inclined since the war to sacrifice to some extent mobility of their cavalry to make their cavalry divisions independent, heavily armed and armored forces. We see our problem differently. Our conditions are vastly different. But while it is not necessary to go as far as they have gone in Europe, it is advisable to go as far as we can toward making our cavalry a reliable first line of land defense, augmented in numbers and with increased offensive and defensive power.

### HORSE ARTILLERY

Is THERE ANY GOOD reason why the horse artillery, which is to be—which must be—an inseparable adjunct of a cavalry division, should not be a part of the cavalry arm? It will be objected that the heavy component of artillery in the infantry division is still kept a separate combat branch. But the cases are not parallel.

The artillery which will accompany cavalry must necessarily be armed with light field pieces, horsed, comparatively easy to handle. The fire employed will consist of the most simple kind, with direct observation. Most cavalry officers can readily be trained to adjust such fire quickly and accurately. Many of our present cavalymen did learn the trick, as a matter of fact, during the war. They need not concern themselves with barrages or range tables or

## EDITORIAL COMMENT

corrections of the moment. These are all outside the sphere of usefulness—in cavalry operations. Driving and harness and care of equipment are readily mastered, and one of the primary requisites, animal management, is part of the cavalryman's A B C.

The gain would be great. The most difficult problem facing the horse artilleryman is not, it may be remarked, the manipulation of his guns, but the co-ordination of their fire with the rapidly shifting cavalry maneuver. The opportunities are fleeting, the moments of need critical and almost unforeseen. The officer who will manage to have his guns in position at the time and in the place where they can support cavalry action must of necessity be trained, super-trained, in cavalry maneuver and combat. He must have a cavalry sense of terrain. He must be sufficiently familiar with the examples of cavalry employment in history to be able to foresee what his cavalry commander is likely to do before that commander has made a decision.

He must be expert in reconnaissance and swift in decision. He must, in a word, possess all the cavalry qualities. Then why should he not be a cavalryman?

It is suggested that a reasonable solution would be to recover to our own branch some of our former comrades who have latterly been serving in the sister branch and turn over *our* horse artillery to their direction, with the admonition to them: Forget your range tables and logarithms; just watch our dust!

To be sure, Colonel Cambuzat, of the French artillery, pronounces the death sentence upon horse artillery and would substitute for it motorized guns of 65 millimeter and 155 millimeter caliber for the cavalry. But it can be assumed that he is viewing the matter from an artilleryman's orthodox angle. We may properly experiment with motorized artillery with the cavalry, but will continue for the present to place our reliance in the animal-drawn matériel.

As a secondary advantage to be anticipated from a possession by the cavalry of its own guns might be mentioned the gain in sureness with which a cavalry commander, experienced at some time in his earlier service in handling cavalry guns, will include his artillery support in his estimate of the situation and will co-ordinate its power with that of his mounted and dismounted elements.

Anyway, let's talk this over.

### CAVALRY DIVISION MANEUVERS

THE CAVALRY DIVISION MANEUVERS are about to commence as this number of the JOURNAL goes to press, so it is impossible to do more than refer to them and recommend them to the attention of our readers. It is hoped that reports of these maneuvers will be available to readers of subsequent numbers.

### POLO

THERE IS NOTHING in the whole field of cavalry activity that approaches the progress which has been made during the past few years in the royal game which the cavalry service has seized upon for its own. Other branches are mak-





MAJOR R. R. D. McCULLOUGH, CAV. R. C.  
Commander of the First Squadron of the 305th Cavalry (Pennsylvania) and his entry in the Texas Horse Show

## EDITORIAL COMMENT

of war and must be developed. The economic rivalry between nations will not permit more than a small proportion of their efforts to be bent toward preparation of this war strength. Yet the opening campaign of any war, the first few months, may easily be critical. Witness the anxiety which prevails as to what a strong air armament may accomplish during this initial period. A no-less significant factor in respect to this period is the cavalry.

Practically alone, among all the land forces available at the outbreak of hostilities, the cavalry needs not to await an augmentation of her force to be effective. The possibility of creating effective cavalry after hostilities have commenced, in time to utilize to advantage, is admittedly precluded. The cavalry strength must, therefore, be complete at the start.

The cavalry which the nation has seen fit to provide against the day of national jeopardy must stop the first rush, if we are on the defensive. It is folly to argue the probability that we will never be attacked on our own soil. If one believed in such security, we would dispense with most of our land troops and confine our defense to the air service, the navy, and the coast defenses. If land troops are required at all, the cavalry must breast the onset as the one already-formed nucleus around which the mobilizing nation can array its growing strength. It may not be long before this strength is adequate for the task. Our defense policies are the result of careful study of all the possibilities, all possible combinations of enemy and all possible methods of organization of our own strength. Our infantry and artillery bulwarks will, part of them, acquire their war strength in a short time. However, much of this strength will be only partly trained. And there will remain a critical initial period during which the cavalry will be the sole land force, completely trained, armed cap-a-pie, ready to fight in any fashion, with all its accompanying auxiliary strength in guns and aircraft, with its radio communication giving unprecedented breadth to its intelligence and liaisons, to which the country will anxiously look for its security. The case is similar with a possible initial offensive.

It is, then, proper to advance the proposition: For every step taken in the direction of development of maximum national war strength that brings as an inevitable accompaniment a *dilution* of immediate effectiveness, the cavalry, as an actually existing combat force and not merely a potential one, *must be augmented*.

And this proposition follows quite as inevitably: With the necessity devolving upon the cavalry to be the *initial defender*, the combat potentialities of the arm must be increased. The cavalry must maintain itself as a self-dependent, highly organized combat arm in the truest sense, embodying within its own organization all reasonable means of attack and defense.

These theses are already recognized by some forward-thinking cavalrymen to be true. It remains for the body of cavalry officers everywhere to grasp their great significance and to bring and keep to the fore a demand for a serious consideration of the cavalry potentialities of the next war and the need for augmentation of our cavalry strength.

## STRONGER CAVALRY

ACCEPTING, THEN, THE PROPOSITION that the cavalry must be kept a true combat arm in this day of powerful engines of war, it is incumbent upon us to determine how we can increase our combat effectiveness—against any and all enemy troops and contrivances. We must not be deterred by gas; we must be able to cope with tank and aircraft, and we must admit the impassability of no obstacle, even of wire. It is apparent that the trooper, unaided, will never be able to overcome some of these difficulties. But we have already gone a long way beyond the capacity of the individual trooper. We have given our cavalry the automatic weapons, accompanying artillery, radio equipment, pioneer equipment, and are prepared to add other special means where required.

All this has been accomplished to the accompaniment of frequent barks of protest from those who could visualize nothing better than the line of flashing sabers or the romantic individual prowess of the old frontier days.

It is only a logical step to proclaim that we must go still farther and find the solution to the new problems. If we are inspired with this doctrine, we will somehow surmount the difficulties. It may quite transform the appearance of our cavalry units to do it. What matter? It may tax our essential quality of mobility to the utmost to do it. What matter, if we manage to retain that mobility? But, however it is to be accomplished, the striking power and defensive strength of our cavalry must be greatly augmented.

The important thing is to envisage *all* the various cavalry missions and put due emphasis on those which will seldom be fulfilled unless the cavalry shall itself be a powerful as well as a mobile agency.

It is hard to keep the proper balance. France, Germany, and Italy have been inclined since the war to sacrifice to some extent mobility of their cavalry to make their cavalry divisions independent, heavily armed and armored forces. We see our problem differently. Our conditions are vastly different. But while it is not necessary to go as far as they have gone in Europe, it is advisable to go as far as we can toward making our cavalry a reliable first line of land defense, augmented in numbers and with increased offensive and defensive power.

## HORSE ARTILLERY

IS THERE ANY GOOD reason why the horse artillery, which is to be—which must be—an inseparable adjunct of a cavalry division, should not be a part of the cavalry arm? It will be objected that the heavy component of artillery in the infantry division is still kept a separate combat branch. But the cases are not parallel.

The artillery which will accompany cavalry must necessarily be armed with light field pieces, horsed, comparatively easy to handle. The fire employed will consist of the most simple kind, with direct observation. Most cavalry officers can readily be trained to adjust such fire quickly and accurately. Many of our present cavalymen did learn the trick, as a matter of fact, during the war. They need not concern themselves with barrages or range tables or

corrections of the moment. These are all outside the sphere of usefulness—in cavalry operations. Driving and harness and care of equipment are readily mastered, and one of the primary requisites, animal management, is part of the cavalryman's A B C.

The gain would be great. The most difficult problem facing the horse artilleryman is not, it may be remarked, the manipulation of his guns, but the co-ordination of their fire with the rapidly shifting cavalry maneuver. The opportunities are fleeting, the moments of need critical and almost unforeseen. The officer who will manage to have his guns in position at the time and in the place where they can support cavalry action must of necessity be trained, super-trained, in cavalry maneuver and combat. He must have a cavalry sense of terrain. He must be sufficiently familiar with the examples of cavalry employment in history to be able to foresee what his cavalry commander is likely to do before that commander has made a decision.

He must be expert in reconnaissance and swift in decision. He must, in a word, possess all the cavalry qualities. Then why should he not be a cavalryman?

It is suggested that a reasonable solution would be to recover to our own branch some of our former comrades who have latterly been serving in the sister branch and turn over *our* horse artillery to their direction, with the admonition to them: Forget your range tables and logarithms; just watch our dust!

To be sure, Colonel Cambuzat, of the French artillery, pronounces the death sentence upon horse artillery and would substitute for it motorized guns of 65 millimeter and 155 millimeter caliber for the cavalry. But it can be assumed that he is viewing the matter from an artilleryman's orthodox angle. We may properly experiment with motorized artillery with the cavalry, but will continue for the present to place our reliance in the animal-drawn matériel.

As a secondary advantage to be anticipated from a possession by the cavalry of its own guns might be mentioned the gain in sureness with which a cavalry commander, experienced at some time in his earlier service in handling cavalry guns, will include his artillery support in his estimate of the situation and will co-ordinate its power with that of his mounted and dismounted elements.

Anyway, let's talk this over.

## CAVALRY DIVISION MANEUVERS

THE CAVALRY DIVISION MANEUVERS are about to commence as this number of the JOURNAL goes to press, so it is impossible to do more than refer to them and recommend them to the attention of our readers. It is hoped that reports of these maneuvers will be available to readers of subsequent numbers.

## POLO

THERE IS NOTHING in the whole field of cavalry activity that approaches the progress which has been made during the past few years in the royal game which the cavalry service has seized upon for its own. Other branches are mak-

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

ing much of it, and the army as a whole benefits from all earnest efforts in this sport. But in the cavalry most of the old handicaps have been removed, and a fresh and vigorous enthusiasm has been aroused, so that there is no limit to the degree to which cavalry officers may hope to perfect their skill in this game which is so well suited to be part of a cavalryman's training.

That this improvement is being rapidly made is testified to by the army's almost meteoric success in national polo. Finally, as this is written, we have just won against a British army four of international repute. We are continuing to justify the War Department policy of promoting polo. In this progress cavalrymen, by the nature of things, are committed to the leadership.

### CREATING A CITIZEN ARMY: OUR PRINCIPAL MISSION

THE PAST FEW MONTHS should have taken us a few vigorous steps farther along the road which is leading us to a fully developed citizen army. Many of the JOURNAL readers have themselves been on duty in one of the many great summer training camps, where the process of welding together all the elements in our defense forces has been going on. Regular Army, National Guard, Organized Reserves, R. O. T. C., and civilians all brought together for training and imbued with enthusiasm for progress—this is an inspiring thing. There can be no doubt as to the advantage the lesser trained elements have derived from the summer work. As an example of this training, attention is invited to Major Edwards' story in this number, of the Citizens' Military Training Camp at Camp Knox. A moment's reflection will convince one that not only these citizen elements, but the Regular Army itself has profited from the camps. Its officers, to a greater extent than could be the case with National Guard and Reserve Officers, have gained experience in the handling of larger units, while officers and noncommissioned officers have gained an increased sympathetic understanding of the citizen personnel that will be associated with them in such preponderant numbers in any future war; and it is to be hoped, along with an appreciation of all the shortcomings of the National Defense program and the difficulties to be overcome, they have obtained a still clearer conception of that program and its great significance.

In this connection one should hark back to the exposition of this subject—the relations which should obtain between the Regular Army and the Citizen Forces—which was the burden of General Pershing's address to the graduating class at the War College last June. He urged, in part:

"The one-time rôle of a Regular Army officer has passed with the Indian campaigns and the acquirement of colonial possessions. Our mission today is definite, yet so broad that few, if any, have been able to grasp the possibilities of the new fields opened up by the military policy now on the statute books.

"I wish especially to emphasize the necessity for broad vision in study or work concerned with the development of this military policy. Our view is no longer circumscribed by a Regular Army small and widely dispersed, but we must visualize great citizen forces brought into

## EDITORIAL COMMENT

being through established basic units. There are officers, fortunately in constantly diminishing numbers, who cannot turn their minds from concentration on a diminutive Regular Army, successfully and gallantly fighting the country's battles, as in Cuba and the Philippines, or serving at isolated stations along the Mexican border. Those days have not entirely passed and probably never will pass, but they are now of secondary importance in the general scheme of National Defense.

"The Citizen Army has made a beginning, a troubled period of confusion and narrow vision. It is now vigorous of body, but still facing the usual vicissitudes of the earlier period. The task awaiting members of this graduating class in your new assignments is to carry forward this work, to inspire yourselves, your associates, and every part of this huge machine for the National Defense, with a democratic spirit of co-operation and common understanding.

"In serving on the War Department General Staff or at Corps Area Headquarters, it is difficult to avoid a detached and impersonal attitude which soon carries one out of sympathy with the subordinate organizations, and especially with the humble individual worker in the ranks. It is hard for the man at the desk to see with the eye of a troop commander or of a business man struggling with self-imposed duties as an officer of the National Guard or Reserve Corps. Unintentionally, misunderstanding arises and co-operation fails. It is the special duty of the Regular Army officer to avoid this possibility. As a matter of truth, the establishment of a sympathetic understanding is more important than the performance of any routine duties.

"While not professional soldiers, men of the National Guard and Reserves are prompted to service by a patriotic devotion to the high conception of citizenship. Of all our citizens, they deserve praise for the energy that leads them to spend months and often years in readiness. These are the men you are to counsel, instruct, and guide. Your ideals of national obligation and your standards of efficiency are likely to be theirs. To insure the success of our military policy, the officers of the regular establishment must rise to a full appreciation of their new responsibilities and must bring to the task enthusiastic effort and efficient leadership.

"In another sense this class resumes active duty in the army under new conditions. We now have this month for the first time a completed scheme of mobilization of the nation's man power. While these plans are at present more or less imperfect, they will form a substantial basis of further study and many of you will be involved in their improvement. Formerly our studies were limited to a vague academic consideration of a possible army for which no provision had been made, but today we must deal with divisions, corps, and armies, the skeleton organizations of which are well on toward completion. The development of this and all other plans must continue to inspire our best efforts. If we can bring our countrymen to realize the wisdom of a reasonable state of readiness, and if we can succeed in maintaining an efficient basic organization of both the regular and the citizen forces, then our duty will have been performed."

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

### ABSTRACTIONS, THEORIES, AND FACTS

Pertinent Paragraphs from the Address of Honorable John W. Weeks, Secretary of War, at the Opening Exercises, Army War College

I WOULD LIKE TO EMPHASIZE that the true mission of education is to develop a balanced mentality that deals with theories as they are concerned with facts. If this is not done, the result is that we are often misled into such an abstract exercise of the mind that we overlook the dangerous paths into which it can lead our otherwise cautious footsteps. There is no institution in which the danger of abstraction is so great as in a military establishment, for there are naturally long periods of peace during which theories largely prevail. Army officers must, therefore, be exceptionally alert, to protect their minds from dogma which might stifle their natural initiative.

A school can but do its best to guide your absorption of learning. Only the individual can preserve the openness of his mind, and it is an open mind that the army officer should have. History is filled with the defeat of scholastic soldiers at the hands of practical leaders. The schooled soldier who is at the same time a practical man, filled with the curiosity of an open mind, is material for genius. Theories never win wars. They do serve, however, as a foundation for action.

Be afraid of nothing in the way of change or innovation. Never stick to an accepted way of getting results if some better way manifests itself. Learn now what the War Department and the army consist of and what methods they employ. Remember, however, that methods change each year, and that what we have now will differ from what we may have in the future.

One can study theories without becoming a theorist. One can spend a lifetime learning the intimate details of our present military matériel, organization, and operation without becoming wedded to the idea that none of these can ever change. In fact, that intimate knowledge of the resources of war without which no man is fit to command can be gained in no other manner than by long-continued study and observation. One could not understand the army of tomorrow without having some idea of the army of today.

It is the American people who declare war, who fight it, and who produce for it. On the whole, they are a very practical people, devoted only to things as they are. Abstractions have a limited place in their lives. Abstract learning must not, therefore, be given undue prominence in the training of an American officer. He must know the people he represents, their limitations and their potentialities. He must know war as it has been fought by other peoples. Based on that knowledge, he must then know how to fit his conceptions of war to what the American people can and will do. Then he will be a trained soldier, mentally prepared for any duty which he may be called upon to perform. Moreover, he will probably find that he can develop a superior doctrine of war, for there are no people on earth more resourceful than ours—spiritually, mentally, and physically.

## EDITORIAL COMMENT

### ROCK-RIBBED

A WRITER IN A recent number of our esteemed contemporary, the *Infantry Journal*, refers to the "rock-ribbed CAVALRY JOURNAL." We do not understand exactly what is meant. But we appreciate the compliment.

### AUTHOR! AUTHOR!

As some interest has been aroused by the appearance in the July number of THE CAVALRY JOURNAL of "Essentials of Military Conduct," by an Old Dragoon, it is our pleasant privilege to inform readers that the author of this admirable letter is the present commander of the Fourth Cavalry, Colonel Howard R. Hickok, than whom there is no more active and ardent supporter of the Cavalry Association.

## NOTICE

### ANNUAL MEETING OF THE UNITED STATES CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

The Annual Meeting of the United States Cavalry Association will be held at Washington, D. C., on Tuesday, January 15, 1924, at the Army and Navy Club.

The election of officers and of members of the Executive Council will take place at this meeting.

The following amendment will be voted upon; the necessity for same being a coincidence of the dates for the Association meeting and the annual meeting of the Army and Navy Club.

In Article VII, Section 1, which reads: "The annual or regular meeting of the Association shall be held on the third Monday in January of each year," erase the words "on the third Monday."

All members of the Association who are not certain to be present in person are urgently requested to execute and forward to the Secretary a proxy, form for which is to be found below.

## PROXY

I hereby constitute and appoint the Secretary of the United States Cavalry

Association, or \_\_\_\_\_, my proxy, for me and in my name and behalf to vote at any election of officers and members of the Executive Council of the United States Cavalry Association, upon any and all proposed amendments to the Constitution of the said Association, and upon any and all other matters which may properly come before the annual meeting of the United States Cavalry Association in January, 1924, or any adjourned meeting thereof.

## Topics of the Day

### PROGRESS IN WORK FOR THE OLYMPIC GAMES

TO DATE, THE OLYMPIC COMMITTEE has collected about \$10,000 in cash and has purchased one horse in Virginia—*Dynamite*—a gray horse, about 16 hands high, 12 years old. This horse has won a number of blue ribbons throughout the United States, particularly in 5-foot classes. He is considered one of the best jumpers in the United States. He is three-quarters thoroughbred and one-quarter standardbred.

Colonel R. M. Thompson, chairman of the Olympic Committee, has indicated that this committee will transport the Olympic Equestrian Team to London, then to Paris, pay the expenses while in Paris, and return them to the United States. This relieves the committee of raising a large portion of the funds which would be needed for this part of the expenses.

### MARCHING FROM FORT D. A. RUSSELL, WYOMING, TO FORT DOUGLAS, UTAH, WITH CAVALRY AND ARTILLERY

By First Lieutenant Frank M. Lee, V. C.

From the Veterinary Bulletin\*

IN SUBMITTING THIS ARTICLE, it is the writer's intention to give some of the observations made while en route with this command, which consisted of Troop G, 13th Cavalry, Battery C, 76th Field Artillery, Band, 76th Field Artillery, Medical Detachment, and Veterinary Detachment. This command was ordered to march overland from Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming, to Fort Douglas, Utah, for the purpose of acting as demonstration troops for the Reserve Officers' Training Camp and the Citizens' Military Training Camp at Fort Douglas.

The march was started on the morning of May 31 and ended at noon June 28. The entire distance covered was about 500 miles, and the average per day was 23.4 miles. The daily routine of the march consisted of breaking camp at 5 o'clock in the morning, the troops being on the road by 6 o'clock. After a thirty-minute march the command was halted and all harness and saddles were adjusted; then a rest of fifteen minutes was given men and animals, and the march was resumed. Ten minutes of each hour the men were dismounted and walked, and then a ten-minute rest was given. This applied to the artillery more specifically than to the cavalry, but frequent dismounting and walking and short rests were given in the cavalry.

The troop consisted of 65 men and 80 horses. Two of these horses were used as pack animals, carrying the aparejos which were packed with the

\* Comments upon the artillery animals omitted in this extract.

## TOPICS OF THE DAY

picket lines and stakes. Its escort wagons, combined into the wagon train, carried the men's barrack bags and tentage.

Most all the animals of the entire command had been given some conditioning before leaving Fort Russell, consisting of short marches under full pack and also a series of daily exercises, and the general condition of the animals could be said to be excellent.

The forage used by the command was all purchased locally en route by the purchasing officer, who preceded the command, and by the time the column arrived at the camping place the purchases were all completed and the writer immediately upon arrival in camp would inspect the forage and meats. No trouble was encountered in the procurement of these articles. The hay was of good quality, upland prairie, with some alfalfa, and the oats were bright, clean, and well filled.

The shoeing was very good throughout the entire trip. Each animal was newly shod before the command left its station and fitted with six extra shoes, two of which were carried in the saddle pockets and four in the trains. In this way the use of fires was almost eliminated on all stops except during the weekends when the forges were set up and hot fitting done.

The fit and adjustments of the harness and saddles was one of the things watched closely and with good results. In the troop the number of saddle sores were few, and this was due, as the writer views it, to the careful watching and continual explaining to the men the necessity of proper care of the backs, which was closely followed out, with the good results above stated. On arrival at camp the saddles were left on for a period of thirty minutes, then removed, and the saddle blankets left on for about 10 minutes; the blankets were then removed and the backs "spanked" and massaged and washed with cold water. After a long, hard march, some of the backs would show small, nutlike nodules a short time after arrival in camp, but it was found that, with cold water applied and a brisk rubbing, these were very easily eliminated, and the next morning by the time we were ready to hike, the backs were normal. Out of the entire troop we had four cases of abrasions from the saddle that had to be placed on sick report for a period of three days, at the end of which time they were returned to duty.

The country traversed by this command ranged from a flat desert country to the mountains, with their valleys and canyons. The majority of the camp sites were rocky and sandy, with little or no grass and few trees, and while these sites were picked with a view to getting sufficient water for cooking and for the needs of the men and the 260 animals, with no forced marches, nevertheless at one time it was necessary to have the water shipped to us in railroad tank cars.

The general condition of the animals on arrival at Fort Douglas was good, and although some of them looked thin it was found when they were weighed that they had lost only an average of 25½ pounds each.

The chief of staff of the 104th Division commended the condition of the detachment in the following terms:

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

"I desire to bring to your attention the splendid condition of animals, men, and equipment in which the troops arrived at Fort Douglas. After a five-hundred-mile march across sage brush, desert, and through the dusty canyons of northeastern Utah, the troops presented almost as good appearance as if returning from an ordinary drill. The sleek and well-cared-for condition of the animals indicated the exercise of intelligent and efficient care during the march and reflects great credit on the officers responsible."

### JUMPS WITHOUT WINGS

AT THE LAKE SHORE Hunt Club Horse Show an innovation in horse-show technique was the building of the jumps without wings. It was so successful that it seems probable that jumps without wings will soon become the rule. The jumps were 24 feet wide, and consisted of stone walls, hedges, gates, and in-and-out inclosed in evergreens.

### THE CAVALRY TEAM TRY-OUT MATCHES AT FORT DES MOINES

THE CAVALRY REGIMENTAL TEAM Championship match was won by the 11th Cavalry, the successful team consisting of Captain C. A. Wilkinson, First Lieutenant O. R. Stillinger, and Second Lieutenant P. A. Noel. The 14th Cavalry team stood in second place and the 10th Cavalry third. Each member of the winning team received a bronze medal, and the 11th Cavalry obtains possession this year of the Cavalry Regimental Team Championship Trophy Cup.

In the contest for the Fort Bliss Trophy, competed for in the 1,000-yard Individual Championship Match, the winner was Captain C. E. Dissinger, 4th Cavalry. Lieutenant-Colonel I. S. Martin, cavalry, won the silver medal for the second place, and Second Lieutenant P. M. Martin, 7th Cavalry, received the bronze medal for third place. This match was shot in a 15-to-20-mile-per-hour wind.

The 200-yard Individual Championship Match was won by Staff Sergeant C. E. Smyth, 14th Cavalry, Captain O. A. Palmer, 12th Cavalry, taking second place and Second Lieutenant J. E. Leahy, 3d Cavalry, third. The winner received a silver medal, and a bronze medal was awarded to the second place.

In the Cavalry Individual Championship Match the winner of the trophy and the gold medal was First Lieutenant C. E. Morrison, 11th Cavalry, Sergeant C. A. Sandridge, 10th Cavalry, receiving the silver medal for second place and Sergeant V. L. Roberts, 4th Cavalry, receiving the bronze medal for third place.

Captain Wilkinson, 11th Cavalry, having made the highest aggregate score in the Individual Championship Match, 200-yard Individual Championship Match, and the 1,000-yard Individual Championship Match, with a score of 449, was awarded the Holbrook Trophy and a gold medal for this superior performance.

Prizes were also donated by the team itself to the winner and second and third in the sixth time over the National Match course. Second Lieutenant

## TOPICS OF THE DAY

Rehm, 14th Cavalry, won first prize, Sergeant S. Gustaves, 12th Cavalry, took second, and Sergeant R. G. Kirby, 4th Cavalry, third.

### THE CAVALRY TEAM AT NATIONAL MATCHES

THE CAVALRY TEAM which has been participating in the National Rifle Matches at Camp Perry consists of the following members:

Lieutenant-Colonel A. H. Davidson, team captain	Second Lieutenant P. A. Noel, 11th Cavalry
Major J. J. O'Hara, team coach	Second Lieutenant P. M. Martin, 7th Cavalry
Captain H. S. Beecher, supply officer	Second Lieutenant G. A. Rehm, 14th Cavalry
Sergeant J. B. Aitken, supply sergeant	
Lieutenant-Colonel I. S. Martin, cavalry	
Captain W. B. Augur, cavalry	Staff Sergeant C. E. Smyth, 14th Cavalry
Captain R. R. Allen, 7th Cavalry	Sergeant J. Adams, 6th Cavalry
Captain O. R. Palmer, 12th Cavalry	Sergeant R. G. Kirby, 4th Cavalry
Captain R. P. Gerfen, cavalry	Sergeant G. Gustaves, 12th Cavalry
Captain H. F. Rathjen, 12th Cavalry	Corporal R. V. Wilzewski, 8th Cavalry
Captain W. Kenahan, 10th Cavalry	
First Lieutenant C. E. Morrison, 11th Cavalry	Private F. Kulczynski, 7th Cavalry
First Lieutenant S. P. Walker, 7th Cavalry	Private S. Blazejevski, 3d Cavalry
First Lieutenant T. J. Heavey, cavalry	Private W. F. Tilman, 10th Cavalry
Second Lieutenant J. E. Leahy, 3d Cavalry	Private C. M. Roberts, 2d Cavalry
	Private C. E. Curry, Machine-gun Troop No. 1.

### A NEW IDEA

#### The Army Contact Camps

LOCATED ON United States Senator James Wadsworth's estate, bordering the beautiful Lake Conesus, in western New York, and 25 miles south of Rochester, is being initiated an experiment in the further development of the Three-Component-Army which gives promise of great and lasting possibilities.

Word was sent throughout the State to all Regular, National Guard, and Reserve officers that the camp would be in operation from August 22 to September 15, and that its purpose would be twofold: First, to provide a means for the limited instruction of a large number of Reserve officers who, because of inadequate Federal appropriations, were unable to attend this summer's regular training camps; and, Second, and almost equally important, the assembly of designated units during certain specified periods. More or less elasticity in the execution of this latter feature has been provided for to permit officers attending at any convenient time whose business or personal affairs will not permit of any specified time of attendance.



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

The optimistic expectations as to attendance and interest were more than realized. The camp, in addition to accomplishing its mission in full, provided closer contact and understanding among the three components, the officers of each unit assembled, and, finally, among the executive officers, instructors, and supervising staffs.

"Camp Wadsworth," the official and fitting designation of this year's camp, owes its existence to Lieutenant-Colonel Nathan C. Shiverick, cavalry, O. R. C., who conceived the idea, and to Brigadier General William Weigel, U. S. A., acting for Major-General Robert L. Bullard, commanding the 2d Corps Area, who provided the means.

A picked detachment of one officer and twenty enlisted men from Madison Barracks, with mess sergeant and cooks from Camp Dix furnished an organization sufficiently large to accommodate one hundred and fifty officers. Visiting officers paid for their transportation to and from camp and at the rate of one dollar and a half per day for meals; tents, blankets, and orderly service were furnished them without cost.

Instruction was confined mainly to the forenoons, and had for its purpose the emphasizing of outstanding principles applying to: Organization, to include the regiment; Employment of the branch; Tactics, to include the battalion and squadron; Map-reading; Combat orders; Staff organization.

The instruction provided at Camp Wadsworth was arranged into three courses: one each for the infantry, field artillery, and cavalry. Each course consisted of a three-day schedule, which was repeated for every week during the period of the camp.

The principles brought out were those which can best be exemplified by means of thirty-minute lectures, conferences, and by tactical walks.

The attendance was heaviest over week-ends and averaged at such times between 100 and 150. Considering the short notice that officers had to arrange their visits, and the fact that the great majority of them had already taken advantage of their summer vacation, this is considered by those in touch with conditions as more than satisfactory.

For future years it is well within the range of possibilities that one or more such camps may be established in every State, to run during the months of July and August. It seems that no more economical and popular means of furthering the establishment of our military policy has yet been developed.

The Camp Wadsworth organization consists of Lieutenant-Colonel K. T. Smith, camp commander and instructor in infantry; Major J. L. Topham, camp quartermaster; Major J. H. Van Horn, instructor in field artillery; Major W. M. Modisette, adjutant and instructor in cavalry, and First Lieutenant A. T. McCone, field artillery, commanding detachment.

The camp was honored by visits from the Secretary of War, Senator Wadsworth, and Colonel Wolf, Chief of Staff, 98th Division.

All declared themselves as much impressed by the interest displayed on the part of the officers of the National Guard and Organized Reserves of

## TOPICS OF THE DAY

northern New York in this novel attempt to further, at their own expense, the development of our military policy. Once they had surveyed the situation, these distinguished gentlemen, though visiting the camp at different times, enthused over the possibilities of one or more such camps being established next summer in each of the nine corps areas.

### THE CHIEF OF CAVALRY'S RIFLE TEAM

THE RESULTS OF COMPETITION in all regiments have not been received at this writing, but the following enlisted men have so far won places on the Chief of Cavalry's Rifle Team:

Corporal John Kotus, Troop C, 1st Cavalry; Sergeant Wesley J. Reed, Troop B, 4th Cavalry; Sergeant James F. Lawrence, Troop F, 5th Cavalry; Sergeant James J. Walsh, Troop C, 7th Cavalry; Corporal Robert W. Montgomery, Headquarters Troop, 8th Cavalry; Private 1st Class Thomas Hawker, Troop A, 9th Cavalry; Private Faciano Nemenzo, Troop B, 26th Cavalry (P. S.); Private 1st Class Richard M. Quarles, Headquarters Troop, 1st Cavalry Brigade.

### HIGH JUMP RECORD BROKEN

A SENSATIONAL FEATURE of the South Shore Country Club Horse Show last June was the record-breaking jump of Mrs. Stuyvesant Peabody's hunter, *Great Heart*, who cleared the bars at 8 feet 13/16 of an inch. The previous record had been made by *Confidence* several years ago and has stood at 8 feet 1/2 inch. Troop A of the 14th Cavalry exhibited in this show and were commended for their feats in horsemanship.

### SHOEING HORSES FOR USE ON PAVED STREETS

Major C. L. Scott, Q. M. C., submits the following relative to this problem:

The best method that I know is to shoe the horse with calks (about half inch) behind and with what is known as the rim shoe, made of light angle iron, in front. This method of shoeing is not only good on slippery streets, but on frozen ground. For work in winter on snow, the commercial snowshoe is the best.

### CAVALRY TEAM SECOND IN NATIONAL MATCH

A last-minute dispatch tells us our Cavalry Team shot their way as close to the top as it is possible for an Army team to come apparently. The Marines won the Service Team Match, as per usual. Colonel Davidson's determined aggregation took second place; Infantry third.

Colonel Davidson, and members of the Cavalry Team—that was splendid! The Cavalry appreciates the hard work that made this achievement possible and honors you for your contribution to the glory of your arm.



## New Books Reviewed

**THE DECISIVE BATTLES OF MODERN TIMES.** By Lieutenant-Colonel F. E. Whitton. Houghton, Mifflin Co., 1923. 254 pages, maps. (Price, \$3.50.)

This book, which is in a sense a sequel to Creasy's *Fifteen Decisive Battles of the World*, long enumerated among the classics, is a useful contribution to general literature and a distinct addition to the shelf of military history. It appears very opportunely. The popular fancy, not without its encouragement from military writers, has pictured with startling prophetic presumption the "next war" of mechanical behemoths. At the moment, a saturation of death-dealing mechanical agencies of all sorts has given place to soporite, a gas (to be invented) that will exterminate army corps and armies. It is quite a wonder, in view of all the prophecies of what the "next war" will be, predicated upon the peculiar characteristics of the last war and the continued advance of inventions, that the man on the street will tolerate "defense programs," training of reserve troops, etc., that are based on any of the more ancient theories of war.

A survey of the critical points of warfare, such as this work by Colonel Whitton, is much needed to create at least a framework of a military concept into which one can fit, each in its due place, the wonderful "soporites" as they come along. After all, the wonderful inventions are not all of our own day. Gunpowder came along in the course of the period covered by Creasy's book and was sufficiently epoch-making. Types of armies, types of weapons, change incessantly from the dawn of human history or even legend. And they will both continue to change. Today's forms are already about to give place to tomorrow's. He who would prepare himself to deal with the unknown forms of war of tomorrow will not content himself with a mastery of those of today or of yesterday. He will fill his mind, rather, with the history of the warfare of the world. The old forms recur, always with modifications, to be sure, and it is the old forms that catch folks napping. Verdun is not the first fortress that has withstood all the art and force an overwhelmingly strong and determined enemy could bring against it. The inundations in Flanders had their counterpart many times over in ancient wars. Liquid fire is not new to the 20th century.

Or, if we agree that much of the warfare of the ancients is a tale that is told and had better be consigned to the reliquary, with all its helmets (though behold their resurrection only the other day), and battering rams, and bows and arrows, and ballistas (which were in a fashion nearly related to our modern trench mortar), still it is essential that we should not confine our conceptions of warfare to the ideas engendered by a single campaign, even if it be the latest and most terrible we know about, nor even of the latest war. It is useful to consider the nature of warfare over a considerable period and note how good strategy still prevails, and how good leadership still is required, and discipline, and training.

Colonel Whitton's book is a survey of the warfare of the world since Waterloo, the last battle recorded by Creasy. He finds it possible to epitomize the warfare of exactly a century by a description of five battles, four of them land battles. The reader is not wearied by repetition. Each of the five chapters is distinctive and typical as well as—one must agree with the author—critical. Whether he has selected the only critical battles or the most critical of his period will be disputed. But it is of no great importance. He has at any rate made a shrewd selection and justifies his choice by convincing argument.

It can be said in general that each chapter deals with strategy, and with political as well as military strategy. Only to a slight extent is any effort bestowed upon the tactics of the combats described. It is in the field of political and military strategy that this history is valuable, both to the military student and the general reader.

## NEW BOOKS REVIEWED

Each chapter is much more than an account of the battle from which it takes its title. It is a thoughtful survey of the history of a period, which is necessary to a comprehension of the significance of the battle. Indeed, the actual description of the battle occupies generally a very small portion of each chapter. In this respect, again, the reader is reminded of Creasy. In the "Fifteen Decisive Battles," the battle of Chalons, for example, occupies only one and a half pages out of the fifteen pages devoted to that chapter, while the chapter on Saratoga is an essay on the rise of the American Nation.

Out of the battles of the American Civil War the author has selected Vicksburg for the subject of his first chapter. By way of answer to the many who will prefer Gettysburg as a turning point of the war and the more critical of these two Federal victories, which were so nearly simultaneous in widely separated theaters of war, the author's comments upon the grand strategic values involved seem to justify his selection. Vicksburg does not signify merely a capitulation of a besieged fortress. The siege operations, which occupied the space of a month, are barely alluded to, while the diversified maneuvers by land and water and swamp, which might be regarded as neither land nor water, that placed the Federal army in a position to besiege the Gibraltar of the West, are, with the political and strategic connotations, the subject of most of this chapter. These operations extended from above Memphis to the Gulf, and included artificial inundations, river operations, exploration of tangled swamp, digging of ship canals, pitched land battles, a remarkable cavalry raid, and even a unique and exciting race between a body of Confederate cavalry and a Federal gunboat. A perusal of this chapter convinces one that the Vicksburg campaign deserves to be better and more widely appreciated.

The next chapter jumps across the ocean and takes as its subject the rise of the German nation, the fortunes of the House of Hohenzollern, and the age-long rivalry between the Brandenburg family and the Hapsburgs, pinnacled on the Holy Roman Empire. As the critical point of this contest for supremacy in central Europe, the author selects the battle of Königgrätz (Sadowa), from which this chapter takes its title.

Königgrätz is seen to be the logical forerunner of the Franco-Prussian struggle, and here there is evident difficulty in making selection from among the several critical episodes of that war. It seems odd at first thought that the author saw fit to overlook the important battle of Gravelotte and the catastrophe of Sedan. He barely refers to the fall of Metz and the capitulation of Paris. He selects for study what was in the final hour of the fight regarded as a drawn battle. He recounts the battle of Mars-la-Tour.

This conflict, rich in military interest as in dramatic episode, consisted, to use the author's succinct words, "of the efforts of one German corps with two cavalry divisions to keep the whole Army of the Rhine in play until neighboring columns had come marching to the sound of guns with much-needed assistance. It is no less the story of the failure of the French to exploit a numerical superiority which lasted all day."

Again, the author says of this battle, "the bloodiest and most decisive battle of the Franco-German War—a battle of which it has not unjustly been said that it defies description in detail. Fought on no prearranged plan and representing merely a struggle between two armies stumbling one against the other, the battle was to prove a chance encounter to which each side brought up reinforcements."

Mars-la-Tour has always been popularly thought of as a cavalry contest. There was the futile charge of the 3d French Lancers, brilliantly holding their lines under the terrific opposing infantry fire and at the end shuffling weakly off to the flank. Next came the equally futile, if magnificent, charge of the Cuirassiers, who only managed to pile themselves up in front of the rifles of the German infantry. Then followed the charge of the German Hussars, who came near to making an end of Marshal Bazaine, and indeed succeeded in creating such confusion that, as an immediate result, the French army was for a time robbed of a commander-in-chief, and then subsequently for another while had three at once. Later on, at perhaps the most critical stage of this critical battle, the Bredow Brigade of Cuirassiers and Uhlans made its tremendous sacrifice charge, countered in turn by French cavalry and resulting in a "regular maelstrom of men and horses."

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

And the culminating point of the battle was reached in a great cavalry *mêlée*, in which nearly six thousand horsemen took part. "Never since," says the author, "has the world witnessed, nor is it likely again to witness, a cavalry fight of such magnitude."

Add to these striking and numerous instances of the employment of cavalry within a single battle the picturesque exploit of Prince Frederick Charles, reminding one of our own Sheridan, in arriving upon the field of battle after a fourteen-mile gallop in less than an hour, and it is easy to understand why *Mars-la-Tour* has been commonly regarded as a cavalryman's battle. But, while the cavalry activity was exceptional and the cavalry divisions on both sides played an important rôle, all arms contributed to and shared in the honors of this day of hard fighting, which checked the French retreat and influenced Bassine to retire upon Metz, lock his army up there, and make the outcome of the war a foregone conclusion.

The student of naval history will be gratified to find included in this survey of critical battles, as the fourth battle treated, the great naval victory of Tsushima, in which battle Admiral Togo's fleet annihilated the Russian Baltic fleet of more than 50 keels. Most readers will find this episode of the Russo-Japanese War within their recollection and will recall the astonishing cable news of that 27th of May.

This chapter reminds one of Creasy's selection of the defeat of the Spanish Armada as one of his "fifteen." The narrative of the battle is preceded by an account of the appearance of Japan among the so-called civilized nations in the middle of the last century, a survey of its progress and resulting Russo-Japanese rivalry. Today's sympathy with the island empire in the hour of her dreadful catastrophe precludes other thoughts, but one knows that Japan will recover from her disaster and one cannot but pause to wonder when and how the *Königgrätz* of this determined nation, which evaluates its military necessities in no uncertain terms, will bring it, in its turn, after the manner of its German schoolmasters, to a subsequent *Mars-la-Tour* or—a *Marne*!

The *Marne* is perhaps too recent an event and is too deeply engraved in the memories of the present generation to tempt many readers to a perusal of its episodes, the subject of Colonel Whitton's fifth chapter; yet most readers would profit considerably from this excellent account, which is written after the pros and cons of all varieties have appeared in abundance in the papers and journals and memoirs published in great quantities in the countries concerned. It is only now, nine years after the event, that the reports from all sources bearing upon this greatest battle of all times can be properly appraised. The author has prepared himself well for his task, as an earlier study resulted in his book, "The *Marne* Campaign," and one can find little fault with his analysis of this far-flung battle. Its several outstanding features—the weakening of the German marching flank, its turn inward east of Paris, von Kluck's overreaching of the German line, his subsequent turn to the flank, the attack of Maunoury's army from Paris, the splendid stand of Foch's Ninth Army, the struggle to keep a fist-hold on Verdun and the stand of the Second Army on the Grand Couronné, the faulty control of German G. H. Q., and finally the interesting Hentsch incident—are all treated with due regard to their relative importance, and after a study of this chapter one is less inclined to aver that this one thing or that one thing was the cause of the German defeat. One matter which has been considerably in dispute the author does not attempt to shed light upon. It is probably of little importance, anyway; but one is curious to know whether the Germans outnumbered the Allies in this great battlefield or were themselves outnumbered by the British and the French.

It is believed that the author has created a notable historical summary in his work—a synopsis of the warfare of the past century—and has given us a review of those few battles during that period which will satisfy the definition given by Hallam of a "decisive battle": They can "justly be reckoned among those few battles of which a contrary event would have essentially varied the drama of the world in all its subsequent scenes."

## NEW BOOKS REVIEWED

**PISTOL AND REVOLVER SHOOTING.** By A. L. A. Himmelwright. The Macmillan Co. 244 pages. Illustrated. (Price, \$1.00.)

The author won the first National Revolver Championship in 1900 and appears to be thoroughly versed in his subject. The chapter on "Arms" is valuable, in that it gives a description and brief discussion of practically every make of pistol, revolver and automatic, illustrations of each make accompanying the text. Other chapters deal with ammunition, sights, position, targets, and ranges. The chapter on "Position" and remarks elsewhere on this important matter are not very helpful. A number of positions taken by noted pistol-shots are shown in the accompanying plates, but the text does little more than allude to them. One would desire a more careful analysis of the considerations entering into "position." The chapter titled "Target Practice" is an instance of illogical arrangement. This short chapter devotes only a few paragraphs to some generalities of target practice, and half the chapter is devoted to matches and competitions. In the chapter "Hints to Beginners" the author gives some excellent advice to learners of pistol-shooting. He properly emphasizes the advisability of selecting a weapon to fit the hand. The value of this manual is somewhat compromised by the double set of addenda and corrections which appear at the back of the text and by the final after-word on the automatic pistol. The author's eloquence over the Colt caliber .45 automatic (Army model) in this appendix gives one to question whether some of the original material of the book does not consequently suffer a depreciation of value. In fine, this book is a reprint of what was originally a well-conceived and fairly well-executed manual, now much in need of real revision, instead of an accumulation of appendices.

**FAMOUS HORSES OF AMERICAN HISTORY.** By Evelyn Brogan. Forum Publishing Company, San Antonio, Texas, 1923. 120 pages. Illustrated. (Price, \$2.15.)

This is an account of the lives of thirty-three horses well known and famous in the history of this country. One cannot read of these animals without being tempted to attribute to them more faculties than animals possess. Statements in this work are well substantiated by official records, and as a whole the book is a valuable acquisition to the library of a horse-lover. The book also throws some interesting side lights on the lives of their owners and riders.

**THE GERMAN OFFENSIVE OF JULY 15, 1918 (MARNE SOURCE BOOK).** The General Service Schools, 1923. 910 pages, maps. (Price, \$3.00.)

It is quite impossible to do justice in a brief review to this monumental production of the General Service Schools. It is exclusively a source book. The editor, Colonel Lanza, has contributed no discussion nor comment, except occasional explanatory notes; but his fine historical talent is evident throughout in the careful selection and arrangement of orders, instructions, reports, messages, and schedules, which present a wonderfully complete and live survey of the whole of that Second *Marne* Battle of July, 1918, in which the American 3d and 28th Divisions played a critically important and satisfactory rôle. One derives, indeed, an immense satisfaction from the conduct and performance of those grand divisions, as revealed not alone in American reports and records, but, to a marked extent, in German intelligence records.

There are several reasons which justify the labor which has been bestowed upon this compilation, outside the interest which naturally attaches to the part played in the operations by American troops. The battle was a critical point of the war. On pages 611-15 is reproduced a noteworthy document, the War Diary of the 7th German Army for July 18, 1918. It constitutes a German estimate of the operation and the reasons for the German failure, and concludes a general comment with this remark: "And here we at once see an undoubtedly great strategic success for Marshal Foch," and, based on this viewpoint, July 18, 1918, marks a turning point in the history of the World War.

In the second place, this operation had all the essential features of war of movement.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

The lines of defense had become by the summer of 1918 a flexible system. A considerable area was involved, embracing a large salient with every possible feature of terrain, so that the operation had none of the character of combat between long and extended lines, which had marked the warfare of three years past, and assumed the color of a grand battle, comparable in strategic and tactical interest to any battle of the past.

Moreover, this episode, which is depicted here so fully in nine hundred pages of first-hand material gleaned from the actors on both sides, was complete and decisive.

The student can easily be so engrossed by the thrilling drama that runs through these pages that he will profit greatly by increase of professional knowledge without being aware of it. He will imbibe a veritable store of war-laboratory data. The preparation made for this offensive by the German army is given in minute detail, while the intelligence reports are very illuminating and constitute alone a profitable study in "intelligence."

As an example of the instructive minutiae collected into this volume may be cited the War Diary of the 10th German Division, opposite the American front, for July 15, the day the offensive was launched. Report of situation is given at 20-minute intervals, on the average, throughout the day. Never in the history of war have we had such authentic and complete data as source material.

## Foreign Military Journals

*The Cavalry Journal* (British), July, 1923.

The leading article by Major General Pitman discusses quite fully the part played by the British cavalry in the surprise attack on Cambrai, 1917. The hoped-for breakthrough was not realized and the cavalry could not play the rôle for which they had been concentrated, but the five cavalry divisions were well in hand to play that rôle, and the study of the incidents of their concentration behind the front line, and even the penetration of some leading units into the enemy areas, is highly profitable. "It appears," the writer finds, "that in the intermediate stage between trench and open warfare, opportunities will constantly occur for cavalry to attack batteries. By attacking without hesitation, near Rumilly, on November 20, the squadron was successful in overcoming the battery and its crew. The squadron had only been taught swordsmanship with a view to attacking immediately with the point. The result appears to have been most satisfactory." A number of instances of employment of mounted and combined mounted and dismounted action by squadrons are noted. Particularly, B Squadron of the Fort Garry Horse got through the trench system, and by careful use of ground and suitable formations did excellent work.

Lieutenant-Colonel Osborne's account of the Palestine Campaign concludes in this number with the capture of Damascus, the advance to beyond Aleppo, and the termination of hostilities.

### Training Polo Ponies

Two exceptionally instructive articles appear in this number on the training of polo ponies, one by Lieutenant-Colonel E. D. Miller (author of "Modern Polo") and the other a study by Major Reynolds of the methods of the late Lieutenant-General Sir Pratap Singh, of Jodhpur, who was for more than a quarter century a noted poloist. Colonel Miller starts his pupils in at learning to stop straight and rein back; this first at the walk. This is taught with great patience. He discusses the several steps of training all the way through. The article on Sir Pratap's methods is an inspiration. The picture of his polo stable, of near a hundred carefully selected prospects, all at work along careful

## FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS

schedules that had in view a preparatory period of two years, is—contrasted with the terrible rush with us to make ponies inside of a few months—a useful thing to ponder over.

### Italian Cavalry Seat

In an interesting article on the Italian Cavalry School at Pinerolo the reader is given a pretty complete description of the Italian seat: Very short stirrup, seat kept as near the center of the saddle as possible, knee and thigh forced down as far as possible, lower leg drawn well back, heel well depressed, loins kept well forward, and back consequently hollow. The writer says: "To remain seated in the saddle in this position at a canter, and not stand in the stirrups, requires considerable practice and suppleness of the loins and hips, and a very long period of trotting makes the back muscles ache terribly until one gets used to it." Jumping is the whole thing in the Italian cavalry scheme of instruction. They do not care to make their horses handy; they have no polo and work for no especial skill in mounted combat. The horse and rider are trained with a view principally of enabling them to march and negotiate obstacles.

In jumping, the body is kept well forward, with the center of gravity well over the knees and the seat close to the saddle, with no weight on the cantle.

There is an interesting study in this number of the matter of co-operation between cavalry and tanks.

### British R. O. T. C.

In *Journal of the Royal United Service Institution* for February, 1923, there appears an interesting article about the "National Cadets" by Brigadier-General Ludlow. The cadets in Great Britain began by the formation of units in the public schools at the conclusion of the Crimean War. They seem to have developed into a definite part of the national defense in much the same manner as have our corps of cadets in colleges and preparatory schools. They probably more nearly resemble the units organized in our secondary schools under Section 550, National Defense Act of 1920, than the units—even the junior units—of our R. O. T. C.

The British Army is composed, according to the author, (1) of the Regular Army, (2) the Militia, (3) the Territorial Army, and (4) the Cadets, whereas with us our R. O. T. C. and Section 550 units are only feeders for our organized reserves.

The authorized cadet establishment today stands at 110,000.

The officers' training corps cadets, corresponding somewhat to our senior units of the R. O. T. C., number 35,000, only about one-half the strength of our senior units.

The appropriation for these is only about a seventh of our appropriations for our whole R. O. T. C. Economy rules supreme, as with us.

It is noteworthy that in the training courses physical training and games are given an importance of 50 out of 100 points.

While these cadets are part of the forces of the crown, they are nevertheless considered as non-combatant.

The Dominion of Canada has a Cadet Corps numbering in the neighborhood of 100,000 and composed of senior and junior units. The cadet training is voluntary, while in the other dominions it is mostly compulsory.

*The Journal of the Royal United Service Institution*, May, 1923.

The Gold Medal Essay in this number has for the subject a discussion of "the manner in which scientific invention and science in general affect, both strategically and tactically, the next great European war in which the British Empire may be engaged," together with suggestions for improvements in organization and training. The author, Major R. Chenevix Trench, whose digests of the *Militär Wochenblatt* have made his name a familiar one, examines all modes and agencies of warfare, and his deductions seem conservative and sound. On the subject of cavalry he concludes that, despite the increas-

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

ing difficulties, the value of cavalry at the right place and right time, and its effect on shaken infantry, does not diminish. He recommends anti-tank guns for cavalry. Other noteworthy articles in this number are "The Dvina Campaign," "The Strategy of the Campaign in Mesopotamia, 1914-1918," "Policy and Strategy," by Field Marshal Sir W. R. Robertson, and "Guilleumont," a translation of a chapter from a recently published German book by a Hanoverian company commander. The battle description contained in the last-named article has a terrible vividness that is not often attained in military memoirs and depicts the fighting during the most desperately grim period of the war.

### The Day of Horse Artillery Past

*Revue de Cavalerie*, January-February, 1923.

The third installment of the series, by Colonel of Artillery Cambuzet, entitled *La cavalerie et les fous*, treats of the artillery component of cavalry forces. He deals with the generalities of the problem and is content with theoretical considerations. His principal deduction is that the artillery component of a cavalry force should consist of 65 millimeter mountain guns and 155's both motorized. He computes that the ammunition supply can be about twelve times as great with motor transport, and he dwells on the proposition that the days of horse artillery are done. His thesis is not very convincing, because while he considers the artillery employment quite comprehensively, it is not apparent that he is at the same time giving due consideration to the characteristics of cavalry employment. In this connection one must bear in mind the excellent and complete road system of the continent and also the tendency of the French cavalry since the war to resolve its mobility into a mobility primarily for transportation.

An article by Commandant Burnol studies the employment of truck train transport of combat troops in tactical operations and concludes that this mode of transfer of troops can be best secured by cavalry advance guard.

An interesting historical article, prompted by the restoration in the recent German and British cavalry regulations of the raid as one of the principal missions of cavalry, is entitled "*Quelques Exemples de Raids à travers les ages*." The examples are drawn almost exclusively from the Mongol raids of the middle ages and those of the American Civil War.

Attention is particularly invited to a recital of the work of a reconnaissance squadron sent out as part of the French cavalry reconnaissance launched on the occasion of the German withdrawal in 1917 to the "Hindenburg" line. The operations, messages, and accomplishments of this reconnaissance squadron are given in considerable detail.

The two examples of cavalry combat in the World War given in the installment *Faits de cavalerie* in this number offer nothing of an unusual character, and the American reader will find Preston's "Desert Mounted Corps" and Colonel Davis' contributions to the *CAVALRY JOURNAL* more useful than the series of articles on the Egyptian Expeditionary Corps appearing in the *Revue*.

### *Revue de Cavalerie*, March-April, 1923.

The first article is a study in detail of the maneuvers of the skeleton large units conducted at Camp de Mailly and based upon the situation which confronted the 9th Cavalry Division, which was there located during the Battle of the Marne, maintaining contact between Foch's 9th Army and the 4th Army of de Langie. This study is continued in the next number of the *Revue*.

General Detroyat contributes a discussion of the proper conditions to be imposed in a charger championship. In an article on tanks and cavalry, Colonel Langlois concludes that the cavalry must adopt the tank, which, as it shall be perfected in the future, will be found to be well adapted to the use of cavalry advance guards and other detachments. He thinks, furthermore, that the cavalry spirit and training is of just the quality needed in

## FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS

the operation of fleets of light tanks. Commandant de la Bourdonnaye consumes several pages in pointing out that France comes logically by her present theory of the employment of cavalry dismounted. He labors through some twenty or more centuries of warfare to do this, and misses altogether the point that the American Civil War was the outstanding example of the world, from which the rest of the world needed fifty years to profit, of the proper employment of cavalry.

An article by Commandant de Latour-Dejean rehearses the operation of the 1st Cavalry Corps in helping to stop the German drive between Soissons and Rheims in May, 1918, and then discusses what might reasonably have been expected if the corps, instead of being much scattered when called upon, with much of its complement of armament temporarily lacking, could have been thrown into the breach as an integral, completely organized unit. His deductions are very inspiring with respect to the combat possibilities of a large cavalry unit utilized in this manner to repair a breach in the lines.

### German Cavalry Exploit at Molodetchno

Colonel Kleeburg, of the Polish Army, contributes the first part of an article to this number of the *Revue*, the subject of the article being *Quelques operations de cavalerie sur le front oriental*. The article deals principally with the cavalry operations of 1918-1920, which are well covered by an article by Major Farman in the *CAVALRY JOURNAL* of July, 1921. But the first part of this installment embodies an operation with which all students of cavalry history should acquaint themselves. In the course of a German offensive of September, 1915, the High Command sought to cut off the retreat of the Russian masses, which their successful attacks were driving back, by sending a cavalry corps to penetrate behind the retiring Russian armies and seize and hold the strategic region of Molodetchno, which, because of the geography of this theater of war, was the sole narrow corridor through which the Russian troops could pass.

The principal object was not attained. The cavalry corps did indeed reach the vicinity of Molodetchno and took position there. Its detachments executed important railway demolitions and barred the Russian retreat for several days; but sufficient infantry supports failed to arrive, and finally, overwhelmed by the weight of vastly superior enemy forces, they were forced to release their grip on this gateway to the Russian rear. In the words of the author:

"In spite of [this lack of complete success], the German cavalry was able to attain a striking success. Three—ultimately five—divisions of cavalry held for nearly two weeks a large part of the Russian armies by the throat. During fourteen days they drew upon themselves the whole of the enemy effort, and that by a simple threat directed at a sensitive point of the Russian communications. And more, they caused by their action the retreat to a depth of more than 80 kilometers of a mass of approximately 20 infantry divisions which otherwise would have been forced back only at the price of difficult, long-drawn-out and exceedingly costly infantry attacks."

Two examples of cavalry charges under the caption "*faits de Cavalerie*" appear as diary entries of Brigadier-General de Lisle, commander of the 2d British Cavalry Brigade. They describe in detail two cavalry combats of which he was an eyewitness in 1914. In one the two opposing charging units actually clashed and passed through each other, while in the other the German cavalry charged through the British dismounted men and those who got through made for the led horses. The commander of the latter, leaving only one man with each 8 horses, utilized the remainder of his horse-holders as a mounted reserve to successfully counter the German threat. The details of these engagements are worthy of perusal by squadron officers.

This number of the *Revue* contains a review of the recently published *Historique du corps de cavalerie Sordet* by Colonel Boucherle.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

### Twenty Cavalry Charges on the Western Front Cited

*Bulletin Belge des Sciences Militaires*, June, 1922.

In the third installment of "*nous fait il une cavalerie?*" Major Peteau discusses first the tank and examines carefully this engine of war. Passing to the missions of cavalry he treats the duties of screening and reconnaissance, of retarding the march of the approaching enemy columns, of covering an army wing left in the air, of limiting the effects of a break through in the course of a battle, and of covering a withdrawal.

The author then proceeds to dispose of the question of possibility of the mounted charge. He takes the fight of Haelen as an example and analyzes the employment of the Marwitz Cavalry Corps. He concludes that costly though the charges of the German cavalry undoubtedly were and faulty as was its handling, nevertheless one more effort of that cavalry, of which there was a superabundance, would have brushed aside the Belgian resistance. Then he cites twenty examples of cavalry charges on the western front to prove his contention that under reasonably favorable conditions the mounted charge may be successful and decisive. These examples should be familiar to every cavalryman. It is certain that, on the contrary, most of them have not come to the attention of many American students.

### THE CORPS SORDET AS ARMY CAVALRY

Review by Captain Royden Williamson, 1st Cavalry Brigade

New light upon the much-disputed subject of the operations of the French cavalry, particularly just preceding and during the first battle of the Marne, promises to become available to students of the arm through the recent death of General Sordet.

Upon his relief, on the 8th of September, 1914, from the command of the cavalry corps which bore his name, General Sordet retired to the silence of his provincial home at Thonon, Savoy, and never broke it. His end there, in the last week of July, this year, is the occasion of a critical review of those operations, appearing in the issue of August 1st of *Le Gasciois*, from the pen of that Repington of the French service, General Cherfils. That General Cherfils' views, especially regarding the action of the late General Maunoury in so summarily relieving his cavalry commander, will provoke some highly interesting replies, can scarcely be doubted. And thus will History's cause be served.

General Sordet, as is well known to all cavalrymen, was one of the foremost figures of the French cavalry service. A volunteer in the war of '70, he participated in the engagements of Nuits and Héricourt. Advancing through the subaltern grades, he became a colonel in 1898. In 1908 he was made a brigade commander, in 1910 a general of division, and later given the command of the 10th Army Corps at Rennes. In 1913 he was appointed a member of the Conseil Supérieur de la Guerre and Inspector General of Cavalry. At the outbreak of the war, Joffre confided to him the command of the cavalry corps.

But the interest of American students is not in either the biographical or the controversial side of General Cherfils' topic. It will rather be found in the lesson to be learned from what he obviously charges, namely, the violation of the principle that "the orders and instructions to the army cavalry should be definite as to mission and leave no doubt in the mind of the cavalry commander as to exactly what he is to accomplish. Should there be more than one mission assigned, their relative importance should be clearly indicated. However, the manner of employing his force in carrying out these missions is the problem of the cavalry commander, and he should not be interfered with in so far as this is concerned by instructions from the army." Such is the doctrine pronounced at the Command and General Staff School.

"The Cavalry Corps commanded by General Sordet, who has just died," writes General Cherfils, "marched between the 4th of August and the 7th of September in the

## FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS

neighborhood of 1,200 kilometers, or an average of 35 kilometers a day. Its wastage is thus explained.

"The corps, proven by the fighting of the 26th, 27th, and 28th of August, which it had endured actively to cover the flank of the British Army, had just retired to the south and the shelter of the Avre.

"On August 30th, at 1:00 A. M., an order from G. H. Q. attaches the corps to the 6th Army, which, since the day before, had been withdrawing behind the Avre. General Maunoury asks General Sordet to cover his army on its exterior wing and to establish contact between its interior wing and the forces of the British.

"To fulfill this double mission, General Sordet organizes with his best troops a provisional division, confiding the command of it to General de Cornulier-Lucinière, this force to operate on the east flank while the corps, less this force, operates on the west.

"On August 30th the 6th Army falls back in retreat south toward the wooded region of Clermont; the Provincial Cavalry Division moves to Estrées-Saint Denis; the Cavalry Corps to Froissy. On the 31st the retreat continues to the south. The Provisional Division occupies Pont Saint Maxence, on the Oise; the Corps falls back to Beauvais, behind the Thérain. The special Serret battalions were reorganizing at Montdidier.

"On September 1st the 6th Army, attacked near Compiègne and Verberie, retires behind the Oise. It must gain the north of the entrenched camp of Paris, to the defense force of which it belongs. The Provisional Division holds Senlis, covering the west wing of the British Army, which, since the success of our sudden counter-blow at Guise, had gained a day's march toward the south on the French columns.

"The Cavalry Corps crosses the Seine at Mantes and Meulan on the 3rd. It rests the 4th, and on the 5th establishes itself around Saint Cyr-l'Ecole, General Maunoury having meanwhile reattached the Provisional Division to the corps.

"But on the 5th G. H. Q. resumes control of the Cavalry Corps. On the 4th G. H. Q.'s liaison officer with the corps transmits to it the information that during the course of the coming offensive operations the Cavalry Corps will be charged with covering the left wing of the British Army.

"It would have been more logical to have left it there. The successive directions imposed upon the Cavalry Corps, which passes from G. H. Q. to the disposition of an army, only to be taken over again by G. H. Q., are not such as to make for unity of view. It would have been better if G. H. Q. had allowed the cavalry more initiative in the execution of a mission less strictly limited. The High Command bears a share of the responsibility for the disorganization of the Cavalry Corps' operations and for the useless fatigue it imposed upon it.

"At the direction of G. H. Q., the Cavalry Corps was ordered to assemble on the 7th in the region of Brunoy-Longjumeau. On the 5th, at 4:00 P. M., it is informed that it passes to the control of the 6th Army, and that it must gain at once the northeast of Paris. The 6th Army directs it to move as rapidly as possible to the east of Nanteuil-le-Haudouin to form an advanced echelon to this army's left wing, which is to reach the Ourcq by the 6th.

"Now the heads of the Cavalry Corps columns are able at the most to reach Gonesse by the 6th. So it is decided to transport one division, the 5th, from Versailles to Nanteuil-le-Haudouin by rail. This division succeeds in detraining at dawn of the 7th. It moves on Betz, where it is repulsed. The Cavalry Corps assembles toward Boissy-Fresnoy on the afternoon of the 7th. The Germans hold Betz, Cuvergnon, and Auteuil.

"The attack on Betz of the 61st Reserve Division, which formed the extreme left element of the 6th Army's left, fails. The Cavalry Corps, extenuated by the hundred kilometers it had covered between the 6th and 7th, falls back to the north at Nanteuil in an effort to obtain some supplies brought up by an improvised truck train. Not until midnight do the divisions bivouac.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

"The 6th Army has gained some ground, but its most advanced elements have not passed the line Etrepilly-Acy-Betz. General Maunoury orders that the attack be resumed the morning of the 8th on the entire front. He directs the Cavalry Corps to push more to the north and seek to debouch near La Ferte-Milon, in rear of the enemy lines. General Sordet himself had already decided to resume the pursuit and assures himself of the execution of it.

"But during the night General Maunoury learns that the Cavalry Corps has retired to the north of Nanteuil or has pressed back certain elements of the 61st D. R. He attributes this retirement to weakness, forgetting that the corps had already taken part in the battle during all afternoon of the 7th. Neglecting to inform himself of the exact causes of this withdrawal, he sends at 1:00 A. M., of the 8th the following order:

"I have just learned of the retirement of the Cavalry Corps and of the 61st D. R. The consequences of this movement must be repaired.

"The Cavalry Corps will mount at once and regain the ground lost and fulfill the mission assigned it."

"At the moment this order reached General Sordet his divisions were already moving toward their attack objectives. The 3rd Cavalry Division, forming the advance guard, had reached Bargny plateau. It is ordered to attack Cuvigneron, while the 5th Cavalry Division gains Boursoume in the advance on La Ferte-Milon. The 1st Cavalry Division is held in rear to support the 3d.

"The order of the 6th Army, with its almost insulting implication, made a lamentable impression upon every one. It was followed by a severe postscript. At 9:00 A. M. of the 8th September a staff officer of the 6th Army brings to General Sordet the order directing him to turn over his command to General Bridoux, commanding the 5th Division."

That there was confusion at the headquarters of the Cavalry Corps as to what it commanded at a given moment is borne out by the general commanding the Provisional Division himself. Writing of the situation of September 5th, he has this to say:

"Toward 16 hours arrived from two opposite directions two distinctly contradictory orders, but both calling for an immediate resumption of march. First was an order of the 6th Army directing a suspension of the movement returning the Provisional Division to the Cavalry Corps and directing it to flank the right wing of the 6th Army, which was taking the offensive in the direction of Chateau-Thierry. Soon after, upon his arrival at Bussy-Saint-Georges, the chief of staff of the Cavalry Corps, knowing that the Provisional Division had been placed at the disposition of the corps since the previous evening and ignorant of what had happened since, quite naturally sent his instructions to the division with orders for it to rejoin the corps in haste.

"General du Cornulier-Lacinière replied to the chief of staff of the corps that, taken between two contradictory orders, honor commanded him to obey the one on the side of which the blow was closest. He would, therefore, answer the call of the 6th Army, already engaged or upon the point of becoming so, and he felt sure that General Sordet could not but approve."

One may wonder whether, but for this confusion which General Cherfils invites attention to, the work of the French cavalry, so brilliant in the subsequent "race for the sea," would not have been as spectacularly apparent in the Marne campaign as Gallieni's tactics.

*Journal of the United Service Institution of India, April, 1923.*

In this number the principal article is of special significance for cavalrymen, being an excellent account of the operations of the 4th Cavalry Division in Palestine and Syria in September, 1918. An appendix gives in detail the history of the action of the 2d Lancers at Afule, illustrated by a sketch map.

## Polo

### THE ARMY AT NARRAGANSETT

#### The 1923 Army Teams

On May 24, 1923, in compliance with the direction of General Pershing, the Central Polo Committee submitted to the Chief of Staff a memorandum discussing the plans of the committee for army participation in important national polo tournaments during the 1923 season. In this memorandum it was recommended that the plan which was so successfully pursued last year, and which resulted in the winning of the Junior Championship and the Rathborne Memorial Championship by the army, be followed again this year, viz: that a number of the best available players in the army be assembled at Mitchel Field, Long Island, for about six weeks' practice with some of the best players in America, and then proceed to Narragansett Pier, R. I., to participate in the Junior Championship Tournament, to be held at that place in August.

The committee further recommended that several of the best remaining players and ponies be assembled at Washington, D. C., to try out and train for the "Twelve-goal Championship," a new championship event which has been added by the Polo Association for teams not exceeding 12 goals—no player over 4 goals. This team would be available not only for the 12-goal tournament, but for the Rathborne Memorial and other events within its goal limit; would be a feeder for future army teams, and would be prepared to replace any casualties that may occur this year.

These propositions were developed after correspondence with the best army players throughout the service, and a canvass for candidates for the team was made among a number of officers considered as suitable. A great majority of them were found to be unavailable, due to various causes—tied up with local teams for the summer, no mounts available, other duties preventing, etc.

The recommendations of the committee were approved by the Chief of Staff on June 1, 1923, and orders were issued in pursuance thereof, directing Lieutenant-Colonel Lewis Brown, cavalry; Major A. H. Wilson, cavalry; Major W. W. Erwin, cavalry; Major L. A. Beard, Q. M. C., and Major J. K. Herr, G. S. C., to proceed to Mitchel Field about June 15 to train for the Junior Championship Team. Lieutenant-Colonel Brown was designated by the committee as captain of the team and he was given complete control of everything in connection with players, training, entry, etc. Lieutenant T. H. McCreery, Q. M. C., who so successfully trained the mounts last year, has acted in the same capacity this season.

The mounts sent on were generally the same as last year—12 from the Military Academy, 6 from the Cavalry School, 4 from Fort Bliss, 3 from the War Department string (two of which recently arrived from Germany), 6 belonging to Major Beard, and one excellent private mount generously loaned by Major C. P. George, F. A.

The following expenses in connection with the Army team have been borne by the Government: travel of officers, transportation of enlisted men, commutation of rations while not at a military station, and freight shipments of mounts. All other legitimate expenses (not including personal expenses, which are met by the officers themselves) will be paid from a fund which has been raised by means of voluntary subscriptions from polo clubs throughout the army.

#### Practice Games and Westbury Cup Tournament

June 23 the team played its first practice game on Cochran Field against a "Twenty-seven Goal Team" composed of Ambrose Clark, Louis Stoddard, Watson Webb, and David Downs. The team lost, the score being 5 to 2.



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

The Army four won its way into the semi-final round of the tournament for the Third Westbury Challenge Cup by the victory at the Meadow Brook Club, when it triumphed in a strenuous struggle with the Fox Hunters by a count of 8 to 7.

The Fox Hunters were represented by Howard Phipps at No. 1, George H. Heckscher at No. 2, Dr. H. B. Blackwell at No. 3, and Morgan Belmont at No. 4. The latter's work was the outstanding performance of the Fox Hunters' play.

The game was a nip-and-tuck affair, the lead seesawing back and forth in a manner which kept the spectators in doubts as to the winner until the final gong ended the game. Long, free driving and hard riding was in evidence at all times and the play was fast, and grew faster as the closeness of the two teams' power was realized. Major Wilson secured the ball in the last few minutes of the eighth period and worked it through the opposing horsemen for the final goal, which gave the Army team the victory by the scant margin of one point. The Army-Fox Hunters' contest was one of the most exciting of the season at the Meadow Brook Club.

The Army four won its way into the final for the Westbury Challenge Cup on June 30. The advance was made at the expense of the Magpies, winners of the tournament for the Meadow Brook cups, by the score of 10 to 6.

But the Army team met their match July 21, in the final round for the Third Westbury Challenge Cup. With F. S. von Stade leading a dashing attack, the Meadow Brook Ramblers charged through the defense, caused them to retreat, and captured the game by the score of 10 to 4.

On the Ramblers' team, R. P. Smith, Jr., was at number 1 and he was responsible for several goals; E. C. Bacon occupied the number 2 post and helped greatly in the route by his ability to ride off the Army backs when his teammates brought the ball to within striking distance; but the main credit for the victory was due to the work of von Stade and E. H. Strawbridge, Jr., the number 3 and back respectively. This pair played together in brilliant fashion, warding off attacks with long, sweeping drives that carried the ball well out of danger, and following up their strokes by hard riding, which accounted for points at the other end of the field. Erwin was exceptionally fine in the defensive position, but his forwards were unable to keep up with the rapid pace of the Ramblers, who were far better mounted.

The Army exhibited a strong game in the opening periods of the contest, holding the score to a close count and threatening to take the lead on several occasions, the steady work of Strawbridge checking advances, however, as his goal was approached. It was anybody's game until the fourth period and the half was over. In the second half the Ramblers forged steadily ahead, opening up the margin by which they had led since the opening period, and stopped every effort of the Army forwards to register.

The game was fast throughout and exciting, despite the one-sided score. The clubhouse was well filled with members of society who gathered to witness the playing of the final.

### The Army 12-Goal Team

July 25 the Central Polo Committee announced the selection of Major Rene E. De R. Hoyle, F. A.; Major Vincent P. Erwin, F. A.; First Lieutenant Cornelius C. Jadwin, cavalry, and First Lieutenant Thomas Q. Donaldson, Jr., cavalry, as members of a low-goal team to represent the Army in tournaments at Narragansett Pier, R. I., under the auspices of the Point Judith Polo Club. This team was entered in the following tournaments:

(1) Rhode Island Cups—July 28 to August 1—Open to teams of four whose aggregate handicap does not exceed nine goals. Played under the handicap.

(2) Atlantic Cups—August 1 to August 6—Open to teams of four whose aggregate handicap does not exceed twenty goals. Played under the handicap.

## POLO

(3) Twelve-goal Championship—August 6 to August 13—Open to teams of four whose handicap does not exceed twelve goals.

(4) Rathborne Cup—August 20 to August 25—Open to teams of four under the handicap.

The team proceeded at once to Narragansett Pier, together with 24 mounts and 9 enlisted men. The mounts were selected from those of the 3d Cavalry at Fort Myer, the Service Detachment District of Washington, Yale University, and the mounts recently returned from Germany. The team was selected, after about one month's play, from eight candidates stationed at or brought to Washington for the try-out.

Through July the Army four (first team) played a series of practice games against first-class civilian aggregations.

### Rhode Island Cup Tournament

In the opening match for the Rhode Island cups between the Army and Bryn Mawr, at the Point Judith Country Club, July 31, the Army 12-goal team was victorious by a 12 to 8 score.

Major Erwin was thrown when in some way his mount apparently crossed his legs and stumbled. Erwin was hurled to the ground head foremost, and as he lay prostrate the pony rolled over his head and chest. He was taken immediately to the South County Cottage Hospital at Wakefield, R. I. The accident happened during the latter minutes of the fifth chukker, while the play was near the side boards at center field. In no way, observers say, can the accident be blamed on roughness of play.

For a few minutes the accident threatened to be the cause of terminating the match prematurely, but through the action of the Flamingo players in allowing Major Terry Allen, one of their number, to take Major Erwin's place, the game was continued.

The contest from every standpoint was a good exhibition of polo and horsemanship. In the first period, Lieutenant Donaldson started the scoring, exhibiting a splendid mastery in riding and hitting the ball. He tallied twice, while Major Hoyle scored a third point. Lieutenant Donaldson scored again in the second chukker, followed soon after by J. C. Rathborne, of Bryn Mawr. In the sixth period Lieutenant Donaldson scored once more. Major Allen also made a goal.

Bryn Mawr players did their best work in the seventh, scoring three times. In the same period Lieutenant Jadwin, of the Army, also registered a tally. The last points of the match were made in the eighth chukker, one for the Army by Major Allen and one for Bryn Mawr by J. B. Huff.

Major Erwin, "Little Red," credited by the *New York Times* as one of the most sensational horsemen that has ever played on the Point Judith turf, was playing No. 1 in the match and had just completed a goal when the accident occurred. As this number of the CAVALRY JOURNAL goes to press he is reported as still in hospital and as improving.

The Army "12-goal" team went down to defeat, August 1, 11 goals to 10, before the Rumson players in the semi-final match for the Rhode Island cups at the Point Judith Country Club. With both teams fighting hard for the honors, the match developed into a furious and spirited battle. The Rumson four seemed to be the better mounted, in the opinion of the *New York Times*.

The first goal was credited to Wister Randolph, who received the ball near his own goal and carried it the length of the field for a tally. Two minutes later, in the first period, Major Herr, who substituted for Erwin, scored a point for the Army team.

In the second chukker W. S. Jones, Jr., from an almost impossible angle and by a back-handed stroke, scored for Rumson. Then followed another of the great exhibitions in the game, when Lieutenant Donaldson took the ball almost the full distance of the field, scoring for the Army.

Trailing at the end of the fifth, the Army rallied in the early minutes of the sixth and



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

tied the count, only to lose it again the next chukker on goals by H. Albright and by W. S. Jones. The score then was 10 to 2.

The game went an extra period, the teams being tied at the end of the eighth period.

### Atlantic Cup Tournament

In the first event for the Atlantic cup, played August 4, the Army 12-goal team defeated Penlyln, 7 to 2. The game began tamely, but roughened considerably as feeling apparently arose among the players. Army riders displayed their usual good generalship in the course of the contest. Lieutenant Donaldson was slightly injured in a fall from his mount, but he was able to resume play.

#### LINE-UP

U. S. ARMY (7)	PENLYLN (3)
No. 1. Lieutenant T. Q. Donaldson.	No. 1. G. H. Earle.
No. 2. Lieutenant C. C. Jadwin.	No. 2. A. L. Smith.
No. 3. Major J. K. Herr.	No. 3. B. McFadden.
Back. Major R. E. D. Hoyle.	Back. M. L. Dixon.

In their second game, August 6, the Army team defeated Flamingo, 17 to 7, while Rumson beat Bryn Mawr, 11 to 7.

#### LINE-UP

ARMY (17)	FLAMINGO (7)
No. 1. Lieutenant T. Q. Donaldson.	No. 1. J. C. Cooley.
No. 2. Lieutenant C. C. Jadwin.	No. 2. Major Terry Allen.
No. 3. Major J. K. Herr.	No. 3. Gerald H. Dempsey.
Back. Major R. E. D. Hoyle.	Back. Julius Fleischman.

The Army 12-goal team won the Atlantic cup by defeating Green River 9 to 6, on August 11th, in the final match.

#### LINE-UP AND SUMMARIES

ARMY	GREEN RIVER
Lieutenant T. Q. Donaldson..... 2	Walter Seligman ..... 0
Lieutenant C. C. Jadwin..... 2	H. W. Shaffer..... 0
Major J. K. Herr..... 3	Robert Almy ..... 1
Major R. E. D. Hoyle..... 2	C. S. Lee..... 5
Total..... 9	Total..... 6

### The 12-goal Championship

In its first match of the Twelve-goal Championship, August 13, the Junior Army team defeated Bryn Mawr by 8 to 2.

The Army team gained an advance almost at the start, when four minutes after the beginning of play, in the first period, Lieutenant Donaldson scored, getting the ball on the throw. In another flash of brilliant play, later in the period, he scored again.

The Army four scored in every period thereafter except in the fourth, when Bryn Mawr showed its best defensive play of the match. The only tallies for Bryn Mawr were scored by Charles Leonard and J. W. Converse.

In this game Major Terry Allen played No. 3 for the Army. The Bryn Mawr players were 1, Julian B. Huff; 2, C. R. Leonard; 3, J. W. Converse; back, W. P. Huriburt.

The Penlyln team, after defeating in succession the Rumson and Point Judith teams, won the Twelve-goal Championship Tournament August 16, when the Philadelphia quartet defeated the Army second team in a lively contest, 8 goals to 6.

## POLO

The line-ups in this final were as follows:

PENLYLN (8)	ARMY 2d TEAM (8)
George H. Earle.....No. 1.....	Lieutenant T. Q. Donaldson
Albert H. Smith.....No. 2.....	Lieutenant C. C. Jadwin
Barclay McFadden.....No. 3.....	Major Terry Allen
Morrice L. Dixon.....Back.....	Major R. E. D. Hoyle

### The Junior Championship

The Junior Championship tourney started on the same day, with a game between the Army first team and Orange County, in which the Army won with a score of 13 to 7. The Army team, as finally arranged for the tournament, put Wilson at 1, Herr at 2, Brown as pivot, and Beard back. Beard made 5 goals, Wilson, 4; Brown, 3; and Herr, 1. The Orange County team had W. R. Grace at 1, Harriman at 2, Fred Post at 3, and Walter Camp, Jr., playing back.

August 20th, the Army team disposed of the Penlyln four, 10 to 6.

The Penlyln team consisted of: No. 1, G. H. Earle (3); No. 2, H. E. Talbott, Jr. (4); No. 3, B. McFadden (4); No. 4, G. Dempsey (4).

### Army Retains the Junior Championship

In the final game of the Junior Championship, played August 23, the Army retained its honors by winning against Point Judith by the score of 14 to 6. Herbert Reed reports, in the *New York Evening Post*:

"Army's team retained the junior championship today in a brilliant game, in which the Point Judith four made something of a battle of it. The soldiers scored by 14-6, Colonel Brown coming through with five goals; Wilson being thrown loose for four, Herr for three, and Major Louis Beard being cut down this trip to two tallies. Point Judith was surprisingly strong, General Bethel and Burrage staging more than one rally in the face of superior teamwork. Burrage, indeed, blew past the best of the Army defense for three goals and Wister Randolph slapped in some sharp polo.

"The Army, however, was pressing pretty much of the time, and it was only a question of just what the score would be. Brown, of the Army team, carried up in the first period, and General Bethel turned the attack for the moment, the Point Judith team forcing the attack. General Bethel worked out his best backhand strokes, and Burrage picked them up, so that carrying out one of the formations he scored with a neat forehand. This put Point Judith in the lead and gave the team just something of an edge for the time being. However, the Army was pressing, and Wilson carried the ball up until such time as Wilson and Randolph had a chance to match strokes, Wilson getting loose for a moment and getting past Lee, but not quite catching up with Burrage.

"The game began to warm up in the second section, General Bethel playing freely and Colonel Brown and Major Beard making a neat combination.

"Major Beard snatched the ball in the open, and for a moment the Army was in ascendent. Lee, however, made a pretty knock-in, and the Army then worked across in front of the goal. There was better than a chance of even work against Point Judith, and in the course of some sharp galloping the ball was fed up to Major Herr, who swiped it forty yards for a tally.

"Began then a pretty defense by Wister Randolph and a sudden matching of that piece of work by the shooting out once more of the Army forwards. The pressure was put on four times inside the defensive 40-yard line in the fourth period, and then Brown picked up the ball from a throw-in. Wister Randolph and Lee now took command of the game, making pretty backhands that for the moment shook up the soldier defense. Then Beard and Brown began to play to the boards.

"Despite the pretty strokes of Lee, the Army was still maintaining the pressure in the early stages of the fourth period, Herr working out his own salvation, Wilson flinging out again into the clear, while Brown slammed up and through, scoring with a first-class forehand stroke.

"General Bethel seized the opportunity to turn handily and come through with a pretty shot, the fine stroke helping Point Judith more than a bit. The

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Army pressed again toward the close of the fourth period, and Wilson broke free for a three-stroke sequence that was just as neat a bit of work as has been seen in polo in a long time.

"Swinging into the fifth period, Major Wilson worked out free again on one of his best mounts, but ran into a strong Point Judith defense, Lee and Randolph plugging up the openings the Army had made. Suddenly Burrage, hitting neatly, worked out through his formation for a first-class tally, and then all at once there was a swarm of soldiers threatening the Point Judith goal, the attack being well designed to let Brown through for a tally. It was apparent by this time that the score was only a question of time. However, there was something of a kick in the Point Judith team, for Burrage broke away from the center of the field, and while for the moment Lee checked an Army attack, Burrage made two pretty shots.

"The soldiers continued to put on the pressure, Herr scoring prettily by a forehead shot from a knock-in after Wilson had come home. By this time there was a swing of the formation to the right, and the canny Brown bored up and helped to pile up the tally. In the closing session the champions came faster and faster. From a throw-in Major Herr took a long drive over the line, but right here there was a sudden change in the situation that let up Wilson with a tally made by a first-class backhand, just as neat a backhand as has been seen in a championship. Major Beard continued the good work for the soldiers, and it was not until the sharp defensive tactics of Lee shut down the swirl of the Army surge that the soldiers were checked a bit. Even so, there was something of a rally toward the close when Major Herr took a neat forehead stroke for the final score."

The ponies were played as follows:

WILSON: *Sweet Meat, Bill Marchmont, Peanut, Peg, Rita.*

HERR: *Hunter, Spike, Cat, Starlight.*

BROWN: *Marvel, Vampire, Capstan, Countess II.*

BEARD: *Lalla Koola, Ella, Belmont, Flame.*

Ponies were at once shipped from Narragansett Pier and the team proceeded to Meadow Brook for its final two weeks' training before meeting the British.

### Army's Junior Team in Rathborne Cup Tournament

On this same day the Army Junior four defeated the Shrewsbury quartet in a match at the Point Judith Country Club by a score of 17 goals to 9.

Lieutenant Donaldson and Major Terry Allen were outstanding riders on the victorious quartet.

In the finals of the Rathborne Cup Tournament, however, played against Green River, the Army second team were defeated by the score of 9 to 3. Army was ahead at the start with a handicap of a single goal, but the cross-field play of Green River, one of the most interesting and unusual teams mounted by any organization, was too much for the Army team.

The Army second team, after the finals for the Rathborne Cup Tournament at Point Judith, was disbanded and the players and ponies ordered to return at once to their proper stations.

A summary of the play of this team at Narragansett is given below:

#### RHODE ISLAND CUPS

July 30—Army, 12; Bryn Mawr, 8.

August 1—Army, 10; Rumson, 11.  
(Semi-finals)

#### 12-GOAL CHAMPIONSHIP

August 13—Army, 8; Bryn Mawr, 2.

August 16—Army, 6; Penlynn, 8  
(Finals)

#### ATLANTIC CUPS

August 4—Army, 7; Penlynn, 3.

August 6—Army, 17; Flamingo, 7.

August 11—Army, 7; Green River, 6.  
(Finals)

#### RATHBORNE MEMORIAL CUP

August 23—Army, 17; Shrewsbury, 9.

August 26—Army, 3; Green River, 9.  
(Finals)

## POLO

### AMERICAN ARMY TEAM WINS TOURNAMENT WITH BRITISH ARMY

Polo interest throughout the country has lately been centered upon the matches between the American and British Army teams at Meadow Brook. Lieutenant-General Sir Beauvoir de Lisle's team brought over with them 25 first-class ponies, and planned to line up with Lieutenant-Colonel T. P. Melvill, 17th Lancers, No. 1; Major F. B. Hurndall, 14th Hussars, No. 2; Lieutenant-Colonel J. D. Y. Bingham, No. 3; and Major Vyvyan Lockett, No. 4. This aggregate represented a formidable handicap of 33 goals. Lieutenant-Colonel Bingham, an 8-goal man, sustained an injury to his knee, so that this member of the original team had to be relieved, and his place was taken by Lieutenant W. S. McCreery. Prior to the opening game Colonel Melvill and Major Lockett were both so unfortunate as to be injured. Major Lockett sprained his ankle under a falling pony, while Colonel Melvill was knocked senseless from his mount when he was struck on the side of the head by a hard-hit ball. Major E. G. Atkinson was borrowed from the Count de Madre's Tigers to substitute for Major Lockett, but Colonel Melvill, team captain, recovered sufficiently to play in the first match. The line-ups for the first game, played September 12, were as follows:

#### BRITISH ARMY

1. Lieutenant-Colonel T. P. Melvill
2. Lieutenant W. S. McCreery
3. Major F. B. Hurndall
4. Major E. G. Atkinson.

#### AMERICAN ARMY

1. Major A. H. Wilson
2. Major J. K. Herr
3. Lieutenant-Colonel Lewis Brown
4. Major L. A. Beard

The American Army four won a splendid victory in this game by a score of 10 to 7. Our team displayed superb teamwork, a fast pace, outdistancing their opponents in practically every race, clever hitting and flashes of brilliant individual playing, especially by Major "Jingle" Wilson, whose almost wizard-like work made him conspicuous. Superior generalship and perfect teamwork was the foundation into which the masterful plays of the Army's brilliant forward were fitted, so that they had a clear advantage over their doughty and experienced opponents throughout the game.

The American ponies, in the capable hands of McCreery, were fed into the game with such excellent management that in its mounts our team had a distinct advantage.

The British were at their best when strung out in regular fashion; but they seemed to be easily upset by the sudden cross-field plays of Colonel Brown's team. The American team was a little the best at riding off. J. C. Cooley was referee and Devereaux Milburn umpire.

In the second game, played September 16, the American Army lost to the British in a very thrilling and exciting encounter. The score was kept well evened up throughout the game and the outcome of the match was in doubt until Major Hurndall sent his team into a two-goal lead in the eighth period, with scarcely more than a minute left to play. The period ended with the score 12 to 10. The entire contest was fast from start to finish, the British players riding harder and wielding their mallets with greater power and accuracy than in the first game. Major Atkinson was especially brilliant. On the American team Wilson was again a favorite of the spectators, and the teamwork of Colonel Brown's four was well-nigh perfect. The two teams had the same line-up as in the initial contest. As to mounts, they were as evenly matched as could be desired. The American ponies were not up to the mark, however, in the last periods.

In the final game, September 18, the American four won the match and the tournament by a splendid victory, with a score 10 to 3. Major Lockett took his regular place in this game, relieving Lieutenant McCreery.

Quoting from the *Washington Post*:

"The first half was a backfield game, with Lieutenant-Colonel Brown at No. 3 and Major Beard at back, outplaying Major F. B. Hurndall and Major Vyvyan Lockett.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Brown's game was phenomenal throughout. Not only did he score more often, but he was the bulwark of the defense and the starting point of the attack. The defense was almost impregnable.

Not one British player made more than one goal. Lieutenant-Colonel T. P. Melvill, universally acknowledged the best of British backs, got only one; Major Lockett, who was unable to get into the first two games, made nothing.

"Major Wilson, star of the Yankee four, was bottled up until the last half, when he broke away and made two successive tallies, unaided, in almost as many minutes.

"The mallet work of the British was vastly inferior, but they were speeded beyond their gait. They had nothing with which to match the Americans' teamwork, except an occasional individual feat that thrilled the crowd.

"After the game the American players were presented with individual trophies by Major-General Bullard.

### NINTH CORPS AREA POLO TOURNAMENT

By Lieutenant Colonel Kenyon A. Joyce, G. S.

By arrangement with the Boise Polo Club, a tournament was held at Boise, Idaho, from May 30 to June 13, 1923, at which were decided the Ninth Corps Area championship and the Northwestern championship. The Boise Club defrayed all expenses of Service teams attending, and thus made possible the Corps Area tournament.

The five teams participating were the Boise Club, the 11th Cavalry, the 10th Field Artillery, the 7th Infantry, and the 38th Infantry.

By agreement, each team played every other team, and the Corps Area championship was awarded to the army team having the highest percentage of victories over other army teams. To determine the Northwestern championship, the two teams having the highest percentages played a final, deciding game.

Both championships were won by the 11th Cavalry. The 10th Field Artillery was runner-up for the Ninth Corps Area championship and Boise for the Northwestern championship.

It was only in the final game that Boise was defeated, for in the preliminary play that team had defeated all four army teams. In this last game the 11th Cavalry, which in the preliminary game with Boise had been weakened by the injury of Major Chandler, team captain, was at full strength and gained a decisive victory. On the other hand, the Boise team was weakened in the deciding game because of an injury sustained in a prior game by Mr. Herbert Lemp, team captain, which prevented him from playing more than four periods.

The 11th Cavalry team lived up to expectations and showed the value of the experience it had gained in Pacific Coast tournaments. It was superior to the other Service teams in mounts, teamwork, riding, and hitting, and was fully equal to the Boise team in these qualifications. The offensive strength of the 11th Cavalry was greatly enhanced by a change in its line-up, whereby Major Chandler played at one instead of at three, as formerly. With Major Chandler at one and Captain Wilkinson at two, a very strong scoring combination was formed, which proved most effective. Captain Rogers, at back, played an excellent game throughout.

The 10th Field Artillery team showed great spirit, and with more advantages in the matter of mounts would be much more dangerous. In its game against Boise it came from behind when every one thought it was decisively beaten and nearly tied the score in the last few seconds of play. Its best work was done by Major Rucker and Captain Guernsey.

The 7th and 38th Infantry teams have not had much opportunity for tournament play, but they made creditable showings. The 7th Infantry team is especially deserving of credit and bids fair to develop considerable proficiency in the game. Lieutenant Frank

## POLO

H. Strickland, of this team, shows excellent promise of becoming a player of much more than average ability.

The scores of the games follow:

10th Field Artillery.....	17	7th Infantry.....	6
10th Field Artillery.....	19	38th Infantry.....	2
7th Infantry.....	10	38th Infantry.....	3
Boise .....	9	10th Field Artillery.....	8
Boise .....	6	7th Infantry.....	2
Boise .....	21	38th Infantry.....	0
Boise .....	8	11th Cavalry.....	7
11th Cavalry.....	21	7th Infantry.....	1
11th Cavalry.....	17	38th Infantry.....	2
11th Cavalry.....	11	10th Field Artillery.....	5
		(Corps Area championship game)	
11th Cavalry.....	16	Boise .....	3
		(Northwestern championship game)	

### MID-YEAR TOURNAMENT IN MANILA

The following teams participated in the Mid-year Polo Tournament played in Manila, May 24th to June 11: 28th Cavalry, 24th Field Artillery, McKinley A, McKinley B, Department Headquarters and Manila Polo Club. In addition to these, a British team from Hongkong entered the tournament.

The tournament was most interesting throughout and characterized by many surprises. The Cavalry team won their game from the Artillery, were defeated rather badly by the Headquarters team, who in turn were defeated by the Artillery team. Many similar instances happened during the tournament. At the conclusion of the tournament, the Artillery and Manila Polo Club, having tied in games won and lost, played an extra game, which was won by the Artillery.

The Hongkong team were greatly handicapped by the change from the China pony to the fifteen-hand pony, on which they were mounted in this tournament, and also by the fact that two of their regular players were unable to make the trip to Manila. They maintained their splendid reputation for sportsmanship and added greatly to the success and pleasure of the tournament. This is the second season they have entered a team in the Manila tournament, and it is hoped that it will be an annual affair.

This tournament would have normally been played at Camp Stotsenburg, but, due to the arrival of the Hongkong team, the Stotsenburg teams kindly consented to come to Manila, but insisted on supplying the cups, which were presented to the Artillery team by Mrs. McCoy, wife of Colonel H. B. McCoy, president of the Manila Polo Club.

### FIRST SQUADRON, FOURTH CAVALRY

In July the squadron polo team, consisting of, No. 1, Lieutenant H. I. Hodes; No. 2, Lieutenant C. H. Noble; No. 3, Lieutenant Howard Bratton; No. 4, Lieutenant H. T. Sutton, participated in the Fort Sam Houston Junior Polo Tournament. The squadron was eliminated in the finals by the 15th Field Artillery, in an extra-period game which proved to be one of the most exciting games seen at this station. The scores follow:

1st Squadron, 4th Cavalry.....	6	4th Field Artillery.....	3
1st Squadron, 4th Cavalry.....	15	8th C. A. Freebooters.....	0
1st Squadron, 4th Cavalry.....	5	Kelly Field.....	3
1st Squadron, 4th Cavalry.....	11	12th Field Artillery.....	4
1st Squadron, 4th Cavalry.....	5	15th Field Artillery.....	6

It is thought that the above record is quite commendable, in view of the fact that none of the officers on the team have played polo for more than two years and also

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

due to the fact that the team was drawn from a squadron very much depleted in officer personnel (total officers, 7), whereas the teams opposed were drawn in every case from at least a regiment.

### WHO'S WHO IN AMERICAN POLO

The list of players who this year are rated at five or more goals is here given:

Ten goals—L. E. Stoddard (Meadow Brook), J. Watson Webb (Meadow Brook), Devereux Milburn (Meadow Brook), Thomas Hitchcock, Jr. (Aiken). Total, 4.

Nine goals—E. W. Hopping (Bryn Mawr), Malcolm Stevenson (Rockaway). Total, 2.

Eight goals—Harry East (Riverside), J. Cheever Cowdin (Rockaway). Total, 2.

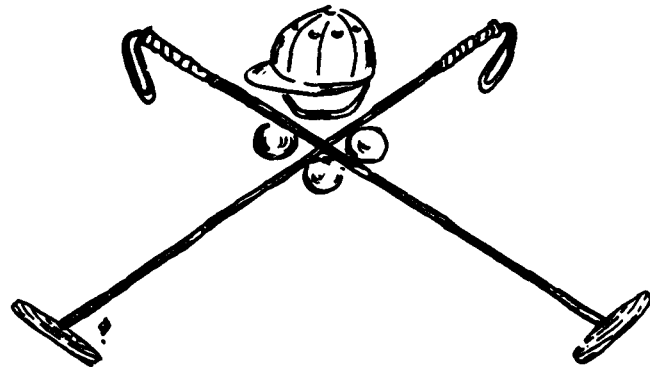
Seven goals, R. E. Strawbridge, Jr. (Bryn Mawr), Eric Pedley (Del Monte). Total, 2.

Six goals—J. C. Cooley (Aiken), F. S. von Stade (Aiken), Rodman Wanamaker (Bryn Mawr), Hugh Drury (Del Monte), Raymond Belmont (Fauquier), Morgan Belmont (Meadow Brook), H. C. Phippe (Meadow Brook), F. H. Prince, Jr. (Meadow Brook), H. P. Whitney (Meadow Brook), B. K. Gatins (Rumson), E. J. Boeske, Jr. (Santa Barbara), Thomas A. Driscoll (San Mateo). Total, 12.

Five goals—Colonel Lewis Brown, Jr. (Army), Major W. W. Erwin (Army), Major A. H. Wilson (Army), Fred Roe (Bryn Mawr), R. E. Strawbridge (Bryn Mawr), Joshua Crane (Dedham), Arthur P. Perkins (Grasmere), F. F. Baldwin (Hawaii), H. K. Castle (Hawaii), W. F. Dillingham (Hawaii), Elliott C. Bacon (Meadow Brook), C. P. Beadleston (Meadow Brook), Carleton F. Burke (Midwick), C. S. Lee (Monmouth), Rene La Montague (Rockaway), H. B. Blackwell (Santa Barbara). Total, 16.

Total number five goals or more, 35 civilians, 3 Army.

Total number handicapped, 822 civilians, 639 Army.



## First National Bank

Junction City, Kansas

The only United States Depository for Disbursing Officers' Accounts adjacent to Fort Riley.

Over Thirty Years' Experience  
with Army Accounts

*The Bank of Courtesy and Service*

### OFFICERS

Thomas B. Kennedy, *President*.

James V. Humphrey, *Vice-President*.

O. O. Clark, *Vice-President*.

W. F. Miller, *Vice-Pres. and Cashier*.

E. J. Denver, *Assistant Cashier*.

## The B. Rockwell Merchandise & Grain Co.

JUNCTION CITY, KANSAS

Established 1865.

Incorporated 1892.

WHOLESALE GROCERS

RETAIL GROCERS

Fresh Meats

Dry Goods

Women's Wear

Shoes

Luggage

Bargain Basement

Grain

57 YEARS' CONTINUOUS SERVICE  
TO THE ARMY

## EISENHOWER'S

622 North Washington St.

JUNCTION CITY, KANSAS

*Drugs*

*Eastman Kodaks*

*Developing and Finishing*

*Fountain Service*

*Fine Candies*

*Perfumes*

(Will always cash a check for a Cavalry Officer)

## Famous Horses of American History

By EVELYN BROGAN

A book for all lovers of horses, containing the authentic stories of noted army horses: Peking, Comanche, Rienzi, Traveler, Nelson, Kidron, and many others; descriptions of famous battles of the Revolution, Civil, and World Wars in which the horses participated; noted rides and cavalry charges. Data obtained from official documents and officers and men who knew animals personally. Do not fail to get a copy. Limited Edition. Bound in Limp Tan Leather. Illustrated. Postpaid, \$2.15.

U. S. CAVALRY ASSOCIATION  
1624 H Street N. W. Washington, D. C.

## Good Eats Cafe

607 N. Washington St.

Junction City, Kansas

The Junction Cafe which caters to  
Army trade

## MARQUIS' FAMOUS SADDLE EQUIPMENT

(Successor to RAOUL DUVAL, Saumur, France)

By special arrangement with M. Marquis, the U. S. Cavalry Association is prepared to accept orders for and deliver the following articles. Prices will closely approximate those given here; there may be small variations, due to rates of exchange, stamp taxes, transportation, consul's certificates in cases of large orders, etc. The duty of 35 per cent is included in these prices. The Association has been unable to get this equipment entered free of duty, since there is no provision in law for doing so. Due to the narrow margin of capital on which the Association operates, a deposit will be welcome upon ordering, and full payment will be required upon notification that equipment is in the possession of the Association and is ready for shipment to the customer.

### FRENCH OFFICER'S FIELD SET

Military Saddle, Leather Panels (does not include girth, stirrups nor straps)	\$83.00
Pommel Pouches, pair	18.50
Straps for Package	3.00
Grain Bag	3.00
Side Bag, each	8.75
Saber Carrier	2.75
Stirrup Straps, pair	5.00
French Regulation Military Girth	4.00
French Regulation Military Bridle with Halter	18.50
French Regulation Military Bit	3.00
French Regulation Military Snaffle	1.50
French Regulation Military Stirrups, pair	3.00
Name Plate, brass	.75

### SAUMUR TRAINING EQUIPMENT

Saumur Saddle (does not include girth, stirrups nor straps)	60.00
Dee Ring, each	.25
Stirrup Straps, pair	5.50
Leather Girth	12.00
Ring Martingale	5.00
Breastplate	6.50
Standing Martingale for Polo	7.75
Saumur Bridle (does not include bit nor noseband)	11.50
Saumur Noseband	2.25
Snaffle Headpiece	4.50
Plain Rein, each	3.75
Plaited or Twisted Rein, each	5.75
Saumur Bit	3.00
Snaffle	1.25
Chantilly or Verdun Big Snaffle	3.75
Knife-edge Stirrups, pair	5.00
Saumur Whip	5.00
Solid Nickel Spurs	2.00
Spur Straps, set	.50
Head Stable Collar	5.25
Stable Rope	.50
Watering Bridle	5.25
Breaking Cavesson	4.50 to 5.25
Lounge, Rope	2.25 to 2.75
Lounge, Web	5.25
Sam Browne Belt	6.50
Map Case	5.25
Dubbin (grease for saddle), tin	.75
Brecknell's Saddle Soap, can	.50

Address: **UNITED STATES CAVALRY ASSOCIATION**  
**1624 H Street Northwest** **Washington, D. C.**

## Regimental Notes

### THIRD CAVALRY—Headquarters and Second Squadron, Fort Myer, Virginia Colonel Hamilton S. Hawkins, Commanding

Memorial Day exercises were held in the Arlington National Cemetery May 30, Troop E acting as escort to the late President Harding, Troop G as guard of honor, and the remaining troops handling the traffic in the cemetery.

June 1 to 10 was taken up by activities in connection with the Shrine Convention in Washington, D. C. Troop G put up a model camp in the city for exhibition purposes from the 4th to the 8th, while the squadron took part in the night parade, Thursday, June 7, and in the same parade again the following morning. In addition, exhibitions were given in the Post Riding Hall and at the Washington Monument grounds.

On June 2 Troop F took part in the Third Corps Area Field Day at Baltimore, Md., and also put on a show at Upperville, Va., June 13 and 14.

Troop E left on June 11 to march to Camp Dix, N. J., where they have been engaged in C. M. T. C. and R. O. T. C. summer training. Troop G left for Camp Meade, Md., on a similar mission, June 13.

A composite platoon acted as escort to General Gouraud, of the French Army, on July 4 and 8, drawing very favorable comment from the General, who wrote a letter commending the officers and men composing this platoon.

A horse-show detachment from Troop F, consisting of 1st Lieutenant M. E. Jones and 25 men, exhibited at Culpeper, Va., July 4 and 5, and on July 24 this detachment departed on a tour of the horse shows in Virginia, West Virginia, Maryland, New York, Delaware, and will wind up with the Brockton, Mass., show October 2 to 7. This detachment gives an excellent rough-riding performance and is in very great demand at all the shows.

Troop E on July 28 gave a demonstration at the Monmouth County Hunt, New Jersey, Horse Show.

On August 4 Troop G returned from Camp Meade to take part in the ceremonies incident to the funeral of the late President Warren G. Harding. The squadron, less Troop E and plus the Headquarters Troop, escorted the body from the Union Station to the White House the evening of August 7, took part in the funeral procession from the White House to the Capitol the morning of August 8, and escorted the body from the Capitol to Union Station that afternoon. Troop F escorted President Coolidge from the Hotel Willard to the White House prior to the funeral procession.

Major-General Farnsworth and the officers of the office of the Chief of Infantry have been attending a riding class at Fort Myer every Thursday afternoon, Majors Barry, Doak, and Wainwright instructing.

Polo has been continued throughout the summer with the War Department team. The Fort Myer polo squad has improved greatly in its play and has been victorious in the majority of the contests.

Post athletics have been at a standstill, due to the absence of so many men from the garrison, practically every one's time being occupied by guard, funerals, and the necessary fatigue.

The following fine letter of commendation received from General Gouraud has been much appreciated by Lieutenant Thayer and his composite platoon and by the whole squadron.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

LE GENERAL GOURAUD, MEMBRE DU CONSEIL SUPERIEUR DE LA GUERRE  
ON BOARD GENERAL GOURAUD'S PRIVATE CAR "BERWICK."

GENERAL CHARLES H. MARTIN,

*Assistant Chief of Staff, War Department, Washington, D. C.*

MY DEAR GENERAL:

Due to my many official visits, and to the fact that I have been traveling from city to city, this is my first opportunity to write you since receipt of the name of the officer in command, and express my deep appreciation and admiration of the excellent troop of cavalry which escorted me to and from the railroad station in Washington.

During my long years of military service, I have, of course, reviewed many bodies of cavalry, who have, on numerous occasions acted as my escort, but it has seldom been my pleasure to see a body of men so well turned out, as to horse equipment, clothing, and excellent military bearing, as that fine troop you sent to honor me in Washington.

Please transmit to the troop commander, Lieutenant Basil G. Thayer, Third Cavalry, my compliments for the wonderful appearance of this exceptional body of men. I know that the credit therefor properly devolves upon him, their leader and chief.

Thanking you for transmitting this expression of appreciation to this young officer, and again repeating my gratitude for the many marks of attention you caused to be shown me in Washington, I have the honor to be,

Yours very sincerely,

(Sgd.)

GOURAUD.

### THIRD CAVALRY—First Squadron, Fort Ethan Allen, Vermont

Lieutenant-Colonel Herbert E. Mann, Commanding

In order to participate in the summer training of the civilian components of the army, the squadron, less Troop B, left its station for Camp Devens on June 4, 1923. Notwithstanding very adverse weather conditions during the first six marching days, the command, after ten days on the road, arrived at Camp Devens June 14 in excellent condition, the condition of the animals and the health of the personnel being all that could be desired.

On Sunday, June 11, the squadron remained at Bellows Falls, Vt., where a polo match was staged with the team from Norwich University as opponents. Similarly, the Norwich team was opposed at polo at Montpelier, Vt. The Norwich team was victorious in both contests by a very close margin.

Upon arrival at Winchendon, Mass., the squadron baseball team commenced the season auspiciously by conquering the local team in a very close and exciting game.

Troop B rejoined the squadron on June 26, having remained at Burlington, Vt., to assist in the 150th anniversary exercises of the City of Burlington. The overland march of Troop B was made with the 1st Battalion of the 7th Field Artillery, under very trying weather conditions. The heat during this period was so intense that resort was had to night marches.

During the few days remaining before the opening of the summer training camps, all energies were concentrated upon preparations for systematic assistance in the training of the citizen soldiery. All of the cavalry personnel entered upon this work, the new mission of the Regular Army, with high spirit, and subsequent results have proved that the intensive instruction imparted during the winter at Fort Ethan Allen, Vt., bore excellent fruit.

On July 3 and 4 Troop C participated in the Field Day of the American Legion Post at Maynard, Mass. The demonstration given by the troop as well as the behavior and the appearance of the personnel were highly praised by the commander of the American Legion in a letter to the camp commander.

On July 4 Troop A took part in the 4th of July parade in Ayer, Mass. July 7, Troop B left for Niantic, Conn., and Quonset Point, R. I., to assist in the training of the National Guard Cavalry of Massachusetts, Connecticut, and Rhode Island at those places. This

## REGIMENTAL NOTES

troop rejoined the squadron August 30, the officers and men being well pleased with the results obtained.

On July 14 a composite troop acted as escort to the Corps Area Commander upon his visit to camp. July 16, the composite troop staged a demonstration of a cavalry troop in attack, for the benefit of the Reserve Officers' Training Camp. July 25, Lieutenant-General Nelson A. Miles, U. S. A. (retired), visited camp in connection with the Organization Day of the 5th Infantry. A composite troop acted as his escort. July 28, Colonel George Vidmer, Executive Officer for the Chief of Cavalry, visited camp and inspected the squadron. He expressed himself as pleased with the conditions pertaining to the same.

The Regular Army officers in charge of the Reserve Officers' Training Camp expressed themselves as highly gratified with the assistance rendered by the squadron. The students themselves were highly appreciative of the interest taken in their training by the cavalry personnel.

During the month of August the majority of the officers and non-commissioned officers were on special duty at the Citizens' Military Training Camp. The progress made in the cavalry branch of this camp was especially noteworthy and those in charge have been very generous in their praise of the assistance rendered by the personnel of the squadron.

On August 24 General Pershing visited Camp Devens. The 18th Infantry Brigade, of which this squadron is an attached component, was reviewed by him on the main parade. All Regular Army personnel was addressed by the General at the Liberty Theater, at which time he stressed the new mission of the Regular Army, namely, the training of the civilian components, expressing himself as well satisfied with the progress thus far made and the efficient co-operation of the Regular Army in this work. A reception was held at the Officers' Club later, all officers and their wives being presented to General Pershing.

During the summer two horse shows were held at this camp. The first was in connection with the Field Day, July 14, participated in by all organizations in camp, including the National Guard, Regular Army, and R. O. T. C. Five mounted events were staged, in which the squadron obtained two first, three second, and three third places. On August 15 a Horse, Motor, and Vehicle Show took place. The 5th Infantry, with a total of 52 points, won the organization cup offered by the camp commander; the squadron was third with 33 points, capturing all places in the officers' charger class and the blue and red in the open jumping class. Places were also gained in the polo pony classes.

During the summer boxing bouts have been staged every Thursday night, under the direction of the camp athletic officer. In these events our contestants have successfully defended the squadron's reputation for disposing of opposition in this sport.

Paper chases and controlled rides, held on Sunday mornings under the direction of the squadron commander, have proved a pleasant relaxation for many of the officers and their wives who were interested in this form of exercise. The camp commander has been an enthusiastic attendant at these rides. Refreshments have been provided at the Officers' Club each Sunday morning upon the conclusion of the ride.

Early in the summer the squadron commander was designated as camp polo representative. Several fine games were played among the organizations stationed in camp, including the National Guard, Regular Army, and R. O. T. C. The polo season was concluded in August with a handicap tournament between the four Regular Army units in camp.

The final game in the tournament was won on August 27 by the 3d Cavalry, the 5th Infantry taking the short side of 7 to 6 score. The 7th Field Artillery had previously been eliminated by the cavalry, and the 13th Infantry by the 5th Infantry, and the polo interest at the camp ran high over this deciding game, particularly as the cavalry had to work against a handicap of 3 goals.

# THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

At the end of the first half the cavalry had scored 4 goals and the infantry 2, making the score 5 to 4 in favor of the infantry. During the entire second half the game was hard-played and very exciting, and it was not until the end of the last chucker that the cavalry finally gained the goal which won the game and championship for their team.

The business men of Ayer presented two silver trophies to the winning team, one a cup "To have and to hold," as was stated in the presentation speech, and another cup which must be won three times before final possession is gained.

Mr. Fairchild, of Ayer, presented the cups donated by his townspeople, and General Barnum, the camp commander, thanked the people of Ayer for their generosity in donating the two beautiful trophies for the game, and further complimented the winning team.

The Commanding General also presented the winning team with beautiful individual cups, giving his assurance that his assistance and support could be counted upon again next year.

## SUMMARY OF LINE-UP

### THIRD CAVALRY

- 1. First Lieutenant F. T. Turner
- 2. Captain I. H. Zeliff
- 3. Captain E. M. Dwyer
- Back: Captain D. T. Nelson
- Goals earned by 3d Cavalry..... 7
- Goals earned by handicap..... 0

Total ..... 7

### FIFTH INFANTRY

- First Lieutenant L. D. Bunting
- Captain H. T. Mayberry
- Captain T. F. Taylor
- Captain F. W. Miller
- Goals earned by 5th Infantry..... 3
- Goals earned by handicap..... 3

Total ..... 6

With the approval of the Commanding General, entries have been made by each of the four regular units in the horse show held in connection with the New England Fair, at Worcester, Mass., September 3, 4, 5, and 6. The squadron is sending 25 of its best mounts and, with the victories in the camp horse shows as a basis, hopes to return successful.

In addition to its other activities, the squadron has carried on, during the summer the preliminary training of recruits in rifle practice. Preliminary range practice has been carried on during the month of August and record practice will be held during September and October. The results thus far obtained are very gratifying.

A team of one officer and three enlisted men was sent to Des Moines, Iowa, to compete in the tryouts for the cavalry rifle and pistol team. Lieutenant Leahy, 3d Cavalry, has been leading in the tryouts in the cavalry rifle team. Private First Class Stanley Blazejevski, Troop C, 3d Cavalry, has been successful in making the pistol team.

The summer duties of the squadron will be concluded about September 17, when the squadron will start back to its station.

## FOURTH CAVALRY (Less 1st Squadron) Fort McIntosh, Texas

Colonel Howard R. Hickok, Commanding

On July 5 a successful field meet was held at Fort McIntosh.

During the week of July 23, the 4th Cavalry (less one troop) participated in a practice march which terminated in a surprise night march.

On August 3 and 10 the required ceremonies in commemoration of the death and funeral of our late Commander-in-Chief, Warren G. Harding, were observed.

During the last week of August one troop and Headquarters Detachment, 2d Squadron, participated in a practice march which was controlled, both as to camps and situations, by the regimental commander from Fort McIntosh, Texas, by radio.

On August 27, Troop F, with three officers and 76 men, left for the First Cavalry Division maneuvers at Marfa, Texas. This troop is not expected to return until November 5.

# REGIMENTAL NOTES

## First Squadron—Fort Sam Houston, Texas

Major Donald A. Robinson, Commanding

Upon the completion of the regular target season of 1923 the squadron received a letter of commendation from the Commanding General, Second Division and Fort Sam Houston, for its excellent record in mounted pistol and rifle qualifications.

Headquarters Detachment, Lieutenant H. I. Hodes commanding, received a similar letter from the same headquarters for its record of 100 per cent qualifications in both rifle and mounted pistol firing. Troop C, Lieutenant H. T. Sutton commanding, received a like letter for 100 per cent qualification in mounted pistol firing.

Cups were presented to Sergeant Wesley J. Reed, Troop B, for the highest rifle score attained in the regular target season, and to Private Anthony A. Von Ruhr, Troop C, for the highest rifle score made by a recruit. Troop C also received a cup for the highest qualification in rifle of any lettered troop.

Sergeant Wesley J. Reed received a letter of commendation from the Chief of Cavalry for his excellent record of 336 (breaking all local records) over the regular rifle course. Sergeant Reed also received a medal from the Chief of Cavalry's office, awarding him a place on the Chief of Cavalry's rifle team. Sergeant Reed is the first member of this regiment to make this team.

On June 11 the squadron, under the command of Major R. M. Cheney, acted as the escort of honor to Brigadier General Dennis E. Nolan on his departure from this station.

The formal inspection by the Commanding General, 4th Infantry Brigade, to which this squadron is attached, was held June 23-25, 1923.

The months of July and August were devoted almost entirely to field training, combat exercises, and demonstration work. Between July 19 and July 28, the squadron gave several demonstrations for and assisted in the training of the Reserve Officers attending the summer training camps at Fort Sam Houston.

On July 28 the squadron acted as escort of honor to General Pershing on his arrival at San Antonio for the inspection of various military activities in that vicinity.

On August 7 the squadron marched to Camp Stanley and was employed from that date until August 21 as demonstration troops for the 56th Cavalry Brigade, National Guard. The squadron made a night march to Fort Sam Houston on the completion of this duty the evening of August 21.

## FIFTH CAVALRY—Fort Clark, Texas

Colonel W. D. Forsythe, Commanding

On July 11 Troop C returned from duty at the subpost of Camp R. E. L. Michie, at Del Rio, Texas. Camp Michie has been abandoned, pursuant to orders from the War Department. August 16 Troop A returned from duty at Camp Eagle Pass, Texas. The entire regiment is now stationed at Fort Clark and is together for the first time since September 20, 1921, when the 1st Squadron marched from Marfa, Texas, under orders to take station at Del Rio and Eagle Pass, Texas.

The regiment completed the known distance rifle practice and pistol practice on July 15. The following results were obtained with the rifle:

	Per cent.		Per cent.
Headquarters Troop .....	98.63	Troop C.....	82.69
Service Troop.....	90.63	Headquarters Detachment, 2d Squad-	
Headquarters Detachment, 1st Squad-		ron .....	90.47
ron .....	100.00	Troop E.....	82.60
Troop A.....	82.14	Troop F.....	85.45
Troop B.....	100.00	Troop G.....	94.33
Regimental percentage.....			90.69



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

September 10 the regiment, in company with 1st Cavalry Brigade Headquarters, Brigade Headquarters Troop, and 1st M. G. Squadron, started its march to Marfa, Texas, to participate in the joint maneuvers, to be held in the vicinity of Marfa by the First Cavalry Division, during the period September 24 to October 3, 1923. The march to Marfa will be made in thirteen marching days, and the return march will commence on October 9 and will terminate at Fort Clark on October 21. On the return march the command will rest at Sanderson, Texas, October 14. The period October 4 to 8, both dates inclusive, will be spent at Marfa and will be devoted to polo, mounted events, boxing, baseball, etc.

The regimental polo ponies will be sent overland from Marfa to Fort Bliss, Texas, for use in the junior and senior tournaments to be held by the First Cavalry Division early in November. The regiment will enter a team in each tournament. All officers of the regiment participate in polo and, despite the reduced officer strength of the regiment, we have four teams playing regularly.

### SIXTH CAVALRY—Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia

Lieutenant-Colonel O. A. McGee, Commanding

The regiment has taken a prominent part in all activities of the camp during the training camp period. We feel that it has enhanced its reputation for excellence in the performance of the duties required of it, for co-operation with the other units in making the various training camps successful, and for its enthusiastic participation in all social and athletic activities.

The Demonstration Troop, under the command of Captain Wharton G. Ingram, has received many commendations for the manner of its performance in the demonstrations and the ceremonies in which it has participated. The Service Troop has borne its burden well in furnishing teams and transportation. Outside of the components of these units, practically the entire personnel of the regiment has been on special duty of some kind in connection with the functioning of the training camps. Ten officers and forty non-commissioned officers and privates acted as training cadre for the C. M. T. C. Cavalry Squadron.

With the training of the last camp of trainees, the C. M. T. C. students, completed, the regiment is now making preparations for its return march to Fort Oglethorpe. Joint maneuvers with the 22d Infantry will be participated in prior to the march, after which all organizations will proceed to their permanent stations, the infantry outfit going to Fort McPherson, Ga. We expect to "hit the road" about September 10, rejoining the remainder of the regiment about September 16.

On July 26 the officers of the 6th Cavalry entertained with a banquet and "get-together meeting" for all Cavalry officers on duty at the camp. The program consisted of an excellent repast, many short and enthusiastic "cavalry" talks by guests present, and several vaudeville sketches by a theatrical company. A black-face act by two of our very own, Lieutenants Fletcher and Hamilton, was well received. Many distinguished guests and cavalrymen were in attendance.

The regiment staged its usual summer horse show on July 19 as a benefit for the Army Relief Society. The show was a complete success, as demonstrated by the number of entries and by the receipts, amounting to nearly \$300.

Lieutenant-Colonel Daniel D. Tompkins was the guest of the officers of the regiment at a dinner on August 29, the occasion being one of farewell to him after his three years of service with the regiment as a squadron commander and later as regimental executive officer. All officers of the regiment at Camp McClellan were present, each testifying in a few words to the general esteem, respect, and affection which the personnel feels for Colonel Tompkins, to his popularity and to the loss all the regiment feels at his departure. Colonel R. J. Fleming, the commanding officer, presided as toastmaster. Other

## REGIMENTAL NOTES

guests were Brigadier-General Edward B. Winans, Camp Commander, Lieutenant Parmerlee, A. D. C., and Colonel Henry Edmondson, of Anniston. A feature of the evening was the promotion of Colonel Edmondson from honorary lieutenant-colonel of the regiment to colonel. A telegram of regret and good wishes from absent officers of the regiment was read.

### SEVENTH U. S. CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel Fitzhugh Lee, Commanding

Colonel Walter C. Short was assigned to command the First Cavalry Brigade, First Cavalry Division, in May, with station at Fort Clark, Texas. On July 9 Colonel Fitzhugh Lee joined the regiment and assumed command. Colonel Lee had served previously in the regiment for about twelve years. He saw service with the Garry Owens as a captain and major and commanded Troop K for a number of years. Colonel Short returned to the post in July to arrange for shipment of his household goods and to take his family to Fort Clark, Texas. He was greeted at his quarters by Colonel Lee and the officers, while the band played "Garry Owen," which brought forth the usual enthusiastic cheers. He was also given a farewell reception on the eve of his departure. Colonel Lee and the officers of the regiment, in a body, called at Colonel Short's quarters, while the band on the lawn played appropriate music, terminating the concert with "Auld Lang Syne." Major General and Mrs. Robert L. Howze were also present.

The regiment took part in an extensive three-day brigade maneuver on August 7, 8, and 9, and acquitted itself with great credit. Colonel Lee commanded the 2d Cavalry Brigade and Lieutenant-Colonel Frank T. McNarney commanded the regiment. For the past three weeks the regiment has been exceedingly busy preparing for the six-weeks divisional maneuver to be held in the vicinity of Marfa, Texas, beginning September 15.

The 2d Squadron and one-half of the Headquarters and Service troops returned on June 8 from the Dona Ana Target Range, 28 miles north of Fort Bliss, after having completed the course and having qualified 12 officers and 240 men out of 12 officers and 245 men. The 1st Squadron and the remainder of the Headquarters and Service troops proceeded to the target range determined to equal, if not to surpass, the record of the 2d Squadron. The final results showed that the regiment finished with an average percentage of 98.16. Much of the credit for this phenomenal score is due to the untiring efforts of Lieutenant-Colonel Frank T. McNarney. Troop C, commanded by Captain A. W. Roffe, made the highest score, with an average of 287.62 points per man. Captain Roffe made not only the highest score of any officer in the regiment, but also of the post. Sergeant James J. Walsh, Troop C, with a score of 318, was high enlisted man of the regiment and the post.

Much interest and enthusiasm has been displayed in baseball this year. Each troop put a team in the field to compete in the regimental tournament for a handsome silver cup. The honors and the cup went to Troop A, commanded by Captain James C. Short. From the troop teams was selected an able regimental team, which is at present leading in the Post League. They have four more games to play—two with the 12th Aero Squadron, one with the 8th Cavalry, whom they recently defeated, and one game with the 8th Engineers (Mounted). The prizes of the Post League consist of a cup for the winning team, and cash prizes for the best batting percentage, for the best field percentage, and for the pitcher having the most strike-outs.

The polo team, which has brought so much glory and so many trophies to the regiment, is seriously handicapped in the loss of Captains Hobart R. Gay, James C. Short and Roy E. Craig, all star players; yet the regiment can put a good team in the field. There is promising polo material and a strong, well-developed team is contemplated for future matches.

The Non-commissioned Officers' Club has had a number of social events which have

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

proven a delight to the enlisted personnel. Features have been smokers with boxing cards, watermelon feasts with entertaining stunts, and a banquet. On August 21 the Non-commissioned Officers' Club entertained with a huge smoker complimentary to the non-commissioned officers of the New Mexico and Arizona National Guard units in training at Fort Bliss. The program included vaudeville, the musical program of the band, and eats. Master Sergeant Edward M. Carey is president of the club.

On August 25 Colonel Lee had the regiment paraded and passed in review under command of non-commissioned officers, in honor of Sergeant Balbino Sains, recently retired. Before the review, while the troops were drawn up on the parade ground, Sergeant Sains was presented with a silver service on behalf of the regiment. The presentation was made by Colonel Lee, following which he read the military record of Sergeant Sains. The officers of the regiment, Major-General Robert L. Howze, and Sergeant Sains retired to the reviewing point, Sergeant Sains occupying the position of honor. The regiment then, under command of Master Sergeant Lester A. Smythe, passed in review. In the evening the Non-commissioned Officers' Club tendered Sergeant Sains a smoker.

### EIGHTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Lieutenant-Colonel C. E. Hathaway, Commanding

The regiment on July 9 completed its 1923 target season at Dona Ana, N. Mex., with the enviable record of 96.4 per cent qualified. The regiment served as a unit of the 2d Cavalry Brigade in its target practice, each regiment of the brigade firing one squadron at a time, the remaining squadron garrisoning the post. Both A Troop and the Service Troop qualified 100 per cent, while F troop led the regiment for the highest percentage of experts, qualifying 51 per cent as expert riflemen. Corporal Robert Montgomery, Headquarters Troop, won the Chief of Cavalry's medal with a score of 317.

On July 15 the post summer handicap polo tournament started, with four teams entered. The 8th Cavalry entered with a new team and made a successful showing, finishing in second place, being forced out of first place by the 82d Field Artillery.

Our outpost of one troop at Camp Furlong, Columbus, N. Mex., was changed during July. B Troop relieved E Troop after a tour of four months. B Troop is expected to join the regiment in time for the fall maneuvers.

The 1922 baseball champions enjoyed a fast and exciting season this year, but, due to injuries and accidents, they have dropped from first place in the Post League.

The regiment leaves its station at Fort Bliss, Texas, on September 15 to take part in the First Cavalry Division maneuvers near Marfa, Texas, and will return late in October. With the maneuvers in view, August was spent in careful preparation for the field, the regiment having various problems of its own and taking part in some very instructive and interesting brigade problems along with the 7th Cavalry, 8th Engineers, and the 82d Field Artillery.

Preparations are now being made within the regiment for the big field day, horse show, polo, and athletic games at Marfa, where we will meet and test our skill with the other units of the First Cavalry Division, and the regiment is expecting its share of laurels from the field.

### NINTH CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas

Major Joseph F. Richmond, Commanding

The 9th Cavalry has had five retirements, 96 men discharged, and 36 re-enlistments since June. Staff Sergeant Richard W. Peters, Headquarters and Service Troop, 9th Cavalry, who retired June 1, was given an appropriate entertainment at the 9th Cavalry Club, as were Sergeant Henry Moore, of Troop C, who retired at the same time, and

## REGIMENTAL NOTES

Sergeant Andrew Clark, Headquarters and Service Troop, who retired June 12. Sergeant Richard P. Farham, of Troop B, retired July 26, and Sergeant Peary Russell, of Troop A, retired August 22, will be entertained by the regiment at a later date in the near future.

Regimental Day in the 9th Cavalry was marked by a barbecue and picnic. Pigs taken from the regimental farm were barbecued under the able direction of Sergeant John Bolin, Headquarters and Service Troop, and proved excellent. The regiment invited many guests, who seemed to fully enjoy the entertainment. The officers of the regiment attended with their families, as did the commandant, General King. The celebration was followed by an address by First Lieutenant Walter Buford, 9th Cavalry, and a dance at the 9th Cavalry Club.

General Malin Craig, our former commandant, has honored us with a letter of commendation, in which he praised the morale and general spirit of the regiment, and pointed out that, under very trying conditions, the conduct and contentment of the troops was remarkable and a credit to the service. To say that the men appreciate this is to be conservative. This is ample reward for the services we so willingly performed under the just and able administration of General Craig.

Thomas Hawker, private, first class, Troop A, 9th Cavalry, has been made a member of the Chief of Cavalry's Rifle Team, having received the medal awarded the members, with a letter of congratulation from General Holbrook, in which he said: "I take this occasion to congratulate you on your fine shooting and upon the further fact that you are the first soldier to represent the 9th Cavalry Regiment on the Chief of Cavalry's Rifle Team." Naturally, we are proud to be represented on this body, one of the most select of its kind in the army.

Out of a total of 334 men who fired in the target season of 1923, the 9th Cavalry qualified 17 experts, 57 sharpshooters, and 127 marksmen. In view of the circumstances surrounding the regiment, the lack of non-commissioned officers for coaches, and the nature of the duty of the regiment, this percentage may be considered high. One might also take into consideration the fact that in the entire number not one man had fired the new course previously, and that we were required to perform full duty throughout the season.

The history of the regiment is to be rewritten, with a view to publishing it in book form. We would be greatly obliged to any former member of the 9th Cavalry who possesses notes, photographs, copies of orders, etc., who could or would send us copies or originals of the same for use in the new book, which will set forth the long list of successful exploits of the regiment.

The regimental coat of arms has been received. It is a shield of gold on which a blue wedge is superimposed. On the wedge is a rising sun between three six-pointed stars, with the blockhouse of San Juan Hill, Santiago, Cuba, below. The shield is surmounted by a crest consisting of a winged horseshoe with nine nail-holes, crossed by two arrows. The motto is: "WE CAN—WE WILL." The yellow of the shield is for the cavalry, and the blue wedge with the sun and stars is for the old flag of the Philippine insurrection, with a change of color. The three stars also represent three tours of duty in the Philippines. The blockhouse is the old pride of the regiment, representing the actual one which was taken by the Ninth at San Juan in 1898. The wedge recalls the fact that the Ninth split the Spanish lines at Santiago when they charged dismounted as infantry. The crest is the well-known Scotch device, signifying the alertness of the mounted man, and the two crossed arrows are for the old Indian campaigns of the regiment. Needless to say, we are proud to see the history of our regiment consolidated into a coat of arms, which may be worn by each individual in the organization.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

### TENTH CAVALRY—Fort Huachuca, Arizona

Lieutenant-Colonel Hu B. Myers, Commanding

During the month of March the regiment held the annual saber test with gratifying results.

During the summer the regiment has constructed a model camp at the target range for the use of the R. O. T. C., C. M. T. C., and the Arizona National Guard summer encampments. Seven large mess shacks and kitchens were constructed from the salvaged lumber at Camp Harry J. Jones, Douglas, Ariz. A camp exchange, restaurant, and barber shop were erected. The old power plant from Lochiel, Ariz., was installed, making moving pictures possible, as well as electric lights in the tents. This, together with an excellent athletic field, makes this camp one of the most attractive in the Southwest. Civilians who trained here this summer are most enthusiastic over the comfortable features of the camp, as most of them have promised to bring back a recruit with them next year.

Troop G left for Camp Harry J. Jones, Douglas, Ariz., on February 13, 1923, where they have been busily engaged in salvaging the frame buildings of that camp.

Troop C marched to Lochiel, Ariz., on June 23, 1923, and returned to the post on August 18, 1923. While there the troop salvaged the entire camp.

Our Service Troop wagon train has made an enviable record this summer, hauling lumber from Douglas and Lochiel to the post. They have covered a total distance of 2,991 miles. As a result of this hiking, the mules, wagons, and men are in excellent shape for a protracted stay in the field.

With all this necessary construction, the regiment has finished the rifle season with the exception of a few men. Reports now indicate about 97 or 98 per cent of the men qualified.

### ELEVENTH CAVALRY—Presidio of Monterey, California

Colonel Herbert J. Breese, Commanding

The regiment has been occupied since the first of the year in preparation for and in assisting in the summer training camps. The R. O. T. C., Organized Reserves, and C. M. T. C. camps were held at Del Monte, the National Guard Camp on the Gigling Reservation. All camps were prepared and ready for occupancy when their personnel arrived.

Troop C, Captain H. A. Buckley commanding, was sent to Camp Lewis to participate in summer camps there. Troop E, Captain H. E. Pendleton commanding, marched to San Francisco and was part of the funeral escort for the late President Harding. The appearance of the men and animals drew very favorable comment from General Morton and General Pershing. Troop E left San Francisco by marching August 16, and proceeded to Sacramento and Stockton to participate in the annual fairs and horse shows at those places, furnish exhibition drills, etc.

Due to the heavy fatigue before the summer camps, we were not able to finish our small-arms practice. We did get 195 men over the course with only 8 unqualified, or over 96 per cent. We will have to complete the season in October, but, as most of those left to fire have previously qualified, we hope to increase that percentage.

At the present time we have men and horses out familiarizing themselves with the route and getting in condition for the Pony Express Race. The 11th Cavalry sector is from Lovelocks, Nev., to the Tanforan Race Track at San Francisco. Our competitor across California is to be Mr. W. S. Tevis, Jr., the nationally known horseman and polo player, who is superbly mounted. He intends to ride the entire California sector himself. Every effort is being made to win our section of the race, and we hope to acquit ourselves with credit to the regiment and the service.

Colonel John M. Jenkins was transferred from the regiment July 1, after having com-

## REGIMENTAL NOTES

manded it for over two years. As he received his well-earned promotion to brigadier-general soon after, we feel well compensated for having lost him.

The regiment is quite proud of their representatives that were sent to the cavalry team try-out at Fort Des Moines, as they won the Team Cup, the Holbrook Trophy, and the Individual Trophy.

Several very delightful dances have been held in the Officers' Club, with the Organized Reserve officers and instructors from the camps as our guests. During the period of the camps a dance was held each week instead of one every two weeks, as heretofore, and they have been well attended and enjoyed.

As the post has been practically stripped of enlisted men, it has been impossible to hold our regular field meets and horsemanship contests. All are anxious to get back into the regular garrison schedule of work and play.

### TWELFTH CAVALRY—Fort Brown, Fort Ringgold, and Sam Fordyce, Texas

Colonel Sedgwick Rice, Commanding

The regiment completed rifle practice with 87.79 per cent of the personnel qualified, including 100 expert riflemen and 112 sharpshooters.

A three-day regimental athletic meet was conducted at Fort Brown August 17, 18, and 19. The Second Squadron of Fort Ringgold had entries in all events. Fort Brown won both polo games, the first by a score of 14 to 4 and the second by a score of 10 to 4. Fort Brown won two out of the three baseball games. While Fort Ringgold won a number of events in the dismounted athletics, Fort Brown was the winner by a few points. Seven boxing bouts held the night of the 17th were real thrillers, quite a number of persons being present from Brownsville, in addition to the army attendance. Return bouts were held at Fort Ringgold on September 1.

On July 4th the troops at Fort Brown assisted the American Legion in the ceremony of escort to the colors, when the new post and national colors of John Hanson Post American Legion, were received by the Legion. The ceremony, which was conducted on the parade ground at Fort Brown, was largely attended.

### THIRTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming

Colonel Roy B. Harper, Commanding

Major General Holbrook, Chief of Cavalry, accompanied by Major Coulter, visited the post May 22-24. General Holbrook inspected the troops in barracks and received a review. Following this a tactical exercise was held.

Major General Morton, Corps Area Commander, visited the post on June 18. General Morton inspected the post and later made a tactical inspection of the regiment.

On June 25 the regiment performed escort and police duties during the visit of the late President Harding to Cheyenne, Wyo.

A congressional party arrived at Fort Russell early in the afternoon on June 25. The commanding officer with officers of the post met the party at the railroad station and escorted it in automobiles about the reservation and points of interest in the vicinity of Fort Russell and Cheyenne.

The regiment held a very successful eight-day Polo Tournament and Horse Show from June 30 to July 8. The 13th Cavalry Yellows carried away first honors, defeating the Denver team, their closest competitors. The games and horse show attracted large and enthusiastic crowds from Cheyenne and vicinity. Governor and Mrs. Roes, United States Senator and Mrs. Francis E. Warren, and members of the Wyoming State legislature and their families were among those who witnessed the games.

Captain Herbert E. Watkins, Captain Donald S. Perry, First Lieutenant Theodore E. Voigt, 13th Cavalry, entered horses and rode in the Colorado Endurance Ride, held at Colorado Springs from July 13 to August 3. Captain Watkins, riding his thoroughbred

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

*Norfolk Star*, won first place, repeating his success of last year. Captain Watkins has shipped *Norfolk Star* east and has departed for Avon, N. Y., to participate in the Eastern Endurance Ride.

The 58th Cavalry Brigade, composed of the 115th Cavalry (Wyoming National Guard), the 116th Cavalry (Utah and Idaho National Guard), and Troop B, 58th Machine-gun Squadron (Washington National Guard), held its annual fifteen-day Field Training Encampment at Fort Russell, July 8 to 22, inclusive. Officers, non-commissioned officers, and enlisted specialists of the 13th Cavalry were detailed for duty as instructors for the encampment.

The enlisted personnel participated daily in "Frontier Days," held July 24, 25, 26, and 27, in Cheyenne, Wyoming. Roman and Cossack riding, pony express, rescue races, and the mounted musical drill were enthusiastically received. Troop B staged a defense of a wagon train when attacked by a band of Sioux Indians from the Rose Bud Indian Reservation, South Dakota.

August 5 the regiment guarded the train bearing the remains of the late President Harding upon arrival at Cheyenne and took part in an impressive ceremony at the Union Pacific Railroad Station; they also attended the memorial ceremonies at City Park, Cheyenne, August 10.

During the month of August the personnel of the regiment was engaged in work preparatory to participating in the Pony Express Ride. The sector allotted to this organization extends from Duchesne, Utah, to Lovelocks, Nev., a distance of 606 miles, including the Great Salt Lake Desert. This prevented sending a polo team from the regiment to compete in the polo tournaments at Colorado Springs and Denver.

The regimental musical drill squad and band staged a drill and otherwise participated in Community Field Day program, under the auspices of the Rotary, Kiwanis, and Lions clubs, Cheyenne, Wyo., August 24, 1923.

### FOURTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort Des Moines, Iowa Colonel H. La T. Cavanaugh, Commanding

During the months of June, July, and August the Cavalry Rifle and Pistol Team, under the direction of Lieutenant-Colonel A. H. Davidson, 14th Cavalry, trained at Fort Des Moines. The regiment, after the eliminations had taken place, was fortunate enough to win two places on the team, Second Lieutenant George A. Rehm and Staff Sergeant Charles E. Smyth being the successful competitors, in whom the regiment takes a just pride. The Cavalry Team completed a very successful season at this station, where it has trained for the last two years. Troop E was placed on special duty with the team during the training period.

During June extensive preparations were made in the way of construction for the C. M. T. Camp, which was held here during the month of August. Accommodations were built for a camp of about 1,350 candidates and post fatigue required very heavy details. During the month of July a camp for the Reserve Officers of the 89th, 63d and 66th (Cavalry) Divisions of the Organized Reserve, as well as certain members of non-divisional groups, was held. The camp numbered about 200 reserve officers, and excellent work was accomplished during this period of training. Troop F, 14th Cavalry, Battery B, 9th Field Artillery, and the 2d Battalion, 3d Infantry (stationed here during the summer training camps), performed duty as demonstration troops for the benefit of the officers in training. Troop G proceeded to Fort Snelling, Minn., by marching, for duty with summer camps there.

On the night of June 25 about 120 officers of the post, 14th Cavalry, 9th Field Artillery, 3d Infantry, and officers of other branches of the service and from the navy, held a get-together dinner at the Harris-Emery tea-room, in the city of Des Moines. The dinner was thoroughly enjoyed, the officers taking quick advantage of the opportunity to renew old friendships and make new ones with the good fellows of other arms of the service.

## REGIMENTAL NOTES

During August the C. M. T. Camp, about 950 candidates attending, occupied the center of interest at Fort Des Moines. The camp was organized into three battalions of three companies each—seven of infantry, one of artillery and one of cavalry. Enthusiastic competition held throughout the camp and each organization was in most satisfactory condition at the end of the camp. The students presented a very good military appearance and showed the result of a well-organized camp, regular hours, meals, and duty, high-grade instruction, and unquestioned interest. Troop L, the cavalry unit of the C. M. T. C., Captain J. L. Phillips, cavalry, commanding, reflected great credit upon its instructors and won a number of the camp honors, taking first place in the competitions in military discipline and physical tests. The officers of the 2d Squadron, 14th Cavalry, Major Rush commanding, presented a silver cup to the cavalry student making the most progress in cavalry training during the camp.

June 5 the regiment (less 1st Squadron) made a practice march to Indianola, Iowa, where the outfit camped for five days and gave exhibitions during the Home Coming Week of Sompson College. Indianola is one of the favorite exhibition points for the 14th Cavalry, as a number of demonstrations have been given there by troops and detachments of the regiment, the civilian populace there being most friendly to the military service. The "monkey-drill" squad of Headquarters Troop gave mounted exhibitions at Fairfield, Iowa, on August 16, and at Indianola, Iowa, on August 15. During the Iowa State Fair this squad also exhibited there. Troop F and Battery B, 9th Field Artillery, both gave exhibitions during the fair, which included a number of military classes.

At the close of the baseball season, which was cut short because of the summer camps, Troop F, 14th Cavalry, having the highest percentage, was awarded the championship and the pennant.

### First Squadron—Fort Sheridan, Illinois Major Herbert E. Taylor, Commanding

Troops B and C, Headquarters and Service Detachments marched overland from Fort Sheridan, Ill., to Camp Custer, Mich., to be present for the summer training camp held there during June, July, and August, leaving Fort Sheridan on May 8, 1923. Some very disagreeable weather was encountered on this march, approximately five inches of snow falling during the night of the first camp at Chicago and much rain on the remainder of the march. Despite the hindrance caused by bad roads and weather, the march, 201 miles, was made in eight days, horses and men arriving at Camp Custer in good condition. The remainder of the month and the first two weeks of June were spent in making various improvements at Camp Custer.

On June 1 Troop A marched from Fort Sheridan, Ill., to the South Shore Country Club's grounds in Chicago, Ill., a distance of 36 miles, to give exhibition drills at this club's 14th Annual Horse Show, on June 6, 7, 8, and 9. The cavalrymen proved a great drawing card at this show, incidentally witnessing the making of a new world's record in high jumps, when *Great Heart*, owned by Mrs. Stuyvesant Peabody, cleared the bar at 8 feet and 2 inches. Upon the completion of the horse show, Troop A joined the squadron at Camp Custer, marching overland, arriving at Camp Custer on June 20, 1923.

Practice and record pistol firing, mounted and dismounted, is not completed at this writing. However, a high average is assured. During a horse show and gymkhana on Independence Day, the 1st Squadron acquitted themselves creditably, taking over 75 per cent of the prizes and ribbons offered. Other organizations represented were the 14th Field Artillery, 2d and 6th Infantry.

On July 13 and 14 the Corps Area Commander, General Hale, visited Camp Custer, the squadron taking part in a review given in his honor on the 14th.

## The National Guard

### TROOP A, 107th CAVALRY, OHIO NATIONAL GUARD, BUILDS FINE ARMORY

On October 10, 1877, the Cleveland Troop was formed, being composed of young men who bought their own horses and equipment. The reason for forming at that time was due to the fact that many strikes were being promoted, and it was felt advisable to have some military protection in Cleveland. This organization continued as a private military body until 1887, when the First Cleveland Troop joined the National Guard and became known as Troop A of the Ohio Cavalry. From then until the present time they have continuously served in the National Guard and have taken part whenever called upon for active duty, having served in the Spanish-American War, when they formed the nucleus for the First Ohio Volunteer Cavalry; again, in 1913, when they were called out for flood duty; in 1916, serving on the Mexican border; and, again, in the World War, when they officered and formed the nucleus of the 135th Field Artillery.

Troop A has always been designated as the official presidential escort at inaugurals for every Ohio President and have escorted all the Presidents from Ohio with the exception of President Harding.

After the war, in 1920, the troop was reorganized and at present is back on a pre-war footing.

On June 2, 1923, the new armory was formally opened with a large banquet given to the veterans, there being present about 250 men. The new armory is located at the corner of Fairmount and Kemper Roads, in Shaker Heights, adjoining the park system, and the land on which the armory is placed is about 14½ acres, with roads and paths leading to the 'bridle paths of the park. The Armory consists of three parts—the riding hall, the troop stables and quarters, and the academy stables and quarters. The dimensions of the building are 212 x 212, with provision for future extension of 100 feet to the west, so that the riding hall could be lengthened that much. In construction the building is as nearly fireproof as can be made, consistent with reasonable economy. The roof over the riding hall is carried on steel trusses, with exterior walls of paving brick, and the only material in the building which is not fireproof is the roof, which is of wood and on which is laid prepared roofing.

The riding hall is 120 x 200 feet long inside, with a clear height under the trusses of 28 feet at the sides and 36 feet at the center, with a balcony on three sides, which is capable of holding one thousand people. The maximum height of the building is 60 feet, and especial attention has been given to day-lighting, which comes from three sources: first, the end walls being entirely of steel sash; second, the clerestory windows; and, third, the skylights on the roof, the sizes being carefully proportioned to give a balanced light. The riding hall can be heated to fifty degrees of heat in the ring when the outside temperature is zero, and the ring can be amply lighted at night by artificial light.

The riding academy portion of the building provides for a gentlemen's locker-room immediately inside the main entrance, with attached showers and bath-room. From the office and waiting-rooms a plain view of the riding hall may be had. On the first floor also are the necessary saddlery, cleaning and hostlers' rooms, and thirty-nine single stalls, with six box stalls.

The troop quarters provide on the first floor a supply sergeant's office, saddle and cleaning room, garage for two trucks, ammunition vault, arms room, blacksmith shop, four box stalls in a separate part of the building, which can be completely isolated as a hospital, and on this side there are sixty-six single stalls and five box stalls for troop horses.



NEW ARMORY OF TROOP A, 107th CAVALRY, OHIO N. G., CLEVELAND



INTERIOR OF RIDING HALL AND STABLES  
CLEVELAND CAVALRY ARMORY

## THE NATIONAL GUARD

The second floor contains a locker-room for the men, having a capacity for about one hundred lockers, with shower-room and toilet. On this floor there are also officers' room, first-aid room, office, small kitchen, and assembly or club room, together with a drill hall 50 x 50 feet; also, on this floor there have been arranged field storage-rooms in which there are individual lockers for each man, holding his equipment for the field. The moth-proof closet 18 x 4 feet, in which all uniforms not in use can be stored, together with living quarters for hostlers and care-takers and storage space for forage, are also on this floor.

The entire building is finished with cement floors and plaster walls, being entirely fireproof with the exception of the assembly room, which is handsomely furnished in oak, with a large fireplace at the easterly end.

The total cost of this armory amounts to approximately \$250,000 for the building with \$85,000 for the land. The financing was done by the Troop Veterans' Association by the means of selling bonds in \$100 to \$1,000 denominations, which were subscribed to almost entirely by the veteran members of the troop or active troopers themselves.

The new armory is believed to be as complete as any in the country. Although not lavishly furnished, everything has been designed with a view to usefulness and durability.

## PRACTICE MARCH OF 104th CAVALRY

Following a two-day march from its encampment at Mt. Gretna, covering approximately 40 miles and including maneuvers during which the two squadrons opposed each other, the 104th Cavalry, Pennsylvania National Guard, presented its second annual rodeo at Harrisburg the afternoon of July 21.

Major-General William G. Price, Jr., commanding the 28th Division, reviewed the regiment at the opening of the rodeo, when, following its formation in line and presentation by Colonel Edward J. Stackpole, Jr., to General Price, the troops passed at the walk, trot, and gallop.

An elaborate program, including jumping events for officers and enlisted men, monkey drill contests, Roman riding exhibitions, mounted wrestling and tug-of-war, and similar mounted feats of strength and skill, was worked out by the committee in charge.

Captains Otis Porter and Charles A. Horger, D. O. L., attached to the 104th Cavalry as instructors, commended the march discipline of the organization en route to Harrisburg from its annual camp, and spoke highly of the manner in which the rodeo was managed.

## THE ST. PAUL PLAN

From St. Paul comes a plan for the support of the National Guard that deserves high praise. One hundred of the business men of that city, desirous of helping the Guard, have subscribed to the following agreements:

1. National Guardsmen in our employ will be given fifteen days' leave of absence in each year, with pay, for the purpose of attending camp; this leave not to affect in any way the regular vacation period.
2. When called into active service by the Governor of the State, we will pay National Guardsmen in our employ the difference between their regular wages and what they receive in National Guard pay.
3. The fact that the man is a National Guardsman shall entitle him to preference, other things being equal, in securing employment, or, in case of reduction of force, in retaining employment.

General Pershing, in endorsing the St. Paul plan, emphasizes the fact that the men of St. Paul are setting an example which should have far-reaching effect. If other cities copy it, the time will come when the country will recognize in the move of these business men a service to their country as great as that which was rendered by those who backed the Plattsburg movement in 1915 and 1916.

## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

### COLONEL VIDMER COMMENTS ON NATIONAL GUARD CAVALRY

(Colonel George Vidmer, Cavalry, Executive Officer for the Chief of Cavalry)

A recent inspection of the National Guard Cavalry units of the States of Pennsylvania, Ohio, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, New York, and New Jersey leaves a distinctly favorable impression, especially in the excellence of the care of animals and transportation, and an increase in the knowledge of equitation. It was especially noted that a large number of the officers and men were veterans of the World War, and that the morale and *esprit* of the organizations were almost directly in proportion to the number of these veterans. Their influence is being felt, and the experience of the World War has had its effect in a most marked degree in the standards of training, of dress, and of discipline. From reports gathered during this inspection, there is a great increase in the number of riding clubs organized throughout the East, especially in cities where there are armories. Troop officers have extended the knowledge of riding by adding to the number of horses allowed by the Government, and in giving riding lessons to civilians. This increased interest in riding will have a most beneficial influence in the production of horses of a better grade, and is a direct asset to the American Remount Association, which is doing so much to improve the grade of horses raised in the United States. The enlisted men seemed to be much younger than before the war, but the interest taken in their work appeared to be of the keenest. There was a healthy knowledge of the endurance and limitations of the horse and the important part he must play in wars of the future.

The short period of the annual field training (fifteen days) in camp was outlined very differently in different organizations, some organizations getting but very few days of strictly mounted work.

There appears to be a great necessity for a simple memorandum standardizing the essentials of cavalry training according to their priority. This is necessary due to the fact that in a great many of the organizations there is quite a large percentage of change in the personnel. In some organizations the personnel has not settled down to long periods of service in an organization, as was common prior to the World War. With the rapidly shifting personnel, it is very difficult for an organization commander to carry on consecutive instruction, and with the short weekly periods, it is extremely difficult to raise the training to a uniform standard throughout the organization. It should be impressed in the training that standard basic principles, a knowledge of which is so essential to every cavalryman, should become fixed habits of thought. To fix these principles as habits, there must be many repetitions. These principles are those that bear on the very vital subject of the continuous mobility of cavalry, or, in other words, the conservation of the horses' energy.

### GENERAL HAAN REVIEWS WISCONSIN CAVALRY

A review in honor of Major General William G. Haan, U. S. A., retired, former commander of the 32d Division, U. S. A., was held on June 3 by the 1st Squadron of the 105th Cavalry, Wisconsin National Guard, stationed at Milwaukee, Wis., and commanded by Maj. C. S. Mercein.

The news that General Haan was to review the squadron was received but a short time in advance, which necessitated an emergency call being sent to Troops A, B, and C, which were to take part. The turnout, however, was gratifying.

The troops passed the reviewing stand at the customary walk, trot, and gallop, in their newly acquired caps and white tie ropes and service uniforms.

Acting as staff of honor were the following: Colonels Paul B. Clemmes, 28th Infantry; Gilbert E. Seamen, State surgeon; James J. Quill, 105th Cavalry; Carl Penner, former commander of the 120th Field Artillery; Lieutenant-Colonels Fred Best, 22d Cavalry Division, and C. F. Sammond, 105th Cavalry.

## THE NATIONAL GUARD

Authority was recently granted by order of the War Department, to the 105th Cavalry to wear a distinctive regimental cord. The description and regulation regarding the cord is quoted from the War Department orders as follows: "A twisted silk cord (one-quarter of an inch in diameter) of scarlet and gold strands, colors being those of the regimental coat of arms; cord to be worn by officers and enlisted men in single loop around left sleeve, head passing under the shoulder of the service coat.

"The colors embodied in the cord and coat of arms represent the service given to the United States as cavalry and artillery."

### MORE HORSES FOR THE NATIONAL GUARD

When the estimates for the National Guard appropriations for the fiscal year 1924 were prepared in the Militia Bureau an amount was included therein for the purchase of additional horses for the use of the National Guard, not only to replace casualties, amounting to approximately 5 per cent per annum, but to furnish animals to mounted organizations and horsed artillery which had received only a small percentage of the animals to which they were entitled and which in some cases were functioning entirely without animals.

In order to reduce the total of the estimates submitted by the Militia Bureau to the maximum fixed by the Budget Bureau, it was agreed by the War Department that a reduction of 10 per cent of the animals in the hands of the Regular Army in the United States would be effected in order to supply the needs of the National Guard, and accordingly the amount included in the estimates for the purchase of horses was stricken out. In due course the Militia Bureau was informed that 2,445 horses would be turned over to the National Guard from Regular Army stations as soon as possible after July 1, 1923.

It is believed that when the delivery of the 2,445 horses has been completed there will be sufficient horses, together with the 7,600 now on hand, to furnish each organization of the Guard that is equipped with the proper stable facilities with the number of horses to which it is entitled under the policy established by the Militia Bureau and announced in the recent circular letter, as follows:

- a. National Guard units which will receive horses for training purposes:
  - All types of cavalry units,
  - Mounted combat engineer units,
  - All types of horsed field artillery units,
  - Divisional signal companies.
- b. The allowance of horses when a single unit is located at an armory is as follows:
  - All types of cavalry troops, 32 horses.
  - Squadron headquarters detachments, 10 horses.
  - Mounted combat engineer companies, 16 horses.
  - Gun batteries of horsed field artillery, 32 horses.
  - Brigade and regimental headquarter batteries, service batteries, battalion headquarters detachments and combat trains and ammunition trains of horsed field artillery, 16 horses.
  - Divisional signal companies, 11 horses.
- c. When more than one unit is located at the same armory, the following number of horses are allowed:
  - Two cavalry troops or two gun batteries, 48 horses.
  - Three cavalry troops or three gun batteries, 64 horses.
  - Four cavalry troops or four gun batteries, 80 horses.
  - Five cavalry troops or five gun batteries, 96 horses.
  - No more than 96 horses will be issued to any one armory.
- d. Horses issued to several units at one armory should be divided up as equitably as possible among all the units at that armory, so that each unit may have its own horses



## THE CAVALRY JOURNAL


for use outside of drill periods. All horses at an armory will be under the control of the senior officer assigned to the units at that armory, and under his supervision will be pooled for the use of the different units during their drill periods. They will also be pooled for the purpose of employing caretakers.

### CAVALRY SCHOOL PREPARES FOR NATIONAL GUARD INSTRUCTION

Major-General George C. Richards, Chief of the Militia Bureau, writes to the Chief of Cavalry as follows:

It is desired to express extreme appreciation of the efforts taken by the Chief of Cavalry to furnish this bureau with the nature of subject-matter taught at the Cavalry School to regular students concerning duties they may be called upon to perform in connection with the National Guard.

The subject-matter has been examined with much interest, and it is felt that its scope meets admirably the need in informing officers of the cavalry arm as to the general problems to be encountered when placed on duty with the National Guard. It is, therefore, very gratifying to realize the earnestness with which this subject has been approached and the benefit to the National Guard that must result therefrom.



**POLO GOODS**  
**MALLETS—BALLS—SADDLES**  
(1921 CATALOG WITH BOOK OF RULES ON REQUEST)  
**CHAS. MEURISSE & CO.**  
4638 Cottage Grove Ave.  
CHICAGO  
**MEURISSE**

## The Organized Reserves

### RESOLUTIONS PASSED BY THE NATIONAL COUNCIL

At the annual assembly of the National Council of the Reserve Officers' Association, held at Indianapolis, July 14 and 15, resolutions were unanimously passed to the following effect:

1. That a selective service system should be developed and put into effect that will insure, in the event of an emergency, a swift and sure supply of personnel to the armed forces.
2. That the Regular Army should not be further reduced, but should rather be established at a peace time strength of not less than 15,000 officers and 150,000 enlisted men.
3. That members of the Officers' Reserve Corps ought actively to assist and support the National Guard in its effort to get adequate co-operation and assistance from the people of its communities.
4. That the R. O. T. C. training is indorsed, and organization of cadet training in secondary schools encouraged.
5. That the Citizen's Military Training Camps are endorsed and should be furthered as much as possible by Reserve Corps officers.
6. That the appropriations by Congress for the maintenance of the Organized Reserves should be increased.
7. That the work of the Regular Army in furthering the three-component army and developing the citizen components of the army is appreciated.
8. That all Reserve Officers are enjoined to lend every possible aid in the preparation, conduct, and participation in unit-training schedules in the interests of *esprit de corps* and efficiency.

### STANDARD PRESENTED TO 315th CAVALRY

At an appropriate ceremony held August 21, Major-General Brewster, commanding the First Corps Area, presented to Colonel Herbert R. Dean and the officers and men of the 315th Cavalry their handsome new regimental standard. Upon his arrival at the State encampment at Quonset Point, R. I., the General was escorted by Troop B of the 3d Regular Cavalry. He was tendered a reception by the officers of the 315th and greeted by officers on duty at the camp. Following the reception, the 1st Squadron, Rhode Island National Guard, and Troop B, 3d Cavalry, formed for participation in the ceremony.

General Brewster said, in presenting the standard, in which the regimental crest depicting a Minute Man was boldly conspicuous over the Eagle: "I know, Colonel, you, your officers, and your men, will always hold them dear. You gave the best you had back in 1917 and 1918 to carry your colors to the glory they deserved. It is a pleasure for me to present these colors to your regiment, for I know they will be treasured and well protected by true and tried veterans and patriots."

Colonel Dean thanked the commanding general on behalf of the regiment and expressed the assurance that the 315th Regiment of Cavalry, Organized Reserve Corps, could be depended upon to rally to the defense of the United States when called to duty.

Following the presentation, the troopers at the camp passed in review. The General also inspected the camp during his visit and congratulated the officers and men on the condition of the troopers, their mounts, their quarters, and the field.

Among the officers of the 315th present besides Colonel Dean were: Major Norman S. Case, Major Phelps Montgomery, Major Joseph F. Hawkins, Captain Oscar Maynard, Captain Frank E. Wolf, Captain Joseph T. Marinar, Captain Hathaway, and Lieutenants Edward Vilranz, Paul W. Fletcher, Harold C. Thomas, and Harold Andrews.

## "THE CAPEWELL"

### HORSE NAIL—



the nail which has no equal and leads all horse nails because of superior holding and easy driving qualities.

This particular nail should especially interest all men connected with the Cavalry and Artillery service.

### For Army Horseshoeing

the reliability of "The Capewell" nail makes it especially valuable. It can be depended on under the hardest strains and can be driven with the utmost ease and safety.

Each nail bears our Trade Mark on the front face of the head—a pattern formed by lines crossing each other diagonally.

## The CAPEWELL

HORSE NAIL COMPANY  
Hartford, Conn.

U. S. of A.

LARGEST MANUFACTURERS OF HORSE NAILS

## Thoroughbred Arabian Saddle Horses

Suitable for Riding, Driving, Cavalry  
With Beauty, Gentleness, Endurance



Year	Entries	Distance in Miles	Test	Pounds Carried	Time Hrs. Min.	Prizes
1913	9	154	Continuous	180	30 40	1st, 3d, 4th
1914	4	40	"	200	3 38	Private
1918	2	162	"	200	31 5	Private
1919	18	306	Five Days	200	51 26	1st, 3d, 4th
1920	27	306	"	245	52 41	2nd, 5th
1921	17	310	"	245	49 4	1st, 3d, 6th
1922	21	300	"	225	45 20	4th
1922	22	300	"	45	20	4th

Registered Gen. S. B.: Am. S. B.: Arab S. B.  
At Stud Exportable duty free For Sale  
MAYESBORO ARABIAN STUD Berlin, N. H., U. S. A.

## INSIGNIA EMBLEMS MEDALS COATS-OF-ARMS IN BRONZE, SILVER, GOLD

### HIGHEST GRADE OF ENAMEL WORK

### SHOULDER PATCHES PENNANTS BANNERS RIBBON BADGES

Special Attention to Regimental needs.

A. H. DONDERO, Inc.  
310 Machinists' Building  
Washington, D. C.

ESTABLISHED  
OVER 125 YEARS.



By Appointment  
to H.M. King GEORGE V.

Peal & Co

BOOTMAKERS.

487, Oxford Street.  
London, W.1.



By Appointment  
to H.R.H. THE PRINCE OF WALES

SEASON 1923-1924.

Reg to announce their Mr. J. Donaldson assisted by  
Mr. Holmes will visit the Cities mentioned below when they  
trust to be favored with your orders & recommendations.

PITTSBURG	WILLIAM PENN HOTEL	SEPT. 27-29
CLEVELAND, OHIO	HOTEL STATLER	OCT. 1-3
DETROIT	HOTEL STATLER	OCT. 4-6
CHICAGO	CONGRESS HOTEL	OCT. 8-12
FORT SHERIDAN, ILL.		OCT. 13
FORT DES MOINES, IOWA	HOTEL DES MOINES	OCT. 15
DES MOINES, IOWA		OCT. 16
FORT RILEY, KANS.		OCT. 18-20
FORT LEAVENWORTH, KANS.	HOTEL BALTIMORE	OCT. 22-23
KANSAS CITY, MO.		OCT. 24-25
FORT SILL, OKLA.		OCT. 26-29
FORT BLISS, TEXAS		OCT. 31-NOV. 2
FORT HUACHUCA, ARIZ.		NOV. 3
FORT HARRY J. JONES, ARIZONA		NOV. 5
FORT CLARK, TEXAS		NOV. 7
FORT TRAVIS, TEXAS		NOV. 8-10
FORT SAM HOUSTON, TEXAS	GUNTER HOTEL	NOV. 12
KELLY FIELD, TEXAS		NOV. 13
ST. LOUIS, MO.	HOTEL STATLER	NOV. 15-17
CHANUTE FIELD, ILL.		NOV. 19
FORT BENJAMIN HARRISON, IND.		NOV. 20
DAYTON, OHIO	HOTEL MIAMI	NOV. 21-22
LOUISVILLE, KY.	SEELBACH HOTEL	NOV. 23-24
FORT OGLETHORPE, GA.		NOV. 26
FORT BENNING, GA.		NOV. 28-30
FORT BRAGG, N. C.		DEC. 3
FOXCROFT, MIDDLEBURG		DEC. 4
MIDDLEBURG & BERRYVILLE, VA.		DEC. 5-6
NEW YORK	MURRAY HILL HOTEL	NOV. 26-DEC. 12
PHILADELPHIA	RITZ CARLTON HOTEL	DEC. 13-22
WILMINGTON, DEL.	DU PONT HOTEL	DEC. 24
BALTIMORE	STAFFORD HOTEL	DEC. 24-29
WASHINGTON, D. C.	THE LEE HOUSE	DEC. 31-JAN. 4
BOSTON	PARKER HOUSE	JAN. 7-12
NEW YORK	MURRAY HILL HOTEL	JAN. 14-29

ABOVE ARE APPROXIMATE DATES.

## The Swavely School

PREPARES BOYS FOR ANY  
COLLEGE

*For particulars, address*

4101 Connecticut Avenue N. W.  
Washington, D. C.



**WHITMAN**  
MADE IN U. S. A.  
**Hunting  
and Polo  
SADDLES**

POLO TYPE

We invite comparison of our  
saddles with any made in the  
United States or foreign countries

**THE PERKINS-CAMPBELL CO.**  
CINCINNATI

89 Chambers St.  
New York

1329 S. Michigan Ave.  
Chicago

*Complete display of riding, hunting and racing Saddles  
and equestrian goods on display at both of our stores*

HENRY SCHICK

FRANK J. KRUPP

**Henry Schick & Co.**

FORMERLY WITH JOHN G. HAAS

**Army and Navy  
Uniforms**

1421 F STREET NORTHWEST

Washington, D. C.

CIVILIAN DRESS A SPECIALTY

## The Riggs National Bank

OF WASHINGTON, D. C.

Capital \$1,000,000

Surplus \$2,000,000

**ALL ARMY ACTIVITIES CENTER**

IN WASHINGTON, D. C.

Why not Bank there and avoid changing your Bank  
with every change of station.

Bank with us by mail and use our cheque which is  
recognized everywhere.

**3%** ON SAVINGS  
ACCOUNTS

# The Cavalry Journal

PUBLISHED BY THE UNITED STATES  
CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

*Index to Volume XXXIII, Numbers 134-137  
January-April-July-October, 1924*

## Index of Authors

	No.	Page
Augur, Captain Wayland B.		
A Plan for a Test in the Combat Leadership of Small Cavalry Units.....	136	261
Barry, Major J. A.		
Olympia, 1923, and the VIII Olympiade .....	134	64
Barry, Major John A., Cavalry		
Olympia and the VIII Olympiade .....	137	420
Bates, Colonel Charles Francis, Rtd.		
The Westchester Horse and the "Guster Trail" .....	136	332
Board, Major L. A., Q.M. Corps, Remount Service		
Army Polo and the Junior Championship.....	137	416
Benson, Major C. G., Cavalry (D.O.L.)		
The Cavalry School Team in the Colorado Endurance Ride .....	137	420
Bradford, Major K. S., Cavalry		
The Cavalry Board .....	137	443
Brown, Colonel W. C., Rtd.		
The Desirability of Lighter Spurs .....	136	327
Brown, W. R.		
Results of Five Endurance Tests .....	134	39
Caldwell, First Lieutenant George I.		
The Army Express .....	136	173
Chaffee, Major Adam R.		
The Maneuvers of the First Cavalry Division, September-October, 1923.....	135	123
Chamberlin, Major H. D.		
The British Cavalry School at Tor Di Quinto .....	136	303
Craig, Major General Maika, Chief of Cavalry		
A Message to the Cavalry .....	137	391
Cruikshank, Captain J. B. H.		
From Acre to Aleppo with Allenby .....	134	52
Davis, Lieutenant Colonel Edward		
The British Cavalry in Palestine and Syria .....	134	47
Dickinson, Lieutenant Colonel Henry, 100th Cavalry		
Why the Army War College .....	136	303
Edwards, William Walker, Major, Cavalry		
In Summer Training Camp with the British Cavalry .....	137	400
Ex-Cavalrymen		
263 By What Names Ye Shall Know Them .....	136	190

	No.	Page
Farman, Major Elbert H., Jr. Hill Fighting in Morocco .....	124	24
Gray, Colonel Alonso Colonel Alonso Gray's Unique Prediction in 1910 .....	125	172
Harbord, Major General J. G., Rtd. Letter .....	126	207
Helmick, Major General Eli A., the Inspector General The Value of Competition in Training .....	127	202
Hohenlohe, Engelkingen, Prince Kraft An Artilleryman on Cavalry Leadership .....	128	222
Holliday, Colonel Milton G., Q.M.C. First Cavalry Division Trains at Maneuvers .....	128	208
Howard-Vyne, Lieutenant Colonel R. C. H., Royal Horse Guard The British Household Cavalry .....	127	209
Inouye, Captain Y., Cavalry, Imperial Japanese Army The Japanese Cavalry School .....	127	411
Johnston, Lieutenant Colonel Gordon, Cavalry Cavalry Marches .....	127	412
Levitt, Albert The Domicile of Persons in the Army and the Navy .....	125	189
Liminger, Lieutenant Colonel Clarence Inheritance .....	124	25
McClure, Colonel N. F. Cavalry Advance Incidents (extracts from 3,000 Kilometers with the Guard Cavalry, by Dr. Vogel) .....	124	70
McLara, Major John T., Cavalry (D.O.L.) The Cavalry School Team in the Colorado Endurance Ride .....	127	427
Mark, Second Lieutenant William H., 101st Cavalry The Rochester Cavalry .....	126	272
Mitchell, Brigadier General Paul L., 54th Cavalry Brigade The Ohio Cavalry .....	125	195
Padgett, Captain V. I. The Army at the National Horse Show .....	124	77
Patton, Major G. S., Jr. The Royal Winter Fair of Canada .....	124	79
Patton, Major G. S., Jr. Armored Cars with Cavalry .....	124	5
Pershing, General John J. Letter .....	126	200
Poseck, Lieutenant General W. W. von, German Army German Cavalrymen as Prisoners of War in France .....	125	212
Rayner, Major Harold M. Indoor Polo in France .....	126	200
Robinson, First Lieutenant P. M. Major J. A. Barry's Army Horse Show Team .....	126	204
Scherer, Colonel L. C. Federal Control of the National Guard .....	126	212
Scott, Major C. L., Q.M.C. A Few Suggestions for Handling Two and Three Year Old Colts .....	125	187
Scott, Major C. L., Q.M. Corps, Remount Service The Colorado Endurance Ride .....	127	447
Simmons, Captain W. G. A plan for a Test in the Combat Leadership of Small Cavalry Units .....	126	200
Test, Captain Russell L., 170th F.A. Obtaining and Maintaining Armory Drill Attendance .....	125	191
Thompson, Major Harold The Spanish Cavalry Instruction Unit .....	126	202

	No.	Page
****Pride, First Lieutenant Woodbury F. A Plan for a Test in the Combat Leadership of Small Cavalry Units .....	126	220
Vogel, Dr. The Proven System of Identifying Horses and Mules .....	126	225
(Cavalry Advance Incidents, extracts translated by Colonel N. F. McClure from 3,000 Kilometers with the Guard Cavalry by Dr. Vogel) .....	124	70
Walker, Colonel Kirby Cavalry in the World War .....	124	11
Williamson, Captain Byron A Plan for a Test in the Combat Leadership of Small Cavalry Units .....	126	261
Whitehead, Colonel H. C., Q.M.C. Horses C. A. & E. .....	126	225
Winters, Brigadier General Jacob F., 56th Cavalry Brigade National Guard as Aid to Civil Authority .....	125	163

## Index of Subjects

	No.	Page
Acre to Aleppo with Allenby, From		
Captain J. R. H. Cruikshank, late 18th Lancers	134	52
Address, Changes of		
Topics of the Day	136	339
Aim of the Cavalry Journal, The		
Editorial Comment	136	330
Aleppo with Allenby, From Acre to		
Captain J. R. H. Cruikshank, late 18th Lancers	134	52
Allenby, From Acre to Aleppo with		
Captain J. R. H. Cruikshank, late 18th Lancers	134	52
Annual Meeting, Notice of the U. S. Cavalry Association	137	459
Appreciation of Major Howe, An		
Editorial Comment	135	215
Arab Horse Show, An		
Topics of the Day	134	88
Armored Cars with Cavalry		
Major G. S. Patton, Jr.	134	5
Armory Drill Attendance, Obtaining and Maintaining		
Captain Russell L. Test	135	191
Army at the National Horse Show, The		
Captain V. I. Padgett	134	77
Army Olympic Team		
First Lieutenant P. M. Robinett	136	324
Army Polo and the Junior Championship		
Major L. A. Board, Q.M.C. (Remount Service)	137	418
Army Polo Team, The		
Topics of the Day	136	336
Army, The and Mounted Competitions		
Editorial	137	459
Army War College, Why the		
Lt. Col. Henry Dickinson, 109th Cavalry	136	302
Artilleryman on Cavalry Leadership, An		
Prince Kraft zu Hohenlohe Ingelfingen	136	323
Association, and the Journal, The		
Editorial	137	458
Attendance, Obtaining and Maintaining Armory Drill		
Captain Russell L. Test	135	191
Board, The Cavalry		
Major E. B. Bradford, Cavalry	137	442
Boletín del Centro Naval (Argentina)		
Periodicals (Review)		
September-October, 1923	136	356
November-December, 1923	137	481
January-February, 1924	137	481
March-April, 1924	137	481
British Cavalry in Palestine and Syria, The		
Lieutenant Colonel Edward Davis	134	47
British Household Cavalry, The		
Lieutenant Colonel R. G. H. Howard-Vyse, Royal Horse Guards	137	399

## Bulletin Belge des Sciences Militaires Periodicals (Review)

	No.	Page
May-June, 1923	134	98
July, 1923	134	98
December, 1923	135	290
January, 1924	135	292
October, 1923	136	345
November, 1923	136	345
February, 1924	137	481
March, 1924	137	482
April, 1924	137	482
May, 1924	137	484
By Their Horses Ye Shall Know Them		
Ex-Cavalryman	135	199
Camp Meade, Maryland, Cavalry C.M.T.C. at		
Topics of the Day	137	487
Canal Zone, Growing Army Forage in the		
Topics of the Day	134	87
Captain Royden Williamson, In Collaboration with Captain Wayland B. Angur, Wins Prize Essay Contest		
Editorial Comment	136	331
Cavalierisch Tijdschrift (Dutch)		
Periodicals (Review)		
January, 1924	136	357
March, 1924	136	358
April, 1924	137	485
May, 1924	137	486
June, 1924	137	487
Cavalry Advance Incidents		
Colonel N. F. McClure	134	70
Cavalry, A Message to the		
Major General Malin Craig, Chief of Cavalry	137	491
Cavalry Association, Notice of the Annual Meeting of the		
Editorial	137	460
Cavalry, A Tribute to the		
Editorial	137	496
Cavalry, British Household, The		
(Lieutenant Colonel R. G. H. Howard-Vyse, Royal Horse Guards.)	137	399
Cavalry C.M.T.C. at Camp Meade, Md.		
Topics of the Day	137	487
Cavalry Division, Horse Show of the First		
Editorial	137	452
Cavalry Division Maneuvers, First		
Editorial Comment	135	216
Cavalry Division, September-October, 1923, The Maneuvers of the First		
Major Adna R. Chaffee	135	133
Cavalry Fund, The		
Editorial Comment	134	84
Topics of the Day	135	217
Topics of the Day	136	334
Editorial	137	459
Cavalry in the World War		
Colonel Kirby Walker	134	11
Cavalry Journal (British)		
Periodicals (Review)		
October, 1923	134	97
January, 1924	135	226
April, 1924	136	344
Cavalry Marches		
Lieutenant Colonel Gordon Johnston, Cavalry	137	413

	No.	Page
Cavalry R.O.T.C. Enrollment for Second Semester		
Topics of the Day	136	334
Cavalry School, Valuable Accessions to the Library of the		
Topics of the Day	135	218
Cavalry School, Graduation Exercises, The	137	449
Cavalry School, Mailing List of the		
Topics of the Day	137	467
Cavalry School Team, The, in the Colorado Endurance Ride		
Major John T. McLane, Cavalry, and Major C. C. Benson, Cavalry	137	427
Cavalry, The Japanese, School		
Captain Y. Inouye, Cavalry, Imperial Japanese Army	137	411
Cavalry, The Ohio		
Brigadier General Paul L. Mitchell	135	195
Cavalry, The, Team at The National Matches		
Topics of the Day	137	468
Cavalry, The Try-out Matches at Fort Des Moines		
Topics of the Day	137	466
Chief of Cavalry's Rifle Team		
Topics of the Day	134	66
Chief, Our First		
Editorial Comment	136	329
Citizen Cavalry, In Summer Training With the		
Major William Waller Edwards, Cavalry	137	406
C.M.T.C., Cavalry, at Camp Meade, Md.	137	467
Colonel Alonzo Gray's Unique Prediction in 1910	135	172
Colorado Endurance Ride		
Topics of the Day	136	335
Colorado Endurance Ride, The		
Topics of the Day	137	465
Colorado Endurance Ride, The		
Major C. L. Scott, Q.M.C. (Remount Service)	137	447
Colorado Endurance Ride, The Cavalry School Team in The		
Majors John T. McLane and C. C. Benson, Cavalry	137	427
Colts, A Few Suggestions for Handling Two-and-Three-Year-Old		
Major C. L. Scott	135	187
Combat Leadership of Small Cavalry Units, A Plan for a Test in the		
Captain Royden Williamson and Captain Wayland B. Augur	136	261
First Lieutenant W. F. Pride	136	280
Captain W. G. Simmons	136	300
Competition in Training, The Value of		
Major General Eli A. Helmick, Inspector General	137	392
Competitions, The Army and Mounted		
Editorial	137	459
Composite Units, Maneuvers of Fast Moving		
Topics of the Day	134	86
Content, Reserve New Member		
Topics of the Day	137	463
Contributions for Publication Early, Sending		
Editorial Comment	135	216
Co-operation		
Editorial Comment	135	215
Co-operation delle Armi, La (Italy)		
Periodicals (Review) September-October, 1923	136	357
Craig, General Malin		
Editorial Comment	136	329

	No.	Page
"Custer Trail", The Westchester Horse and the		
Colonel Charles Francis Bates	136	312
Czechoslovak Cavalry, The	134	22
Desirability of Lighter Spurs		
Colonel W. C. Brown	136	327
Division at Maneuvers, First Cavalry		
Lieutenant Colonel M. G. Holliday	136	268
Division Maneuvers, First Cavalry		
Editorial Comment	135	216
Domicile of Persons in the Army and the Navy, The		
Albert Levitt	135	180
Drill Attendance, Obtaining and Maintaining Armory		
Captain Russell L. Test	135	191
Editorial Comments		
Aim of the Cavalry Journal, The	136	330
An Appreciation of Major Howe	135	215
Captain Royden Williamson, First Cavalry Brigade, in Collaboration		
with Captain Wayland B. Augur, Wins Prize Essay Contest	136	331
Cavalry Fund, The	134	84
Army, The and Mounted Competitions	137	459
Association, The, and the Journal	137	458
Co-operation	135	215
Cavalry Fund, The	137	459
First Cavalry Division Maneuvers	135	216
General Malin Craig	136	329
Keeping the Bushel Over the Light	134	81
Our First Chief	136	329
Plea, A, for Promptness	137	458
Rasp, The	137	459
Sending Contributions for Publication Early	135	216
Some Observations on the Horse Situation and the Cavalry Officer	134	82
Success, A	136	331
Early, Sending Contributions for Publication		
Editorial Comment	135	216
Eastern Endurance Ride, 1924	135	204
Endurance Ride, Colorado		
Topics of the Day	136	335
Endurance Ride, 1924, Eastern	135	204
Endurance Ride, Minutes of the Meeting of the Board of Sponsors of the 1924		
Topics of the Day	135	219
Endurance Ride, The 1924		
Topics of the Day	137	463
Endurance Ride, The Cavalry School Team in the Colorado		
Major John T. McLane and Major C. C. Benson, Cavalry	137	427
Endurance Ride, The Colorado		
Major C. L. Scott, Q.M.C. (Remount Service)	137	447
Endurance Tests, Results of Five		
W. R. Brown	134	80
Equestrian Events of the VIII Olympiad		
Topics of the Day	137	461
Essay Announcement, Prize	134	63
Express, The Pony		
First Lieutenant George L. Caldwell	135	173
Federal Control of the National Guard		
Colonel L. C. Scherer	136	318
Feeds and Feeding, Valuable Information on		
****Topics of the Day	135	221



	No.	Page
First Cavalry Division, Horse Show of the	137	452
First Cavalry Division Maneuvers		
Editorial Comment	135	216
First Cavalry Division, September-October, 1923, The Maneuvers of the		
Major Adna R. Chaffee	135	133
First Cavalry Division Trains at Maneuvers		
Lieutenant Colonel M. G. Holliday	136	268
First Chief, Our		
Editorial Comment	136	329
Foreign Military Journals	137	473
France, German Cavalrymen as Prisoners of War in		
Lieutenant General W. W. von Poseck	135	212
France, 1922-1923, Indoor Polo in		
Major H. M. Rayner	136	290
From Acre to Aleppo with Allenby		
Captain J. R. H. Cruikshank, late 18th Lancers	134	82
Fund, A One-Thousand Dollar		
Topics of the Day	137	461
Fund, The Cavalry		
Topics of the Day	135	217
Editorial Comment	134	84
Topics of the Day	136	334
Editorial	137	459
General Malin Craig		
Editorial Comment	136	329
German Cavalrymen as Prisoners of War in France		
Lieutenant General W. W. von Poseck	135	212
Graduation Exercises, The Cavalry School	137	449
Gray's Unique Prediction in 1910, Colonel Alonzo	135	172
Growing Army Forage in the Canal Zone		
Topics of the Day	134	87
Handling Two-and-Three-Year-Old Colts, A Few Suggestions		
Major C. L. Scott	135	187
HHH Fighting in Morocco		
Major Elbert E. Farman, Jr.	134	24
Horses, C. A. and E.		
Colonel H. C. Whitehead, Q.M.C.	136	325
Horse Show, of the First Cavalry Division	137	452
Horse Show, R.O.T.C. Michigan Agricultural College		
Topics of the Day	137	468
Horses, Ye Shall Know Them, By Their		
Ex-Cavalryman	135	199
Howe, An Appreciation of Major		
Editorial Comment	135	215
Identifying Horses and Mules, The Preston System of		
Major C. L. Scott	136	285
Insurance for the Use of the Horse		
Topics of the Day	134	85
Indoor Polo in France, 1922-1923		
Major H. M. Rayner	136	290
***Few Suggestions for Handling Two-and-Three-Year-Old Colts, A		
Major C. L. Scott	135	187
Inheritance		
Lieutenant Colonel Clarence Lininger	134	35

	No.	Page
Instruction Unit, The Spanish Cavalry		
Major Harold Thompson	136	292
Italian Cavalry School at Tor Di Quinto		
Major H. D. Chamberlin	136	308
Japanese Cavalry School, The		
Captain Y. Inouye, Cavalry, Imperial Japanese Army	137	411
Journals, Foreign Military	137	473
Journal of the Royal United Service Institution		
Periodicals (Review)		
August, 1923	134	96
November, 1923	135	226
February, 1924	135	227
May, 1924	136	344
Journal of the United Service Institution of India		
Periodicals (Review)		
July, 1923	134	96
October, 1923	135	228
January, 1924	135	228
April, 1924	136	345
July, 1924	137	474
Journal, The Association and The		
Editorial	137	458
Keeping the Bushel Over the Light		
Editorial Comment	134	61
Know Them, By Their Horses Ye Shall		
Ex-Cavalryman	135	199
Leadership, An Artilleryman on Cavalry		
Prince Kraft zu Hohenlohe Ingelfingen	136	323
Leadership of Small Cavalry Units, A Plan for a Test in the Combat		
Captain Royden Williamson and Captain Wayland B. Augur	136	261
First Lieutenant W. F. Pride	136	280
Captain W. G. Simmons	136	300
L'Echo de Paris		
Periodicals (Review) December 21, 1923-January 4 and 18, 1924	135	228
Library of the Cavalry School, Valuable Accessions to the		
Topics of the Day	135	218
Lighter Spurs, Desirability of		
Colonel W. C. Brown	136	327
Mailing List of the Cavalry School		
Topics of the Day	137	467
Major J. A. Barry's Army Horse Show Team		
First Lieutenant P. M. Robinett	134	76
Maneuvers, First Cavalry Division		
Editorial Comment	135	216
Maneuvers, First Cavalry Division Trains at		
Lieutenant Colonel M. G. Holliday	136	268
Maneuvers of Fast Moving Composite Units		
Topics of the Day	134	86
Maneuvers of the First Cavalry Division, September-October, 1923, The		
Major Adna R. Chaffee	135	133
Matches, Cavalry Try-out, at Fort Des Moines		
Topics of the Day	137	467
Memorial de Caballeria, Spain		
Periodicals (Review)		
August, 1923	134	102
September, 1923	135	233
October, 1923	135	234

	No.	Page
November, 1923	135	234
January, 1924	135	351
February, 1924	135	351
March, 1924	137	477
April, 1924	137	479
May, 1924	137	479
Memorial del Ejercito (Chile)		
Periodicals (Review) November, 1923	135	355
Militar Wochenblatt		
Periodicals (Review) February 5, 1924	135	350
Minutes of the Meeting of the Board of Sponsors of the 1924 Endurance Ride		
Topics of the Day	135	219
Morocco, Hill Fighting in		
Major Elbert E. Farman, Jr.	134	24
New Books Reviewed		
Bolivar—H. R. Lowly	135	341
Cavalry Journal (British) July, 1924	137	473
Development of Tactics—Balek	135	222
Hints on Horsemanship—M. F. McTaggart	134	94
Historique du 2e Corps de Cavalerie—Gen. Boullaire	134	91
Horse, The—W. S. Tevis	135	343
Inquisition, The—Hoffman Nickerson	135	224
Manual of Military Training—Moss and Lang	135	340
Military History of the World War—C. R. Howland	135	225
Military Motor Transportation—Coast Artillery School	134	93
My Rhineland Journal—H. T. Allen	134	95
Myself and a Few Moros—S. A. Cleman	135	225
National Defense—U. S. Infantry Association	135	226
Official History of Australia in the War of 1914-1918, Vol. VII—Gullett	134	93
Profession of Arms, The—Elbridge Colby	135	342
Problem of Armaments, The—A. G. Enoch	134	96
Swimming Soldiers—Colby	135	343
Veterinary Notes: The Stableman's Companion—E. S. Timmis	135	341
Warfare by Land and Sea—E. S. McCartney	135	224
Wars of the American Nation—Bond and Garey	135	342
National Guard	134	123
National Guard as Aid to Civil Authority		
Brigadier General Jacob F. Wolters	135	163
National Guard, Federal Control of the		
Col. L. C. Scherer	135	318
National Guard, The	137	491
National Horse Show, The Army at the		
Captain V. I. Padgett	134	77
National Matches, The Cavalry Team at the		
Topics of the Day	137	468
New Member Contest, Reserve		
Topics of the Day	135	332
Topics of the Day	137	463
1924 Eastern Endurance Ride	135	204
	137	463
Obtaining and Maintaining Armory Drill Attendance		
Captain Russell L. Test	135	191
Ohio Cavalry, The		
Brigadier General Paul L. Mitchell	135	195
Olympia, 1923, and the VIII Olympiade		
Major J. A. Barry	134	64
	137	420

	No.	Page
Olympic Rifle and Pistol Competition, The		
Topics of the Day	137	464
Olympic Team, Army		
1st Lt. P. M. Robinett	135	324
One Hundred Per Cent Supporters		
Topics of the Day	134	90
	135	221
	135	332
One Thousand Dollar Fund, A		
Topics of the Day	137	461
Organization and Functions of the Veterinary Service in Campaign		
Topics of the Day	135	218
Organized Reserves, The	134	124
Our First Chief		
Editorial Comment	135	329
Palestine and Syria, The British Cavalry in		
Lieut. Col. Edward Davis	134	47
Patrolling, World War Lessons in Cavalry	134	45
Plan for a Test in the Combat Leadership of Small Cavalry Units, A		
Capt. Royden Williamson and Capt. Wayland B. Augur	135	261
1st Lt. W. F. Pride	135	280
Capt. W. G. Simmons	135	300
Polo	134	103
	134	237
	137	458
	137	418
Polo, Army, and the Junior Championship		
Polo in France, Indoor, 1922-1923		
Major H. M. Rayner	135	290
Polo Pony, The	134	107
Polo Team, The Army		
Topics of the Day	135	335
Pony Express, The		
1st Lt. George L. Caldwell	135	173
Preston System of Identifying Horses and Mules, The		
Major C. L. Scott	135	235
Prisoners of War in France, German Cavalrymen as		
Lieutenant General W. W. von Poseck	135	212
Prize Essay Announcement	134	63
Prize Essay Contest, Capt. Royden Williamson, In Collaboration with Capt. Wayland B. Augur, Wins		
Editorial Comment	135	331
Promptness, A Plea For		
Editorial	137	458
Prize Essay Contest Time Limit Extended		
Topics of the Day	135	218
Rasp, The		
Editorial	137	459
Regimental Notes	134	105
	135	240
	135	351
	137	497
Remarkable Record of Tenth Cavalry Wagon Train		
Topics of the Day	135	333
Remount Service, Report of		
Topics of the Day	135	339
Report of Remount Service		
Topics of the Day	135	339

	No.	Page
Reserve New Member Contest		
Topics of the Day	136	332
	137	463
Reserves, The Organized	134	124
Results of Five Endurance Tests		
W. R. Brown	134	30
Revista del Ejercito y de la Marina (Mexico)		
Periodicals (Review)		
December, 1923	136	356
Revista Militar Argentino		
Periodicals (Review)		
August, 1923	134	102
January, 1924	136	352
February, 1924	136	353
March, 1924	136	355
April, 1924	137	475
May, 1924	137	477
Revue de Cavalerie		
Periodicals (Review)		
July-August, 1923	135	229
November-December, 1923	136	345
January-February, 1924	136	346
Revue Des Deux Mondes, La		
Periodicals (Review)		
June 15, 1923	134	100
Revue Militaire Generale, La		
Periodicals (Review)		
September, 1923	134	100
November, 1923	136	347
December, 1923	136	348
January, 1924	136	349
March, 1924	136	350
Ride, Colorado Endurance		
Topics of the Day	136	335
Major C. L. Scott, Q.M.C. Remount Service	137	447
Ride, 1924 Eastern Endurance	135	204
	137	463
Ride, Minutes of the Meeting of the Board of Sponsors of the 1924 En-		
durance		
Topics of the Day	135	219
Rides 120 Miles in 17 Hours Riding Time		
Topics of the Day	135	220
Rifle and Pistol Team Competition, The Olympic		
Topics of the Day	137	464
Rifle and Pistol Team, Tryouts for		
Topics of the Day	136	332
R.O.T.C. Enrollment for Second Semester, Cavalry		
Topics of the Day	136	334
R.O.T.C. Horse Show, Michigan Agricultural College		
Topics of the Day	137	468
Rochester Cavalry, The		
2d Lt. W. H. Marks, 101st Cavalry	136	272
Royal Engineers' Journal, The		
Periodicals (Review)		
December, 1923	135	227
March, 1924	135	227
June, 1924	136	345
Royal Winter Fair of Canada, The		
Captain V. I. Padgett	134	79

	No.	Page
Saber Pad Approved by War Department		
Topics of the Day	135	221
School, Valuable Accessions to the Library of the Cavalry		
Topics of the Day	135	218
Sending Contributions for Publication Early		
Editorial Comment	135	216
Service Headquarters in St. Louis, Mo.		
Topics of the Day	135	221
Some Observations on the Horse Situation and the Cavalry Officer		
Editorial Comment	134	82
Spanish Cavalry Instruction Unit, The		
Major Harold Thompson	136	292
Spanish Cavalry, The		
Topics of the Day	136	335
St. Louis, Mo., Service Headquarters in		
Topics of the Day	135	221
Subscriptions		
Topics of the Day	134	87
Success, A		
Editorial Comment	136	331
Success in the Military Service		
Topics of the Day	136	335
Suggestions for Handling Two and Three Year Old Colts, A Few		
Major C. L. Scott	135	187
Summer Training with the Citizen Cavalry, In		
Major William Waller Edwards	137	406
Syria, The British Cavalry in Palestine and		
Lieut. Col. Edward Davis	134	47
Tenth Cavalry Wagon Train, Remarkable Record of the		
Topics of the Day	136	333
Test in the Combat Leadership of Small Cavalry Units, A Plan for a		
Captain Royden Williamson and Captain Wayland B. Augur	136	261
1st Lt. W. F. Pride	136	280
Captain W. G. Simmons	136	300
Their Horses Ye Shall Know Them, By		
Ex-Cavalryman	135	199
Time Limit Extended, Prize Essay Contest		
Topics of the Day	135	218
Topics of the Day		
Arab Horse Show, An	134	88
Army Polo Team, The	136	336
Cavalry, C.M.T.C. at Camp Meade, Md.	137	467
Cavalry Fund, The	135	217
	136	334
Cavalry R.O.T.C. Enrollment for Second Semester	136	334
Cavalry School, Mailing List of the	137	467
Cavalry, The Team, at the National Matches	137	468
Cavalry, The Tryout Matches at Fort Des Moines	137	468
Changes of Address	136	339
Chief of Cavalry's Rifle Team	134	86
	136	335
Colorado Endurance Ride	136	355
	137	465
Contest, Reserve New Member	137	463
Endurance Ride, The 1924	137	463
Equestrian Events of the VIII Olympiad	137	461
Fund, A One Thousand Dollar	147	461
Growing Army Forage in the Canal Zone	134	87

	No.	Page
Horse Show, R.O.T.C. Michigan Agricultural College .....	187	468
Increase in Use of the Horse .....	184	85
Maneuvers of Fast Moving Composite Units .....	184	86
Minutes of the Meeting of the Board of Sponsors of the 1924 Endurance Ride .....	185	219
Olympic Rifle and Pistol Team Competition .....	187	468
One Hundred Per Cent Supporters .....	184	90
.....	185	221
.....	186	332
Organization and Functions of the Veterinary Service in Campaign .....	185	218
Prize Essay Contest Time Limit Extended .....	185	218
Remarkable Record of the Tenth Cavalry Wagon Train .....	186	333
Report of Remount Service .....	186	339
Reserve New Member Contest .....	186	332
Rides 139 Miles in 17 Hours Riding Time .....	185	220
Saber Pad Approved by War Department .....	185	221
Service Headquarters in St. Louis, Mo. ....	183	221
Spanish Cavalry, The .....	186	335
Subscriptions .....	184	87
Success in the Military Service .....	186	335
Training Regulations for Cavalry .....	186	337
Tryouts for Cavalry Rifle Team .....	186	332
Valuable Accessions to the Library of the Cavalry School .....	185	218
Valuable Information on Feeds and Feeding .....	185	221
Training Regulations for Cavalry .....		
Topics of the Day .....	186	337
Training, The Value of Competition In .....		
Major General Eli A. Helmick, Inspector General .....	187	392
Tryouts for Cavalry Rifle and Pistol Team .....		
Topics of the Day .....	186	332
Un-Royal Mounted, The (poem) .....	184	23
Valuable Accessions to the Library of the Cavalry School .....		
Topics of the Day .....	185	218
Valuable Information on Feeds and Feeding .....		
Topics of the Day .....	185	221
Veterinary Service in Campaign, Organization and Functions of the Topics of the Day .....	185	218
Wagon Train, Remarkable Record of the Tenth Cavalry .....		
Topics of the Day .....	186	333
War College, Why the Army .....		
Lt. Col. Henry Dickinson, 109th Cavalry .....	186	302
Westchester Horse and the "Custer Trail", The .....		
Col. Charles Francis Bates .....	186	312
Wetmore Bequest, The William Boerum .....	184	80
Why the Army War College .....		
Lt. Col. Henry Dickinson, 109th Cavalry .....	186	302
William Boerum Wetmore Bequest, The .....	184	80
World War, Cavalry in the .....		
Captain Kirby Walker .....	184	11
World War Lessons in Cavalry Patrolling .....	184	45
Ye Shall Know Them, By Their Horses .....		
Ex-Cavalryman .....	185	199